

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

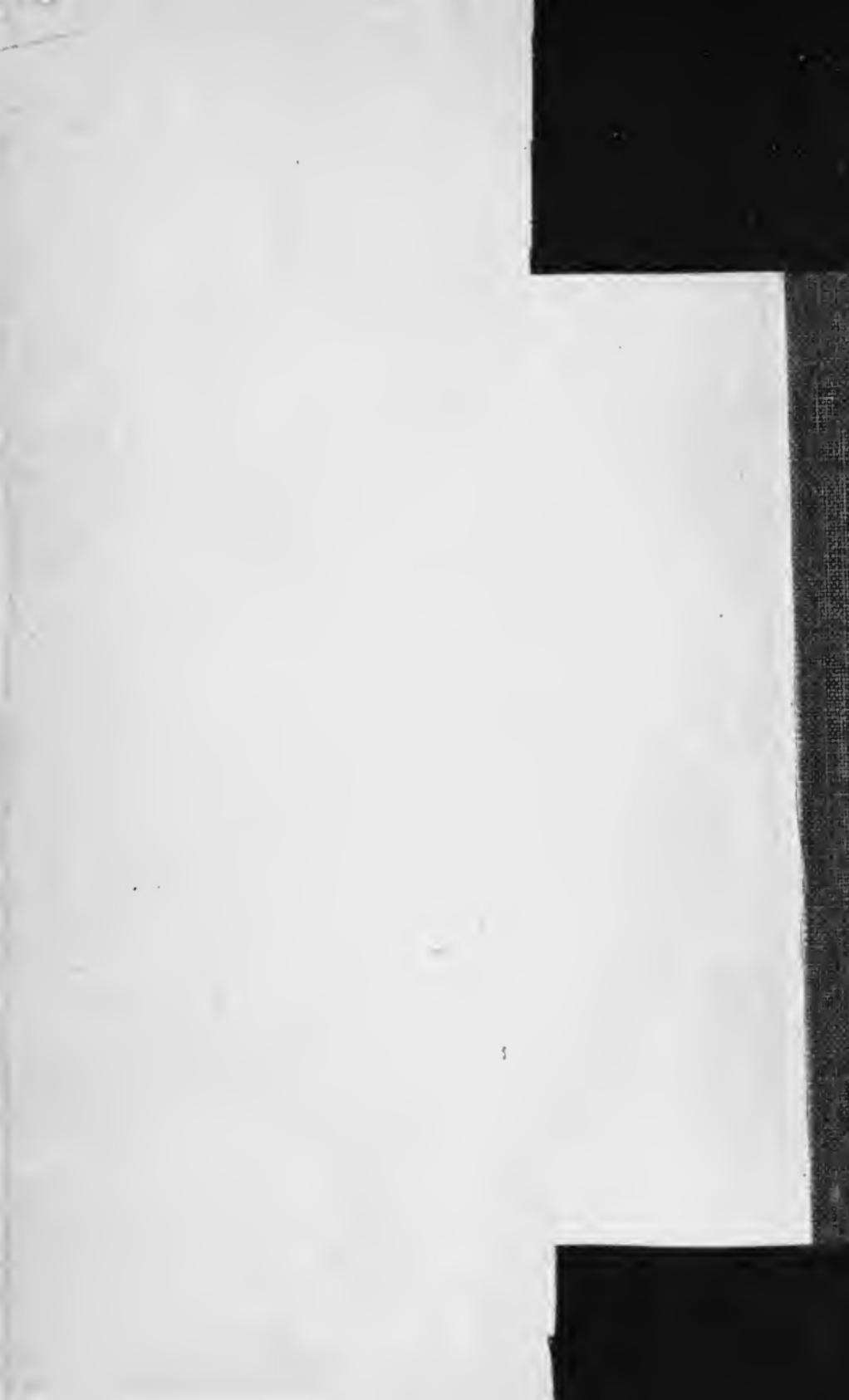


3 1761 01306797 0

SCOTT'S

STATIONERY

1/6



E. Cockburn.

Mar. 1888.



VIA LATINA:

A first Latin Book,

INCLUDING

ACCIDENCE, RULES OF SYNTAX, EXERCISES,
VOCABULARIES,

AND

RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

A LATINA:

A first Latin Book,

INCLUDING

ACCIDENCE, RULES OF SYNTAX, EXERCISES,
VOCABULARIES,

AND

RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

BY

EDWIN A. ABBOTT, D.D.,
Head Master of the City of London School.

SEVENTH THOUSAND.

LONDON:

SEELEY, JACKSON, AND HALLIDAY, FLEET STREET.

1882.

LONDON :
E. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,
BREAD STREET HILL, E.C.

~~28ct~~
~~1/4 1890~~

6

P R E F A C E.

ALTHOUGH two or three very fair Latin “First Books” are already in existence, yet the present results of Latin teaching are not so satisfactory as to necessitate an apology for a new attempt. For a very long time the Author (in the course of a weekly entrance-examination of a most elementary kind) has been in the habit of asking those boys who profess to have learned Latin—almost all of whom are over thirteen years of age, and have learned Latin two, three, four, or five years—to construe the sentence “Oppida magna boni agricolae habent”: and not one in five has been able to construe these few simple words correctly. The Examiner would have been well content with the translation “They have the great towns of the good husbandman”: but almost all have succumbed to the temptation of treating “oppida” as Nominative, and have then “plunged” to the rendering “Great towns have good husbandmen”—or something worse.

One reason for these miserable results is probably that, at present (1880), a private school may be “kept” by any

one with or without any degree, or other proof of the possession either of knowledge or of the power to impart knowledge: but it is also possible that many of our elementary Latin books are to some extent responsible for these failures, because they lay scarcely sufficient stress on *parsing before construing*. The Latin sentences placed before beginners are so easy that the pupil soon finds he can *construe* without the trouble of *parsing*; and he thus early contracts the fatal habit of “plunging” at the meaning instead of reasoning it out. To provide against this evil is one of the principal objects of the *Via Latina*. From the very first page the pupil is taught to parse as well as to construe, and not to construe till he has parsed; and throughout the book, parsing questions are put bearing on the Latin Exercises, and the answers are suggested by paragraph references.

In the preparation of the Exercises the *dictum* of Lord Bacon has been borne in mind that in all kinds of training we should imitate dancers, who practise at one time in heavy boots, at another in light shoes. A considerable experience of teaching has led the Author to the conclusion that a First Latin Book requires a great diversity of Exercises, some to illustrate special rules, others of a more general nature; some on points of Accidence, the Irregular Nouns and Verbs, and the like, others on difficulties of Syntax; and again, some difficult and accompanied with helps, others easy to be done without help; some to be written with preparation, others to be answered *virâ voce*. This want he has

attempted to supply in the present volume, and at the same time to combine the Exercises with an outline of the Accidence, and the principal Rules of Syntax.

As regards the arrangement of the Exercises, some departures from the usual order have been introduced, especially in the earlier introduction of the simpler uses of the Subjunctive Mood. It is not uncommon for boys, after committing the Verbs to memory, to allow the Subjunctive Mood to rust for some weeks or months before they make any use of it, and consequently to find that, when they need to use it, they no longer remember it; the consequence is that, during all this while, they remain under the impression that “amemus” means *we may love*, and “amaremus” *we might love*—statements which are very partial, and almost erroneous, expressions of the real truth. It seems better to introduce the Subjunctive earlier in simple and intelligible rules and examples, so as to impress the pupil from the first with the principle of the Sequence of Tenses.

The Author has also aimed at introducing a little more variety into the examples by teaching somewhat more of *idiom* than is usually taught in First Latin Books; and some hints on the particles have not been thought out of place. In Greek a boy is taught to pay attention to particles almost from the beginning, but in Latin they are too much neglected; and, for want of them, the language too often strikes beginners as uninteresting and lifeless.

Most of the longer sentences in the Latin Exercises have been selected from classical authors, occasionally

modified : and here, as well as in the statement and explanation of several of the Rules, ample acknowledgments are due to the *Public School Grammar*. Several of them may appear at first sight somewhat difficult for beginners ; but it will generally be found that the Vocabularies and the paragraph references supply all the help that is needed for a pupil who will honestly *parse before construing*. The Author has worked through most of them with a pupil ten years old, whose questions and difficulties have suggested many of the footnotes bearing on the Exercises.

The Irregular Verbs are arranged in two lists ; first according to their formation, and then in alphabetical order. This repetition may appear superfluous ; but the object of it is to enable the pupil to learn the Verbs according to their logical order in the first list, but afterwards to test his knowledge by repeating them when presented to him miscellaneously in the second list, which also includes a large number of the more important Compound Verbs in which boys frequently go wrong.

The Hints on Construing are intended not only as a preparation for translating a Latin author, but also as a summary of Rules for parsing the sentences in the Latin Exercises, and for translating English into Latin.

It is hoped that the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, while escaping the necessity of breaking the thread of the Accidence and Syntax by interposing continual explanations of terms, will on the other hand avoid the greater

evil of suffering the pupil to use words of the meaning of which he knows nothing.

In the Public Schools and in the better class of Preparatory Schools (to the excellence of which the Author bears willing testimony) such portentous failures as were mentioned in the beginning of this Preface are (no doubt) unknown: but even there it sometimes appears as though it were very difficult to ground boys well in Latin Grammar without an inordinate waste of time, or without dwarfing the pupil's faculties by an excessive prolongation of a mechanical and monotonous word-drill. Good teachers will succeed without any books in avoiding the evil and attaining the good; but even good teachers may occasionally be helped by a book, and to them this book is offered, not as a substitute, but as a help, for good teaching.

I gratefully acknowledge much valuable help for which I am indebted to Mr. J. S. Reid, Fellow and Tutor of Caius College, Cambridge, and one of the Classical Examiners for the University of London.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THIS Edition contains many corrections and modifications suggested by the use of the book in teaching. All the Exercises have been worked through with the view of detecting omissions in the Vocabulary, or difficulties that required additional help. The Exercises themselves have received very few alterations, but many references to Rules have been inserted, and the deficiencies in the Vocabularies have been supplied.

My thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Phillpotts, Head Master of Bedford Grammar School, for many useful suggestions incorporated in the present Edition.

C O N T E N T S.

	P A G E
Pronunciation	xvi
The Cases of Nouns	1—4
The First Declension	6
The Second Declension	8
Ablative of Instrument and Agent	11
Adjectives of the First and Second Declension	13—16
The Third Declension (Consonant Branch)	18
Adj. governing Dative ; dignus , g. Ablative	19
The Abl. answering to <i>When?</i> and <i>Within what time?</i> . .	21
The Acc. answering to <i>How long?</i> or <i>During what time?</i> . .	21
Multi , <i>many (men)</i> ; multa , <i>many (things)</i>	23
Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension (Consonant Branch) .	24
Third Declension, continued (the -i Nouns)	25
Adjectives of the Third Declension	27
The Fourth Declension	31
The Fifth Declension	33
The Comparison of Adjectives ; quam , or Ablative . .	34—5

	PAGE
Irregular Comparison	37—8
Numeral Adjectives	39—42
The Dative of Possession with est	42
Unus, ullus, sōlus, ālius, &c.	43—4
Pronouns and Prenominal Adjectives	45
A Verb agrees with its Nom. Case in Number and Person .	46
Direct Questions	48
Demonstrative and Emphatic Pronouns	49—50
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	51—2
The First Conjugation (Active)	53—5
The Second „ „ „ „	56—8
The Third „ „ „ „	58—60
The Fourth „ „ „ „	60—2
The Latin and English Tenses; Apposition	63—4
A Verb agrees with the First Person, rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third	65
The Infinitive as a Subject or Object	66
The Imperative; the use of nē in Prohibition	67
The Subjunctive expressing Purpose	67
The Subjunctive expressing a Dependent Question	69
The Sequence of Tenses	70
Quīdem, vēro, ētiam, vēl	70—2
Verbs signifying <i>pleasing, obeying, &c.</i> , take the Dative .	72
Verbs of <i>asking, commanding, advising, and striving</i> are followed by ut , or nē , with the Subjunctive	74
Verbs of <i>preventing</i> are followed by quōmīnus and the Subjunctive; nōn est dūbium quīn	75
Cum , with the Subjunctive Mood	77

Věnio, vinco, vincio, rěpěrio	78
The Verb sum	79—81
The Active Participles	81
The Dependent Future Interrogative; quando	82
The First Conjugation (Passive)	83—6
The Second ,, ,,	86—8
The Third ,, ,,	88—91
The Fourth ,, ,,	91—3
The Passive Participle	94
An Adjective agreeing with Nouns of different Genders . .	95
Impersonal Use of the Passive	96
An Active Verb that governs the Dative retains the Dative in the Passive	97
The Gerundive Construction with the Dative of the Agent .	99
Capio , Conjugation of	100—1
Utrum — ān ; - ně — ān	102
The Prepositions	104—9
The Ablative of Manner	106
Ād with the Gerund and the Gerundive	108
Verbs compounded with Prepositions	110—1
Mínimum ābest quīn , &c.	111
The Ablative Absolute	112—4
Deponent Verbs	115—7
Obliviscor , mísereor , &c.; fungor , fruor , ūtor , &c. . .	119
The Accusative and Infinitive; its Tenses	120—2
Fōre ūt ; sē , suus	122—3
Impersonal Verbs	124—5
Possum , vōlo , nōlo , mālo , fēro	126—22

	PAGE	
Indirect Questions after Verbs of <i>knowing</i> , <i>discovering</i> , &c.	133	
The Verb eo	135	
Supines; captum īri	137—8	
The Gerund and Gerundive	139	
The Verb fio ; The Complementary Subject	141	
Cases; The Accusative of Extension	142	
The Locative Case	143	
The Dative of Equivalence or Purpose	144	
The Ablative; of <i>Definite Price</i> ; of <i>Quality</i> ; <i>Plenty</i> or <i>Want</i>	145—6	
The Genitive of <i>Quality</i> ; <i>Value</i> ; <i>Indefinite Price</i> ; <i>Plenty</i> or <i>Want</i> ; to express “it is the <i>mark of</i> ”; after Ad- jectives used as Nouns; after Adjectives of <i>knowledge</i> , <i>desire</i> , &c.	147—8	
The Subjunctive used to express <i>result</i> or <i>consequence</i> ; <i>optatively</i> ; <i>hortatively</i> ; <i>concessively</i> ; in Conditional Sentences; after qui	149—52	
Sī quīs ; nē quīs	151	
Ūt nōn , when used for nē	152	
Vēreor ūt ; nescio ān	153	
Quo with Comparative; sūus , sē , ipsē	154—5	
Quisquam , ālīquīs , quīlibet , quīdam	156	
Irregular Verbs and Genders of Nouns	{ Irregular Nouns	157
	Cēlo , dōceo ; Adverbial antē and post	158
	Distrib. Numerals; cum...tum . .	159—60
	Quam qui ; Historical Infinitive .	161—2
	Quamquam and quamvīs ; jam- pridem	163—4
	Quam with Superl.; intérest , rēfert	166—7

CONTENTS.

xxv

	PAGE
Elementary Rules on <i>Oratio Obliqua</i>	168—71
Easy and Recapitulatory Exercises	172—183

APPENDICES.

I.—Irregular Verbs in Order of Formation	189
II.— „ „ „ Alphabetical Order	200
III.—Hints on Construing	216
IV.—A Parsing Table	224
V.—A Table of Genders	226
VI.—On the Latin Days of the Month	229
VII.—Elementary Rules on Quantity	230
VIII.—Glossary of Grammatical Terms	232
IX.—Vocabularies for the Earlier Exercises	240
X.—Latin-English Vocabulary	248
XI.—English-Latin Vocabulary	284

SCHEME OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION.¹

Based on the nearest English Approximations.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā ²	=	English	<i>a</i> in father.
"	ă	=	"	<i>first a</i> in <i>away</i> , or <i>a</i> in <i>villa</i> .
"	ē	=	"	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
"	ac	=	"	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
"	oc	=	"	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
"	ĕ	=	"	<i>e</i> in <i>men</i> .
"	ī	=	"	<i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
"	ī	=	"	<i>i</i> in <i>pity</i> .
"	ō	=	"	<i>o</i> in <i>home</i> .
"	ō	=	"	<i>o</i> in <i>top</i> .
"	ū	=	"	<i>u</i> in <i>rule</i> .
"	ū	=	"	<i>u</i> in <i>full</i> .
"	au	=	"	<i>ow</i> in <i>power</i> .
"	ui	=	"	<i>we</i> , e.g. in Lat. <i>qui</i> , <i>eui</i> .
"	eu	=	"	{ Latin <i>ĕ</i> followed quickly by Latin <i>ū</i> (differs little from present pronunciation).
"	ci	=	"	{ Latin <i>ĕ</i> followed quickly by Latin <i>i</i> (differs little from <i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i>).

CONSONANTS.

Latin	c, ch	=	English	<i>k</i> .
"	g	=	"	<i>g</i> in <i>get</i> .
"	s	=	"	<i>s</i> in <i>s.n.</i>
"	t (ratiō)	=	"	<i>t</i> in <i>cat</i> , not <i>sh</i> , as in <i>nation</i> .
"	j	=	"	<i>y</i> in <i>yard</i> .
"	v	=	"	<i>v</i> .
"	z, ph, th	=	"	<i>z, ph, th</i> .

Latin **s** between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in *rose*, e.g. "rosa."

¹ Taken from the *Syllabus of Latin Pronunciation*, issued by the Professors of Latin at the Universities of Cambridge and Oxford, at the request of the Head Masters of Schools. Some modifications have been made by the suppression of all Italian standards, and of all the English standards of pronunciation that contain a vowel followed by *r*. Consequently the Latin **o** is represented by the English *o*. The Professors give the option of pronouncing **v** as *v* or as *w*.

² Syllables in Latin are either long or short. A short syllable is denoted by this mark (○), a long one by this (—). A few elementary rules about the *quantity*, i.e. the length or shortness of syllables, are given in Appendix VII. on Prosody.

VIA LATINA.

THE CASES OF NOUNS.¹

THE FIRST OR -A DECLENSION.

Aquīl-ă, (*an*) *eagle*. *Fēmīn-ă*, (*a*) *woman*. *Fīlī-ă*, (*a*) *daughter*.

Āqu-ă, *water*. *Dextr-ă*, (*a*) *right hand*. *Pěcūnī-ă*, *money*.

Āmă-t, (*he*) *loves*. *Dă-t*, (*he*) *gives*. *Lăvă-t*, (*he*) *washes*.

Liberă-t, (*he*) *frees*. *Monstră-t*, (*he*) *points out*.

Sūpēră-t, (*he*) *overcomes*. *Vōră-t*, (*he*) *devours*.²

- 1** English Nouns have (now) only two Cases, of which the Possessive is indicated by the affix 's: "John's book;" "the sun's light;" "men's clothes."

Latin Nouns have six Cases.

- 2** 1. THE NOMINATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Who?* or *What?* before a Verb (i.e. when it is the Subject of a Verb), it is put in the Nominative Case, which, in Nouns of the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -a short, -ă:

The woman loves.

Fēmīn-ă āmăt.

The eagle devours.

Āquīl-ă vōrăt.

¹ For an explanation of the terms Case, Noun, &c., see the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, Appendix VIII. p. 232.

² A vowel before t final is always short: the quantity of a-t (^) will therefore not be marked for the future.

Who loves ?—Ans., the woman, fēmin-ă. What devours ?—Ans., the eagle, āquīl-ă.

In parsing Latin, the question is generally asked as follows: Why is fēmīnă Nominative?—Ans., because it is the Subject of (or Nominative to) āmāt.

- 3** 2. THE VOCATIVE CASE.—When a person or thing is addressed, the Noun expressing the person or thing is put in the Vocative Case, which, in the First Declension, is the same as the Nominative:

O woman, Fēmīn-ă. *O eagle, Āquīl-ă.*

Why is fēmīnă (or āquīla) Vocative?—Ans., because it is a person (or thing) addressed.

- 4** 3. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* after a Verb (i.e. when it is the Direct Object of a Verb), it is put in the Accusative Case, which is expressed, in the First Declension, by the termination -am:

The daughter loves the woman. Fili-ă fēmīn-am āmā-t.
The woman points out the eagle. Fēmīn-ă āquīl-am monstrā-t.

Loves *whom?*?—Ans., the *woman*. Points out *what?*?—Ans., the *eagle*.

Why is fēmīnam the Accusative?—Ans., because it is the Direct Object of (or Accusative governed by) āmāt.

- 5** *N.B.* Note here that the order of the words is not the same in a Latin and in an English sentence.

In English the Object generally follows the Verb, and the Subject generally precedes the Verb, so that the order of the words shows which is Subject and which is Object.

- 5a** But in Latin the Verb generally comes at the end of the sentence; and the Nominative and Accusative must be discovered, not by the order, but by examining the Case.

Thus, in the last example, -am is the Accusative termination, and -ă is the Nominative termination. Therefore

fēmin-ă is the Nominative, and the Subject of **monstrāt**; and **āquīl-am** is the Accusative, and the Object of **monstrāt**.

6 4. THE GENITIVE CASE.—The Latin Genitive (besides other uses) expresses the English Possessive Case, and, in the First Declension, terminates in **-ae**:

The woman's daughter.

Fēmīn-ae **fīliā**, or (less commonly) **fīliā fēmīn-ae**.

As the Latin Gen. expresses many other relations besides possession, it is usual, in parsing a Gen. Noun qualifying another Noun, to say that the former is *governed by* the latter.

Why is **fēmīnae** Genitive?—Ans., *Because it is governed by the Noun **fīliā**.*

In English the Possessive Case *always* precedes the Noun which it qualifies.¹ In Latin the Genitive generally precedes, but *not always*.

7 5. THE DATIVE CASE.—When a Noun expresses the person (or thing) (1) *to whom* a thing is *given*, or (2) *for whom* a thing is *done*, the Noun is put in the Dative (i.e. *Giving*) Case, which, in the First Declension, is expressed by the termination **-ae**:

- (1) *The daughter gives an eagle to the woman.* **Fīli-a** **āquīl-am** **fēmīn-ae** **dā-t.**
- (2) *The woman points out the eagle to, or for, (her) daughter.* **Fēmīn-ă** **āquīl-am** **fīli-ae** **mon-stra-t.**

(1) Why is **fēmīnae** Dative?—Ans., *After a verb of Giving, or, Indirect Object of dat.*

In answer to the question (2) Why is **fīli-ae** Dative? it is usual to say *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.

¹ Distinguish the English Possessive Case “sun's” from “of the sun,” which is not a Case at all, but a Phrase used instead of a Case.

8 6. THE ABLATIVE CASE, besides (1) sometimes expressing *separation*, or *motion from*, i.e. *ablation*, also (2) always expresses the *instrument with* or *by* which an action is performed. In the First Declension, the Ablative is denoted by -a long, -ā:

(1) *The woman frees the daughter from blame.* Fēmīn-a filī-am culpā libēra-t.

He hastens from Capua. Prōpērā-t Căpū-ā.

(2) *The woman washes the daughter with water.* Fēmīn-ā filī-am āquā läva-t.

The daughter gives money with (her) right hand. Filī-ā pēcūnī-am dextrā da-t.

(1) Why is culpā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of Separation.*¹

(2) Why is āquā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of the Means or Instrument.*

FIRST DECLENSION, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Nom. Insūl-ā, (*an or the island*) (Subject).

Voc. Insūl-ā, *O island.*

Acc. Insūl-am, (*an or the island*) (Object).

Gen. Insūl-ae, (*an or the island's*, or of (*an or the island*).

Dat. Insūl-ae, *to or for (an or the island.*

Abl. Insūl-ā, *from, with, or by (an or the island.*¹

9 THE ARTICLE.—From the above form it will be seen that what is sometimes called “the Article” in English (i.e. *a* or *the*) does not exist in Latin. Insūl-ā must be rendered “*an island*” or “*the island*,” according to the sense.

EXERCISE I.

(Learn Vocabulary I.)

1. ²Fili-ae. 2. Aquil-ā. 3. Pecuni-am. 4. ²Femin-ā. 5. Reginam. 6. Aquā. 7. ²Puell-ae. 8. Naut-ā.²

¹ The Ablative is only sometimes used to express separation. Most frequently it cannot be so used without a Preposition. The particular Verbs and Adjectives of Separation, which are followed by an Ablative without a Preposition, will be given later on. But the pupil must remember that insūlā, without an accompanying Preposition, very seldom means *from an island*.

9a ² These words are capable of more than one translation. Each translation should be written down, both here and for the future.

1. *Of a sailor.*
2. *To a sailor.*
3. *Money (object).*
4. *Water (subject).*
5. *For a girl.*
6. *By water.*
7. *With money.*
8. *O sailor.*

EXERCISE II.

Parse the Nouns in the following Exercise, stating in what Case each is, and why.

1. Femină naut-am aqu-ā lava-t.
2. Naut-ae sapienti-ă procell-am supera-t.
3. Naut-ae sapienti-ă procell-ae violenti-am supera-t.
4. Regină insul-am fili-ae da-t.
5. Fili-ă pecuni-am dextr-ā dat.
6. Femin-ă pecuni-am naut-ae dextr-ā da-t.
7. Femin-ae patienti-ă naut-ae violenti-am supera-t.
8. Femin-ă patienti-ă naut-am supera-t.
9. Patienti-ă, O femin-ă, violenti-am supera-t.
10. Experienti-ă sapienti-am regin-ae dat.
11. Naut-ae dextr-ă fēmīn-am violenti-ă (9a) libēr-a-t.¹

[Words in brackets, thus (*her*), are not to be translated.]

1. *The queen gives an island to (her) daughter.*²
2. *The woman's daughter gives money to the sailor.*
3. *The sailor washes (his) daughter with (his) right hand (5a).*
4. *The sailor's violence overcomes the patience of the queen.*
5. *The woman by (her) patience overcomes the sailor's violence.*
6. *The daughter gives the queen's money to the sailor.*
7. *(Thy) daughter's patience, O woman, overcomes the violence of the queen.*
8. *Experience gives (to) the sailor wisdom.*
9. *The sailor's prudence delivers the daughter from the storm.*

(When this Exercise is turned into Latin, parse the Latin; and do the same with future Exercises.)

THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

There are six similar cases for the Plural of each Noun, so that the Singular and Plural of insul-ă are thus declined:

¹ The Pupil should parse this Exercise *before constraining it*. He should then commit the Latin to memory so as to be able to repeat the Latin of this Exercise from his own English, or from the English when read aloud to him, before he translates the next Exercise into Latin.

10 ² The Pupil should note the order of the words in the Latin Exercise above, and imitate it by putting the Verb (for the present) *at the end*.

Words that are bracketed in the English Exercises are not to be translated into Latin, e.g. *her* in the first sentence of the English Exercise II.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Insūl-ā , <i>an island.</i>	Insūl-ae , <i>islands.</i>
Voc.	Insūl-ā , <i>O island.</i>	Insūl-ae , <i>O islands.</i>
Acc.	Insūl-am , <i>an island.</i>	Insūl-ās , <i>islands.</i>
Gen.	Insūl-ae , <i>of an island.</i>	Insūl-ārum , <i>of islands.</i>
Dat.	Insūl-ae , <i>to or for an island.</i>	Insūl-īs , <i>to or for islands.</i>
Abl.	Insūl-ā , <i>from, with, or by an island.</i>	Insūl-īs , <i>from, with, or by islands.</i>

EXERCISE III.

1. Puell-īs.¹ 2. Femin-ārum. 3. Femin-ā.¹ 4. Naut-ae.¹
 5. Violenti-ā. 6. Aquil-ae.¹ 7. Aquil-īs.¹ 8. Aquil-ās.
 9. Patienti-am. 10. Naut-ārum.
 1. *To women.* 2. *From blame.* 3. *Eagles* (object). 4. *By patience.*
 5. *Of eagles.* 6. *O women.* 7. *To eagles.*
 8. *Women* (subject). 9. *From an eagle.* 10. *To sailors.*

If a Nominative is changed from the Singular to the Plural Number, the Verb changes also :

<i>The woman loves.</i>	Fēmīn-ā āmā-t.
<i>The women love.</i>	Fēmīn-ae āma-nt.
<i>The eagle devours.</i>	Āquīl-a vōrā-t.
<i>The eagles devour.</i>	Āquīl-ae vōra-nt.

The Plural of all Verbs ending in -ā-t is formed by inserting **n** between **a** and **t**:

Sūpēra-nt, *they overcome*, **monstra-nt**, *they point out*,
da-nt, *they give*.

EXERCISE IV.

A.—Change the Singular into the Plural in the Nouns and Verbs of the following :

1. Naut-ā ama-t. 2. Regin-ā monstra-t. 3. Fili-ā lava-t.
 4. Femin-ā da-t. 5. Naut-ā supera-t. 6. Puell-ā libera-t.

B.—Change the Plural into the Singular in the following :

1. Nautae da-nt. 2. Regin-ae supera-nt. 3. Aquil-ae vora-nt.
 4. Fili-ae ama-nt. 5. Dextr-ae libera-nt. 6. Stell-ae monstra-nt.

¹ The words or sentences thus marked are capable of different renderings; all of which should be given.

EXERCISE V.

1. Naut-ă procell-am supera-t. 2. Naut-ae procell-am supera-nt.
3. Regin-ă pecuni-am puell-ae da-t. 4. Reginae pecuni-am
puell-ae dant (9a). 5. Naut-arum patienti-ă procell-as supera-t.¹
6. Naut-ae patienti-ă procellam supera-nt. 7. Femin-ă naut-
ārum fili-ās lavat. 8. Femin-ă naut-ārum fili-ās aqu-ā lava-t.
9. Patienti-ă, O naut-ae, violenti-am supera-t. 10. Naut-ae, O
regin-ă, patienti-ă procell-ārum violenti-am supera-nt. 11.
Naut-arum dextr-ae regin-am procell-ae violenti-ă libera-nt.²
1. *The sailor overcomes the storm.* 2. *The sailors overcome the storm.* 3. *The women love the girl.* 4. *The woman loves the girl.* 5. *The queen gives money to the sailors.* 6. *The eagles devour the sailor.* 7. *By patience the sailor overcomes the storms.* 8. *The sailor's daughter points out the eagle.* 9. *The sailor's daughters point out the eagle to the queen with (their) right hands.* 10. *The queen's wisdom frees the woman from blame.* 11. *The daughters of the sailors wash the women with water (5a).*

EXERCISE VI.

- 11 After the verb “give,” *to* is often not used in English, but the Dative must be retained in Latin :

The queen gives the sailors money. Rēgīna pěcūniām nautīs dāt.

- 12 *Et*, (which means *both* or *and*,) is sometimes repeated to couple together two Nouns in the same case :

Experience gives both patience and wisdom. Expérientiā et pātentiam et sāpientiam dat.

Sometimes the former *et* (*both*) is omitted :

The stars point out the way for (both) the sailors and the women. Stellae vīam (et) nautīs et fēmīnīs monstrant.

¹ Sūpērat is Sing. agreeing with its Nom. pātentī-a, and is not affected by the Plural Number of the Genitive nautārum. What overcomes?—Ans., *patience*.

² This and all the following Latin Exercises should be carefully parsed before being construed, and then learned, so that the pupil can readily repeat them when the English is given.

For filiābus, dēābus, &c., see Exercise LXXXIV., p. 158, and foll.

1. Fili-ā aqu-am naut-ae dat. 2. Sapienti-ā, o nautae, regin-ā violenti-am supera-t. 3. Regin-ā fili-ae pecuni-ai dextr-ā dat. 4. Stell-ae vi-am naut-is monstra-nt. 5. Experienci-ā naut-is sapienti-am da-t. 6. Stell-ā naut-ae fili-ae vi-am monstra-t. 7. Regin-ae fili-ae naut-as aqu-ā lava-nt. 8. Experienci-ā et sapienti-ā naut-ae procell-as supera-nt. 9. Regin-ā nautis et aquam et pecuni-am da-t. 10. Sapientiā regin-am ir-ā et intemperanti-ā libera-t.
1. *By experience and (by) patience the sailor overcomes the storm.*
 2. *The queen gives water both to the sailors and to the women.*
 3. *The women give to the sailors water and money.*
 4. *Wisdom, O sailors, gives patience to the queen.*
 5. *The stars point out the way for the daughter of the sailor.*
 6. *The queen's daughter washes the woman with water.*
 7. *The patience of sailors, O daughter, overcomes the storm.*
 8. *The sailors, by (their) patience, overcome the violence of the storm.*
 9. *The queen's daughters give the (11) sailor water.*
 10. *By money the woman frees (her) daughter from the violence of the sailors.*

THE SECOND OR O- DECLENSION.

This Declension is divided into three groups, in which the Nominative ends in :

(1)
-ūs(2)
-r(3)
-um

1.—NOUNS IN -ŪS.

Singular.

Nom. Dōmīn-ūs, *a lord.*¹Voc. Dōmīn-ě, *O lord.*Acc. Dōmīn-um, *a lord.*Gen. Dōmīn-ī, *of a lord.*²Dat. Dōmīn-ō, *to or for a lord.*Abl. Dōmīn-ō, *by, with, or from a lord.*³

Plural.

Dōmīn-ī, *lords.*Dōmīn-ī, *O lords.*Dōmīn-ōs, *lords.*Dōmīn-ōrum, *of lords.*Dōmīn-īs, *to or for lords.*Dōmīn-īs, *by, with, or from lords.*

- 13** The Voc. Sing. of fili-ūs, *a son*, and of proper names in -ūs, contracts -ě into -ī: filī, *O son*; Mercūrī, *O*

¹ Dōmīnūs means *lord* in the sense of *owner, master*.

² The Gen. Sing. of nouns in -ūs, -īum, was generally contracted into -ī; but most English books retain -ii.

13a ³ N.B. A noun denoting a *living thing* is never used with *by* without the Latin Preposition ā or āb. The pupil should remember that *by a spear* may be translated hastā, but *by a lord* is ā dōmīno.

Mercury. The termination -ie was avoided even in common nouns in -ius, e.g. nunti-us, a messenger. The Vocatives of these words were not used at all. The Voc. of Deus, God, is the same as the Nominative.

2.—a. NOUNS IN -ěr (gen. -ři).¹

Nom.	Mägistrēr, a master.	Mägistr-ī, masters.
Voc.	Mägistrēr, O master.	Mägistr-ī, O masters.
Acc.	Mägistr-um, a master.	Mägistr-ōs, masters.
Gen.	Mägistr-ī, of a master.	Mägistr-ōrum, of masters.
Dat.	Mägistr-ō, to or for a master.	Mägistr-īs, to or for masters.
Abl.	Mägistr-ō, by (13a), with, or from a master.	Mägistr-īs, by, with, or from masters.

2.—b. NOUNS IN -ěr (gen. -ři).²

Nom.	Püér, a boy.	Püér-ī, boys.
Voc.	Püér, O boy.	Püér-ī, O boys.
Acc.	Püér-um, a boy.	Püér-ōs, boys.
Gen.	Püér-ī, of a boy.	Püér-ōrum, of boys.
Dat.	Püér-ō, to or for a boy.	Püér-īs, to or for boys.
Abl.	Püér-ō, by (13a), with, or from a boy.	Püér-īs, by, with, or from boys. ²

Vír, a man, is declined like püér, except that ī is written for ě: vír-um, vír-i, vír-ō, and vír-ī, vír-ōs, vír-ōrum, vír-īs.

Nouns in -ri and -ěri. The best way to remember which Nouns make -ri and which make -eri, is to remember that

- 14 1. The *only* Nouns declined like püér are vír, man; gěněr, son-in-law; sōcěr, father-in-law; vespěr, evening; Liběr, the god of wine (called by the Greeks Bacchus); also liběr-i, children (used only in the plural).³

15 ¹ Nouns in -er once ended in -erus, like nůměr-us, a number. The Voc. püér-ě is found in Old Latin.

² Final -i, -o are always long. Also final -is, in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Second Declension, is always long, and final -us in the Nom. Sing. is always short. These syllables will not therefore be always marked long or short for the future.

16 ³ The Adjective ädulter (used as a Noun to mean *an adulterer*) may also be included in this list; and so may Adjectives in -fer and -ger used as Nouns, e.g. signifer, standard-bearer, armiger, armour-bearer or squire.

2. All other Nouns in ēr are declined like mǎgister
e.g. āger, cāper, &c.

3.—NOUNS IN -um.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Regn-um , a kingdom	Regn-ă , kingdoms.
<i>Voc.</i>	Regn-um , O kingdom.	Regn-ă , O kingdoms.
<i>Acc.</i>	Regn-um , a kingdom.	Regn-ă , kingdoms.
<i>Gen.</i>	Regn-ī , of a kingdom.	Regn-ōrum , of kingdoms.
<i>Dat.</i>	Regn-ō , to or for a kingdom.	Regn-īs , to or for kingdoms.
<i>Abl.</i>	Regn-ō , by, with, or from a kingdom.	Regn-īs , by, with, or from kingdoms.

EXERCISE VII.

Hăbē-t, (*he*) has.**Hăbe-nt**, (*they*) have.**Terre-t**, (*he*) terrifies.**Terre-nt**, (*they*) terrify.**Tímē-t**, (*he*) fears.**Tíme-nt**, (*they*) fear.

1. Hortos habent.¹ 2. Dominus filio hortum dat. 3. Dominorum filii hortum habent. 4. Filii hortum dominus servo dat. 5. Servo equum dat. 6. Filii servorum equos habent. 7. Domini equum gladio terret. 8. Nauta servos experientiā superat. 9. Servorum patientiā dominum superat. 10. Fluvius aquam habet. 11. Servi, domine, minas timent. 12. Minae, O fili (13), servos torrent.

1. *The lord has a garden.* 2. *The lord's son has gardens.* 3. *The lord's sons have gardens.* 4. *The lord gives a garden to (his) son.* 5. *The master gives the slave a horse.*² 6. *The slave has a sword.* 7. *The lord's sword terrifies the slave.* 8. *The slaves fear the master's sword.* 9. *The master terrifies the men with (his) sword.* 10. *The slaves overcome the man by patience.* 11. *Experience, O son, gives men patience.* 12. *The slave's patience overcomes the master's violence (5a).*

EXERCISE VIII.—NOUNS LIKE mǎgistēr.

An Active Verb in -at, -ant, or -et, -ent, can be made Passive by adding -ur; but the ā or ē of the Verb, which was shortened before t (supērā-t, terre-t), is long before -ur.

16a ¹ Where there is no Subject to the Verb expressed, *he* or *they* must be supplied. Here **hăbent** must be translated *they have*.

² “The slave” here stands for “to the slave,” and must be placed in the Dative Case. The pupil must be prepared for this in similar sentences where “to” is omitted after the word “give.”

sūpērā-tur, *he is (being) overcome*; **sūpērant-ur**, *they are (being) overcome*.

terrē-tur, *he is (being) terrified*; **terrent-ur**, *they are (being) terrified*.

17 RULE.—(1) The *instrument* is expressed by the Ablative alone; but (2) the *agent* (whether a *man* or *other animal*) requires, before the Ablative, the Preposition **ā** (**āb**, before a vowel or **h**).

The girl is terrified (1) with (or by) a spear (2) by the sailor. **Puella (1) hastā (2) ā nautā terrētur.**

- 1 Minister librum habet. 2. Magister agros fabris dat. 3. Aper caprum terret. 4. Minister caprum cultro terret. 5. Ager colubros habet. 6. Cancer colubros timet. 7. Cancri colubrorum violentiam timent. 8. Fabri minister Austrum timet. 9. Domini ministros arbiter sapientiā superat. 10. Pueri a colubris et ab apris terrentur. 11. Apri servorum hastis et gladiis superantur. 12. Feminas (16a) terrent.

EXERCISE IX.

CAUTION.—Distinguish between :

Libr-os, *books*.

Libr-um, *a book*.

Libēr-os, *children*.

Libēr-um, *Liber, the god of wine*.

- A. 1. *Of snakes.* 2. *To a son-in-law.* 3. *To a crab.* 4. *To Liber.* 5. *By (17) goats.* 6. *Children* (Abl.). 7. *Of boys.* 8. *Of wild-boars.* 9. *Artificers* (Abl.). 10. *To books.* 11. *To children.* 12. *Attendants* (Abl.). 13. *For sons-in-law.* 14. *Of a father-in-law.* 15. *Of the South Wind.* 16. *To a field.* 17. *To a man.* 18. *To crabs.* 19. *To Liber.* 20. *Of children.* 21. *By (17) children.* 22. *By books.* 23. *By goats.* 24. *By wild-boars.*
- B. 1. *The master terrifies the servants.* 2. *The servant fears the master's violence.* 3. *The crab fears the snakes of the field.* 4. *The goat fears the servant's knife.* 5. *The umpire overcomes the lord's violence by (his) patience.* 6. *The artificer gives the servant a field.* 7. *The servant gives (his) master a knife.* 8. *The servants are terrified by the lord's threats.* 9. *The lord is overcome by the slaves.*

EXERCISE X.—NOUNS LIKE **pūér**.

1. Hortum puerō dant. 2. Vesperum puer timet. 3. Agricolae Liberum amant. 4. Vesper virum terret. 5. Viri socer

feminam terret. 6. Virorum socii feminae generum terrent.
 7. Puerorum violentia virorum patientiam superat. 8. Genera socio gladio terretur. 9. Regina procellae violentia nautarum experientia liberatur.

1. *The boy loves Liber.*
2. *The woman's son-in-law fears the father-in-law.*
3. *The women fear the man's son-in-law.*
4. *The men's father-in-law terrifies the boys.*
5. *The woman's patience overcomes the violence of the children.*
6. *Experience gives men wisdom.*
7. *By patience children overcome the father-in-law's violence.*
8. *The wild-boars are overcome by the spears of the lords.*
9. *The queen is delivered (8) from the envy of the servants (5a).*

EXERCISE XI.—NOUNS LIKE *māgister* AND *pūer*.

18

Nōn, *not.*¹*Lauda-t*, *praises.**Nēquě*, *and not.**Culpa-t*, *blames.*

1. *The lord does not blame the woman.*
2. *The lord praises the man, and does not blame the woman.*
3. *Capri puerum timent.*
4. *Caper puerorum cultros timet.*
5. *Liberi minister librum non laudat.*
6. *Puer virum timet neque feminam amat.*
7. *Feminae generos culpant neque socios laudant.*
8. *Colubri fabri ministros terrent.*
9. *Fabrorum generi arbitri patientiam culpant neque sapientiam laudant.*
10. *Liberi ministris caprum agricola dat.*
11. *Aper servos non timet neque domini hastā superatur.*
12. *Puella a capris non terretur.*
13. *The book praises Liber.*
14. *The servants of Liber do not praise books.*
15. *The boys terrify the goats and do not fear the snakes.*
16. *The boy terrifies the goat with a knife.*
17. *The man praises (his) father-in-law's field.*
18. *The snakes terrify the artificer's son-in-law.*
19. *The man fears (his) father-in-law, and does not love (his) son-in-law.*
20. *The husbandmen give Liber a goat.*
21. *The queen is not delivered from the storm by the sailors (5a).*

19

¹ *Nōn* always means *not*; but *not* is not always to be translated *nōn*. In commands and some other sentences, *nē* is used, see Exercise XXXVI. But *not* may always be translated by *nōn* in statements and direct questions; and these are the only sentences with which the pupil will have to do for the present.

EXERCISE XII.—NOUNS IN -um AND -er.

20 RULE.—Two Nominatives coupled by -et take the Verb in the Plural:

Patience and constancy overcome violence. Pătentia et constantia violeñtiam sūperant.

1. *Agricola Liberi dona laudat neque libros amat.* 2. *Magister argentum ministro dat.* 3. *Argentum, non aurum, dominus servis dat.* 4. *Pueri diligentiae praemiis delectantur.* 5. *Puerorum praemia viri non amant.* 6. *Templa Liber et Neptunus habent.* 7. *Liberi templa argentum habent.* 8. *Liberi templis agricolae aurum dant.* 9. *Diligentiā et constantiā praemia habent.* 10. *Oppida muros et templa habent.* 11. *Horti et arva ab agricolis laudantur.*
1. *The master gives the attendants gold.* 2. *The master's gifts are not praised by the boys.* 3. *The boy and the girl love rewards.* 4. *The master gives the boy the reward of diligence.* 5. *The husbandmen are delighted by the walls and temples of the town.* 6. *The temples of the town have silver and gold.* 7. *The husbandman and the sailor give gifts to the temples of the towns.* 8. *The man by (his) gifts overcomes the sailor's constancy.* 9. *The sailors praise the husbandmen's cornfields.* 10. *The lord is terrified by the storm, and does not love water.*

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

ADJECTIVES IN -üs, -ă, -um.

Adjectives in Latin agree in Number and Case with the Nouns which they qualify:

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	Bonus dōmīnus.	<i>The good lord.</i>
<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	Bōni dōmīni.	<i>Of the good lord.</i>
<i>Nom. Plur.</i>	Bōni dōmīni.	<i>The good lords.</i>
<i>Gen. Plur.</i>	Bōnōrum dōmī- nōrum.	<i>Of the good lords.</i>

But besides agreeing in number and case, most Latin Adjectives also have three forms to suit the three kinds of Noun-terminations represented by (1) *dōmīnus*, (2) *fēmīna*, (3) *regnum*.

Nom. Sing. Bōnus dōmīnus, bōna fēmīna, bōnum regnum.

Gen. Sing. Bōnī dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōni regni.

Nom. Plur. Bōni dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōna regna.

Gen. Plur. Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum, bōnārum fēmīnārum, bōnōrum regnōrum.

These three forms of the Adjective are called its *Genders*.

(1) The form in -ūs is called the Masculine Gender, (2) the form in -ā the Feminine, (3) the form in -um the Neuter.

21 RULE.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

Singular.			1.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i> Bōn-us	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā			
<i>Voc.</i> Eōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā			
<i>Acc.</i> Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā			
<i>Gen.</i> Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum			
<i>Dat.</i> Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs			
<i>Abl.</i> Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs			

2.			Masc.			Fem.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.V.</i> Nigr-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā			
<i>Acc.</i> Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā			
<i>Gen.</i> Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum			
<i>Dat.</i> Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs			
<i>Abl.</i> Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs			

22 GENDER OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.—Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: *nauta*, a sailor, *aurīga*, a charioteer, and other words denoting the occupations of men, are Masculine.

23 GENDER OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.—(1) Nouns in -ūs and -ēr are Masculine, (2) Nouns in -um are Neuter.

Exceptions.—Dōmus, house, and hūmus, ground, are Feminine; pělāgus, the sea, vīrus, poison, and vulgus, the common folk, are Neuter.¹

¹ The exceptional Masculine use of *vulgus* is not to be imitated.

For the other exceptions, see the Table of Genders, p. 226.

A few Nouns (together with all those which may denote either males or

SINGULAR NUMBER.

Feminine.	Masculine.	Neuter.
<i>A good woman.</i>	<i>A good lord.</i>	<i>A good gift.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Bōn-ā fēmīn-ā	Bōn-us dōmīn-us	Bōn-um dōn-um
<i>Voc.</i> „ -a „ -a	„ -ē „ -ē	„ -um „ -um
<i>Acc.</i> „ -am „ -am	„ -um „ -um	„ -um „ -um
<i>Gen.</i> „ -ae „ -ae	„ -i „ -i	„ -i „ -i
<i>Dat.</i> „ -ae „ -ae	„ -o „ -o	„ -o „ -o
<i>Abl.</i> „ -ā „ -ā	„ -o „ -o	„ -o „ -o

PLURAL NUMBER.

Good women.	Good lords.	Good gifts.
<i>Nom.</i> Bōn-ae femin-ae	Bōn-i domin-i	Bōn-a dōn-a
<i>Voc.</i> „ -ae „ -ae	„ -i „ -i	„ -ā „ -ā
<i>Acc.</i> „ -as „ -as	„ -os „ -os	„ -ā „ -ā
<i>Gen.</i> „ -ārum „ -ārum	„ -ōrum „ -ōrum	„ -ōrum -ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> „ -is „ -is	„ -is „ -is	„ -īs „ -īs
<i>Abl.</i> „ -īs „ -īs	„ -īs „ -īs	„ -īs „ -īs

Hitherto the terminations of the Noun and Adjective have been the same. But this is not always the case, as may be seen from the following instances :

SINGULAR.

<i>A great man.</i>	<i>A great charioteer (m).</i>	<i>A great sea (n).</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Magn-us vir	Magn-us aurig-ā	Magn-um pělāg-us
<i>Voc.</i> Magn-ē vir	Magn-ē aurig-a	Magn-um pělāg-us
<i>Acc.</i> „ -um vir -um	Magn-um aurig-am	Magn-um pělāg-us
<i>Gen.</i> „ -i „ -i	Magn-i aurig-ae	„ -i „ -i
<i>Dat.</i> „ -o „ -o	Magn-o aurig-ae	„ -o „ -o
<i>Abl.</i> „ -o „ -o	Magn-o aurig-ā	„ -o „ -o

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Vir magnus a nautā strenuo laudatur. 2. Dona parva improbi pueri culpant. 3. Nautā impavidus pelagus non timet. 4. Pelagus vastum et procella magna nautas pavidos terrent. 5. Scribā strenuus docti magistri jussa non timet. 6. Aurigam probum pericula magna non terrent. 7. Nautae improbo regina dona splendida dat. 8. Nautarum proborum filii praemia magna habent. 9. Aurigae strenui patientiā nauta improbus superatur. 10. Feminam probam et nautam strenuum regina bona laudat. 11. Pericula, parve fili, viros justos non terrent. 12. Via aurigae strenuo a puellā monstratur.

females, e.g. *pōēta*, *poet*, *incōla*, *inhabitant*) vary between the Masc. and Fem.; these are said to be *of common Gender*, and are indicated in the Vocabularies by *c.* But *incōla*, *pōēta*, and the like, are so much more frequently Masc. than Fem., that they are marked *m.*

(The Adjective in Latin generally, but not always, follows its Noun.)

1. *The vigorous charioteer is not terrified by dangers.*
2. *The danger of the way, and the violence of the storm, do not terrify the fearless charioteers.*
3. *The learned master gives a long letter to the honest scribe.*
4. *The daughters of the dishonest clerk fear the commands of the good queen.*
5. *The sailor's daughter fears the vast sea.*
6. *The dangers of the long way overcome the constancy of the good charioteer.*
7. *The queen by splendid gifts overcomes the constancy of the worthy sailors.*
8. *The unworthy charioteers terrify with threats the sailor's daughter.*
9. *Storms, O fearful sailor, do not terrify fearless men.*
10. *The man points out the way with (his) right hand for the honest sailor.*

EXERCISE XIV.

Est, (*he, she, it*) *is*.

Sunt, (*they*) *are*.

After the Verb **est** or **sunt** the question *who?* or *what?* is answered by the Nominative.

Britain is an island.

Brītannia est insūla.

Wars are the causes of evils.

Bella sunt inālōrum caus-ae.

24 RULE.—The Verb *to be* takes the same Case after it as before it.

Why are **insūla** and **causae** Nom.?—Ans., Because the Verb **est** takes the same Case after it as before it.

The horses are great (horses).

Ēqui sunt magni (ēqui).

The woman is (a) good (woman).

Fēmina est bōna (fēmina).

24a From the last examples we see that an Adjective still agrees with its Noun in Number, Gender, and Case, even when separated from the Noun by the Verb *to be*.

1. *Britanniae incolae sunt nautae.*
2. *Nautae non sunt timidi.*
3. *Agri sunt lati.*
4. *Oppidum est magnum.*
5. *Puer est validus.*
6. *Pueri patientia magna est.*
7. *Aquila est alba.*
8. *Aquilarum alae sunt albae.*
9. *Oppida parva sunt.*
10. *Oppidorum templa sunt alta.*
11. *Dominus ab equis albis delectatur.*
12. *Femina proborum generorum filias amat.*

1. *The sailor is timid.*
2. *The walls of the town are high.*
3. *The field is broad.*
4. *The towns are not great.*
5. *The experience*

of the boy is small. 6. The wings of the eagle are great. 7. The walls of the temple are white. 8. The master has black horses and white goats. 9. The master's horses are black. 10. The eagle has white wings. 11. The timid sailor is terrified both by the unjust queen and by the vast sea.

EXERCISE XV.

ADJECTIVES IN -ER.¹

Like the Nouns in -er, so also the Adjectives in -er are declined (1) some like *puer*, (2) others like *mägister*.

The pupil will find it the best course to commit to memory the former class, as being the fewer.

25 1. Declined like *puer*: *asper*, *rough*, *liber*, *free* (whence *liberi*, *children*), *miser*, *wretched*, *prosper*, *prosperous*, *tener*, *tender*.²

2. Declined like *mägister*: all Adjectives in -er not contained in the above list.

1 *Impigrum agricolam poeta piger timet.* 2. *Regina pulchra ab improbis incolis terretur.* 3. *Agricolae vafri tenerum puerum verbis falsis laudant.* 4. *Domini prosperi macros capros habent.* 5. *Reginae liberis libros sacros pōētae dant.* 6. *Et nauta miser et auriga strenuus filios aegros habent.* 7. *Templorum sacrorum portis rubris et muris nigris viri delectantur.* 8. *Morbi agricolas misereros superant.* 9. *Agricolae vafri filius parvae puellae caprum macrum dat.* 10. *Morbum taetrum nautae pavidi timent.*

1. *The beautiful woman is overcome by the foul disease.* 2. *The slothful sailors fear the active husbandman.* 3. *The cunning boys give a lean goat to the miserable sailor.* 4. *The wretched sons of the sick husbandman fear the foul disease.* 5. *The foul disease terrifies the wretched sailors.* 6. *The sick women praise the sacred books with foolish words.* 7. *The vigorous husbandmen overcome by (their) wisdom the foul diseases (5a).* 8. *The cunning lord gives lean goats to the sick women.*

¹ As final -er is always short, it will not be marked short for the future.

26 ² Besides these, there are (though not contained in the following Exercises), (1) *läcer*, *torn*, and (2) Adjectives derived from the Verbs *fer-o* and *ger-o*, *I bear*, viz. *frugi-fer*, *fruit-bearing*; *corn-i-ger*, *horn-bearing*.

In the nom. sing. *prospérus* is more common than *prosper*.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

In the Third Declension some Nouns have a Stem (see Glossary, Appendix VIII.) ending in a consonant, *e.g.* **c** in **judīc-is**, **judīc-i**, *of a judge, to a judge*, or **m** in **hiēm-is**, **hiēm-i**, *of winter, to winter*. This class of Nouns is called the Consonant Branch.

In the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension the Nom. Sing. endings are numerous, but **-s** (sometimes disguised in the shape of **-x**, which represents **-gs**, and **-cs**) is the most common.

A.—MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> { [-s]	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i> {	
<i>Acc.</i> -em	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> -is	-um
<i>Dat.</i> -ī	-ībus
<i>Abl.</i> -ē, rarely -ī	-ībus

I. Nouns in which the Stem ends in a guttural (throat) letter, *i.e.* **-c** hard, or **-g**:

<i>Singular.</i>			
<i>Leader (m).</i>	<i>Judge (c).¹</i>	<i>Law (f).</i>	<i>Citadel (f).</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Dux (Duc-s)	Judex (Judic-s)	Lex (Leg-s)	Arx (Arc-s)
<i>Acc.</i> Dūc-em	Judīc-em	Lēg-em	Arc-em
<i>Gen.</i> Dūc-is	Judīc-is	Lēg-is	Arc-is
<i>Dat.</i> Dūc-i	Judīc-i	Lēg-i	Arc-i
<i>Abl.</i> Dūc-ē	Judīc-ē	Lēg-ē	Arc-ē
<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>N.V.</i> Dūc-ēs	Judīc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> Dūc-ēs	Judīc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> Dūc-um	Judīc-um	Lēg-um	Arc-ūm
<i>Dat.</i> Dūc-ībus	Judīc-ībus	Lēg-ībus	Arc-ībus
<i>Abl.</i> Dūc-ībus	Judīc-ībus	Lēg-ībus	Arc-ībus

¹ The abbreviation *c.* means that **jūdex** is of *common* gender, being mostly masculine, but sometimes feminine.

II. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a dental (tooth) letter, i.e. -t or -d:

Singular.

<i>Soldier (m).</i>	<i>Foot (m).</i>	<i>Summer (f).</i>
N.V. Miles (Milet-s) ¹	Pēs (Ped-s)	Æstās (Æstat-s)
Acc. Milit-em	Pēd-em	Æstāt-em
Gen. Milit-is	Pēd-is	Æstāt-is
Dat. Milit-i	Pēd-i	Æstāt-i
Abl. Milit-ē	Pēd-ē	Æstāt-ē

Plural.

N.V. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Acc. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Gen. Milit-um	Pēd-um	Æstāt-um
Dat. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus
Abl. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus

Nox, f. (for noct-s) Gen. noct-is, *night*, is declined like Æstās; but the Gen. Plur. (see Par. 40) is noct-ūm.

27 RULE.—The Dative is used after Adjectives signifying *pleasing*, *displeasing*, *troublesome*, *easy*, *difficult*, and the like :

Laws are not troublesome to a just judge. Lēges jūdīci justo non molestae sunt.

28 RULE.—Dignus and indignus (*worthy* and *unworthy*) govern the Ablative :

Impatience is unworthy of a leader. Impātientia dūcē indigna est.

EXERCISE XVI.

Laed-ít, (*he*) *hurts*.

Laedit-ur, (*he*) *is (being) hurt*.

Laed-unt, (*they*) *hurt*.

Laedunt-ur, (*they*) *are (being) hurt*.

1. Leges justae regibus bonis non sunt molestae. 2. Bella militibus jucunda sunt. 3. Militum ignavia ducibus claris ingrata

¹ The e of the true Stem (*milēt-*) is changed into -í in all except the Nom. and Voc. Cases. Similarly, the true Stem of *virgo* (*virgon-*) is changed into *virgin-*. But sometimes, as in *jūdex* above, the true Stem (*jūdic-*) is lost in the Nom. but preserved in the other Cases.

est. 4. L^apides militum miserorum pedes laedunt. 5. Com-
itis validi constantiā fessus eques delectatur. 6. Equites
peditem acutis gladiis terrent. 7. Rege bono leges malae
indignae sunt. 8. Judicūm verba iusta dominis justis
molesta sunt. 9. Noctes obscuras pueri parvi timent.
10. Domini arx ab agricolā laudatur. 11. Aestatis memoria
militibus grata est. 12. Aurigae pes sinister spinā acuta
laeditur. 13. Agricolae equi validi (24a) sunt.

1. *The constancy of the strong soldiers is pleasing to the good king.*
2. *Slothfulness is unworthy of a great leader.*
3. *The husbandmen point out the citadel of the lord to (their) companions.*
4. *A dark night terrifies the timid boy.*
5. *The memory of the pleasant summer is agreeable to the miserable husbandmen.*
6. *The anger of the horsemen is displeasing to the foot-soldiers.*
7. *The companions of the horse-soldier hurt the good husbandman with many stones.*
8. *Good laws are worthy of a just king.*
9. *The feet of the weary companions are hurt by the sharp stones.*
10. *The queen gives just laws to the renowned leader and to the good judges.*

III. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a labial (lip) letter, *i.e.* -m, -p, -b :

Singular.

<i>Chief (m.).</i>	<i>Beam (f.).</i>	<i>Winter (f.).</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Princep-s (Princip-s)	Trab-s	Hiem(p)-s ¹
<i>Acc.</i> Princip-em	Träb-em	Hiěm-em
<i>Gen.</i> Princip-is	Träb-is	Hiěm-is
<i>Dat.</i> Princip-i	Träb-i	Hiěm-i
<i>Abl.</i> Princip-ě	Träb-ě	Hiěm-ě

Plural.

<i>N.V.</i> Princip-ěs	Träb-ěs	Hiěm-ěs
<i>Acc.</i> Princip-ěs	Träb-ěs	Hiěm-ěs
<i>Gen.</i> Princip-um	Träb-um	Hiěm-um
<i>Dat.</i> Princip-ibus	Träb-ibus	Hiěm-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Princip-ibus	Träb-ibus	Hiěm-ibus

IV. Nouns in which the stem ends with (1) a nasal (nose) letter, *i.e.* -n, or (2) -u :

¹ P is inserted for euphony, between m and s in the Nominative of this word, so that the right spelling is hiemps.

Singular.		
<i>Lion (m.).</i>	<i>Maiden (f.).</i>	<i>Crane (c.).</i>
N. V. Leo (Leō-n)	Virgo (Virgō-n) ¹	Gru-s
Acc. León-em	Virgīn-em	Grū-em
Gen. León-is	Virgīn-is	Grū-is
Dat. León-i	Virgīn-i	Grū-i
Abl. León-ě	Virgīn-ě	Grū-ě
Plural.		
N.V. León-ēs	Virgīn-ēs	Grū-ēs
Acc. Leon-ēs	Virgīn-ēs	Grū-ēs
Gen. León-um	Virgīn-um	Grū-um
Dat. León-ibus	Virgīn-ibus	Grū-ibus
Abl. León-ibus	Virgīn-ibus	Grū-ibus

EXERCISE XVII.

- 30 RULE.—The question *When?* or *Within what time?* is answered by the Ablative, as *hiěme*, *in winter*, *nocte*, *by night*.
- 31 RULE.—The question *How long?* or *During what time?* is answered by the Accusative, as *multos annos*, *for*, or *during, many years*.

Vivit, (*he*) lives.Vivunt, (*they*) live.

1. Multi homines aestatem hieme laudant. 2. Virgines aestate hiemem, hieme aestatem laudant. 3. Leones multas aestates et multas hiemes vivunt. 4. Principibus pavidis leo modestus est. 5. Nautae nocte magnam gruum multitudinem puellae monstrant. 6. Virgines tenerae ab improbis principum filiis minis terrentur. 7. Papiliones paucas horas, elephantes multos annos vivunt.² 8. Leoni fero equitis comes caprum macrum dat. 9. Templum longas trabes, portas magnas, habet.³ 10. Templi trabs longitudinem miram habet. 11. Comites pavidi principe indigni sunt. 12. Multa poma aestate terra habet.
1. *The sailor praises land in winter, (but) blames (it) in summer.*
2. *For many hours the lion devours the tender goats.*
3. *The sailor by night points out a multitude of cranes to the maiden.*
4. *The daughters of the chief's fear the savage lion.*
5. *A*

¹ *Virgo* and *hōmo* originally kept the *o* throughout, and *hōmōnes*, for *hōmīnes*, is actually preserved, though, of course, not to be used.

² Repeat *vivunt* after *pāpiliōnēs*, “paucas horas (vivunt).”

32 ³ In enumerations, and in other sentences, *ēt*, or some other conjunction, is often omitted where the English must insert *and*, *but*, &c.

butterfly does not live for many hours. 6. *Unjust words are unworthy of a chief.* 7. *By the companions of the beautiful maidens the lion is frightened with a sword.* 8. *The winter is troublesome to the maidens and not agreeable to the chief.* 9. *The queen gives praise to chiefs and gold to poets.* 10. *In the night the lion devours a multitude of tender goats.*

V. Nouns in which the Stem ends with (1) a liquid, i.e. -l, -r, or (2) a sibilant, i.e. -s :¹

Singular.

<i>Consul (m.).</i>	<i>Love (m.).</i>	<i>Tree (f.).</i>	<i>Flower (m.).</i>
<i>N.V. Consul</i>	<i>Amor²</i>	<i>Arbor(-ōs)²</i>	<i>Flōs¹</i>
<i>Acc. Consūl-em</i>	<i>Amōr-em</i>	<i>Arbōr-em</i>	<i>Flōr-em</i>
<i>Gen. Consūl-is</i>	<i>Amōr-is</i>	<i>Arbōr-is</i>	<i>Flōr-is</i>
<i>Dat. Consūl-i</i>	<i>Amōr-i</i>	<i>Arbōr-i</i>	<i>Flōr-i</i>
<i>Abl. Consūl-ē</i>	<i>Amor-ē</i>	<i>Arbōr-ē</i>	<i>Flōr-ē</i>

Plural.

<i>N.V. Consūl-ēs</i>	<i>Amōr-ēs</i>	<i>Arbōr-ēs</i>	<i>Flōr-ēs</i>
<i>Acc. Consūl-ēs</i>	<i>Amōr-ēs</i>	<i>Arbōr-ēs</i>	<i>Flōr-ēs</i>
<i>Gen. Consūl-um</i>	<i>Amōr-um</i>	<i>Arbōr-um</i>	<i>Flōr-um</i>
<i>Dat. Consūl-ībus</i>	<i>Amōr-ībus</i>	<i>Arbōr-ībus</i>	<i>Flōr-ībus</i>
<i>Abl. Consūl-ībus</i>	<i>Amōr-ībus</i>	<i>Arbōr-ībus</i>	<i>Flōr-ībus</i>

Cīnīs c., makes cīnēr-em, cīnēr-is, cīnēr-i, &c.

33 Note that *anser* differs from *pāter*, as *pūer* from *māgister*; the former retains, the latter rejects, in the other Cases, the -e of the Nom.

Singular.

<i>Goose (m.).</i>	<i>Father (m.).</i>	<i>Mother (f.).</i>
<i>N.V. Anser</i>	<i>Pāter (Pāter-)</i>	<i>Māter (Māter-)</i>
<i>Acc. Ansēr-em</i>	<i>Patr-em</i>	<i>Matr-em</i>
<i>Gen. Ansēr-is</i>	<i>Patr-is</i>	<i>Matr-is</i>
<i>Dat. Ansēr-i</i>	<i>Patr-i</i>	<i>Matr-i</i>
<i>Abl. Ansēr-ē</i>	<i>Patr-ē</i>	<i>Matr-ē</i>

¹ (1) Many sibilant stems retain -s in the Nom. Sing., but change it to -r in the other cases: *flōs*, Gen. *flōr-is* (for *flōs-is*), *rōs*, Gen. *rōr-is* (for *rōs-is*) of *dew*. (2) Others have two forms of the Nom.: *labōs* or *labor*, Gen. *labōr-is*, of *labour*; and so *arbōs* or *arbor*, Gen. *arbōr-is*, of *a tree*.

² Final -or is short, and therefore its quantity is not marked in *āmor*, *arbor*, &c.

Plural.

<i>N.V.</i> Ansér-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> Ansér-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> Ansér-um	Patr-um	Matr-um
<i>Dat.</i> Ansér-ibus	Patr-ibus	Matr-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Ansér-ibus	Patr-ibus	Matr-ibus ¹

EXERCISE XVIII.

34 RULE.—An Adjective is sometimes used (1) in the Masculine to agree with *men* understood; (2) in the Neuter to agree with *thing* or *things* understood.

Many (men) praise the king. **Multi** rēgem laudant.

The father gives (his) son many (things). Pāter filio multa dat.

To err is (a) dangerous (thing). Errāre est pērīcūlōsum.²

Sūpērā-re, to overcome. Culpā-re, to blame.

Laudā-re, to praise. Ērat, (he) was, ērant, (they) were.

35 N.B.—The Adj. is often separated from its Noun by a Gen. belonging to the Noun, *e.g.*, *the consul's clear voice*, clāra consulis vox; and sometimes by other words: flōrībus sē pulchris dēlectat, *he delights himself with beautiful flowers.*

1. Multi regem laudant neque reginam culpant. 2. Jucundum est laudare, culpare injucundum (est). 3. Rex pauca filio dat, filiae multa (dat). 4. Puer anserem timet, patrem et matrem non timet. 5. Sepulcrum pulchrum multorum amicorum cineres habet. 6. Hiemps frigida arbores magnas et parvos flores laedit. 7. Milites magno clamore claram consulis vocem superant. 8. Pulchri florum colores virginum oculis grati sunt. 9. Anserem stultum multa terrent. 10. Femina a virgine amore magno amatur. 11. Militum clamor timoris causa est agricolis.³ 12. Consulum jussa timoris causae erant militibus. 13. Timidos nocte (30) multa terrent.

36 ¹ The pupil should note that in the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension, he can form the cases of any Noun without committing them to memory, if he remembers the Nom. and Gen. Singular.

All the other cases can be formed by striking off the -is from the Gen., *e.g.* anser-, patr-, and adding -em, -i, -ē, -es, -um, -ibus. See p. 18.

36a ² Here, part of a Verb is treated as a Noun, and is the Subject of est. See further, Exercise XXXV.

³ Agrīcōlis may be parsed as the “Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.” See par. 7.

1. To overcome is pleasant for soldiers. 2. The consul gives many things¹ to the vigorous soldier. 3. Many praise the king, few blame (him). 4. A goose fears many-things, (and) terrifies few-men.¹ 5. The companions of the soldiers overpower the king's voice by (their) clamour. 6. The colour of the flowers is agreeable to the eyes of the beautiful maidens. 7. The broad sepulchres have the ashes of many soldiers. 8. The flower by (its) colour and pleasant odour delights the maidens. 9. The cold winters were troublesome to the timid sons of the husbandmen. 10. To praise the bad is unpleasing and-not just. 11. For-a-few hours (31) the soldiers overcome the sailors.

B.—NEUTER NOUNS OF THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

Singular.

<i>Head (n.).</i>	<i>Name (n.).</i>	<i>Right or Law (n.).</i>	<i>Work (n.).</i>
<i>N.V. Acc.</i> Căput	Nōmen	Jūs	Ōpus
<i>Gen.</i> Căp̄it-is	Nōm̄in-is	Jūr-is	Opēr-īs
<i>Dat.</i> Căp̄it-i	Nōm̄in-i	Jūr-i	Opēr-i
<i>Abl.</i> Căp̄it-ē	Nōm̄in-ē	Jūr-ē	Opēr-ē

Plural

<i>N.V. Acc.</i> Căp̄it-ă	Nōm̄in-ă	Jūr-ă	Opēr-ă
<i>Gen.</i> Căp̄it-um	Nōm̄in-um	Jūr-um	Opēr-um
<i>Dat.</i> Căp̄it-ībus	Nōm̄in-ībus	Jūr-ībus	Opēr-ībus
<i>Abl.</i> Căp̄it-ībus	Nōm̄in-ībus	Jūr-ībus	Opēr-ībus

Note also **corpus**, **corpōr-is**, **corpōr-i**, &c., *a body*.

EXERCISE XIX.

37 When two Nouns of kindred meaning are connected together in one phrase, instead of *et* between the two Nouns, *-quē* is added as an extra syllable to the latter of the two Nouns: *flowers and trees*, flōres arbōresquē.

1. Fulmen arbores fruticesque et corpora hominum laedit. 2. Carnina sunt poetarum opera. 3. Jura belli agricultae timent. 4. Pueri nomen pulchrum erat. 5. Verbera judicibus consulibusque indigna sunt. 6. Equitum peditumque multitudinem vastam mercatores jure² timent. 7. Militum opera oppidorum incolis ingrata erant. 8. Capri capita parva,

¹ The words *things* and *men* (here and in other passages where they are used with *many* or *few*) should not be translated. See the Rule above.

² **Jure** is the Abl. used as an Adverb, *by right*, i.e. *naturally*.

corpora macra, pedes longos habent. 9. Multis hominibus multorum scelerum causa est aurum.¹ 10. Sidera nautis hieme grata erant. 11. Injusti judicis verba bona (erant), facta mala erant. 12. Corpori cibum, doctrinam menti Deus dat. 13. Miles ab injusto judge culpa (8) liberatur.

- ² 1. *The leader's head (was) small, his body was lean.* 2. *The multitude of the merchants fears the horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers.* 3. *The works of soldiers are displeasing to husbandmen.* 4. *Flowers and shrubs are agreeable to the inhabitants of towns.* 5. *Boys give food and sleep (use -quē) to (their) bodies, learning to (their) minds.* 6. *The names of the boys and girls are beautiful.* 7. *Unjust laws are unworthy of kings and queens.* 8. *The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers are not terrified by the crimes of (their) leaders.* 9. *The poet's work delights the queen with (its) beautiful name.* 10. *It was (a) renowned (thing) to overcome a multitude of horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers in-war (Abl. of instr.)*

THIRD DECLENSION.

2.—NOUNS WHOSE STEM ENDS IN **i**.

- 39** These Nouns differ from the Consonant Branch in this respect, that they make the Gen. Plur. in **-ium**; whereas, in the Consonant Branch, the Gen. Plur. mostly ends in **-um**.³ But the Stem **i** (being very variable, often dropped, and often changed into **e**,) frequently disappears.

¹ What case is **hōmīnībus**, and why? See Par. 7.

² For the Genders of Nouns of the Third Declension see page 226; and for Exercises on the Exceptions see Exercises LXXXIV to XCII.

- 40** ³ The more advanced pupil will find that several Nouns of the Consonant Branch take **-ium** in the Gen. Pl. The following rules will be found useful:—

1. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is **~ ~** (as **dūc-is**, take **-um** (**dūc-um**)).

Examples: **pātr-um**, **sēn-um**, **pěd-um**, **grēg-um**, **āp-um**, &c.

2. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is **~ ~** (as **ārc-is**) take **-ium**.

Examples: **falc-ium**, **urb-ium**, **art-ium**, **lit-ium**, **font-ium**, **pont-ium**, **mont-ium**, **noct-ium**, &c.

Exceptions are **vōc-um**, **lēg-um**, **rēg-um**, **jūr-um**, and a few others.

B.—1. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Singular.

	<i>Ship (f.).</i>	<i>Shower (m.).</i>	<i>Cloud (f.).</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Nāv-is	Imber (Imbri-)	Nūb-ēs (Nubi-)
<i>Acc.</i>	Nāv-em	Imbr-em	Nūb-em
<i>Gen.</i>	Nāv-is	Imbr-is	Nūb-is
<i>Dat.</i>	Nāv-i	Imbr-i	Nūb-i
<i>Abl.</i>	Nāv-i or -ē	Imbr-i (-ē)¹	Nūb-ē

Plural.

<i>N.V.</i>	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Nāv-īum	Imbr-īum	Nūb-īum
<i>Dat.</i>	Nāv-ībus	Imbr-ībus	Nūb-ībus
<i>Abl.</i>	Nāv-ībus	Imbr-ībus	Nūb-ībus

2.—NEUTER NOUNS.

Singular.

	<i>Sea (n.).</i>	<i>Animal (n.).</i>	<i>Spur (n.).</i>	<i>Bone (n.).</i>
<i>N.V.</i> <i>Acc.</i>	Mär-ě	Ānimāl	Calcar	Ōs²
<i>Gen.</i>	Mär-is	Ānimāl-is	Calcār-is	Oss-īs
<i>Dat.</i>	Mär-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-i
<i>Abl.</i>	Mär-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-ē

Plural.

<i>N.V.</i> <i>Acc.</i>	Mari-ă	Ānimāl-īă	Calcār-īă	Oss-ă
<i>Gen.</i>	Mari-um	Ānimāl-īum	Calcār-īum	Oss-īum
<i>Dat.</i>	Mari-bus	Ānimāl-ībus	Calcār-ībus	Oss-ībus
<i>Abl.</i>	Mari-bus	Ānimāl-ībus	Calcār-ībus	Oss-ībus

41 *Nēque* or *nēc*, when repeated, means *neither . . . nor.*

Consūm-it, (*he*) consumes. *Consūm-unt*, (*they*) consume.

EXERCISE XX.

1. Nautae validi neque imbres crebros neque maria saeva timent.
2. Imbri longo et fulmine crebro pastores terrentur.
3. Hominum sapientiā et animalium robur et maris furor superantur.
4. Navem rapidam mare avidum vorat.
5. Naves

42 ¹ A few Nouns in *-is* take only *-im* in the Acc., and only *-i* in the Abl.: *sītis*, *thirst*; *tussis*, *cough*; *vīs*, *violence*; and names of towns and rivers, e.g., *Tibēris*, *the Tiber*. The following commonly take *-im*. *febris*, *fever*; *pelvis*, *basin*; *puppis*, *poop*; *restis*, *rope*; *turris*, *tower*; *sēcūris*, *axe*.

43 Ignis makes Abl. in *-i*, except in poetry: and Abl. *-i* is always found in those Nouns that always make Acc. *-im*.

² Distinguish this word from *ōs*, *ōris*, *n.*, *mouth*, or *countenance*. *Ānimāl*, *calcar*, and almost all other Neuters with Abl. in *-i*, are derived from Adjectives.

validas maris furor et tempestatis violentia superant. 6. Ducea aurea calcaria et decora magna equitibus dant. 7. Hostium urbem dux igni ferroque consumit. 8. Nauta navi valida pelagi furorem superat. 9. Britannorum naves multis urbibus multisque gentibus notae sunt. 10. Ducum certamina prosperis civitatibus saepe causa exitii sunt. 11. Equus ignavus calcar timet. 12. Multa genera et animalium et lapidum mare habet. 13. Morbus capros totam aestatem (31) consumnit.

1. Strong horses often fear the spur.
2. The soldiers consume the cities with fire and sword.
3. Repeated lightning and a great storm terrify the merchants.
4. The animals of the sea are many and wonderful.
5. Men by (their) wisdom overcome the threats of seas and the madness of savage animals.
6. Both to leaders and to states strife is often the cause of destruction.
7. Golden spurs give great honour to horse-soldiers.
8. The strength of the ships overcomes both the madness of the sea and the violence of the storms.
9. The bones of small animals are small.
10. The tempest terrifies the citizens with a great cloud.
11. By wisdom and experience men are freed from the violence of savage animals.
12. He lives a few hours.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

44 These are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension; except that in almost all of them the Abl. Sing. is -i and not -e; and the Gen. Plur. -iūm and not -ūm.

A.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -i, and Gen. Plur. in -iūm.

1.—ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Acer, sharp.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>			<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>'N.</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Ācer	ācr-īs	ācr-ē			Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
<i>Acc.</i> Ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ē			Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
<i>Gen.</i> Ācr-īs	ācr-īs	ācr-īs			Ācr-īum	ācr-īum
<i>Dat.</i> Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i			Ācr-ībus	ācr-ībus
<i>Abl.</i> Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i			Ācr-ībus	ācr-ībus ¹

45 ¹ Other similar Adjectives are sälüb-er, *healthy*, äläc-er, *brisk*, ēquester, *equestrian*. In the Nom. Masc. Sing., the forms ācr-is, sälüb-is, äläcr-is &c. are sometimes used, but more often in poetry than in prose. Cēl-er retains the ē in the Fem. cēlēr-is and in the Neut. cēlēr-e.

2.—ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

Tristis, sad.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V. Trist-ís	trist-ě	Trist-ěs	trist-ěā
Acc. Trist-em	trist-ě	Trist-ěs	trist-ěā
Gen. Trist-ís	trist-ěs	Trist-ěum	trist-ěāum
Dat. Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ěbus	trist-ěābus
Abl. Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ěbus	trist-ěābus

3.—ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

Felix, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
M., F., and N.		M. and F.	N.
N.V. Félix		Félic-ěs	félid-ěā
Acc. Félic-em		Félic-ěs	félid-ěā
Gen. Félic-is		Félic-ěum	félid-ěāum
Dat. Félic-ī		Félic-ěbus	félid-ěābus
Abl. Félic-ī		Félic-ěbus	félid-ěābus

46 B.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -ě, and Gen. Plur. in -um.

These are mostly Comparatives ending in -ior (*m.* and *f.*), -ius (*n.*): trist-ior, sadder, félid-ior, happier.

Singular.

M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V. Tristiōr	tristiōs	Tristiōr-ěs	tristiōr-ā
Acc. Tristiōr-em	tristiōs	Tristiōr-ěs	tristiōr-ā
Gen. Tristiōr-is	tristiōr-ěs	Tristiōr-um	tristiōr-um
Dat. Tristiōr-ī	tristiōr-ī	Tristiōr-ěbus	tristiōr-ěābus
Abl. Tristiōr-ē	tristiōr-ē	Tristiōr-ěbus	tristiōr-ěābus

47 Besides Comparatives, a few other words make the Abl. Sing. in -ě and the Gen. Plur. in -um. Most of them are capable of being used as Nouns: dīvēs, (*a*) rich (*man*), supplex, *a suppliant*, vīgīl, *a watchman*, princeps *a chief*, pauper, *a poor man*, superstēs, *a survivor*.¹

48 ¹ A useful Rule is given (*Public School Grammar*) that:—

i. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. short, make -um in the Gen. Pl., e.g. supplex, Gen. Sing. supplicis, Gen. Pl. supplicūm.
ii. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. long, make -ium in the Gen. Pl., e.g. félid, Gen. Sing. félidis, Gen. Pl. félidūm.

1.—Cēlēr ēquus, *the swift horse.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Cēlēr ēqu-us	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
Voc. Cēlēr ēqu-e	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
Acc. Cēlēr-em ēqu-um	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ōs
Gen. Cēlēr-īs ēqu-i	Cēlēr-īum ēqu-ōrum ¹
Dat. Cēlēr-ī ēqu-o	Cēlēr-ībus ēqu-īs
Abl. Cēlēr-ī ēqu-o	Cēlēr-ībus ēqu-īs

2.—Mēlius dōnum, *the better gift.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.V. Acc. Meliūs dōn-um	Meliōr-ā dōn-ā
Gen. Meliōr-īs dōn-ī	Meliōr-um dōn-ōrum
Dat. Meliōr-ī dōn-ō	Meliōr-ībus dōn-īs
Abl. Meliōr-ě dōn-ō	Meliōr-ībus dōn-īs

3.—Fēlix jūdex, *a happy judge.*

49 Note the two points of difference in the Noun and Adjective (1) Noun -ē, -um; Adj. -ī, -ūm:

- (1) Fēlic-ī jūdic-ē, *by* (13a), *with*, or *from* the happy judge.
- (2) Fēlic-ūm jūdic-um, *of* happy judges.

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Mater bona meliore filio digna est. 2. Celerium equorum terga ab aurigis verberibus laeduntur. 3. Patres laeti meliora dona filiis dant. 4. Poeta sapiens regem insignem tristiose carmine delectat. 5. Rex insignis infelici morte indignus est. 6. Agricolarum vita salubris est; scribae diligentis labor non est saluber. 7. Equus acer certamen equestre amat. 8. Mercatorum divitum vitam miles fortis non amat. 9. Ira acri ducum tristium cives timidi terrentur. 10. Dulce carmen poeta insigni dignum est. 11. Puer tristis donum melius amat. 12. Principes justi fortibus militibus agros feraces dant. 13. Regina prudenti animo et audacibus consiliis seditionem superat. 14. Eques comitem culpa (8) liberat.
1. *The joyful father gives a better gift to (his) son.* 2. *The life of a soldier is not agreeable to the son of the rich merchant.*

50 ¹ The Gen. Pl. Cēlēr-um is only used when the word is used as a Noun, to signify the ancient body-guard in Rome; just as we speak of the "Blues," the "Scots Greys."

3. *By (his) sweet poem the good poet delights the great king.*
 4. *A keen contest is pleasant to strong soldiers.* 5. *The labours of the unhappy judges were displeasing to the just king.*
 6. *The keen anger of the citizens terrifies the companions of the sad leaders.* 7. *The diligent husbandman is worthy of a fruitful field.* 8. *The just judges give rewards to the charioteers of the swift horses.* 9. *The healthy life of the happy sailors was pleasing to the brave boy.* 10. *The good king is delighted by the songs of the sad poets and (17) by the brave boy.¹* 11. *The master frees the boys from blame.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION WITH
NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Saevus hostis, a cruel enemy.

	Singular	Plural.
Nom.	Saevus hostis	Saevi hostēs
Voc.	Saevē hostis	Saevi hostēs
Acc.	Saevum hostem	Saevos hostēs
Gen.	Saevi hostis	Saevōrum hostiūm
Dat.	Saevo hostī	Saevis hostibūs
Abl.	Saevo hostē	Saevis hostibūs

Almā māter, loving mother.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	Almā māter	Almae mātrēs
Acc.	Almam mātrem	Almās mātrēs
Gen.	Almae mātriſ	Almārum mātrūm
Dat.	Almae mātrī	Almīs mātribūs
Abl.	Almā mātré	Almīs mātribūs

Magnum őpus, a great work.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V. Acc.	Magnum őpus	Magnā őpéra
Gen.	Magni őpēris	Magnōrum őpērum
Dat.	Magno őpēri	Magnis őpēribūs
Abl.	Magno őpēre	Magnis őpēribūs

EXERCISE XXII.

Quīs? *What (man)? Who (Nom.)? Quem?* *What (man)? Whom (Acc.)? Quid?* *What (thing)? What (Nom. and Acc.)?*

1. Bonorum operum memoria fortis viro dulcis erat. 2. Virgines pulchrae ducis iracundi minas timent. 3. Milites primae

¹ Numbers bracketed thus (17) in the Exercises refer to the Paragraphs indicated by the figures in the margin.

cohortis hostibus iracundis terga dant.¹ 4. Quis vinum vetus puerō, quis seni verbera dat? 5. Benigno patri acris filiorum ira molesta erat. 6. Gladios breves, (32) longas hastas milites habent. 7. Mater alma filiarum tristium poenitentiam laudat. 8. Hostium saevorum feritas atrox cives timidos terret. 9. Senes infirmi regum minis atrocibus torrentur. 10. Tempestas atris nubibus et crebro fulmine virgines teneras terret. 11. Quis non virtutem amat? Quem non bonorum operum memoria delectat? 12. Senex probus in honesta morte et turpi fama indignus est.

1. *Brave men fear a dishonourable reputation.*
2. *A disgraceful death terrifies strong soldiers.*
3. *Who loves vice? Who is not delighted by (trans. Whom delights not) the memory of virtue?*
4. *Who (gives) swords to weak old-men? who gives wine to boys?*
5. *The enemy (use pl.), by (their) savageness and cruel threats, terrify the timid hostages.*
6. *The tender maidens fear the dark-black clouds and the frequent lightning.*
7. *The memory of a good work is pleasing to all (men).*
8. *The citizens flee before the strong cohort (trans. give their backs to the strong cohort).*
9. *The loving mothers are delighted by the brave deeds of the bold boys.*
10. *The sad woman is worthy of a better death.*
11. *(He) is-terrified in the night.*

THE FOURTH OR -u DECLENSION.

Singular.

<i>Step (m.).</i>	<i>Hand (f.).</i>	<i>Knee (n.).</i>
N.V. Grăd-ūs	Mă̄n-ūs	Gĕn-ū
Acc. Grăd-um	Mă̄n-um	Gĕn-ū
Gen. Grăd-ūs	Mă̄n-ūs	Gĕn-ūs
Dat. Grăd-ūi	Mă̄n-ūi	Gĕn-ūi
Abl. Grăd-ū	Mă̄n-ū	Gĕn-ū

Plural.

N.V. Grăd-ūs	Mă̄n-ūs	Gĕn-ūă
Acc. Grăd-ūs	Mă̄n-ūs	Gĕn-ūă
Gen. Grăd-ūum	Mă̄n-ūum	Gĕn-ūum
Dat. Grăd-ībus	Mă̄n-ībus	Gĕn-ībus
Abl. Grăd-ībus	Mă̄n-ībus	Gĕn-ībus

- 51 1. The Dat. Sing. in -ūi is sometimes contracted into -ū.

¹ "To give backs to an enemy" means "to flee from an enemy."

- 52** 2. Some names of trees, e.g. *pīnus*, *pine-tree*, vary between the 2nd and 4th Decl. in Gen. and Abl. Singular, and in Nom. and Acc. Plural.
- 53** 3. The Dat. Plur. is formed in *-ūbus* (not *-ībus*) by *arcus*, m., *bow*, *artus*, m., *limb*, and *partus*, m., *birth*, so as not to be confounded with the Dat. Plur. of *arx*, f., *citadel*, *ars*, f., *art*, and *pars*, f., *part*. The Dat. in *-ūbus* is also formed by *ācus*, f., *needle*, *portus*, m., *harbour*, and *trīb-us*, f., *tribe*. (See also Par. 311.)
- 54** All nouns of the Fourth Declension that have nom. *-us*, are masculine, except the names of trees, and five others (see Appendix V. p. 226); those in *-ū* are neuter.

EXERCISE XXIII.

- 55** Carefully distinguish the different constructions of the Preposition *in*:

īn (foll. by Abl.) *in*: *īn* (foll. by Acc.) *into, to, towards*:
(My) father is in the garden. Pāter *īn* hortō est.
The leader leads the soldiers into the city. Dux mīlites *īn* urbem dūcit.

1. *Pinus altae fructum non habent; glandes sunt quercuum fructus.* 2. *Hostes magnam copiam arcuum et sagittarum comparant.* 3. *Imbres quercui dant aquam.* 4. *Seythae arcu dux vulneratur.* 5. *Equi albi sinistrum genu durum est.* 6. *Acus longa digitum mulieris vulnerat.* 7. *Naves longae in tuto portu ventos secundos expectant.* 8. *Naves longas in portus diversos tempestas agit.* 9. *Nautae, in portu pelagus, in pelago portum laudant.* 10. *Auditus visusque utilitatem quis non intelligit?* 11. *Romanae plebis tribubus frumentum a Caesare datur.* 12. *Hiemis gelu myrto perniciosum erat; pinui et quercui non erat (perniciosum).* 13. *Multa (34) totam noctem (31) timet (16a).*
1. *The Scythian overcomes (his) enemy with (his) strong bow.*
 2. *The diligent women have sharp needles.* 3. *Adverse winds drive the ships into safe harbours.* 4. *The frost of winter is not destructive to pines.* 5. *The ships of-war are awaiting favourable winds in the safe harbour.* 6. *Stags by their running, foxes by (their) subtlety, overcome the hunter.* 7. *The branches of the tall oaks have many acorns.* 8. *By*

hearing and by sight men avoid destructive (things), (and) obtain useful (things). 9. The stag (has) long horns, the bull has short (horns). 10. The bull with his left horn wounds the shepherd. 11. He was sick for-the-whole winter (31).

THE FIFTH OR -E DECLENSION.

<i>Day (m.).</i>		<i>Thing (f.).</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.V. Dī-ēs	Dī-ēs	R-ēs ¹	R-ēs
Acc. Dī-em	Dī-ēs	R-em	R-ēs
Gen. Dī-ēi	Dī-ērum	R-ei ²	R-ērum
Dat. Dī-ēi	Dī-ēbus	R-ei	R-ēbus
Abl. Dī-ē	Dī-ēbus	R-ē	R-ēbus

56 In the Gen. and Dat., final -ei is sometimes contracted into -ē; diē, fidē.

57 All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except dīes, day, and mēridīēs, midday, which are Masculine.³

EXERCISE XXIV.

Āg-it, (*he*) drives, or leads. **Āg-ītur,** (*he*) is (*being*) driven.

1. Agricola spē fructuum in labore agitur. 2. Acies densa ab hostibus in fugam agitur. 3. Magna pars exercitūs in planitiē erat. 4. Tanta vitia tam pulchra facie indigna sunt. 5. Memoria pulchrae faciēi hominibus jucunda est. 6. Mora spei inimica est. 7. Rex justus melioribus rebus dignus est. 8. Rebus adversis vir fortis in dolorem agitur. 9. Exercitus omnis in spem novam a forti duce agitur. 10. In Britannā apricorum dierum numerus non magnus est. 11. Fluminis rapidi cursus interdum glacie superatur. 12. Rerum adversarum memoria in rebus secundis interdum jucunda est.
1. *In summer the hours of the day are many, in winter (the hours) of the night (30).* 2. *There-were many horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers (use -quē) in the line of the enemy.* 3. *The light of mid-day is (being) overcome by a dark-black cloud.* 4. *The*

¹ This Noun is printed thus (as also in the *Public School Grammar*) to exhibit the Case Terminations more clearly. But the true Stem of rēs is not r- but re-. See p. 239, 'Stem.'

² The quantity of r-ei varies.

³ Dies should not be used by the beginner in the Feminine, except poetically; to signify, not a literal day, but a season, e.g. *The evil day has come. Atra dies vēnit.*

Dīes and rēs are the only Nouns in the Fifth Declension that are fully declined; and all (but nine) have no Plural.

long line of the enemy (trans. enemies) is being overcome by the fearless soldiers. 5. *The memory of prosperity is sometimes unpleasing to the wretched.* 6. *The heat of the sun was destructive to the thin ice.* 7. *The memory of joyful days was pleasing to the just judge.* 8. *Great is the utility of hope.* 9. *The hostage is being driven into the citadel by the bold leader.* 10. *The queen shews (her) grief by (her) sad face.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

I.—REGULAR.

58 1. **The Comparative Degree**, if regular, is formed from the Gen. Sing. by taking away -i, (alt-i, alt-) or -is (ferac-is, ferac-), and adding -ior: alt-ior, *higher*, ferāc-ior, *more fruitful*.

59 2. **The Superlative Degree** is formed by taking away -i or -is and adding -issimus: alt-issimus, fērāc-issimus.

Gen. Sing.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Trist- <i>is</i> ,	trist-ior, <i>sadder</i> ,	trist-issimus, <i>saddest</i> .
Rēcent- <i>is</i> ,	rēcent-ior, <i>more re-</i> recent,	rēcent-issimus, <i>most recent</i> .

II.—IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.

1. -līmus.

60 1. Six Adj. in -ilis, form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -līmus instead of -issimus.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Fācil- <i>is</i> , <i>easy</i>	facil-ior	facil-līmus
Difficil- <i>is</i> , <i>difficult</i>	difficil-ior	difficil-līmus
Simil- <i>is</i> , <i>like</i>	simil-ior	simil-līmus
Dissimil- <i>is</i> , <i>unlike</i>	dissimil-ior	dissimil-līmus
Grācil- <i>is</i> , <i>thin</i>	grācil-ior	grācil-līmus
Hūmil- <i>is</i> , <i>low</i>	hūmil-ior	hūmil-līmus

The rest, fertīl-*is*, ūtil-*is* &c., have either no Superlative or -issimus; fertīl-issimus, ūtil-issimus, &c.

2. -rīmus.

- 61** 2. All Adj. ending in -er form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -rīmus to the Nominative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Nom. Gen. Liber, libēr-i, <i>free</i>	libēr-ior	liber-rīmus
Cēler, cēlēr-is, <i>swif</i> t	cēlēr-ior	cēler-rīmus
Pulcher, pulchr-i, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rīmus
Ācer, acr-is, <i>sharp</i>	acr-ior	ācer-rīmus

The Adjective vētūs, Gen. vētēr-is, *old*, has Comp. vētust-ior, Superl. veter-rīmus.¹

Quam, *than*.

- 62** RULE.—Nouns coupled by quam (*than*) and a Comparative Adj. or Adv., are in the same case:

1. Nom. { Ěqui ūtiliores sunt quam capri (sunt).
Horses are more useful than goats (are).

2. Gen. { Pūdor flāgīti, māgis quam errōris, hōmīnem complet.
Shame for the crime, rather than for the error, possesses
the man: lit. of the crime, of the error.

3. Dat. { Pūero dat mēliōra dona quam pūellae (dat).
To the boy he gives better gif's than (he gives) to the
girl.

4. Acc. { Mālus fōlia hābet densiōra quam māla (hābet).²
The apple-tree has leaves thicker than (it has) apples.

- 63** RULE.—When the first Noun is in the Nominative or Accusative, the second Noun is generally put in the Ablative without quam:

Nothing is more lorable than Nihil est virtūte āmābilīus.
virtue.

¹ The Comparative vētērior is rare and archaic.

² Distinguish between māla, *apples*, and māla, *evils*.

N.B. Superlatives and Comparatives have each more meanings than one :

64 I. **Tard-issimus** means (1) *slowest*, (2) *very slow*.

65 II. **Tard-ior** means (1) *slower*, (2) *rather, or somewhat, slow*, or (3) *too slow*.

EXERCISE XXV.

66 RULE.—**Similis**, *like*, takes a (1) Gen. or (2) Dat.: ¹—

(1) *The boys are like (i.e., the likenesses of) (their) father.* Pūéri patris similes sunt.

(2) *All things were more like (to) a camp than (to) a city.* Omnia castris quam urbi similiora erant.

67 **Quidem**, *on the one hand; indeed. Autem, on the other hand; however; but.* Neither of these words can stand first in a clause. They must be placed after some emphatic word. See Sentence 9 below.

1. Vallis humilior erat campo. 2. Nihil est virtute pulchrius, nihil amicitia dulcius. 3. Puer omnibus praceptoris discipulis procerior erat. 4. Uxori vir melius donum quam sorori dat. 5. Amor patriae magis quam filiorum ducein acerrimum complet. 6. Cervus animal est celerrimum, et testudini dissimillimum.² 7. Hieme dies breviores sunt noctibus. 8. Iter puellae difficilis est quam puero. 9. Turdus quidem avis tardior (65) est, aquila autem velocissima. 10. In regione aspera itinera hieme difficiliora quam aestate sunt. 11. Puer aegerriimus crura et brachia graciliora habet. 12. Puellae patris quam matris similiores erant. 13. Puellam quidem totum diem (31) culpat (16a), puerum autem laudat.

1. *Nothing is more useful to men than sight and hearing.* 2. *The husbandman's garden is more fertile than the rich king's fields.* 3. *Who is bolder than a soldier? who (is) juster than a judge?* 4. *The ass is a somewhat-foolish (65) animal; the dog is very sagacious.* 5. *The boy's sisters were more like (their) mother than (their) father.* 6. *The anger of the king was keener than the madness of the soldiers.* 7. *By very swift journeys*

¹ The Dative is rare in Cicero, but very common in later writers.

² Two Adjectives coupled by *et* can agree with the same Noun.

the general leads (his) soldiers into a most rugged region.
 8. *Very beautiful trees fill the very low¹ valleys of (the) most¹ fertile region.* 9. *The very brave soldiers are being driven into the city by (a) very keen and bold leader.¹* 10. *The very¹ ailing boy has very thin legs in winter.*

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

	<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
68	bōnus, <i>good</i>	mēlor	optīmus
	mālus, <i>bad</i>	pējor	pessīmus
	magnus, <i>great</i>	mājor	maxīmus
	parvus, <i>small</i>	mīnor	mīnīmus
	multi, (pl.), <i>many</i>	plūres	plūrīmī ²
	nēquam, (indecl.) <i>worthless</i>	nēquior	nēquissīmus

- 68^a Adjectives ending in -dīcus, -speaking, -fīcus, -doing, -vōlus, wishing, form the Comp. in -entīor, the Superl. in -entissīmus:

mālē-dīcus, *ill-speaking*, -dīcentīor, -dīcentissīmus.
 mūni-fīcus, *gift-making*, -fīcentīor, -fīcentissīmus.
 bēnē-vōlus, *well-wishing*, -vōlentīor, -vōlentissīmus.

(These forms are really derived from Verbal forms in -ens, which will be recognised when the Verbs are mastered.)

- 68^b Adjectives ending in -ēus, -īus, -ūus, seldom have a Compar. or Superl. form of their own, but are compared by appending the adverbs māgis, *more*, maxīmē, *most*: pīus, *dutiful*, māgis pīus, *more dutiful*, maxīmē pīus, *most dutiful*.

- 69 In the following the Positive is defective, and is represented by a Noun, Adjective, or Preposition:

70 ¹ In Latin the Superlative is more frequently used than in English. We should say "*the brave soldiers*," "*a bold leader*." But in Latin the Superlatives must be expressed.

71 ² *Multum*, plūs, and plūrīnum are also used in the Neut. Sing. as Nouns governing a Genitive Case.

<i>They have much</i>	}	<i>more</i>	}	<i>very much</i>	<i>(of) money.</i>	<i>Multum</i>	}	
								<i>Plūs</i>

pēcūniae hābent.

[Sēnēx], <i>an old man</i>	sēniōr ¹	nātu maxīmus , <i>oldest.</i>
[Jūvēnis], <i>a young man</i>	jūniōr ¹	nātu mīnīmus , <i>youngest.</i>
[Sūpērus], <i>upper</i>	sūpēriōr	suprēmūs , <i>summus</i> , <i>highest.</i>
[Infērus], <i>lower</i>	infēriōr	infīmūs , <i>īmus</i> , <i>lowest.</i>
[Extērus], <i>outside</i>	extēriōr	extrēmūs , (<i>outermost or last.</i>)
[prep. Intrā], <i>inside</i>	intēriōr	intīmūs , <i>īmost.</i>
[Postērus], <i>after, behind</i>	postēriōr	postrēmūs , (<i>hindmost or last.</i>)
[prep. Prae], <i>before</i>	priōr	priōmūs , (<i>foremost or first.</i>)
[prep. Prōpē], <i>near</i>	prōpēriōr ¹	prōxiōmūs , (<i>nearest or next.</i>)
[prep. Ultrā], <i>beyond</i>	ultēriōr	ultīmūs , (<i>furthest or last.</i>)

72 Plūs, more, is thus declined :

<i>Singular : a Noun.</i>		<i>Plural : an Adjective.</i>	
<i>Neuter.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	
<i>Nom. and Acc.</i>	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūrā
<i>Gen.</i>	Plūrīs	Plūrīum	Plūrīum
<i>Dat.</i>	Plūrī	Plūrībus	Plūrībus
<i>Abl.</i>	Plūrē	Plūrībus	Plurībus

Māgis means *more in degree* and is used with Adjectives ; **plūs**, *more in quantity*, and is used with Verbs.

Balbus is more dutiful, but Balbus **māgis** pīus est, sed Tullius delights (his) father Tullius patrem **plūs** dēlectat. more.

EXERCISE XXVI.

73 RULE.—A Superlative, in agreement with a Noun understood, is followed by the Genitive :

The horse is the most useful **Ēquus ūtilissīmūm** (animal) (animal) of animals. **ānimālīum** est.

1. Alexander erat ducum praestantissimus.² 2. Optimorum virorum filii interdum pessimi sunt. 3. Quid pejus erat Balbi contione ! Quid optiīnae (35) Tullii contioni (66) simile habet?³ 4. Majores natu ratio, non spes, agit. 5. Junioribus

¹ **Nātu mājor** and **nātu mīnor** are also used. **Nātu** means *by birth*, and is not declined.

² Why is **dūcum** Gen.? Ans. governed by **dux** understood.

³ An Adj. e.g. **optiīnae**, is often separated from its Noun by an intervening Genitive e.g. **Tullii**. (Par. 35.) **Quid** (Exercise XXII) is Acc. gov. by **hābet**.

The Nom. to **hābet** is *it*, i.e. *the speech of Balbus*, understood.

seniores dona dant. 6. Duci optimi dies ultimus erat felicissimus. 7. Socrates optimus Graecorum erat. 8. Castrorum pars exterior parte intimā major erat. 9. Plus erat (71) modestiae quam sapientiae in viro benevolentissimo.¹ 10. Plurimorum facta nequissima, optima verba sunt. 11. Minima pars propioris regionis maximā parte regionis ulterioris major erat. 12. Senes priora (34) laudant, juniorum facta culpant. 13. Proximo die imperator maximum partem hostium superat. 14. Virgo a milite hasta totum diem terretur.

1. *The king, (who was) worse than (his) father, has a (still) more worthless son.*
2. *Very old men praise former times.*
3. *The greater part of the outermost wall was nearest to the citadel.*
4. *The most benevolent of the younger (men) were inferior to (trans. as if to were than) the worst of the elder (men).*
5. *He gives more gifts to the worst of the sisters than to the most dutiful of the brothers.*
6. *The lowest part of the mountain was higher (comp. and superl. of superus) than the highest part of the citadel.*
7. *The younger rightly give reverence to (their) elders.*²
8. *The younger of the brothers was very like the elder sister.*
9. *Very many praise what is best (trans. best-things).*
10. *On the last (30) day of (his) life the old-man was most happy.*
11. *He is-blamed the whole day (long).*

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

74 Numeral Adjectives are either (1) Cardinal, denoting *how many*, or (2) Ordinal, denoting *in what order*.² All the Ordinal Adjectives are declined like **bōnus**; but of the Cardinal Adjectives only a few are declined.

1. **Ūnus**, *one*.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Gen. Sing.</i> Ūn-īus	un-īus	un-īus
<i>Dat. Sing.</i> Un-i	un-i	un-i

In the other cases, Sing. and Plur., it is like *bonus*.

75 ¹ Why is *mōdestiae* Gen? Ans. governed by *plūs*, Adj. used as Noun. Why is *săplēntiae* Gen.? Because *quam* (Par. 62) takes the same Case after it as before it. In translating *bēnēvōlentissimo* add *the* or *that*.

76 The Gen. after *pars*, *plūs*, *multum*, &c., is often called the *Partitive Genitive*.

² For the Distributive Numeral Adjectives see Exercise LXXXV. They are all declined like *bōni*, -ae, -a: (1) *singūli*, *one a-piece*; (2) *bīni*, *two a-piece*; (3) *terni* or *trīni*; (4) *quāterni*; (5) *quīni*; (6) *sēni*; (7) *septēni*; (8) *octōni*; (9) *nōvēni*; (10) *dēni*; (11) *undēni*; (100) *centēni*; (101) *centēni singūli*; (200) *dūcēni*; (300) *trēcēni*; (400) *quadrīngēni*; (600) *sescēni*; (1,000) *singūla mīlia*.

78

2. Dūo, *two.*3. Trēs, *three.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Dū-ō	dū-ae	dū-ō	Trēs	triā
<i>Acc.</i> Dū-os ¹	dū-as	dū-ō	Trēs ²	triā
<i>Gen.</i> Dū-ōrum	dū-ārum	dū-ōrum	Trīum	triūm
<i>Dat.</i> Dū-ōbus	dū-ābus	dū-ōbus	Trībus	trībus
<i>Abl.</i> Dū-ōbus	dū-ābus	dū-ōbus	Trībus	trībus

Ambo, *both*, is declined like dūo.

79 The Cardinal Numbers, from *four* to a *hundred*, are indeclinable.

The compounds of a *hundred* are declined like bōnus :
Of two hundred men, Dūcentōrum hōmīnum.

4. Millē, *thousand.*

80 The two uses of millē (*a*) Sing. (*b*) Plural, must be carefully distinguished :

a. Singular, an indeclinable *Adjective* :

Millē passūs, *a thousand paces.*

Millē passībus, *to a thousand paces, &c.*

b. Plural, a *Noun* of the Third Declension, having an *Adjective agreeing with it in Number and Case*, and *governing another Noun in the Genitive* :

N.V. and Acc. Multa mīlia passuum, *many thousands of paces.*

Gen. Multōrum mīlium passuum, *of many thousands of paces.*

Dat. Multis mīlibus passuum, *to many thousands of paces.*

Abl. Multis mīlibus passuum, *by many thousands of paces.*

¹ Less commonly, dū-o.

² Less commonly, trīs.

81

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus
2	II	dūō, -æ, -o	sēcundus or altēr
3	III	trēs, -tria	tertius
4	IV	quattūōr (quātūōr)	quartus
5	V	quinquē	quintus
6	VI	sex	sextus
7	VII	septem	septīmus
8	VIII	octō	octāvus
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus
10	X	dēcem	dēcīmus
11	XI	undēcim	undēcīmus
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcīmus
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcīmus
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcīmus
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcīmus
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcīmus
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septīmus dēcīmus
18	XVIII	duōdēvīgintī	duōdēvīcēsimus
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsimus
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī or vīgintī ūnus	unus et vīcēsimus, or vīcēsimus prīmus
22	XXII	duō et vīgintī or vīgintī duo	alter et vīcēsimus, or vīcēsimus alter
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī or vīgintī trēs	tertius et vīcēsimus, or vīcēsimus tertius
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētrīcēsimus
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīcēsimus
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70	LXX	septūāgintā	septūāgēsimus
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100	C	centum	centēsimus
101	CI	centum et unus or centum unus	centēsimus prīmus
136	CXXXVI	centum et trīginta sex or centum, triginta sex	centēsimus trīcēsimus sextus
200	CC	dūcentī, -æ, -ā	dūcentēsimus
300	CCC	trēcentī, -æ, -ā	trēcentēsimus

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
400	CCCC	quadrингентī, -ae, -ā	quadrингентēsīmus
500	CI or D	quinqentī, -ae, -ā	quinqentēsīmus
600	DC	sescentī, -ae, -ā	sexcentēsīmus
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -ā	septingentēsīmus
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ā	octingentēsīmus
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ā	nongentēsīmus
1,000	CI or M	millē	millesīmus
2,000	MM	duō miliā	bis millesīmus
100,000	CCCCCI	centum miliā	centiēs millēsīmus ¹

EXERCISE XXVII.

82 RULE.—The Possessor is often expressed by the Dative Case with the Verb *est*, (*sunt*, *erat*, *erant*, &c.):

Balbus has, or had a book, i.e. **Balbo est, or ērat,**
there was a book for Balbus. liber.

1. Duos consules decem tribunorum constantia superat. 2. Militi veterrimo unus solum oculus et novem digiti erant.² 3. In legione Romana decem cohortes erant. 4. Mensis September quondam septimus (erat), nunc nonus anni mensis est.³ 5. Juvenis alteram et vicesimam partem patrimonii pauperibus dat. 6. Arbori centum et triginta sex poma tunc erant. 7. Agricola sedecim nuces, (32) nonaginta octo cerasa mulieri dat. 8. Centuria erat altera pars manipuli, sexta pars cohortis, legionis sexagesima (pars). 9. Legio trecentos equites habet. 10. In hostium exercitu sunt mille nongenti equites,

83 ¹ The number 500, CI, is multiplied by 10 as often as C is subjoined:—
 $CI = 10 \times 500 = 5,000.$
 $CCI = 10 \times 5,000 = 50,000.$

In order to double CI, or CCI, you must prefix C as many times as it is suffixed:—

$$CIC = 2 \times 500 = 1,000.$$

$$CCCI = 2 \times 5,000 = 10,000.$$

² Why is mīlīti Dat? Ans., *Dat of the Possessive after est.*

³ Jānūāriūs and September are Adjectives agreeing with mensis. The adjectival names of the months are sometimes used as Nouns, mensis being understood, e.g. Febrūāriū in sentence 11. See p. 229.

peditum tria millia. 11. Januarii mensis unus dies est pars una et tricesima; Februarii, duodetricesima.¹ 12. Undetriginta verberibus miles a centurione castigatur.

1. *The general had (erant) three hundred and seven foot-soldiers.*
2. *The enemy had six hundred foot-soldiers, (and) two thousand horse-soldiers.*
3. *The husbandman gives twenty-five eggs to the wretched sailor.*
4. *There were on (in) the oak many thousand acorns.*
5. *On the sixth month of the year, in the seventh hour, there were in the city three thousand Germans.*
6. *The general leads into the city the twentieth legion and the third part of the thirtieth legion.*
7. *A century was the sixth part of a cohort; a cohort (was) the tenth part of a legion.*
8. *Once a legion had three thousand soldiers.*
9. *There were then in the legion six thousand foot-soldiers (and) three hundred horse-soldiers.*
10. *Once March was the first month of the year, November (was) the ninth, (and) December the tenth.*
11. *The old soldier had thirty-three wounds.*

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

- 85** The following adjectives (most of them capable of being used as Pronouns) are declined regularly (like *bōnus*) in the Plural, and in all cases of the Singular, except the Gen. and Dat.; but (like the Pronouns) they make the Gen. Sing in *-īus* (-īus) or *-rīus*, and the Dat. Sing. in *-i*:

1. *-īus* (-īus).

Ūnus, one, one only.

Ullus, any.²

Nullus, no, not any, none.

Sōlus, alone.

Tōtus, whole.

2. *-rīus.*

Alter, Gen. *alterīus*, one (of two), the other (of two).

Ūter? *utr-īus?* which (of the two)?

Neuter, *neutr-īus*, neither.

- 86** *Ālius*, other, makes the Neut. Sing. in *-ud*. When twice used co-ordinately (i.e. so that *and*, *but*, &c., might be inserted), it means, in the Sing., *one . . . another*, or, in the Plur., *some . . . others*; and *alter . . . alter* mean, similarly, *one of the two . . . the other of the two*.

¹ Why is **Febrūārī** (mensis) Gen.? Ans. governed by *pars* understood. You must repeat "unus dies est pars" with *dūōdētrīcēsima*.

The pupil may henceforth (with the aid of Appendix VI.) write the Latin day of the month on his exercise.

² **Ullus** is only used in (1) negative and (2) comparative sentences, or in (3) questions that expect a negative answer.

- (1) *He blames one thing, (and) praises another.* Āliud culpat, āliud laudat.
 (2) *Some overcome, (but) others are overcome.* Ālii supērant, ālii sūpērantur.
 (3) *He gives one of the two sisters a pear, the other an apple.* Altēri sōrōrum pīrum, altēri pōmum dat.

Ālius, other.*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ālius	āliā	āliud
Voc.	Wanting		
Acc.	Ālium	āliam	āliud
Gen.	Ālius	ālius	ālius
Dat.	Alii	ālii	ālii
Abl.	Alīo	āliā	āliō

Nullus, no.*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nullus		nullā	nullum
[Nulle		nulla	nullum]
Nullum		nullam	nullum
Nullius		nulliūs	nullius
Nulli		nulli	nulli
Nullo		nullā	nullo

88 When ālius is repeated *not co-ordinately* (see Par. 86), it is sometimes construed as follows:—

Some women praise some things, others praise others. Mūlēres āliae alia laudant.

The Nom. of ālius has ī, the Gen. has ī:

One man praises one man's conduct, another man another's. Ālius ālius mōrēs laudat.

89 Note alt-ērius, but ut-rīus; so asp-ēri, but pulch-ri.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

90 Adjectives signifying *nearness, dearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.,* and their opposites, govern the Dative.

- Utri senum filia viam monstrat?¹
- Neutrius exercitus dux timidus erat.
- Uni soli tot militum dux coronam dat.²
- Fratrum optimorum alter alterius filium valde amat.
- Pater alteri filiorum equum validissimum, alteri ensem dat.
- Mulieres aliae alia clamant.
- Milites (88) alius agros, alijs armenta et equos laudant.
- Mater puellis dona diversa dat; alii dat aurum, alii argentum.
- Nemini

91 ¹ Sēnum is Gen., governed by utri. But the Gen. after ūter, neuter, ūnus, &c. and also after the Numerals generally, is often called a *Partitive Genitive*, because it implies a part belonging to a larger number or whole.

² What sort of a Gen. is militū? Sōli agrees with ūni, which (85) is used as a Pronoun.

molestus erat; nullius mores culpat.¹ 10. Pater majora dona filiae quam ulli filiorum dat.² 11. Homo avarus est, neque (18) ulli carus.² 12. Utique genti facile (34) erat belli mala vitare (36a).

1. Which of the (two) brothers is the dearer to (their) mother?
2. The man is very worthless (68), and not dear to any of the citizens.
3. To one of the (two) brothers he gives blame; to the other praise.
4. To neither of the leaders was the cowardice of the armies pleasing.
5. Virtue is agreeable to one, pleasure (is agreeable) to another.
6. One (man's) constancy, another (man's) prudence, is praised by the leader.
7. To one alone of the women does the queen give praise.
8. He gives to (his) brother a better gift than to any (87) of his sisters.
9. Some had (82) shields, others had swords; (but) no one had horses.
10. The woman was very worthless, and (18) not dear to any of (her) sisters.
11. The butterfly lives one day.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

1. FIRST PERSON.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>I, me, &c.</i>	<i>We, us, &c.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Ěgő	Nōs
<i>Acc.</i>	Mē	Nōs
<i>Gen.</i>	Měi	Nostri³ (-trum)
<i>Dat.</i>	Mihǐ	Nōbīs
<i>Abl.</i>	Mē	Nōbīs

2. SECOND PERSON.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Thou, thee, &c.</i>	<i>Ye, you, &c.</i>	
<i>N. and V.</i>	Tū	Vōs
	Tē	Vōs
	Tūi	Vestri³ (-trum)
	Tibǐ	Vōbīs
	Tē	Vōbīs

3. THIRD PERSON.

To express *he*, *she*, *it*, use is made of the Adjective (1) *is*, m., *that* (*man*), (2) *ea*, f., *that* (*woman*), (3) *id*, n., *that* (*thing*).

92

¹ Nullius, nullo are used for *němīnis* and *němīne*:

From *němo* let me never see

Němīnis and *němīne*.

² In what sort of sentences is *ullus* used? Why is it used (87) here?

³ The Genitives Plural *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are used only in such phrases as "němo *nostrum*, *vestrum*, *no one of us, of you*; the wisest of us; *some of us*, &c. It is then called a Partitive Genitive: see above, Par. 76, 91. *Nostri*, *vestri* are really Adjectives in Gen. Sing. agreeing with a Noun understood: *měmor est nostri*, *He is mindful of our (business)*, i.e. *of us*.

93

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>He</i>	<i>She</i>	<i>It</i>		<i>They</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>Those</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Ís	ěā	íd		Ei (ii)	eae	ěā
<i>Acc.</i>	Ěum	ěam	íd		Ěos	ěas	ěā
<i>Gen.</i>	Ěius	ěius	ěius		Ěōrum	ěārum	ěōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Ei	ei	ei		Eis (iis)	eis (iis)	eis (iis)
<i>Abl.</i>	Ěo	ěā	ěo		Eis (iis)	eis (iis)	eis (iis) ¹

94 The Gen. *eius*, *eōrum*, is often used for *his*, *her*, *their*: “liber *eiūs*,” *his*, or *her book*; “*eōrum* *liber*,” *their book*.

4. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

This Pronoun has no Nominative nor Vocative, and the Plural is the same as the Singular.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Sē	<i>himself, herself, itself²</i>	<i>themselves</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Sūi	<i>of „ „ „</i>	<i>„ „ „</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Sibī	<i>to or for „ „ „</i>	<i>„ „ „</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Sē²	<i>by (17), with, from „ „</i>	<i>„ „ „</i>

EXERCISE XXIX.

I (or *we*), *thou* (or *ye*), *he* (or *they*) are said to be respectively the First, Second, and Third *Persons*. All ordinary Nouns are said to be in the Third Person (see page 237).

The form of the Verb in Latin must be altered to suit the *Person* as well as the Number of its Subject:

<i>Person.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st	<i>I love,</i> (ěgō) ām-o		We } (nōs) āmā-mus
2nd	<i>Thou lovest,</i> (tū) āmā-s		Ye } (vōs) āmā-tis
3rd	<i>He loves,</i> (íš) āma-t		They } (ei) āma-nt

95 RULE.—The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person.

All the Verbs that make the 3rd Pers. Sing. in -at (such as *sūpēra-t*, *lauda-t*, &c.), are changed in the same way as *āmo* above: but *da-t* has the *a* short, *dāmus*, *dātis*.

¹ The quantity of the *e* in *ei*, *eis* is doubtful.

² Instead of *sē* there is sometimes used the emphatic form *sēsē*. The pupil must be prepared hereafter to find that *sē* is used in some instances for *he, him*. But, for the present, it will be only used for *himself, herself &c.* (never for *thyself, yourself*).

96 **Ūnus** is sometimes used in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun to mean *alone* or *only* :—

Only Tullius loves me.

Ūnus Tullius mē āmat.

1. Ego eum amo.
2. Tu eius fratrem amas.
3. Nos eorum fratrem amamus.
4. Vos eius sorores amat.
5. Dona eius mihi uni (96) grata sunt.
6. Agri agricolarum eis grati sunt.
7. Mater filium anat, ego eam laudo.
8. Matri filius poma dat, ego eum laudo.
9. Poma talia mihi grata non sunt; ego porcis eā do.
10. Tu mihi et ei dona meliora quam eis das.
11. Vos eorum dona laudatis, earum (dona) culpatis.
12. Omnes sese amant.
13. Nemo non sibi benignus est.

1. *I love her, she loves me.*
2. *Thou lovest her¹ father.*
3. *Ye love their (94) gifts.*
4. *We love them, ye love us.*
5. *They give us better gifts than (they give) to him.*
6. *His patience is pleasing to me.*
7. *Their patience is pleasing to him.*
8. *Her constancy is pleasing to them.*
9. *No one blames himself.*
10. *His folly is pleasing to thee (96) alone.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

97

The Genitives **ēius**, **ēōrum**, are used for *his*, *her*, *their*; but the Genitives **mēi**, **tūi**, **nostri**, **vestri**, &c., are hardly ever used for *my*, *thy*, *our*, *your*, &c. For this purpose the following Pronominal Adjectives are used :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Mēus	mēā	mēum
		<i>my, mine</i>
Tūus	tūā	tūum
		<i>thy, thine</i>
Noster	nostrā	nostrum
		<i>our, ours</i>
Vester	vestrā	vestrum
		<i>your, yours</i>
Sūus	sūā	sūum
		<i>his own, her own, its own, their own</i>

98

Eius and **Sūus**. Note the difference. **Sūus** may be used (for the present) where you can insert *own* in the English.

- (1) *The mother loves her (own) son.* Māter filium **sūum** ānat.
- (2) *Gaius and his brother love me.* (See page 328.) Gaius et frātēr **ēius** mē āmant.
- (3) *I love her son.* Āmo **ēius** fī'ūm.

¹ Note the ambiguity in Latin: **ēius** is used both for *her* and for *his*. In practice, of course, the ambiguity would be generally removed by the context. On the other hand, the ambiguity of the English *their* is removed by the Latin use of **ēōrum** and **ēārum**.

99 Ěgo, tū, īs, nōs, &c., are generally omitted as the Subjects of a Verb: āmās, thou lovest, āmāmus, we love, &c.

99a But if emphasis is intended to be laid on the Pronouns, they are inserted: “ēgo tē āmo, tū mē nōn āmās.”

EXERCISE XXX.

100 A question is asked by nōnne, num or -nē; -nē is added to, and emphasizes, *the first word in the Sentence*.

Do you blame me?

Tūnē mē culpās?

Do you blame me?

Mēnē culpās?

101 Nōnnē? (*i.e.* nōn-nē?) expects yes; num? expects no.¹

Does he not blame me?

Nōnnē mē culpat?

He does not blame me, does he?

Num mē culpat?

102 RULE.—Adjectives signifying *mindfulness, knowledge, or forgetfulness* and *ignorance*, take the Genitive.

1. Mercator sua laudat (32), aliena culpat. 2. Puer vobis carus est; nonne sororem eius amatis? 3. Non omnes semper sui memores sunt. 4. Puellae patrem non habent: omnes eis benigni sunt. 5. Nonne omnes sibi benigni sunt, aliorum immemores? 6. Amici mei Tullium valde amant, et semper eius memores sunt. 7. Soror tua, O amice, patrem suum non amat. 8. Nos sumus vestri memores; sed nemo vestrum nostri memor est.² 9. Mater tua non est tibi carior quam mens pater mihi.³ 10. Laudamus aliena (34), nostra non curamus. 11. Cur non agros vestros curatis, agricolae ignavissimi? 12. Tune, O filiarum pessima, patris tui virtutem culpas? 13. Num tu, viae ignarus, viam aliis monstras? 14. Interdum sui immemor (16a) est.

1. ⁴ *Balbus is not mindful of us; but (67) we love him.* 2. *No one of us praises his folly.* 3. *The girl is dear to us; we love her*

¹ With cūr? why? quīs? who? and other interrogatives, -nē, nōnne, num, are omitted: *Why does he not blame?* Cūr nōn culpat? When nonne and num are used in direct questions, they generally stand at the beginning of the Sentence.

² What case is *vestrum*, and why? Why not *vestri*? What case is *nostrī*, and why? Why not *nostrum*? See Par. 93.

³ Mīhī is Dat., governed by “carus (est)” understood.

⁴ Before doing this exercise, the pupil should read through all the sentences and ask which of the Pronominal Adjectives of the 3rd Pers., his, her, their, &c., can have *own* added to it. Wherever *own* can be added, sūs is the word to be used. But of course this does not apply to Pronouns not of the 3rd Pers. (*my own, your own*), which are to be rendered mēus, &c.

exceedingly. 4. *Thy sister does not love her father.* 5. *His brothers do not love their father.* 6. *Ye praise the fields of others, ye do not take care of your (own) (fields).* 7. *Our sisters are dearer to us, O most cruel (men), than your brothers to you.* 8. *Do ye, (being) ignorant of the way, point-out the way to us, O most foolish (men)?* 9. *Why dost thou blame thy father, and dost not (18) praise his virtue?* 10. *The generals overcome the anger of the soldiers by their wisdom.*

103

DEMONSTRATIVE AND EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

1. **Illē**, *that (yonder); pl. those.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Illē	illā	illūd	Illi	illae	illā
Acc. Illum	illam	illūd	Illos	illas	illā
Gen. Illius	illus	illius	Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat. Illi	illi	illi	Illis	illīs	illīs
Abl. Illo	illā	illo	Illis	illīs	illīs

2. **Istē**, *that (near you, or of yours), often used contemptuously ; declined like illē.*

3. **Hic (-i or -ī)**, *this (near me) ; pl. these.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Hic	haec	hōc	Hi	hae	haec
Acc. Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hos	has	haec
Gen. Huius	huius	huius	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat. Huic	huic	huic	His	hīs	hīs
Abl. Hōc	hāc	hōc	His	hīs	hīs

4. **Ipsē**, *-self, himself, herself, itself; pl. themselres.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum ¹	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsā
Acc. Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsos	ipsas	ipsā
Gen. Ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat. Ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	Ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Abl. Ipso	ipsā	ipso	Ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Note that *ipsē* differs from *illē* only in the Neut. Nom. Singular.

5. **Idem**, *the same* (declined like **is**; but **is-dem** is written **idem**, **id-dem** is written **idem**, and **m** before **-dem** is changed into **n**).

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Idem	ěādem	īdem	Idem	ěāedem	ěādem
Acc.	Eūndem	ěāndem	dem	Fosdem	ěāsdem	ěādem
Gen.	Eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	Eorundem	ěārundem	ěorundem
Dat.	Eidem	eidem	eidem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
Abl.	Ēodem	ěādem	ěodem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem ¹

EXERCISE XXXI.

104 [Do not, for the future, use *thou* or *ye* in translating the Exercises, unless the language is poetical. *You* in English is commonly used of the Singular Number, and will be so used in future Exercises; it should therefore be rendered by *tu*, not by **vos**, unless the context shows that it is Plural].

105 *Ipsē* is an Adj., agreeing in Gender, Number and Case with (1) a Noun or Pronoun understood; or (2) a Noun or Pronoun expressed.

- (1) (*She*) *herself loves me.* **Ipsa** mē āmat.
- (2) *I give this to you yourself,* **Tibī ipsi**, O filia, hōc do.
 O daughter.
- (3) *The queen herself loves.* Rēgīna **ipsa** āmat. .

1. Non **idem** labor eisdem semper jueundus est. 2. Amicus iste fratrem suum non amat. 3. Huic equum, illi canem, isti asinum pigrum agricola dat. 4. In te ipso fons est laetitiae. 5. Non **idem** donum agricolis et nautis gratum est. 6. Vitosi vitium ipsum amant. 7. Homeri et Vergili opera vobis nota sunt; ille² Graecus erat, hic Romanus. 8. Eorundem agricolarum agri non semper pariter fertiles sunt. 9. Num anicorum ipsorum mores eulpatis? 10. Cur huic mulieri dona meliora quam ipsi matri tuae das? 11. Vestis eadem eidem mulieri non semper grata est. 12. Alexandri et Darii nomina nota sunt omnibus: illi laudem, huic misericordiam dāmus.² 13. Quis centum (31) annos vivit?

1. *That gift of-yours is more pleasing to you yourself than to Balbus.* 2. *We all love the same native-land.* 3. *You, O friends, love the same (things), the same danger terrifies*

106

¹ For **eisdem** there is sometimes used **īdem**.

² (1) *Hic*... (2) *hic*, when thus used together, mean (1) *that which is furthest, first-mentioned*... (2) *that which is nearest, last-mentioned*: hence (1) *the former*... (2) *the latter*.

you. 4. *This man we love, this man's conduct we praise.*
 5. *The same-things are not always pleasing to the same-persons* (34). 6. *Why do you give larger gifts to this woman than to your own mother (trans. to your mother herself)?* 7. *The children of the same parents are not always equally beautiful.* 8. *The same vice is worse in a learned man than in an unlearned.* 9. *Do you blame us, O foolish (man)? In you yourself is the cause of these evils.* 10. *Do you give to yourself the best gifts?* 11. *Do you blame us the whole (85) day (long) (31)?*

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

107

1. *Qui*, which (*man, woman, thing*); *who*; *that*.*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd
Gen.	Cuius	cuius	cuius
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	Quī	quae	quae
	Quōs	quās	quae
	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	Quībus	quībus	quībus ¹
	Quībus	quībus	quībus ¹

The Relative in Latin often (1) precedes its Antecedent, and sometimes (2) is placed with it like an Adjective.

- (1) *He whom all love, is praised by all.* **Quem** omnes āmant **is** ab omnibus laudātur.
- (1) *What, or that which, some praise, others blame.* **Quōd** ālii laudant **id** ālii culpant.
- (2) *The friends whom (or what friends) he has, he praises.* **Quōs** āmīcos hābet, laudat.²

108 RULE.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.³

You yourself, sister, who love others, do not love me. **Tū ipsa, sōror, quae ālios āmās,**
inē nōn āmās.

You, brothers, who blame me, praise Tullius, who himself praises me. **Vōs, frātres, qui mē culpātis,**
Tulliūm laudātis, qui ipse mē lāudat.

109

¹ *Quibus* is sometimes contracted into *quiſ*.² Here the Antecedent is repeated, “*quos amicos habet (eos amicos) laudat*”: and it may be said that *quos* agrees (like an Adj.) with the repeated Antecedent, but has for its Antecedent “*eos amicos*” understood.

109a

³ N.B. In Gender, Number, and Person—but not necessarily in Case.

110 2. The Interrogative Pronoun **quiſ** differs in form from the Relative Pronoun merely in the Nom. Sing. Masc. and Neuter: **quiſ?** *who?* **quid?** *what?* The rest of its cases are the same as those of the Relative Pronoun:

Who gives you this?

Quiſ tibi hōc dat?

What do you give me?

Quid mīhi dās?

111 The Interrogative Adjective **qui** is the same as the Relative in every case:¹

What has he done? What Quid fecit? Quod făcīnus misdeed has he committed? **Quid** fecit? **Quod** făcīnus commisit?

EXERCISE XXXII.

112 RULE.—Adjectives signifying *nearness*, e.g. **vīcīnus**, *near (to)*, **fīnītīmūs**, *bordering on*, **proxīmūs**, *nearest, or next (to)*, are followed by the Dative.

1. Qui aliis viam monstrat hunc alii jure (38) laudant. 2. Qui sibi benigniores (65) sunt, ei non semper ab amicis laudantur. 3. Te, O soror, quae haec dona mili das, maxime laudo. 4. Quis hos milites dicit? Quod periculum eos terret? 5. Ego, O fratres, qui vobis dona optima do, nonne sum vobis carissimus? 6. Cuius verba me culpant eum non laudo. 7. Quibus rex dona dat, eos non semper amat. 8. Quae pericula patrem terrent, ea nonne filii timent? 9. Agricola arbores serit quarum fructum ipse non gustat.² 10. Cui patria cara est is bonus civis est. 11. Minae istae quibus agricolae timidi terrentur, militem non terrent. 12. In urbe, quae mari proxima erat, nautae plurimi erant: hue imperator suos (34) dicit. 13. Belgae, quorum agri Gallis finitimi sunt, a Caesare bello superantur.²

1. You, O women, who (108) praise injustice (*i.e. unjust things*) are paying (trans. giving) the penalty of your folly. 2. To you, O sister, who blame your brother, (*your*) brother himself gives this gift. 3. Those whose (113a) conduct is depraved, you do right not to praise (trans. you rightly do not praise). 4. His mother, who loves you exceedingly, praises you too much. 5. Why do you err, (*you*) who point out the way to them? 6. What are you tasting, O boys? What fruit delights you? 7. We who overcome the nations bordering-on us, are overcome by the

*nation next-to the Belgians. 8. The general leads his (men) into a plain which was nearer and larger. 9. You, O soldiers, are entering this city, which the enemy (pl.) at the same (50) time enter. 10. Friends love those who love (their) friends. 11. Who is this (man) whose blame terrifies you?*¹

THE VERB.

114 Latin Verbs are divided into Four Classes called Conjugations. In the third Conjugation the Active Infinitive Present ends in -*ere*, in the rest in -*re*. That part of the word which comes before -*re* or -*ere* is called the Stem, and the last letter of the Stem distinguishes the Conjugation.

		<i>Act., Inf., Pres.</i>
1.	First, or A Conjugation	āmā-re, to love
2.	Second, " E "	mōnē-re, to advise
3. (a)	Third, " Consonant "	rēg-ēre, to rule
(b)	" " U "	minū-ēre, to diminish
4.	Fourth, " I "	audi-re, to hear

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvī, āmātum, āmārē,—to love. Stem: āmā-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. Amo, I love, or am loving	Plur. 1. Am-āmūs, We love, or are loving
2. Am-ās, thou lovest, or art loving	2. Am-ātīs, ye love, or are loving
3. Am-āt, he loves, or is loving.	3. Am-ant, they love, or are loving.

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Sing. Am-ābo, I shall love	Pl. Am-ābīmūs, We shall love
Am-ābīs, thou wilt love	Am-ābītīs, ye will love
Am-ābīt, he will love.	Am-ābūnt, they will love.

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.²

Sing. Am-ābam, I was loving	Pl. Am-ābāmūs, We were loving
Am-ābās, thou wast lov-	Am-ābātīs, ye were loving
ing	
Am-ābāt, he was loving.	Am-ābānt, they were loving.

¹ For additional elementary exercises on the Relative, see p. 186.

² The Imperf. also means *I used-to-love, thou wast-wont-to-love, he used-to-love, &c.* It has other meanings, which must be learned by practice.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. Am-āvī, I have loved,	or I loved	Pl. Am-āvīmūs, We have loved,	or we loved
Am-āvistī, thou hast loved,	or thou lovedst	Am-āvistīs, ye have loved,	or ye loved
Am-āvīt, he has loved,	or he loved.	Am-āvērunt, ^{they have} or ām-āvērē ¹ ^{loved, or} they loved.	they loved.

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-āvēro, I shall have	Am-āvēris, thou wilt have	Am-āvērimūs, We shall have
Am-āvērit, he will have		Am-āvēritīs, ye will have

Am-āvērint,² they will have

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-āvēram, I had loved	Am-āvērāmūs, We had loved.
Am-āvērās, thou hadst loved	Am-āvērātīs, ye had loved
Am-āvērāt, he had loved.	Am-āvērant, they had loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ā, Love thou.	P. Am-ātē, Love ye.
---------------------	---------------------

FUTURE TENSE.³

S. Am-āto, Thou must love	P. Am-ātōtē, Ye must love
Am-āto, he must love.	Am-ānto, they must love.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.⁴

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-em, I may love	Am-ēmūs, ⁵ We may love
Am-ēs, thou mayst love	Am-ētīs, ye may love
Am-ēt, he may love.	Am-ent, they may love.

116

¹ As in English *v* is omitted in *o'er*, *ne'er*, so in Latin -vi- and -ve- are sometimes omitted where no ambiguity would be caused. Thus āmāvisti, āmāvērunt, &c. become āmasti, āmārunt, &c.; but āmāvīmus, āmāvēre, cannot be contracted into āmāmūs, āmāre, because these contractions would be liable to be confused with the Pres. Indic. and Pres. Infin.

² The usual pronunciation is āmāverīs, āmāverīmus; but the i is sometimes long.

117

³ The Tense distinction between the Forms of the Imperative is very doubtful. The forms in -o are generally reserved for legal language: see Par. 129. *Must* is seldom expressed by the Imperative, see Par. 163, 168.

118

⁴ This Mood is sometimes called the Conjunctive. The meanings *I may love* and *I might love* are seldom attached to the Subjunctive without the accompanying conjunction ūt (*that*).

118a

⁵ Amēmūs, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us love*.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ārem, <i>I might love</i>	Am-ārēmūs, <i>We might love</i>
Am-ārēs, <i>thou mightst love</i>	Am-ārētīs, <i>ye might love</i>
Am-ārēt, <i>he might love.</i>	Am-ārent, <i>they might love.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-āvērim, <i>I may</i>	have	Am-āvērimūs, <i>We may</i>
Am-āvērīs, <i>thou mayst</i>		Am-āvēritīs, <i>ye may</i>
Am-āvērīt, <i>he may</i>		Am-āvērint, <i>they may</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-āvissēm, <i>I should</i>	have	Am-āvissēmūs, <i>We should</i>
Am-āvissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>		Am-āvissētīs, <i>ye would</i>
Am-āvissēt, <i>he would</i>		Am-āvissēnt, <i>they would</i>

V

INFINITIVE MOOD.¹

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and	Am-ārē,	<i>to love.</i>
IMPERF.		
PERF. and	Am-āvissē,	<i>{ to have loved.</i>
PLUPERF.		
FUTURE.	Am-ātūrūs	<i>{ to be essē,</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> Am-andī,	<i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Am-andō,	<i>for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum,	<i>the loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Am-andō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINES.

Am-ātūm, ²	<i>to love.</i>
Am-ātū, ²	<i>in loving.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Am-ans, -antis, &c.,	<i>[loving.</i>
FUTURE. Am-ātūrūs (ā, um),	
	<i>[about to love.</i>

¹ This part of the Verb is sometimes spoken of as the *Verb Infinite*, and not as the *Infinitive Mood*.

119 ² The Supines are really Nouns used *only in the Acc. and Abl.*; (1) the Supine in -um after Verbs of Motion, (2) the Supine in -u with a few Adjectives, Exercise LXXIV.

Hence **āmātūm** can never be used (as **amāre** is, Par. 34) for the Subject of a Verb.

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneo, mōnuī, mōnitum, mōnērē,—*to advise.* Stem : mōnē-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-eo , ¹	<i>I advise, or am advising</i>	Mōn-ēmūs ,	<i>We advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēs ,	<i>thou advisest, or art advising</i>	Mōn-ētīs ,	<i>ye advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēt ,	<i>he advises, or is advising.</i>	Mōn-ent ,	<i>they advise, or are advising.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mōn-ēbo ,	<i>I shall advise</i>	Mōn-ēbūmūs ,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīs ,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbītīs ,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīt ,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt ,	<i>they will advise.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ēbam ,	<i>I was advising</i>	Mōn-ēbāmūs ,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās ,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātīs ,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt ,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant ,	<i>they were advising.²</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uī ,	<i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	Mōn-uīmūs ,	<i>We have advised, or we advised</i>
Mōn-uistī ,	<i>thou hast advised, or advisedst</i>	Mōn-uistīs ,	<i>ye have advised, or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt ,	<i>he has advised, or he advised.</i>	Mōn-uērunt ,	<i>they have advised, or they advised.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uēro , <i>I shall</i>	<i>have advised.</i>	Mōn-uērīmūs , <i>We shall</i>	
Mōn-uērīs , <i>thou wilt</i>		Mōn-uērītīs , <i>ye will</i>	
Mōn-uērīt , <i>he will</i>		Mōn-uērint , <i>they will</i>	<i>have advised.</i>

¹ The quantity of the e before o, and of u before i is not marked, because it is an invariable rule in Latin that *a vowel before another vowel is short*: see Appendix VII., p. 230.

² The Imperf. also means *I used-to-advise, thou wast-wont-to-advise, he used-to-advise, &c.*

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uēram, <i>I had advised</i>	Mōn-uērāmūs, <i>We had advised</i>
Mōn-uērās, <i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mōn-uērātīs, <i>ye had advised</i>
Mōn-uērāt, <i>he had advised.</i>	Mōn-uērant, <i>they had advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-ē,	<i>Advise thou.</i>	Mōn-ētē,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
---------------	---------------------	-----------------	-------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mōn-ēto,	<i>Thou must advise</i>	Mōn-ētōtē,	<i>Ye must advise</i>
Mōn-ēto,	<i>he must advise.</i>	Mōn-ento,	<i>they must advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-eam, <i>I may advise</i>	Mōn-eāmūs, <i>We may advise</i> ¹
Mōn-eās, <i>thou mayst advise</i>	Mōn-eātīs, <i>ye may advise</i>
Mōn-eāt, <i>he may advise.</i>	Mōn-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ērem, <i>I might advise</i>	Mōn-ērēmūs, <i>We might advise</i>
Mōn-ērēs, <i>thou mightst advise</i>	Mōn-ērētīs, <i>ye might advise</i>
Mōn-ērēt, <i>he might advise.</i>	Mōn-ērent, <i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uērim, <i>I may have advised.</i>	Mōn-uērīmūs, <i>We may have advised.</i>
Mōn-uērīs, <i>thou mayst have advised.</i>	Mōn-uērītīs, <i>ye may have advised.</i>
Mōn-uērīt, <i>he may have advised.</i>	Mōn-uērint, <i>they may have advised.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uissēm, <i>I should have advised.</i>	Mōn-uissēmūs, <i>We should have advised.</i>
Mōn-uissēs, <i>thou wouldest have advised.</i>	Mōn-uissētīs, <i>ye would have advised.</i>
Mōn-uissēt, <i>he would have advised.</i>	Mōn-uissent, <i>they would have advised.</i>

¹ **Mōneāmūs**, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us advise.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF.	M ōn-ērē, <i>to advise.</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF.	M ōn-uissē, <i>{to have advised.</i>
FUTURE.	M ōn-ītūrūs <i>{to be essē, <i>{about to advise.</i></i>

GERUND.

Gen.	M ōn-endī, <i>of advising</i>
Dat.	M ōn-endō, <i>for advising</i>
Acc.	M ōn-endum, <i>the advising</i>
Abl.	M ōn-endō, <i>by advising.</i>

SUPINES.

M ōn-ītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
M ōn-ītū,	<i>in advising.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	M ōn-ens, -entis, &c., <i>advising.</i>
FUTURE.	M ōn-ītūrūs (<i>ă, um</i>), <i>about to advise.</i>

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—*to rule.* Stem: rēg-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

R ēg-o, <i>I rule, or am</i>	<i>ruling.</i>	R ēg-īmūs, <i>We rule, or are</i>
R ēg-īs, <i>thou rulest, or art</i>		R ēg-ītīs, <i>ye rule, or are</i>
R ēg-īt, <i>he rules, or is</i>		R ēg-unt, <i>they rule, or are</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

R ēg-am, <i>I shall rule</i>	<i>they will rule.</i>	R ēg-ēmūs, <i>We shall rule</i>
R ēg-ēs, <i>thou wilt rule</i>		R ēg-ētīs, <i>ye will rule</i>
R ēg-ēt, <i>he will rule.</i>		R ēg-ent, <i>they will rule.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

R ēg-ēbam, <i>I was ruling</i>	<i>they were ruling.</i>	R ēg-ēbāmūs, <i>We were ruling</i>
R ēg-ēbās, <i>thou wast ruling</i>		R ēg-ēbātīs, <i>ye were ruling</i>
R ēg-ēbāt, <i>he was ruling.</i>		R ēg-ēbānt, <i>they were ruling.</i>

¹ The Imperf. also means *I used-to-rule, thou wast-wont-to-rule, he used-to-rule, &c.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ī,	<i>I have ruled, or I ruled</i>	Rex-īmūs,	<i>We have ruled, or we ruled</i>
Rex-istī,	<i>thou hast ruled, or thou rulest</i>	Rex-istīs,	<i>ye have ruled, or ye ruled</i>
Rex-īt,	<i>he has ruled, or he ruled.</i>	Rex-ērunt, or } rex-ērē,	<i>they have ruled, or they ruled.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ēro,	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
Rex-ērīs,	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	Rex-ēritīs,	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
Rex-ērīt,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	Rex-ērint,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ēram,	<i>I had ruled</i>	Rex-ērāmūs,	<i>We had ruled</i>
Rex-ērās,	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	Rex-ērātīs,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
Rex-ērāt,	<i>he had ruled.</i>	Rex-ērant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-ě,	<i>Rule thou.</i>	Rēg-ītē,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
---------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rēg-īto,	<i>Thou shalt or must rule</i>	Rēg-ītōtē,	<i>Ye shall or must rule</i>
Rēg-īto,	<i>he shall or must rule.</i>	Rēg-unto,	<i>they shall or must [rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-am,	<i>I may rule</i>	Rēg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule¹</i>
Rēg-ās,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	Rēg-ātīs,	<i>ye may rule</i>
Rēg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rēg-ērem,	<i>I might rule</i>	Rēg-ērēmūs,	<i>We might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēs,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	Rēg-ērētīs,	<i>ye might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>	Rēg-ērent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ērim,	<i>I may } have</i>	Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We may } have</i>
Rex-ērīs,	<i>thou mayst } ruled.</i>	Rex-ērītīs,	<i>ye may } ruled.</i>
Rex-ērīt,	<i>he may }</i>	Rex-ērint,	<i>they may }</i>

¹ Rēgāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us rule.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-issem, <i>I should</i>	<i>hare</i>	Rex-issēmūs, <i>We should</i>
Rex-issēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>		Rex-issētīs, <i>ye would</i>
Rex-issēt, <i>he would</i>		Rex-issent, <i>they would</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.

GERUND.

PRES. and	Rēg-érē, <i>to rule.</i>	Gen. Rēg-endī, <i>of ruling</i>
IMPERF.		Dat. Rēg-endō, <i>for ruling</i>
PERF. and	Rex-issē, <i>{ to have</i>	Acc. Rēg-endum, <i>the ruling</i>
PLUPERF.		<i>ruled.</i>
FUTURE.	Rec-tūrūs <i>{ to be</i>	Abl. Rēg-endō, <i>by ruling.</i>
		<i>about</i>
	<i>essē,</i> <i>{ to rule.</i>	

SUPINES.

PARTICIPLES.

Rec-tūm, *to rule.***Rēg-ens, -entis, &c.,****Rec-tū,** *in ruling.**[ruling.]***Rec-tūrūs** (*ā, um,*)*[about to rule.]*

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvī, audītūm, audīrē,—to hear. Stem : **audī-**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iō, <i>I hear, or am</i>	<i>hearing.</i>	Aud-īmūs, <i>We hear, or are</i>
Aud-īs, <i>thou hearest, or art</i>		Aud-ītīs, <i>ye hear, or are</i>
Aud-īt, <i>he hears, or is</i>		Aud-iunt, <i>they hear, or are</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iām, <i>I shall hear</i>	<i></i>	Aud-iēmūs, <i>We shall hear</i>
Aud-iēs, <i>thou wilt hear</i>		Aud-iētīs, <i>ye will hear</i>
Aud-iēt, <i>he will hear.</i>		Aud-iēnt, <i>they will hear</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iēbam, <i>I was hearing</i>	<i></i>	Aud-iēbāmūs, <i>We were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbās, <i>thou wast hearing</i>		Aud-iēbātīs, <i>ye were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbāt, <i>he was hearing.</i>		Aud-iēbānt, <i>they were hearing.</i> ¹

¹ The Imperf. also means, *I used-to-hear, thou wast-wont-to-hear, he used-to-hear, &c.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivī,	<i>I have heard, or I heard</i>	Aud-ivīmūs,	<i>We have heard, or we heard</i>
Aud-ivistī,	<i>thou hast heard. or thou heardst</i>	Aud-ivistīs,	<i>ye have heard, or ye heard</i>
Aud-ivīt,	<i>he has heard, or he heard.</i>	Aud-ivērunt,	<i>they have heard, or -ivērē, } or they heard.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall } have</i>	Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We shall } have</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou wilt } heard.</i>	Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye will } heard.</i>
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he will }</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they will }</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivēram,	<i>I had heard</i>	Aud-ivērāmūs,	<i>We had heard</i>
Aud-ivērās,	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	Aud-ivērātīs,	<i>ye had heard</i>
Aud-ivērāt,	<i>he had heard.</i>	Aud-ivērant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-i,	<i>Hear thou.</i>	Aud-itē,	<i>Hear ye.</i>
---------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Aud-ito,	<i>Thou must hear</i>	Aud-itōtē,	<i>Ye must hear</i>
Aud-ito,	<i>he must hear.</i>	Aud-iunto,	<i>they must hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iām,	<i>I may hear</i>	Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear¹</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	Aud-iātīs,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iānt,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-irēm,	<i>I might hear</i>	Aud-irēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	Aud-irētīs,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear</i>	Aud-irēnt,	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may } have</i>	Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We may } have</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou mayst } heard.</i>	Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye may } heard.</i>
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he may }</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may }</i>

¹ Audiāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us hear*.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Audivissem</i> , <i>I should</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>Aud-ivissēmūs</i> , <i>We should</i>
<i>Aud-ivissēs</i> , <i>thou wouldest</i>		<i>Aud-ivissētīs</i> , <i>ye would</i>
<i>Aud-ivissēt</i> , <i>he would</i>		<i>Aud-ivissent</i> , <i>they would</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD

INFINITIVES.		GERUND.
PRES. and IMPERF.	Aud-irē , <i>to hear.</i>	
PERF. and PLUPERF.	Aud-ivissē , { <i>to have</i> { <i>heard.</i>	
FUTURE.	{ Aud-itūrūs { <i>to be</i> essē, { <i>about</i> { <i>to hear.</i>	

SUPINES.

Aud-itūm ,	<i>to hear.</i>
Aud-itū ,	<i>in hearing.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	Aud-iens , -entis, [&c., <i>hearing.</i>
FUTURE.	Aud-itūrūs (ā, um), [<i>about to hear.</i>

121 In the Fourth, (as in the First) Conjugation, the omission of **v** causes the following

CONTRACTED FORMS.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Audiī	Audiīmus	Audiero
Audiisti (audisti)	Audiistis (audistis)	Audieris, &c.
Audiit	Audiērunt	Audierit, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.	PERFECT.
Audiissem (audissem)	Audiissemus (audissemus)
Audiisses (audisses)	Audiissetis (audissetis)
Audiisset (audisset)	Audiissent (audissent)

INFINITIVE-PERFECT.

Audiisse (audisse).

THE LATIN PERFECT.

The Latin Tenses are inferior to the English in fulness as will be seen from the following Table:

Capto, *I catch.*

	Simple or Indefinite.	Incomplete.	Complete.
Present.	<i>I catch</i> capto	<i>I am catching</i> capto	<i>I have caught</i> CAPTĀVI¹
Future.	<i>I shall catch</i> captābo	<i>I shall be catching</i> captābo	<i>I shall have caught</i> captāvero
Past.	<i>I caught</i> CAPTĀVI	<i>I was catching</i> captābam	<i>I had caught</i> captāveram ²

122 The Latin Perfect, *captāvi*, has to express two English Tenses, and though it is always called "Perfect," i.e. *complete*, it is really not always Perfect or Complete, but :

1. Sometimes *Complete Present*, *captāvi*, *I have caught*.
2. Sometimes *Simple Past*, *captāvi*, *I caught*.

¹ That this Present Complete Tense, *I have caught*, is really a Present (though the result of a past action) may be seen from such a sentence as "*I have caught this fish*," which means "*I have (present) this fish—in my pocket, basket*," &c. Until the pupil clearly understands that the English Complete Present is a *Present* and not a *Past* Tense, he will never intelligently master the rule for the Latin Sequence of Tenses.

² Besides these, other columns might have been added by substituting "been catching" for "caught" in the third column: *I have been catching*, *I shall have been catching*, *I had been catching*, and by substituting "about to catch" for "catching" in the second column.

These two meanings of the Latin Perf. are called (1) "the Perfect with *have*," (2) "the Perfect without *have*."

EXERCISE XXXIII.

- 123** APPOSITION.—When two Nouns (or a Noun and Pronoun) are *placed together* without a Conjunction, so that one describes the other, they are said to be *in Apposition*, and both are in the same case.

- 124** When a *Noun* is in Apposition to a *Name*, the *Name* stands *second in English*, but *first in Latin*.

Balbus, impérátor clárissimus (70), hostem súperat.

I will give a book to the industrious boy Tullius.

- 125** "IF" WITH ENGLISH PRESENT often refers to *Future time*, and must then be translated by Latin Fut. Simple or Fut. Perfect:

I will give it if he asks.

Dăbo sī rögābit (or -āvěrit).

1. Sidera iter nautis monstrabant. 2. Hieme nautae aestatem laudabunt. 3. Dābo librum ei, si rogabit.¹ 4. Nonne puel-lam diligentem laudabit? 5. Qui nos culpatis, nonne vos ipsos emendatis? 6. Cur me vituperabatis (32), vos ipsos laudabatis? 7. Agricolae agrum, equum militi donabimus. 8. Judici, viro justissimo,² rex injustus inimicus erat. 9. Tulliae, puellae optimae, cur non praemium donas? 10. Nemo Germanorum, gentis fortissimae, tam pravos mores laudat.³
 1. You, O women, who praised (108) injustice (34), will rightly pay the penalty. 2. To you, O sister, who blamed your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift. 3. Those whose morals are depraved, you were right in not praising (trans. you rightly did not praise). 4. His excellent mother (trans. his mother, a most excellent woman), who loved you exceedingly, praised you too-much. 5. Will you point out the way to us, (you) who your-

¹ The Latin Future, after **sī**, must be translated by English Present.

² Lit. *the judge, a very just man*, but in English we say *the very just judge*, or, more commonly (70), *the just judge*. Why is *viro* Dat.? Ans. *Dat. in Apposition with jūdīci*. Why is *gentis* (Sent. 10) Genitive?

³ In Apposition, write the literal English first and the idiomatic English afterwards: e.g. "Germanis, genti fortissimae" lit., to the Germans, a very brave race, i.e., to the brave race of the Germans.
N.B.—Two Nouns in Apposition need not be of the same Number.

selves often err? 6. We used to praise the conduct of the (126) brave centurion Tullius. 7. I shall not punish the boy if he improves (125) his conduct. 8. They will not err if the leader points out the way to them.

EXERCISE XXXIV.¹

127 If the Subject consists of two Nouns or Pronouns, the Verb is in the Plural; but the Verb agrees with the First Person rather than the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third.

1. Si tu et frater tuus peccaveritis (125a), leges vos castigabunt.
2. Judicem, quia male judicaverat, ego et frater meus graviter culpavimus.
3. Piscator et nauta, qui iter militibus antea monstraverant, jam ipsi erraverunt.
4. Milites ferro ignique agros regis sui vastaverunt.
5. Hieme, si venti flaverint, nautae mare formidabunt.
6. Cur Tullium, hominem innocentissimum, castigavistis?
7. Agricolae stultissimi aestate calorem, hieme frigus culpaverunt.
8. Rex militibus, indignis dono (28), equos pulcherrimos donaverat.
9. Nonne vobis haec dona ego et Tullius donavimus?
10. Graeci Trojanos equo ligneo, dono perniciose (126a) superaverunt.
11. Qui virtutem maxime simulavere, ei jani maxime erravere.
12. Quos quondam castigastis, ei iterum peccarunt.

11. You and I have presented excellent gifts to his mother.²
2. Why did the unjust judge Tullius (126) chastise the innocent Balbus (trans. Balbus, a most innocent man)?³
3. In winter, O husbandmen, you had blamed the cold, in summer the heat.
4. The king had given a horse to the same soldier whom he had before blamed.
5. If you overcome (trans. shall have overcome) the enemy, O soldiers, all will praise you.
6. Did (127b) not you and Tullius blame the kind Balbus?
7. The women dreaded the sea because the winds had blown violently.
8. Did not you, O Greeks, present to the Trojans the destructive gift of a wooden horse (trans. a wooden horse, a most destructive gift)?
9. Why did you, who pointed out the road to others, yourselves err?
10. You and Balbus blamed Alexander, the most illustrious of generals.

¹ For this and future Exercises the pupil must look out the words in the Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies at the end of the book.

² In English we say "you and I," in Latin the order is reversed, "Ego et tu."

³ The English Simple Past inserts *did*, when used negatively or interrogatively: "you blamed"; but "did you blame?" "you did not blame." But all three are expressed by the Latin Perfect.

THE INFINITIVE.

128 The Infinitive (though not declinable like a Noun) is nevertheless used as the Subject or Direct Object of a Verb :

To err is human.

Boys like to jump.

Errāre (nom.) humānuin est.

Puēri saltāre (acc.) āmant.

The Infinitive, although used as Subject or Object, may itself have an Object, and may be modified by an Adverb.

The woman desires to get wealth. Mūlier dīvītias pārāre optat.

To have gained fame honourably is sweet. Fāmam hōnestē pārāvisse dulcē (34) est.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Peccare facile est, mores emendare difficillimum (est). 2. Quis non divitias comparare optat ? 3. Saltare dulce est puellis, senibus autem molestissimum. 4. Aestate omnes nare amamus.¹ 5. Melius est virtutem quam aurum parare. 6. Amicum amare praesenteim dulce est ; desiderare absentem est tristissimum.¹ 7. Peccare leve est plerisque pueris ; senibus peccavisse est acerbissimum. 8. Pericula superare saepe durum est ; superasse semper dulcissimum est.
1. *It is easier to blame than to praise.* 2. *To whom is it not pleasant to swim in summer?* 3. *It is sad for an old man to have sinned.* 4. *To all it is most pleasant to have overcome dangers by wise counsels.* 5. *Most men desire to get gold and silver.* 6. *You and I love to walk by night ; Tullius and his (98, 2) brother love to walk by day.* 7. *It is very easy to swim ; it is very difficult to swim well.* 8. *To have erred is sad ; to err is sadder.*

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, PROHIBITIONS.

129 The word for *not* in commands is nē. But this is seldom used with the Present Imperative except in Poetry, and seldom with (what is sometimes called) the Future Imperative, *except in legal forms.* Consequently, for the negative Imperative—

¹ Omnes agrees with "nos" understood.

² Absentem agrees with "amicum" understood

RULE.—Use *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive of the Second Person, and with the Present Subjunctive of other Persons.¹

*Singular.**Do not love.**Nē āmāvēris.**Let him not love.**Nē āmet.**Plural.**Do not love.**Nē āmāvērītis.**Let them not love.**Nē āment.*

The First and Third Persons Plural of the Subjunctive can be used, with or without *nē*, in an Imperative sense :

*Let us (not) love.**(Nē) āmēmus.**Let him amend his conduct.**Emendet mōres.*

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. Emendate mores vestros. 2. Obtempera, O puer, patri. 3. Ne sontes poenam vitent. 4. Ne castigaveritis insontem; ne mortuum culpaveritis. 5. Huic magistratui omnes cives obtemperanto. 6. Amemus amicos, inimicos ne vituperemus. 7. Praeceptor discipulos verberibus paucis castigato. 8. Regem, si injustus est, ne tu laudaveris. 9. Virgines Vestales ignem curanto. 10. Judicem justum laudā; injustum culpā, sed ne vituperaveris.
1. *Let us love absent friends.* 2. *Let us prepare arms; let not the enemy overcome us.* 3. *Take-care-of his children, O friends; do not blame the dead.* 4. *Do not appease the gods, O foolish (men), with victims; appease them with pious deeds.* 5. *Let (legal) ten maidens carry the image of Diana.* 6. *Let us praise virtue, let us not punish the good.* 7. *Tullius is guilty; let him not avoid punishment.* 8. *Let us not blame those-who-are-worthy (i.e. the worthy) of (28) praise (5a).*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—I.

(Expressing purpose.)

- 130** The Subjunctive Mood (besides other uses which will be hereafter mentioned) is used when a Verb is *subjoined* to another Verb, in order to express purpose.

¹ The Subjunctive, when not subjoined to some principal Verb, is sometimes called the Conjunctive: and some use the term Conjunctive in all instances instead of Subjunctive. For the method of expressing a prohibition by *nōli* with the Infinitive, see Par. 169.

131 In such cases, *that* or *in order that* is expressed by *ut*; *that . . . not*, by *nē*.

132 The Tenses of the Subjunctive are:

(1) *Present, after (a) Pres. (whether Simple or Complete); after (b) Future Indic.; and after (c) Imperative.*

(2) *Past, after Past Tenses :*

- | | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| 1. (a) <i>I punish, or have pun-
ished</i> ¹
(b) <i>I shall pun-
ish</i>
(c) <i>Punish</i> | <i>the boy</i>
<i>that</i>
<i>he may</i>
<i>amend</i>
<i>his</i>
<i>conduct.</i> | <i>(a) Castigo, or
Castigāvi</i>
<i>(b) Castigābo</i>
<i>(c) Castigā</i> | <i>puērum ut</i>
<i>mōres ēmendet.</i> |
| 2. (a) <i>I punished</i>
(b) <i>I was pun-
ishing</i>
(c) <i>I had pun-
ished</i> | <i>the boy</i>
<i>that</i>
<i>he might</i>
<i>amend</i>
<i>his</i>
<i>conduct.</i> | <i>(a) Castigāvi</i>
<i>(b) Castigābam</i>
<i>(c) Castigāvēram</i> | <i>puērum ut</i>
<i>mōres</i>
<i>ēmendāret.</i> |

133 CAUTION.—The precise meaning of the ambiguous word *castigāvi* cannot be ascertained until we see whether it is followed by the Present or Imperf. Subj. If it is followed by the Present, it must be rendered *I have punished*; if by the Imperf., *I punished*.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Nauta sidera servabit ne ex itinere erret. 2. Urbem rex aedificabat ut in eā quattuor millia civium habitarent. 3. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocent. 3a. Nostri terraū vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocarent. 4. Agricola agros araverat ut segetem sibi pararet. 5. Parate arma, cives, ut hostem propulseatis. 6. Cives arma celeriter paraverant ne milites urbem expugnarent. 7. Castigavi te ut mores emedes. 8. Senex in horto ambulavit ut floribus se (35) pulcherrimis delectaret. 9. Rex judicem in justum capite multavit ut ceteri judices rectē judicent.² 10. Balbum praemio decoravi ut litteras amet; Tullium heri (*adv.*) casti-

¹ *I have punished* is really a (complete) Present Tense: Par. 122, note.

² See *căput* in Vocab.: *căpîte* may be parsed as *Abl. of Instr.*, as it is here used to denote *the punishment of death*.

gavi ne iterum peccaret. 11. Germanos, gentem ferocissimam (126a), armis propulsate, ne fines vestros vastent. 12. Aliis equos aliis arma donemus (118), ne viam hostibus monstrent.

1. *Let us lay-waste the lands of the enemy that they may not fight a second time.*
2. *The citizens will point out the way for us that we may not err.*
3. *We pointed out the way for the beautiful maiden (124) Tullia that she might not err.*
4. *Our (men) will build for you, O Tullius (13), a great house, that your friends may dicell in it.*
5. *Let us build a temple and prepare victims that we appease Jupiter.*
6. *We have prepared arms that we may repulse the enemy.*
7. *We chastised the boy that he might improve his (98) conduct.*
8. *He had preserved the letter of (his) sister that you might not blame her.*
9. *Why do you not walk in the garden that you may delight yourselves with the scent of the beautiful flowers (5a)?*
10. *He was hastening into the garden that he might show the flowers to his friends.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—II.

(Expressing a Dependent Question.)

Hitherto the Subjunctive in Latin has been expressed by the English *may* or *might*; we now come to idioms where the ordinary English *Indicative* has to be expressed by the Latin Subjunctive.

- 134** 1. A DIRECT OR INDEPENDENT QUESTION is a question in the words of the speaker :

<i>Does he love me?</i>	Num mē āmat?
<i>Does he not love me?</i>	Nōnne mē āmat?

- 135** 2. AN INDIRECT OR DEPENDENT QUESTION is one that is the Subject or Object of a Verb (called the Principal Verb) :

I will ask {whether he loves me. *Interrōgābo* {num mē āmet.
 } whether he does not love me. } nōnnē inē āmet.

- 136** RULE.—An Indirect or Dependent Question is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive.

The Tense, in an Indirect Question, depends on the Tense of the Principal Verb; and the rule is, as above

(132), that *Present Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Present Tenses of the Indicative, and Past Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Past Tenses of the Indicative.*

1. Ask	(a) whether they love, Interrogā	(a) num mē
I ask	or are loving me. Interrogō	āment.
I will ask	(b) whether they loved Interrogābo	(b) num mē
I have asked	me ¹ Interrogāvi	āmāvērint. ²
	(a) whether they loved, or	
2. I was asking	were lov- Interrogābam	(a) num mē āmārent.
I asked	ing me. Interrogāvi	
I had asked	(b) whether they Interrogāveram	(b) num mē āmāvissent. ²
	had loved me.	

137 (1) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is either Imperative, or Indic. Pres., Fut., or “Perf. with *have*”—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Pres. Subj., or Perf. Subjunctive.

138 (2) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is Indic. Imperf., Pluperf., or “Perf. without *have*” (*i.e.* Simple Past)—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Imperf. Subj., or Pluperf. Subjunctive.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

139 *Quidem* (67) *on the one hand*, is often followed by the *and* enclitic *vero*, *however, but yet* (to be distinguished from **139a** *vérē*, *truthfully*). *Equidem*, a form of *quidem*, is often used with the First Person in the Nom. to mean *I on the one hand*, *i.e. I at all events, I for my part.*

- A. 1. Hodie quidem paremus (118a) arina ; cras vero hostem propulsemus. 2. Tu quidem me interrogas quid fecerim ; ego vero nihil respondeo. 3. Balbo quidem omnia monstravi ; tibi autem nihil. 4. Quaero cur fratrum alterum quidem laudes, alterum autem culpes. 5. Evidem hoc affirmo, tu vero unus (96) negas. 6. Interrogat cur mihi quidem multades, Tullio autem nihil.

¹ A common error is to write “āmārent,” in 1. b., “because the English is not *have loved*, but *loved*:” but the Latin Perf. Subj. (like the Latin Perf. Indic.) represents *loved*, as well as *have loved*.

² Do not translate the Latin Subjunctive in a Dependent *Question* by *may*, *might*, *could*, *should*, &c.; in a Dependent *Question*, it must be translated by the English Indicative.

140 *Quisquē, quaequē, quodquē* (*pron. form quicquē*), *each*, often follows a Superl. (with a Sing. Verb) to denote *all*:

All the worst men deny this.

This is denied by all the best citizens.

Pessimus quisque hoc negat.

Hoc ab **optimo quōquē ci-**
vium nēgātur.

B. 1. Interrogabimus num miles fidem servaverit.¹ 2. Evidet
rogo nonne puer vera narraverit; tu vero nihil affirmas.
3. Regina interrogavit num fabri aedes aedificavissent (*or*
aedificassent). 4. Renuntiate mihi, O exploratores, num
hostis in eo loco insidias paret. 5. Miles centurionibus non
renuntiavit num hostes proelium pararent (*were preparing*).
6. Valde dubito num nuntius vera narraverit. 7. Sapien-
tissimus quisque nostrum (93) dubitabat num milites vera
narrant. 8. Nonne rogabis puerum num ita peccaverit?
9. Explorabamus nun hostes luc properarent. 10. Ne
dubitemus, O amici, num hostes arma parent. 11. Si nobis
renuntiabitis quo in loco hostes insidias parent, fortissimum
quemque civium convocabimus ut eos propulssemus. 12.
Rogavit patrem num domum (139b) pararet ut nos in ea
habitaremus.

1. I for my part will ask whether the enemy laid-waste our territories; but the messenger will not relate the truth (i.e. true things). 2. He asked whether the enemy took the city by storm.² 3. Bring-back-word to me, O friend, whether the enemy is hastening hither. 4. Will you not ask all (140) the bravest of our-men whether they prepared arms? 5. Call-together the citizens that the enemy may not lay-waste our lands. 6. I had asked your father whether he had built a home that your brothers might dwell in it. 7. I doubt whether the enemy has laid waste these lands. 8. Let us explore whether the enemy is hastening hither. 9. You were asking the boy whether he had thus sinned. 10. They asked whether he had not (135) called-together the citizens.

140 α

¹ Note that in this and similar sentences (where the Perf. Subj. follows the Pres. or Fut. Indic.) there is often an ambiguity. It may mean "whether the soldier *kept his word*," or "whether the soldier *has kept his word*." Both translations should be given.

1406

² Here, for *took*, may be read *had taken*; and therefore the *Pluperf. Subj.* may be used. N.B.—Whenever, after a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the English Simple Past, e.g. *took*, may be replaced by the English Complete Past, e.g. *had taken*, the *Pluperf. Subj.* may be used in Latin. The *Imperf. Subj.* might mean *was taking*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

- 141** *Not even* is nē...quidem : but nē must be separated from quidem by the word which even modifies :

- (1) *Not even you will deny this.* Nē tū quidem hōc nēgābis.¹
 (2) *Not even the smallest tree.* Nē mīnīma quidem arbor.¹

- 141a** The Latin for *even* (without a negative) is *vēl*, or *ět̄iam*, coming before the word emphasized.

*This is clear even to the blind,
easy even for boys.*

- 142** RULE.—Some Verbs signifying (1) *pleasing*, *obeying*, *helping*, (2) *displeasing*, *disobeying*, and *harming*, take the Dative.

1. Dolere inutile est. 2. Graviter dolebam quod (*conj.*) tu, O fili, pàrentibus tuis non pàres. 3. Pueri patribus pàrento. 4. Leges justae bonis civibus placebunt. 5. Milites ducem timebant, qui plurimos eorum (91) minis et suppliciis crudelissimis terruerat. 6. Nunc quidem monemus; mox vero, verberibus nisi pàrebis, te coercebimus. 7. Ne tu, senex benevolentissime, pessimum exemplum pueris (129) praebueris. 8. Epaminondas exemplum optimum omnibus imperatoribus praebuit. 9. Cui non avium cantus placet, eum ne cithara quidem movebit. 10. Cur puellam eam minis terretis, quam nemo docuit, cui nemo exemplum bonum praebuit? 11. Senioribns ne displiceris; patri matrique obtempera. 12. Alexander, victor clarissimus, Poro, Indorum regi, veniam dedit.³

1. To teach is more useful than to weep. 2. Why did you not set a better example to your son? 3. Do not terrify this girl with threats. 4. If you obey your parents, your children will obey you. 5. Not even the most costly banquets will please the sick (men). 6. Do not displease your mother, O boys; obey (your) elders, who advise you well. 7. You, who terrify others, yourself fear all things. 8. He does not obey even his own (141, 2)

- 142** ¹ N.B.—(a) In this phrase alone it is allowable to use *nē* with the Indicative Mood. (b) *Quidem*, without *nē*, never means *even*. (c) In translating *nē . . . quidem*, be careful to put *even* before the word that precedes *quidem*: *not even you, not even the smallest*.

- ² *Sunt*, (or *est*), is often omitted where the omission causes no ambiguity.

⁸ Why is Pōro Dat.? Why is rēgi? See Par. 123.

father. 9. *Those whom you were advising were wiser and better than those whom you had not advised.* 10. *You are destroying, O soldiers, a most prosperous city with fire and sword.*

EXERCISE XL.

The Perfects of some Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in -vi instead of -ui: but the parts of Verb after u and i are always the same, e.g. dēleo, dēlēvi:

<i>Perf.</i> mōnu- dēlēv-	} -i, -isti, -it, &c.
<i>Pluperf.</i> mōnu- dēlēv-	} -ěram, -ěras, -ěrat, &c.
<i>2nd. Fut.</i> mōnu- dēlēv-	} -ěro, -ěris, -ěrit, &c.

1. Interrogabo civem nonne legibus pareat. 2. Interrogavi regis filium cur non melius exemplum ceteris militibus praeberet. 3. Coerce linguam istam ne forte tibi noceat. 4. Sapientes corpus exercebunt ut mentem sanam habeant. 5. Renuntia ei num milites ejus agricolas nostros terruerint. 6. Interrogavi fortissimum quemque (140) militum nonne hostes urbem jam delevissent. 7. Num dulce est olim multa habuisse, nunc habere nihil? 8. Qui legibus parebit eum leges non terrebunt. 9. Ne tu invidiam timueris; sed virtute malevolos, invidos modestia coerce. 10. Plurimum pecuniae eidem mulieri donavit quam antea minis terruerat.¹ 11. Barbari tantam urbem habent quantum ipsi non habemus.² 12. Dux tantum pecuniae donabat militibus quantum rogaverunt. 13. Interrogabo adulescentem cur hesterna nocte tam crudelibus minis fratrem meum terruerit.

1. *Do not restrain a young-man too much lest he obey you, (but) not virtue.* 2. *Why did you not restrain the young-men (127b) that they might obey their parents?* 3. *Since not even punishment terrified him, certainly threats will not terrify him.* 4. *Why do you not obey him to whom you owe so-much?* 5. *Ask whether the young-man whose (113a) death is now known to us was older than my brother.* 6. *I did not terrify the boy with threats, lest (the) work should become-distasteful to him.* 7. *I asked the brave centurion Tullius whether the arrow had hurt him.* 8. *Let us give rewards to all (140) the brarest (trans. each most*

¹ Why is **pecūniae** Gen.? See Par. 71, and add **tantum** and **quantum** as taking Partitive Genitives.

² *So great a city as we ourselves have not, i.e. a greater city than we have.*

brave) of the soldiers that they may set an example to the rest.
 9. *Do you now terrify with threats her to whom you gave so large a sum (trans. so-much) of money?* 10. *The unjust king Balbus had (86) one (man's) silver, another (man's) lands, another (man's) cattle.*

EXERCISE XLI.

Several Verbs that are followed by the Infinitive in English may be regarded as implying a purpose, and hence :

143 RULE.—Verbs of *asking, commanding, advising, and striving*, are followed by *ut* or *nē* with the Subjunctive.¹

Take care to teach him, i.e. in order that you may teach him.

He asked me not to hasten. Rögāvit mē nē prōpērārem.

143a

N.B.—As the translation of English *to* by the Latin Inf. is one of the commonest errors of beginners, it is well to recollect that the English Infinitive is *never to be rendered by the Latin Infinitive except where (128) it is the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

1. Imperavit agricolis imperator ut frumentum compararent.
2. Curate ut prima vigilia adventum hostium expectetis.
3. Adinonuit nos senex ut parentibus nostris semper pareremus.
4. Rogabo adulescentem ut junioribus exemplum melius praebeat.
5. Ne optimus quidem praeceptorum omnia docebit.
6. Sapientissimus quisque curabit ut linguam coerceat.
7. Quotiens imperavi tibi ut mores emendes!
8. Cave ne viam aliis monstres, ipse tamen erres.
9. Orabat explorator, homo mendacissimus (126a), ut sibi veniam darem.
10. Quantum cuique debetis, tantum curate ut detis.
11. Imperavit dux militibus ne mercatorem detinerent.

1. *Give-orders to the soldiers to prepare their arms.* 2. *He gave-orders to the spies not to show these-things to the king.* 3. *Our parents advised us to await the arrival of friends.* 4. *Tullius asked me to teach his (98) children.* 5. *I beg you to grant*

¹ This Rule is sometimes remembered by the following rhyme:

“With *ask, command, advise, and strive,*
By *ut* translate Infinitive.”

pardon to the wicked Balbus. 6. *Have you not again and again advised that fellow (iste) to restrain his tongue?* 7. *If you teach (125), take care to teach well.* 8. *Take care that you do not displease those whom you are bound (debeo) to please.¹* 9. *On the fourth day we gave-orders to him to call-together three thousand (80b) soldiers.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

144 Verbs of *preventing* are followed by **quo-mīnus** (*by-which-the-less*) and the Subjunctive.

I have hindered the man from speaking, lit. *by-which-the-less he may speak.* Hōmīnem prōhibūi quōmīnus dicat.

145 The words **nōn est dūbiūm quīn**, *it is not doubtful but that*, i.e. *there is no doubt that*, are followed by the Latin Subjunctive, (though the English is Indicative):

There is no doubt that he said this (N.B. not *may have said*). Nōn dūbiūm est quīn haec dixērit.

As regards the Tense of the Subjunctive, the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses must be observed. *Like follows like:* (see Par. 137).

There was no doubt that he feared this (N.B. not *would fear*). Nōn dūbiūm ērat quīn timeret.²

EXERCISE XLII.

146 Et sometimes means *even or also*:

"*Good morning.*" "*Good morning to you too.*" "*Salvē,*" (lit. "*Be well.*") "*Salvē et tu.*"

1. Aut discite aut discedite : sors tertia hīc nulla est.
2. Nostri, si urbem fortiter defendant, hostem facile vincent.
3. Si tu scribes, ego legam.
4. Prohibui istūm quōmīnus vineat.
5. Multa dicere facilius est quam multa discere.
6. Non

¹ What is the government of *whom*?

² Probably the *doubt* is regarded as a kind of *prevention*; but instead of **quōmīnus**, there is used an old form of **quo**, viz. **qui**, followed by **ne**, the two words **qui-ne** being contracted into **qui**.

145a As regards the Tense to be used after "*nōn dūbiūm erat quīn*," the Pluperf. should be used when (but only when) *had* is, or could be, inserted in the English: *there was no doubt that the woman (had) killed him*, "*nōn ērat dūbiūm quīn mūlier eum interfēcisset.*"

dubium est quin hostes aciem jam instruant : instruite et (146) vestram, centuriones. 7. Liberi Deos quotidie orabant ut pater tuto (adv.) viveret.¹ 8. Caesar materiam parabat ut Rhenum ponte jungeret. 9. Num vera dicis ? Matremne terruisti ? Nonne igitur rubes ? 10. Scribamus diligenter, ne nos praecceptor culpet. 11. Hastas in terra figite, milites. 12. Non dubium erat quin cives urbem fortiter defenderent.

1. *I advise you to depart.* 2. *There is no doubt that the wise learn daily.* 3. *They asked us to fix our spears in the earth.* 4. *If you read (125), (my) friends, (99a) I will write.* 5. *It is often more useful to learn than to speak.* 6. *We shall conquer the enemy, if you (99), O citizens, defend your city.* 7. *The leader will take care to draw up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Say what-is-true (trans. true-things), my friends ; let us not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things).* 9. *There was no doubt that the boys wrote carefully.* 10. *I will hinder that-fellow from conquering.*

EXERCISE XLIII.

(*Vinco, vincio, fingo, figo.*)

147 Almost all Superlatives, and many Positives, in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, make Adverbs in **-ē**, e.g. *cēlerrimē*, *difficillimē*, *tardē*.

148 Almost all Comparatives in **-ior** use the Neut. in **-ius** as an Adverb : *tardius*, *more (rather, too) slowly* ; *diligentius*, *more (rather, too) diligently*.

149 The Adverbs, like the Adjectives (64), have more than one meaning : thus, *tardius*, besides meaning (1) *more slowly*, may also mean (2) *rather slowly*, or (3) *too slowly*.

1. Mettum, Albanum imperatorem, equi distraxerunt. 2. Non dubium est quin Caesar multa milia Gallorum vicerit. 3. Quis dubitabat quin centurio, homo crudelissimus, captivos vinxisset ? 4. Caesar Rhenum ponte junxit, (32) aciem summa celeritate instruxit. 5. Si celerrime scribes, amici tui fortasse difficilime legent. 6. Interrogabo hominem num has litteras scripserit. 7. Interrogavi patrem nonne dilexisset duos liberorum, ceteros neglexisset. 8. Nonne commeatus collegisti ? Nonne equites pedesque contraxisti ? 9. Non dubium erat quin errores alios correxisset, alios neglexisset. 10. Falsane finxistis, o perfidissimorum ob-sidum filii ? 11. Centurio militem interrogabat cur hastam in terra fixisset. 12. Mene interrogas, mi fili, cur hoc dixerim ?²

¹ *Quotidē* is more correctly spelt *cottidē* or *cōtidē*.

² *Mi* is the irregular Vocative Masc. Sing. cf *mēus*.

1. *Do not feign what-is-false* (i.e. *false-things*), my son. 2. *I will ask him whether (his) leader bridged the river.* 3. *Do not write the letter too-quickly* (149) *lest your friends read it with-very-great-difficulty* (use adverb). 4. *There is no doubt that he wrote this letter.* 5. *There was no doubt that the general had collected supplies, (and) had drawn (his) army together.* 6. *Take care, my friend, to correct those errors of-yours; do not (5a) neglect even (141) one (error).* 7. *Have you asked the centurion why the soldiers fixed their spears in the earth?* 8. *There was no doubt that the hostages had feigned what-was-false.* 9. *Ask the centurion why he bound the captives.* 10. *I hindered the boy from exulting; but there was no doubt that he had conquered.*

EXERCISE XLIV.

151 RULE.—*Cum, when, if followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect, generally requires the Subjunctive Mood.*¹

1. *Interrogabo num puer versus heri didicerit.* 2. *Hostes, cum tuba cecinisset, in campum descenderunt.* 3. *Statui puerum corriger ut diligenter diseret.* 4. *Dux, cum exercitum collegisset, in Galliam contendit.* 5. *Orabunt imperatorem milites ut aciem instruat.* 6. *Non dubium est quin hostes jam in urbem irruperint, aedificia igni absumant, omnia clamore et caede turbent.* 7. *Quod (trans. as if quod were hoc) cum intelligerem, statim interrogabam nuntium cur haec non antea dixisset.* 8. *Correxi errores eius ne amicis suis temeritate sua graviter noceret.* 9. *Interrogabat imperator nonne jussa sua neglexisse, num murum fortiter defendissem?*
1. *When I heard this* (i.e. *which things when I had understood*), *I determined to obey* (142) *the general.* 2. *Correct these errors, my (151) son, lest they injure your friends.* 3. *When he had collected supplies, the general closed the gates of the city.* 4. *What do you say, (my) friends? Do you ask me why I neglected this task?* 5. *There was no doubt that traitors had closed the gates of the two citadels.* 6. *Who hindered the citizens from defending the wall?* 7. *When the trumpet sounded* (i.e. *had sounded*), *not even the most cowardly of the soldiers neglected the signal.* 8. *At-the-time-when my friend (152) was hastening into the city, I was walking in the garden.*

151a

¹ With these Tenses, *cum* generally implies not simply *at-the-time-when*, but *because* (or at least some logical connection), and "Cum causal is followed by the Subjunctive."

152

But when *cum* simply means *at-the-time-when*, it may be followed by the Indicative Imperfect or Pluperfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Dum vos dormitis, hostes castra muniunt. 2. Audistisne clamorem hostium qui, jam vino pleni, captivum male custodiunt?¹ 3. Qui bene servit patriae, ei (*dat.*) cives libenter servient. 4. Non dubium est quin te pater optime erudiverit (9a). 5. Qui (107, 1) bene corpus tuum vestiisti, bene nutriisti, nonne tu etiam mentem tuam simili cura erudies?² 6. Cives legibus obediunto. 7. Mors mihi spiritum, non vitam finiet. 8. Interrogo te cur hesterna nocte captivum tam male custodiveris. 9. Non dubium erat quin hostes castra diligenter muniissent. 10. Audite alios (*others*) ut alii te audiant. 11. Ne tu punieris puellam: patrem eius puniamus, qui poena dignus est. 12. Mater rogavit me ne puellam punirem.
1. *Do you sleep, O foolish (men), while the enemy are bursting into the city?* 2. *There is no doubt that the soldiers guarded the captive badly.* 3. *Why did you not train the boy better that he might obey (his) elders.* 4. *I ask you why you punished the innocent child Tulliola (124).* 5. *Let us ask the judge not to punish the boy, who is undeserving of punishment.* 6. *You who nourished your children's bodies with so-great care, will you not, O my friends, train also their minds?* 7. *We who had never obeyed our parents (108), punished our children because they did not obey us.* 8. *Train your mind that you may learn very-many (things).* 9. *When we had fortified our camp, the enemy descended into the plain (5a).* 10. *Have you asked the boy whether he has lost his books?*

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Věnio, rěpěrio.)

1. Imperator cum tandem nostros viciisset, plurimos gravissima catena vinxit. 2. Serius (149) venistis: comites enim vestri hesterna nocte venerunt. 3. Interrogas cur aurum non reppereris: non repperisti, quia in hae terra aurum non est. 4. Non dubium erat quin serius venissent; sed rex eis veniam dedit. 5. Si forte eras venies, fortasse quod amisisti reperies. 6. Quamdiu dux ille vixit, nostri (34) vicerunt. 7. Archimedes multa et mira invenit.³ 8. Inter-

¹ Vino may be parsed, for the present, as *All. of Instr.*: but see Par. 275.

² Though nōnne and num generally stand first in a Direct Question, they are sometimes preceded by the Clause containing the Relative Pronoun: see Exercise XXXIII, Sentence 5.

³ In English we do not translate ēt coming between multus and another co-ordinate Adjective, e.g. "multa et pulchra," *many beautiful things.*

rogavi centurionem cur captivos tam gravi catena vinxisset
9. Jam omnia parabam ut venirem. 10. Ne tu huc veneris :
nam, si venies, non facile discedes.

1. *Why, O most cruel of men, did you bind with so heavy a chain the innocent (126) Balbus?* 2. *The woman came rather-late, but the king granted her pardon.* 3. *We conquered those who lived in that plain.* 4. *There is no doubt that they did not find gold in this land.* 5. *I asked why they came (145b), but no-one heard me.* 6. *I found yesterday night (30) what (i.e. that which) I had lost.* 7. *Will he not tell me why he came here?* 8. *Hast thou come at-length, O best of sons?*

THE VERB Sum, *I am.*

Sum, fūī, fūtūrūs, essē,—to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. Sum, <i>I am</i>	Plur. Sūmūs, <i>We are</i>
Es, <i>thou art</i>	Estīs, <i>ye are</i>
Est, <i>he is.</i>	Sunt, <i>they are.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Sing. Ěro, <i>I shall be</i>	Plur. Ěřimūs, <i>We shall be</i>
Ěřis, <i>thou wilt be</i>	Ěřitīs, <i>ye will be</i>
Ěřít, <i>he will be.</i>	Erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. Ěram, <i>I was</i>	Plur. Ěřāmūs, <i>We were</i>
Ěřās, <i>thou wast</i>	Ěřātīs, <i>ye were</i>
Ěřāt, <i>he was.</i>	Erant, <i>they were.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. Fūī, <i>I have been, or</i>	P. Fuīmūs, <i>We have been, or</i>
<i>I was</i>	<i>we were</i>
Fuistī, <i>thou hast been, or</i>	Fuistīs, <i>ye have been, or</i>
<i>thou wast</i>	<i>ye were</i>
Fuǐt, <i>he has been, or</i>	Fuērunt } <i>they have been, or</i>
<i>he was.</i>	<i>or fuērē</i> } <i>they were.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuēro,</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>P. Fuērimūs,</i>	<i>We shall have been</i>
<i>Fuēris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	<i>Fuēritīs,</i>	<i>ye will have been</i>
<i>Fuērit,</i>	<i>he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>P. Fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>We had been</i>
<i>Fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>Fuērātīs,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>
<i>Fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been.</i>	<i>Fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ěs,</i>	<i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur. Estē,</i>	<i>Be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Estō,</i>	<i>Thou shalt or must be</i>	<i>Plur. Estōtē,</i>	<i>Ye shall or must be</i>
<i>Estō,</i>	<i>he shall or must be, or let him be.</i>	<i>Sunto,</i>	<i>they shall or must be, or let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOÓD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sim,</i>	<i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur. Sīmūs,</i>	<i>We may be¹</i>
<i>Sīs,</i>	<i>thou mayst be</i>	<i>Sītīs,</i>	<i>ye may be</i>
<i>Sīt,</i>	<i>he may be.</i>	<i>Sint,</i>	<i>they may be.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Essem or fōrem,</i>	<i>I might be</i>	<i>P. Essēmūs or fōrēmūs,</i>	<i>We might be</i>
<i>Essēs or fōrēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst be</i>	<i>Essētīs or fōrētīs,</i>	<i>ye might be</i>
<i>Essēt or fōrēt,</i>	<i>he might be.</i>	<i>Essent or fōrent,</i>	<i>they might be.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>Fuērimūs,</i>	<i>We may have been</i>
<i>Fuēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	<i>Fuēritīs,</i>	<i>ye may have been</i>
<i>Fuērit,</i>	<i>he may have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint,</i>	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuiſſem,</i>	<i>I should have</i>	<i>Fuiſſēmūs,</i>	<i>We should have</i>
<i>Fuiſſēs,</i>	<i>thou wouldst have</i>	<i>Fuiſſētīs,</i>	<i>ye would have</i>
<i>Fuiſſēt,</i>	<i>he would have.</i>	<i>Fuiſſent,</i>	<i>they would have.</i>

¹ Sīmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	} Essē,	<i>to be.</i>
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,		<i>to have been.</i>
INFINITIVE FUTURE, PARTICIPLE FUTURE,	Fuissē,	
	Fūtūrūs essē, or fōrē, <i>to be about to be.</i>	
	Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,	<i>about to be.</i>

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nos Angli sumus, vos estis Galli, ille Germanus est. 2. Fuit Troja; fuere Mycenae; tu, Roma, etiam nunc es. 3. Nisi ego dux vester (125) ero, victores non eritis. 4. Amici eius quondam divites fuerant: tum vero erant pauperrimi. 5. Dictorum eius, O pueri, este semper memores. 6. Judices justi sunt. 7. Gratus esto, puer, si amicos benignos habere optas. 8. Ne fueris, O soror, eis molesta qui tibi benevolentissimi semper fuerunt. 9. Contentus ero, O judices, si vos justi fueritis.¹ 10. Interrogavit num judices justi essent. 11. Cura, rex magne, ut sis munificentior (68a). 12. Ego et tu laetissimi sumus. 13. Prudentes este ut benefici sitis.
1. You and I have been (127) very poor. 2. We (99a) were in the city; he and his brother were in the field. 3. Had you not been ungrateful, sister, to those who were formerly most benevolent to you? 4. If you are (i.e. shall have been) joyful, I shall be most joyful. 5. Take care not to be troublesome to the benevolent. 6. I asked the boy whether he was younger than his [own] brother. 7. There is no doubt that Tullius was very ungrateful. 8. Be brave, O soldiers, that ye may be fortunate. 9. You will be happy, (my) friends, if you are (125) always contented. 10. There was no doubt that Tullius had formerly been very rich, but was now very poor.

THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

- 154** The Participle is partly like an Adjective, in that it agrees with a Noun or Pronoun, and partly like a Verb, in that it may govern an Object.²

The citizen slew the king (when he was, or who was) about to destroy the city with fire.

Civis rēgem urbēm jam igni
absumptūrum interfēcit.

The darts were troublesome to our men (while they were, or who were) waiting for help.

Tēla nostris mōlesta ērant
auxiliūm **expectantib⁹.**

¹ Not if you shall have been just (125). But **optas** (Sent. 7) is Present, because it refers to Present time.

² The Participle must often be translated by a Conjunction *when*, *while*, &c., or by the Relative Pronoun.

THE DEPENDENT FUTURE INTERROGATIVE.

155 It has been shown above (Par. 136) how to turn a Direct Question in the Past or Present Tenses into an Indirect Question, by changing the Indicative Tenses into corresponding Subjunctive Tenses. But, as there is no Subjunctive Future, we cannot thus turn a Direct Question in the Future, *Will he come?* “*Num veniet?*” into an Indirect Question, *I ask whether he will come.*

For this purpose we employ a form compounded of the Verb *sum*, and the Participle in *-rus*: *ventūrus sum*, *I am about to come*; *ventūrae sunt*, *they (fem.) are about to come*; *ventūrus tuerās*, *you had been about to come*, &c.

Hence *Will she come?* or *Is she about to come?* becomes, when changed into an Indirect Question :

<i>Ask</i>	<i>whether the woman is about to come.</i>	<i>Interrōgā</i>	<i>num mūlier ventūra sit.</i>
<i>I ask</i>		<i>Interrōgo</i>	
<i>I will ask</i>		<i>Interrōgābo</i>	
<i>I have asked</i>		<i>Interrōgāvi</i>	
<i>I was asking</i>	<i>whether the woman was about to come.</i>	<i>Interrōgābam</i>	<i>num mūlier ventūra esset.</i>
<i>I asked</i>		<i>Interrōgāvi</i>	
<i>I had asked</i>		<i>Interrōgāvēram</i>	

EXERCISE XLVIII.

156 The Latin for *when* in *questions*, whether dependent or independent, is not *cum* but *quando*.

When will he come? *Quando vēniet?*
Let us inquire when he will *Quaerāmus quando ventūrus
come.*

1. Interrogavi puellam num matri obeditura esset. 2. Filium, parentes nutriturum (154a), cur culpas? 3. Obsidibus, haec audientibus, non placuit in urbein venire.¹ 4. Interrogate sorores vestras quando patri obediturae sint. 5. Hostibus, jam urbem intrantibus, nox molesta erat. 6. Tibi, O puella, graviorer erratura, pauca dicam. 7. Arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, frigus nocuit. 8. Praeceptor, optime docenti, discipulorum stultitia multum displicuit. 9. Nonne audis patris tui

¹ The Subj. of *placuit* is *venire*, see Par. 128. Parse *obsidibus*; see Par. 142

verba, te culpantis, te in meliora revocantis? 10. Ecce, veniunt gladiatores, principem salutaturi. 11. Non erat dubium quin pauca dictura esset. 12. Vitione potius quam virtuti obtemperatus es?

1. *The speech of the general was troublesome to our men, (since they were) not then expecting an attack.* 2. *You, (being) yourself about-to-err, blame your brother (who is) erring.*
3. *You, who are destined soon to ask help (trans. you, soon about-to-ask help) in-vain, now despise your friends (who are) affording help.* 4. *You ought to hear the voice of your friends (who are) chiding you (and) recalling you to the path of virtue.*
5. *There was no doubt that his daughter was on the point of coming, i.e. about-to-come.* 6. *Why, O pupils, did you displease your teacher, (though he was) teaching you most-excellently?*
7. *When we heard this, we resolved to obey the general (trans. (it) pleased us, hearing these things, to obey, &c.).* 8. *When will you obey your friends (who are) giving you many gifts and about-to-give you more (gifts)?* 9. *Let us ask his sisters whether they are going to obey (i.e. about-to-obey) (their) father.* 10. *The frost destroyed very many vines (when they were) just (jam) about-to-put-forth (their) fruit.*

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Ămōr, āmātūs sum, āmārī,—*to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ōr,	<i>I am loved</i>	Am-āmūr,	<i>We are loved</i>
Am-ārīs or ăm-ārē,	{ <i>thou art loved</i>	Am-āmīnī,	<i>ye are loved</i>
Am-ātūr,	<i>he is loved.</i>	Am-antūr,	<i>they are loved.¹</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Am-ābōr,	<i>I shall be loved</i>	Am-ābīmūr,	<i>We shall be loved</i>
Am-ābēris or ăm-ābērē,	{ <i>thou wilt be loved</i>	Am-ābīmīnī,	<i>ye will be loved</i>
Am-ābitūr,	<i>he will be loved.</i>	Am-ābūntūr,	<i>they will be loved.</i>

¹ Cicero rarely uses āmāre for āmāris. It is liable to be confused with the Imper. Passive, as well as with the Pres. Inf. Active.

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ābār,	<i>I was being loved</i> (115)	Am-ābāmūr,	<i>We were being loved</i>
Am-ābārīs or ām-ābārē	<i>thou wast being loved</i>	Am-ābāmīnī,	<i>ye were being loved</i>
Am-ābātūr,	<i>he was being loved.</i>	Am-ābāntūr,	<i>they were being loved.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs sum	<i>I have been loved, or was loved</i>	Am-ātī sūmūs	<i>We have been loved, or were loved</i>
Am-ātūs ēs	<i>thou hast been loved, or wast loved</i>	Am-ātī estīs or fuistīs,	<i>ye have been loved, or were loved</i>
Am-ātūs est	<i>he has been loved, or was loved.</i>	Am-ātī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	<i>they have been loved, or were loved¹</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēro	<i>I shall have been loved</i>	Am-ātī ērīmūs	<i>We shall have been loved</i>
Am-ātūs ērīs	<i>thou wilt have been loved</i>	Am-ātī ērītīs or fuēritīs,	<i>ye will have been loved</i>
Am-ātūs ērīt	<i>he will have been loved.</i>	Am-ātī ērūnt or fuērint,	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēram	<i>I had been loved</i>	Am-ātī ērāmūs	<i>We had been loved</i>
Am-ātūs ērās	<i>thou hadst been loved</i>	Am-ātī ērātīs	<i>ye had been loved</i>
Am-ātūs ērāt	<i>he had been loved.</i>	Am-ātī ērant	<i>they had been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ārē, *Be thou loved.* | Am-āmīnī, *Be ye loved.*

¹ The Latin Perfect Passive may sometimes be translated by *is, are:* *The man is slain, homo interfectus est.* Hence, when *is, are* imply that an action is completed, translate by the Latin Perfect.

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Am-ātōr, *Thou must be loved* | **Am-ātōr.** *he must be loved.* **Am-antōr,** { *They must be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ěr,	<i>I may be loved</i>	Am-ěmūr,	<i>We may be loved</i>
Am-ěris or } thou mayst be	<i>lored</i>	Am-ěmīnī,	<i>ye may be loved</i>
ám-ěrē,		Am-entūr,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ärér̄,	<i>I might be loved</i>	Am-ärēmūr, <i>We might be loved</i>
Am-ärér̄is or	<i>thou mightst be loved</i>	Am-ärēmīnī, <i>ye might be loved</i>
ám-ärér̄e,	<i>loved</i>	

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been loved</i>	Am-ātī sīmūs or fuērimūs,	<i>We may have been loved</i>
Am-ātūs sis or fuēris,	<i>thou mayst have been loved</i>	Am-ātī sītīs or fuēritīs,	<i>ye may have been loved</i>
Am-ātūs sit or fuērit,	<i>he may have been loved.</i>	Am-ātī sint or fuērint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs essem { <i>I should have or fuisset,</i>	Am-ātī essēmūs { <i>We should have been loved</i>
Am-ātūs essēs { <i>thou wouldst or fuissēs,</i>	Am-ātī essētīs { <i>ye would have been loved</i>
Am-ātūs essēt { <i>he would have or fuissēt,</i>	Am-ātī essent { <i>they would have been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP. **Am-ārī**,

PERF. and PLUP. **Am-ātūs (-a, -um) essē** or **fuissē**, { *to have been loved*

FUTURE. **Am-ātum īrī** (not declined), { *to be about to be loved.*¹

¹ For an explanation of āmātum īri, see Exercise LXXIV.

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.
GERUNDIVE.

Am-ātūs (-a, -um), *loved or having been loved.*
Am-andūs (-a, -um), *meet to be loved.*

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōneōr, mōnītūs sum, mōnērī—*to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-eōr,	<i>I am advised</i>	Mōn-ēmūr,	<i>We are advised</i>
Mōn-ērīs,	{ <i>thou art ad-</i>	Mōn-ēmīnī,	<i>ye are advised</i>
Mōn-ētūr,	<i>vised</i> <i>he is advised.</i>	Mōn-entūr,	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mōn-ēbōr,	<i>I shall be ad-</i>	Mōn-ēbīmūr,	<i>We shall be ad-</i>
Mōn-ēbērīs or mōn-ēbērē,	<i>thou wilt be</i> <i>advised</i>	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,	<i>ye will be ad-</i>
Mōn-ēbītūr	<i>he will be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>	Mōn-ēbūntūr,	<i>they will be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ēbār,	<i>I was being ad-</i>	Mōn-ēbāmūr,	<i>We were being</i>
Mōn-ēbārīs or mōn-ēbārē,	<i>thou wast being</i> <i>advised</i>	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being</i> <i>advised</i>
Mōn-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being</i> <i>advised.</i>	Mōn-ēbāntūr,	<i>they were being</i> <i>advised.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ītūs sum	<i>I have been ad-</i>	Mōn-ītī sūmūs	<i>We have been</i>
<i>or fuī,</i>	<i>vised, or was</i> <i>advised</i>	<i>or fuīmūs,</i>	<i>advised, or were</i> <i>advised</i>
Mōn-ītūs ēs	<i>thou hast been</i> <i>advised, or</i>	Mōn-ītī estīs	<i>ye have been ad-</i>
<i>or fuīstī,</i>	<i>wast advised</i>	<i>or fuīstīs,</i>	<i>vised, or were</i> <i>advised</i>
Mōn-ītūs est	<i>he has been ad-</i>	Mōn-ītī sunt,	<i>they have been</i>
<i>or fuīt,</i>	<i>vised, or was</i> <i>advised.</i>	<i>fuērunt,</i> or <i>fuērē,</i>	<i>advised, or</i> <i>were advised.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ítūs ēro	<i>I shall have or fuero,</i>	<i>I shall have been advised</i>	Mön-ítī ērimūs	We shall have or fuērimūs, been advised
Mön-ítūs ērīs	<i>thou wilt have or fuēris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been advised</i>	Mön-ítī ēritīs	ye will have been or fuēritīs, advised
Mön-ítūs ērīt	<i>he will have or fuērit,</i>	<i>he will have been advised.</i>	Mön-ítī ērunt	they will have or fuērint, been advised.

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ítūs īram	<i>I had been or fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been advised</i>	Mön-ítī ērāmūs	We had been or fuērāmūs, advised
Mön-ítūs īrās	<i>thou hadst or fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been advised</i>	Mön-ítī ērātīs	ye had been ad- or fuērātīs, vised
Mön-ítūs īrāt	<i>he had been or fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been advised.</i>	Mön-ítī ērant	they had been or fuērant, advised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-ērē,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>	Mön-ēmīnī,	<i>Be ye advised</i>
----------	-------------------------	------------	----------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mön-ētōr, <i>Thou must be advised</i>	Mön-entōr, { <i>They must be ad-</i>
Mön-ētōr, <i>he must be advised.</i>	vised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-eār,	<i>I may be ad- vised</i>	Mön-eāmūr,	{ <i>We may be ad- vised</i>
Mön-eārīs or mön-eārē,	<i>thou mayst be advised</i>	Mön-eāmīnī,	{ <i>ye may be ad- vised.</i>
Mön-eātūr,	<i>he may be advised.</i>	Mön-eantūr,	{ <i>they may be ad- vised.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ērēr,	<i>I might be advised</i>	Mön-ērēmūr,	{ <i>We might be advised</i>
Mön-ērērīs or mön-ērērē,	<i>thou mightst be advised</i>	Mön-ērēmīnī,	{ <i>ye might be ad- vised</i>
Mön-ērētūr,	<i>he might be advised</i>	Mön-ērentūr,	{ <i>they might be advised.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-itäs sim or fuërim,	<i>I may have been advised</i>	Mön-itä sümüs or fuërimüs,	<i>We may have been advised</i>
Mön-itäs sis or fuëris,	<i>thou mayst have been advised</i>	Mön-itä sitis or fuëritis,	<i>ye may have been advised</i>
Mön-itäs sit or fuërit,	<i>he may have been advised</i>	Mön-itä sint or fuërint,	<i>they may have been advised.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-itäs essem or fuissem,	<i>I should have been advised</i>	Mön-itä essémüs or fuissémüs,	<i>We should have been advised</i>
Mön-itäs essés, or fuissés,	<i>thou wouldst have been advised</i>	Mön-itä essétis or fuissétis,	<i>ye would have been advised</i>
Mön-itäs essét or fuissét,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>	Mön-itä essent or fuissent,	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Mön-erài,	<i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	Mön-itäs (-a, -um) essé or fuissé,	<i>to have been advised.</i>
FUTURE.	Mön-itäum ìri (not declined),	<i>to be about to be advised.</i>
PERFECT.	Mön-itäs (-a, -um),	<i>advised, or having been advised.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Mön-endüs (-a, -um),	<i>meet to be advised.</i>

THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Régör, rectüs sum, rëgî,—*to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rég-ör, Rég-érís, Rég-itäür,	<i>I am ruled thou art ruled he is ruled.</i>	Rég-ímür, Rég-ímíni, Rég-untür,	<i>We are ruled ye are ruled they are ruled.</i>
------------------------------------	---	---------------------------------------	--

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Rēg-är,	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	Rēg-ēmūr,	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
Rēg-ēris or rēg-ērē,	<i>thou wilt be ruled</i>	Rēg-ēmīnī,	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
Rēg-ētūr,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>	Rēg-entūr,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rēg-ēbār,	<i>I was being ruled</i>	Rēg-ēbāmūr,	<i>We were being ruled</i>
Rēg-ēbāris or rēg-ēbārē,	<i>thou wast being ruled</i>	Rēg-ēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being ruled</i>
Rēg-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being ruled.</i>	Rēg-ēbāntūr,	<i>they were being ruled.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs sum or fui,	<i>I have been ruled, or was ruled</i>	Rec-tī sūmūs or fuīmūs,	<i>We have been ruled, or were ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ēs or fuistī,	<i>thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled</i>	Rec-tī estīs or fuistīs,	<i>ye have been ruled, or were ruled</i>
Rectūs est or fuit,	<i>he has been ruled, or was ruled.</i>	Rec-tī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	<i>they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ēro or fuēro,	<i>I shall have been ruled</i>	Rec-tī ērīmūs or fuērīmūs,	<i>We shall have been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ērīs or fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been ruled</i>	Rec-tī ērītīs or fuērītīs,	<i>ye will have been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ērīt or fuērīt,	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ērūnt, or fuērūnt,	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ēram or fuēram,	<i>I had been ruled</i>	Rec-tī ērāmūs or fuērāmūs,	<i>We had been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ērās or fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been ruled</i>	Rec-tī ērātīs or fuērātīs,	<i>ye had been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ērāt or fuērāt,	<i>he had been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ērānt, or fuērānt,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-ērē, Be thou ruled. | Rēg-ēmīnī, Be ye ruled.

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rēg-ítōr,	{ <i>Thou must be ruled</i>	Rēg-untōr, <i>They must be ruled.</i>
Rēg-ítōr,		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-är,	I may be ruled or } thou mayst be rēg-ärē, Rēg-ätūr,	Rēg-ämür, <i>We may be ruled</i>
Rēg-ärēris or		Rēg-ämīnī, <i>ye may be ruled</i>
rēg-ärērē,		Rēg-antūr, <i>they may be ruled.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rēg-érēr,	I might be ruled or } thou mightst be rēg-érērē, Rēg-érētūr,	Rēg-érēmür, <i>We might be ruled</i>
Rēg-érēris or		Rēg-érēmīnī, <i>ye might be ruled</i>
rēg-érērē,		Rēg-érentūr, <i>they might be ruled.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs sim } I may have or fuērim,	I may have been ruled or fuēris, Rec-tūs sit or } he may have fuērit,	Rec-tī sīmūs or } We may have fuērimūs, <i>been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs sīs or } thou mayst have fuēris,		Rec-tī sītīs or } ye may have been fuēritīs, <i>ruled</i>
Rec-tūs sit or } he may have been ruled.		Rec-tī sint or } they may have fuērint, <i>been ruled.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūsessem } I should have or fuissēm,	I should have been ruled or fuissēs, Rec-tūs essēs } thou wouldst have been or fuissēs, Rec-tūs essēt } he would have or fuissēt,	Rec-tī essēmūs } We should have or fuissēmūs, <i>been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs essēs } thou wouldst have been or fuissēs,		Rec-tī essētīs } ye would have or fuissētīs, <i>been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs essēt } he would have or fuissēt,		Rec-tī essent } they would have or fuissent, <i>been ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP. PERF and PLUP. FUTURE.	Rēg-ī, Rec-tūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē, Rec-tum īrī (not declined),	to be ruled. to have been ruled to be about to be [ruled.]
---	--	---

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT. Rec-tūs (-a, -um), *ruled or having been ruled.*
 GERUNDIVE. Rēg-endūs (-a, -um), *meet to be ruled.*

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, audītūs sum, audīrī,—*to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iōr,	<i>I am heard</i>	Aud-imūr,	<i>We are heard</i>
Aud-irīs,	<i>thou art heard</i>	Aud-imīnī,	<i>ye are heard</i>
Aud-itūr,	<i>he is heard</i>	Aud-iuntūr,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iār,	<i>I shall be</i>	Aud-iēmūr,	<i>We shall be heard</i>
Aud-iērīs or aud-iērē,	<i>heard</i>	Aud-iēmīnī,	<i>ye will be heard</i>
Aud-iētūr,	<i>thou wilt be</i>	Aud-iēntūr,	<i>they will be heard.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iēbār,	<i>I was being</i>	Aud-iēbāmūr,	<i>We were being</i>
Aud-iēbārīs or audiēbārē,	<i>heard (115)</i>	Aud-iēbāmīnī,	<i>heard</i>
Aud-iēbātūr,	<i>thou wast being</i>	Aud-iēbāntūr,	<i>ye were being</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itūs sum or fuī,	<i>I have been heard, or was heard</i>	Aud-itī sūmūs or fuīmūs,	<i>We have been heard, or were heard</i>
Aud-itūs es or fuistī,	<i>thou hast been heard, or wast heard</i>	Aud-itī estīs or fuistīs,	<i>ye have been heard, or were heard</i>
Aud-itūs est or fuit,	<i>he has been heard, or was heard</i>	Aud-itī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	<i>they have been heard, or were heard.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūs ēro	<i>I shall have been heard or fuēro,</i>	Aud-ītī ērīmūs	<i>We shall have been heard or fuērimūs,</i>
Aud-ītūs ērīs	<i>thou wilt have been heard or fuēris,</i>	Aud-ītī ēritīs	<i>ye will have been heard or fuēritis,</i>
Aud-ītūs ērīt	<i>he will have been heard or fuērit,</i>	Aud-ītī ērunt	<i>they will have been heard or fuērint,</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūs ēram	<i>I had been heard or fuēram,</i>	Aud-ītī-ērāmūs	<i>We had been heard or fuērāmūs,</i>
Aud-ītūs ērās	<i>thou hadst been heard or fuērās,</i>	Aud-ītī ērātīs	<i>ye had been heard or fuērātīs,</i>
Aud-ītūs ērāt	<i>he had been heard or fuērāt,</i>	Aud-ītī ērant	<i>they had been heard or fuērant,</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-īrē, *Be thou heard.* | **Aud-īmīnī,** *Be ye heard.*

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Aud-ītōr, *Thou must be heard* | **Aud-iuntōr,** *They must be heard.*
Aud-ītōr, *he must be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iār	<i>I may be heard</i>	Aud-iāmūr,	<i>We may be heard</i>
Aud-iārīs or aud-iārē,	<i>thou mayst be heard</i>	Aud-iāmīnī,	<i>ye may be heard</i>
Aud-iātūr,	<i>he may be heard.</i>	Aud-iāntūr,	<i>they may be heard.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-īrēr,	<i>I might be heard</i>	Aud-īrēmūr,	<i>We might be heard</i>
Aud-īrērīs or aud-īrērē,	<i>thou mightst be heard</i>	Aud-īrēmīnī,	<i>ye might be heard</i>
Aud-īrētūr,	<i>he might be heard.</i>	Aud-īrēntūr,	<i>they might be heard.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itūs sim or { <i>I may have</i>	Aud-itī sīmūs or } <i>We may have</i>
<i>fuērim,</i> { <i>been heard</i>	<i>fuērimūs,</i> } <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs sis or { <i>thou mayst</i>	Aud-itī sītīs or } <i>ye may have</i>
<i>fuēris,</i> { <i>hare been</i>	<i>fuēritīs,</i> } <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs sīt or { <i>he may have</i>	Aud-itī sint or } <i>they may have</i>
<i>fuērit,</i> { <i>been heard.</i>	<i>fuērint,</i> } <i>been heard.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itūsessem { <i>I should have</i>	Aud-itī essēmūs } <i>We should have</i>
<i>or fuissem,</i> { <i>been heard</i>	<i>or fuissēmūs,</i> } <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs essēs { <i>thou wouldst</i>	Aud-itī essētīs } <i>ye would have</i>
<i>or fuissēs,</i> { <i>have been</i>	<i>or fuissētīs,</i> } <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs essēt { <i>he would have</i>	Aud-itī essent } <i>they would have</i>
<i>or fuissēt,</i> { <i>been heard</i>	<i>or fuissent,</i> } <i>been heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Aud-īrī,	<i>to be heard.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	Aud-itūs (-a.-um) essē or fuissē,	<i>to have been heard.</i>
FUTURE.	Aud-itum īrī (not declined),	<i>to be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Aud-itūs (-a, -um),	<i>heard or having been heard.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Aud-iendūs (-a, -um),	<i>meet to be heard.</i>

EXERCISE XLIX.

57a If two Subjects are connected by Disjunctive Conjunctions, e.g. *vēl, or* (*if you please*), *or* (*rather*), *aut or* (*else*), the Verb generally agrees with the latter of the two.

What man or what monster committed this crime? Qui hōmo, vēl quae bēlūa hōc fācinus commīsit?

Either you or Tullius said this. Aut tū aut Tullius haec dīxit.

1. Equus ab auriga domabitur (32), mox aurigam dorso portabit.
2. Cura ut Tullia, puella pulcherrima, floribus a matre ornatur.
3. Si urbem incendent, quomodo in tanto incendio servabimini?
4. Interrogavi civem quomodo urbs servaretur.
5. Curavit sacerdos ut hae divitiae in aedem Jovis portarentur.
6. Si animum recreabis, nihil obstabit quominus saneris.
7. Cura ut a medico saneris, qui te facillime sanabit, si

tu ei obtemperabis. 8. Agri tui qui nunquam antea vastabantur, jam vastabuntur, nisi nobis iter monstraveris. 9. Curabit dux ut a me servemini nisi jussa mea neglexeritis. 10. Portae urbis omni cura firmantur ne ab hostibus subito¹ superemur. 11. Curate ne, impetum non expectantes, ab hoste superemini. 12. Nisi a medico sanabere (125), num tibi aurum argentumque utilia erunt?

1. *The land of the Germans, which was never (115) wont-to-be laid-waste before, was laid waste by our men.* 2. *While we are being overcome by disease, our allies are being overcome by the enemy.* 3. *The leader took care that the citizens should be preserved.* 4. *Take care that the gates of the city are strongly-guarded, (trans. strengthened with a guard), that our men may not be overcome by the enemy.* 5. *What enemy, or (rather) what danger (111) prevented this wealth from being carried (use quōdminus, see Par. 144) into the temple?* 6. *Our men, not expecting an attack, were being overcome by the enemy.* 7. *We shall be cured (17) by this medicine if we obey the physician's precepts.* 8. *How will you be preserved, (my) friends, in this great (trans. so-great) conflagration?* 9. *The priests were-taking-pains that the temple should be adorned by the servants with very-many flowers.* 10. *Let us take-care that the gates of the city are (143) strongly-guarded*

PARTICIPLES AND PARTICIPIAL TENSES.

- 158** The Participle Passive agrees with its Noun in Number and Gender.

The enemy, having been overcome, are fleeing, i.e. have been overcome and are fleeing.

Hostes sūpērāti fūgiūnt.

They burn the city (when it had been) taken, i.e. they take and burn the city.

Urbem captam incendunt.

- 159** *N.B.—Note how the English *and* can be expressed by the Latin Passive Participle.*

- 159a** The Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of āmor, both in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, are not really independent Tenses of āmor, but rather Tenses

160 ¹ Sūbito is an Adv. Adj. in -us, -a, -um, and -er, -a, -um, mostly make Adv. in -ē; but there are exceptions: tūto, safely; cīto, quickly; &c.

of the Verb **sum** joined to forms of the Passive Participle
āmātus which must agree with some Noun or Pronoun:

The town is taken. Oppidum **captum** est.

The girls will have been adorned. Puellae **ornātae** fuērint.

EXERCISE L.

161 If two or more Subjects are (1) animate beings of different genders, their Adjective or Participle is Masculine; (2) if inanimate, generally Neuter Plural.

(1) *His father and mother have been slain.* Pāter eius et māter **interfecti** sunt.

(2) *Anger and avarice were more powerful than authority.* Īra et āvāritiā impērio pōtentīora ērant.

1. Interroga num pater meus et mater a Tullio servati sint (9a).
2. Imperator, cum hostium equites jam turbati fuissent, pedites facile fugavit.
3. Oppidum ipsum ab hoste expugnatū est, sed arx virtute ducis nostri est servata.
4. Si equites superati fuerint (125a), quomodo pedites servabuntur?
5. Cur tanto auri pondere ornatae estis, mulieres stultissimae?
6. Murus et porta a sacerdote centum aureis statuis, ducentis argenteis, ornatae fuerant.
7. Hostis, tandem superatus, ab imperatore nostro fugatus est.
8. Agri pauperrimorum agricolarum a crudelissimis hostibus ferro atque igni vastati sunt.
9. Hostes superati sunt, urbes quinquaginta expugnatae, segetes omnes vastatae (32).
10. Non dubium erat quin iter hostibus a proditore monstratum fuisse.

1. *Have the wall and the gate been stormed by the enemy (101)?*
2. *Ask whether the wall and the gate have been preserved by the citizens.*
3. *The town is stormed (i.e. has been stormed): our men are overcome.*
4. *The bridge, having been preserved by the husbandmen, had been pointed out to us by the spy.*
5. *There was no doubt that two hundred ships of war had been preserved by the enemy.*
6. *The shower was troublesome to the enemy (who were) now put-to-flight.*
7. *Did you not owe everything (trans. all things) to Tullius, by whom your very life had been preserved?*
8. *Having been praised by all the best citizens (140), will you and your sister, (150) my (dear) Tullius, commit this great (i.e. so great) crime (101)?*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LI.

162 The Passive is sometimes used impersonally in Latin where we use the Active :

All laughed, lit. *it was laughed by all.* **Ridēbātur** āb omnībus.

The enemy had fought bravely, **Pugnātum** ērat ācriter āb
lit. *it had been fought bravely by the enemy* hostībus.

163 The Neuter of the Passive Participle in -ndus (commonly called the Gerundive) is very frequently used in this impersonal way, *the Agent being expressed by the Dative* :

I must fight, lit. *it is meet to be fought to, or for, me.* **Pugnandum** est mīhi.¹

Ought you not to remain? Nōnne tībi mānendum est?

1. Cura ne periculo terrearis. 2. Justorum judicium animi neque minis neque a rege ipso movebuntur. 3. Cives, ab imperatore territi, in sua quisque domo manserunt.² 4. Quid obstabat vobis quominus a praeceptore doceremini? 5. Magister curavit ut omnia vere a servis suis responderentur. 6. Non dūbium est quin puer optime doceatur. 7. Curate ut corpora puero-rum bene exerceantur. 8. Agricola fluctibus terrebatur, quos nauta ridebat. 9. Cum haec tanta (trans. *this great*) tempestas impenderet, flebatur ab agricolis, a nautis ridebatur. 10. Imperatori, captivos interroganti nonne cruciatus time-rent, a regina nostra fortissime responsum est. 11. Nobis flendum est, vobis et hostibus exultandum. 12. Hostes jam superatos, et in urbem fugientes, equitatus noster paene delevit.

1. *There is no doubt that two-hundred cities were utterly-destroyed by the cruel general Balbus (124).* 2. *We must fight bravely that the enemy may not (131) take the city by-storm.* 3. *Fighting*

164 ¹ If the Verb e.g. pāreo governs a Dat., “pārendum est nōbīs” would be ambiguous, meaning either *obedience must be paid to us*, or *by us*. This ambiguity is avoided by using ā with the Abl. to express the Agent:

We must obey the magistrate. **Mīstrātū ā nōbīs pārendum est.**

165 ² Quisquē is Nom. Sing. in Apposition to *cives*. Note that in this phrase, *they came, returned, each to his &c., sūus always precedes quisquē*.

was kept up briskly (trans. it-was-fought briskly) by the Germans, that our men, terrified by the multitude of the darts, might retire into the city. 4. There is no doubt that the master will exercise (155) the bodies of the slaves. 5. Why must you weep? Ought (163) not you (101) rather to fight that your fields may not be laid waste by the enemy? 6. There is no doubt that answer-was-made most-bravely by our leader. 7. I took care that the city might be filled with-soldiers that you might not be terrified by the danger. 8. We ought not to be terrified in this great danger (trans. this so-great danger). 9. Our men, when-they-could scarcely sustain the charge of the enemy (trans. scarcely sustaining) and (were) almost fleeing, were recalled by the voice of (their) brave (70) leader. 10. What tyrant, or (157a) what (111) danger, will prevent (144) us from remaining in our city?

THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LII.

- 166** *I am on the point of conquering.* In ēo sum ūt vincam.
I was on the point of conquering. In ēo ēram ūt vincērem.

RULE.—When an Active Verb governing a Dative is turned into the Passive, it retains the Dative but is used impersonally. Thus, *all obey you*, omnes tībī pārēbunt; but:

- 167** *You will be obeyed by all*, i.e. **Tibi** ūb omnībus pārēbitur
it will be obeyed to you by all. (not tū pārēbēris).

1. Qui non, puer, regitur, is, senex, non bene reget.¹ 2. Nisi te ipsum (125a) viceris, hostes a te inutiliter vincentur. 3. Cura ne falsa a te fingantur. 4. Curabant senes ut a filiis suis recte viveretur. 5. Cum nostri in eo essent ut urbem intrarent, subito portae clausae sunt. 6. Non dubium est quin exercitus, fortiter pugnans, ab hostibus oppressus sit. 7. Cavendum est ne ab hostibus contemnamini. 8. Interrogavisti nonne conjuratio alteri consuli a tribus testibus detecta esset. 9. Rhenus fluvius a Cæsare ponte eo tempore jungebatur. 10. Castra a duobus milibus militum, viris acerrimis, defendantur. 11. Liber ille a liberis meis summa diligentia scribitur. 12. Quid obstat quominus agri colantur, quoniam mox hostes in fugam vertentur? 13. Tune agros colis qui, quotiens colentur, totiens ab hostibus vastabuntur?

¹ **Puer** is Nom., in Apposition with **qui, he who, when (or as) a boy, &c.**

1. *The town will be defended bravely by the citizens. 2. Take care that the gates are shut and that the city is guarded (trans. strengthened with a guard). 3. If the river (125) is bridged by the enemy, you will be in great danger, citizens. 4. Do you (tu), the partner¹ of our plans, give-orders that the conspiracy shall be disclosed (pres. subjunct.)? 5. I asked my children whether the books were being written by them. 6. There was no doubt that the fields, formerly laid-waste by the enemy, were now being cultivated. 7. If you, (when) a boy, obey your parents, you will be obeyed, when old, by your children (trans. it-will-be-obeyed to you (when) an old-man). 8. Our men are on the point of putting the enemy to flight. 9. The enemy were on the point of being put to flight by our men. 10. If the conspiracy is disclosed (125) to-morrow, the city will be preserved by you.*

EXERCISE LIII.

1. *Cur non auxilium mittere statuitis? 2. Interrogandum est nobis num epistola a puerō scripta sit. 3. Interrogandum erat mulieri quando epistolae a pueris scriptae essent. 4. Non erat dubium quin duci (142) nostro placuisset legatos mittere. 5. Cum jam agri diligentissime culti fuissent, subito segetes omnes inibribus absumptae sunt. 6. Quid obstabat quominus oppidum defendetur? 7. Urbem hanc, a duobus millibus civium defensam, decem milia hostium obsederunt. 8. Quare vos, quingenti viri, ab hostibus ducentis victi estis? 9. Interrogavi nonne a sene pueri semper dilecti essent, nonne memoria eius ab illis etiam tum coleretur. 10. Fabula, si a poeta docte scripta fuerit, omnibus placebit. 11. Cum jam naves plurimae ab imperatore collectae essent, exploratores ad Britanniam quinto die missi sunt. 12. Jam acies instructa erat, jam pedites ad proelium parati (142 d); cum subito legati ab hostibus pacem petituri missi sunt.*
1. *There is no doubt that the letter was written by his sister. 2. What prevented the fields from being cultivated? 3. When the enemy had now been conquered, the husbandmen determined to cultivate the fields. 4. There was no doubt that the old man's memory had been cherished (lit. cultivated) by those whom he had taught. 5. Let us ask the poet why he did not compose (lit. write) a better story. 6. The king asked the generdl why he had not himself drawn up the line-of-battle with greater care (lit. more-diligently). 7. Our ambassadors were sent a-second-time into the city to seek for peace (lit. about-to-*

¹ In what case should *partner* be? See Par. 123.

seek). 8. The spears of the soldiers, fixed in the earth, shewed the camp of the enemy. 9. Which of the two (85) daughters was especially loved (diligo) by (her) father? 10. If he violates (125) this law, let him (129a) be driven into exile.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- 168** When the Gerundive is used as an Adjective, it still takes the Dative of the Agent; (if (164) there is no ambiguity :)

*The boys } are (fit) to be punish- Puēri }
girls } ed by me. Puellae } sunt mīhi pūniend } -i.
I must learn this. Haec mīhi discenda sunt. -ae.*

EXERCISE LIV.

1. Audiendi sunt nobis exploratores; nam hostium urbes clam muniuntur. 2. Quid obstat quominus extra urbem corpus sepeliatur? 3. Curandum erat legatis ut bellum pace finiretur. 4. Interrogabo Numidam num leones in Africa reperiantur. 5. Puniēris, nisi cito veneris. 6. Cur tam deformibus vestibus vestiebamini? 7. Patri a quo nutrimini, vestimiri, educamini, nonne parebitis? 8. Mortui extra (*see Vocab.* extra) urbem sepeliuntur. 9. Tertia nocte a nostris dormiebatur, ab hostibus castra muniebantur. 10. Ab eo vinciere qui nuper a te ipso vinciebatur.
1. *There is no doubt that lions are found in Africa. 2. Will you not obey, O most ungrateful boy, the father by whom you were clothed, nourished, (and) educated? 3. Let us take care that war may be terminated by peace. 4. The spies of the enemy must be punished by us. 5. What prevents the camp from being fortified by our men (144)? 6. The dead used-to-be-buried by the ancients outside the city. 7. On the fourth day, my son, you will be heard by the judges. 8. You were being patiently heard by all: why did (127b) you not yourself (105) hear me?*

EXERCISE LV.

1. Hae urbes nobis munienda sunt. 2. Cum corpora mortuorum sepulta essent, arcem optime munitam hostes nobis tradiderunt. 3. Reperti sunt leones quinque; de (*about*) tigribus nihil auditum (est). 4. Nisi melius vestita fuerit (125a), mulier frigus vix tolerabit. 5. Nutriendus est nobis pauperissimus ille puer qui a patre ipso non nutritus est. 6. Cur tandem, O puellae, matris immemores estis? Nonne estis ab illa nutritae? Nonne (142d) vestitae? Nonne summa diligentia¹ educatae? 7. Ego, si finitum fuerit bellum, in

¹ *Diligentia* is *Abl.* of *Manner*: see Exercise LXXIX.

Italiā veniam. 8. Tria milia captivorum, a nostris
vincti,¹ clam evaserunt. 9. Qui a patre tuo nutritus
es, nonne tu patrem, jam senem, ipse nutries? 10. Non
dubium erat quin castra hostium clam diligentissime munita
essent.

1. *I asked whether the bodies of the dead had been buried.*
2. *Will (it) not please you to nourish those by whom you yourselves have been nourished?*
3. *There is no doubt that very many lions have been found in Africa.*
4. *These who have been bound by you, O soldiers, have secretly escaped.*
5. *The story which had been beautifully written by the poet did not please the king.*
6. *Take-care that you are clothed with a thick garment, that the cold may not (131) hurt you.*
7. *She was heard by the same judges by whom his sisters had already been heard.*
8. *What have you found, my friend, which has not already been found out by others (5a)?²*

THIRD CONJUGATION IN I.

Căp̄io, cēpi, captum, căp̄erē,—to take.
(stem : căp̄-, or căp̄i-.)

When the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. of the Third Conjugation ends in -*Io*, it (1) drops the ī before ī and ē,³ but (2) retains it otherwise, e.g. before a, o, ē, and u.

Thus (1) căp̄-īmus, căp̄-ēre, căp̄-ē.

But (2) căp̄i-am, căp̄i-o, căp̄i-ēs, căp̄i-unt.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căp̄i-o, căp̄-īs, căp̄-īt, căp̄-īmus, căp̄-ītis, căp̄i-unt.

Fut. Căp̄i-am, căp̄i-ēs, căp̄i-et, căp̄i-emus, căp̄i-etis, căp̄i-ent.

Imperf. Căp̄i-ēbam, căp̄i-ēbas, căp̄i-ēbat, căp̄i-ēbamus, căp̄i-ēbatis, căp̄i-ēbant

Regular Tenses. { Perf. Cēp-i, Cēp-isti, &c.
Pluperf. Cēp-ēram, Cēp-ērasti, &c.
Future Perf. Cēp-ēro, Cēp-ēris, &c.

¹ Vincti is Masc. Nom. agreeing with a Masc. Nom., *men* or *captives*, implied in *milia*.

² For easy Exercises on the Regular Verbs, see pp. 173—175.

³ The only exception is the 3rd Pers. Sing. of the Fut. Indic. căp̄i-ēt, which follows the form of the other persons, căp̄i-ēs, căp̄i-ēmus, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. căp-ě, căp-ǐte,
Fut. căp-ǐto, căp-ǐto, căp-ǐtote, căpǐ-unto,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpǐ-am, căpǐ-as, căpǐ-at, căpǐ-amus, căpǐ-atis,
 căpǐ-ant,

Imperf. Căp-ěrem, căp-ěres, căp-ěret, căp-ěremus, căp-ěretis, căp-ěrent,

Regular
Tenses. { *Perf.* Cēp-ěrim, cēp-ěris, &c.
Pluperf. Cēp-issem, cēp-isses, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-ěre, *Perf.* Cēp-issem, *Pres.* Căpiens, *Fut.* Capturus.

GERUND.
Capi-endi.

SUPINES.
Captum, captu.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

(Only the Present and Present-Derived Tenses are given below.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpǐ-or, căp-ěris, căp-ǐtur, căp-ǐmur, căp-ǐmini, căpǐ-untur.

Fut. Căpǐ-ar, căp-ěris (-ěrē), căp-ětur, căp-ěmur, căp-ěmini, căp-ěntur.

Imperf. Căpǐ-ěbar, căp-ěbaris (-bārē), căp-ěbatur, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căp-ěre, căp-ǐmini.
Fut. Căpǐ-tor, căpǐ-untor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpǐ-ar, căp-ěaris, căp-ěatur, &c.

Imperf. Căp-ěrer, capěr-ěris, capěr-ětur, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Căp-i.

EXERCISE LVI.

169 A prohibition is often expressed by the Imperative Sing. *nōlī* or Plur. *nōlīte*, *be unwilling*:

Do not flee, i.e. *be unwilling to flee*. **Nōlī**, or **nōlīte**, *fūgēre*.

170 The Ablative of the Gerund is used instrumentally:

Water hollows the rock by fall- **Āqua saxum cāvat cādendo.**
ing.

1. Cape pira quoniam cupis, sed noli piro meae quatiendo nocere.
2. Si haec scripseris, mox cupies non scripsisse.
3. Interrogavit num, haec facientes, recte et sapienter faceremus.
4. Accipe trecentos denarios, si dederit; ducentos ne acceperis.
5. Curate ut versus vestri Nasonem sapiant.
6. Nolite fugere, O milites; fodiendum est, non fugiendum, ut castra muniamus.
7. Si quaeris monumentum, circumspice.¹
8. Noli, O judex, injusta facere: nonne te oravit rex ut justitiam semper respiceret?
9. Miles, jam telum conjecturus, hostem jacentem aspergit.
10. Interrogavi qualia animalia multiplices fetus parerent.²

1. *I have-regard-to virtue; do not have-regard-to the commands of a tyrant.*³
2. *There was no doubt that he received five hundred denarii, and was (155) about-to-receive two thousand denarii.*
3. *When the youth beheld his father, he cast away his dart.*
4. *Flee, O friends; do not look round.*
5. *The leaders asked what we desired to do.*
6. *What prevents his verses from savouring-of Maro (see Maro in Vocabulary)?*
7. *What (i.e. that which) they did, they took care (143) to do well.*
8. *You will make your discourse accurate by writing, learned by reading.*

EXERCISE LVII.

171 Whether . . . or, in (a) Independent, as well as in (b) Dependent Questions, can be expressed by (1) *utrum . . . ān*; (2) *-ně . . . ān*:

(a 1) *Is this true or false?*

Utrum haec vēra ān falsa sunt?

(a 2) *Was he white or black?*

Albusně ān āter ērat?

¹ These words are inscribed on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's; *quaeris* refers to present, not (125) to future time.

² From what two Verbs may *parerent* come, the quantity being left unmarked? What Case does each govern?

³ Note that *have-regard-to* is one Verb in Latin governing an *Accusative Case*.

- (b 1) *We must enquire whether this is true or false.* Quaerendum est **utrum** haec vēra sint ān falsa.
 (b 2) *It is uncertain whether he was black or white.* Incertum est albusnē ān āter fuērit.¹

172 *Or not* in Interrogatives may be rendered by **annōn** or **necnē**:

Ask whether he will come or not. Quaerě **utrum** ventūrus sit **necnē** (or **annōn**).

173 N.B. (1) **Aut** and **věl** (157a) are not to be used in Dependent or Independent Questions.

174 (2) When *whether* is not followed by *or*, **num** (135) is generally used instead of **utrum**.

175 (3) The Rule (136) for Sequence of Tenses *always holds*.

1. Praeceptor dubitabat tune an Tullius rem melius gereret.²
2. Dux, cum jam proelii, vel potius caedis, finem fecisset, urbem incenderat.
3. Aut pugnandum est aut cedendum, milites.
4. Hunc vicum barbari oppidum vel urbem appellavere.
5. Milites cum jam spolia vel praedam rapuisserunt cupierunt urbem incendere.
6. Latona dicitur uno partu Apollinem et Dianam peperisse.³
7. Quaerendum est utrum regina an filius eius bellum acrius gesturus sit.
8. Arma nobis capienda sunt nē (*not -nē*) tyrannus, vel tyranni milites, bona nostra diripient.
9. Haec cum imperator aspexit, constituit aut aciem statim instruere aut clam nocte discedere.
10. Cum pedites nostri fugissent, naves tempestate quassae fuissent, urbes ab hostibus direptae, statim magna pars nostrorum pacem petere cupiebat.
11. Quaerendum est per (*by means of*) exploratoꝝes utrum urbs ab hostibus incensa sit necne.

176 ¹ Both in Independent and Dependent Questions (c) ān is sometimes used without **utrum** or -nē preceding; and in Dependent Questions (d) -nē is sometimes used for *or*, without a preceding particle.

It is uncertain whether he was the son Filius nēpōsne fuerit Tullii in-
or grandson of Tullius. certum est.

176a ² The disjunctive ān disjoins tū from Tullius and causes gérēret to agree with Tullius; tū may be parsed as “the subject of gérēres under-
stood;” see Par. 157a.

177 ³ Dicitur, with a Personal Subject, should generally be rendered in English impersonally, *it is said that Latona, &c.*

1. Who doubted whether you or your brother had made these verses?
2. We must either depart or learn.
3. Let us make an end of this war or (rather) insurrection.
4. The general ordered the soldiers to hurl their darts against (in gov. acc.) the enemy.
5. Either we shall carry on this war prosperously or we shall be driven into exile.
6. There was no doubt that the queen, or (rather) her son, had waged that war very-prosperously.
7. It was doubtful whether the general had seen the horse-soldiers, or (whether) ignorant of their arrival, he had drawn up the line-of-battle.
8. Let us ask whether the men will come on the third or fourth day.
9. It is uncertain whether the city has been stormed or not.
10. Who doubts whether the queen will (155) carry on the war in winter (5a)?

PREPOSITIONS.

178 1. The following Prepositions take the Ablative, and no other Case :

A, *āb* (before a vowel), *by*,
from.
Absquē (rare), *without*.
Clam, *secretly, without the know-*
ledge of.¹
Cōram, *in the presence of*.
Cum, *with*.
Dē, *down from, from, concern-*
ing.

Ē, (*ex* before a vowel), *out of*.
Pālam, *openly, in the presence*
of.²
Prae, *before, in comparison with,*
(with a negative because of).³
Prō, *before, for, on behalf of,*
instead of, in return for.
Sīne, *without*.
Tēnus (*after its Case*), *as far as*.⁴

These Prepositions are sometimes committed to memory in the following rhyme :

A, or *āb*, and *ex* or *ē*
Cum, *pālam*, *cōram*, *clam* and *dē*
Tēnus, *sīne*, *prō*, and *prae*
Always govern the Ablative.

¹ **Clam** is used by the Comic Authors with the Accusative.

² **Pālam** is used as a Preposition only after Cicero, and mostly by poets.

³ **Prae** is rarely used by Cicero to mean *because of* except with **non**, **vix**, &c.: *I am not able to speak for sorrow*, **Prae** macrōre lōqui nō possum.

⁴ **Tēnus** governs the Abl. Sing.; but with a Plural Noun, more often takes the Genitive, **Alpium tēnus**, *as far as the Alps*: but the Gen. Pl. construction is not found in the prose of Cicero.

EXERCISE LVIII.

179 RULE.—*Cum* is affixed to *tē*, *mē*, *sē*, *nōbīs*, *vōbīs*, *quō*, *qui*^{bus}: *mēcum*, (*not cum mē*) *nōbīscum*, *quōcum*, &c.

1. Puer inde a pueritia cum matre vixerat, quae ab Italia ad Graeciam se receperat. 2. Pecuniam mihi reddidit quam ipse a fratre meo, proximo anno, coram patre meo acceperat.
3. Irruperunt clam imperatore milites cum gladiis, cum scutis; qui (*see 'qui'*) eum me vehementissime increpuissent, equidem cum constantia respondi. 4. Tu quidem Rheno tenus regnabis, filius autem tecum regnabit. 5. Alpium tenus omnes gentes vicerat. 6. Verbo tenus te adjuvabit, re ipsa nihil faciet.¹ 7. Ira sine viribus inutilissima est. 8. Pro obsidibus causam egit Tullius; cui (*i.e.* et ei, *see Par. 298, I*) pro tantis eius laboribus gratias Allobroges egerunt. 9. Palam populo sine misericordia jugulatus est. 10. Tibi, O amice, prae omnibus amicis beate, ego, hominum miserrimus, prae lacrimis vix scribo. 11. Nos pro patria pugnantes dejecisti de Capitolio (32), iam ex urbe ejicisti. 12. Multis de² causis cupio tecum de hac re deliberare.

1. *In-the-presence-of his father the youth deliberated with me concerning this matter.* 2. *Let us return thanks to the worthy Balbus, who pleaded our cause with (181) zeal before the king.* 3. *There was no doubt that he had conquered all Asia as-far-as Taurus.* 4. *From a boy he had lived in Greece.* 5. *Since the general forbids (us), let us fight for (our) country without his knowledge.* 6. *He was slain by the soldiers in-the-sight-of the people.* 7. *From Italy I shall retire to Greece, and my son will travel with me.* 8. *Tullius, who pleaded for us, replied to these charges with indignation.* 9. *I scarcely write for tears: having been driven out-of (my) native-land into exile.* 10. *What will anger without wisdom effect for us?*

180 PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

ABLATIVE.

- İn*, meaning *rest in*
Süb, „ *rest under*
Süper, „ *concerning*.

ACCUSATIVE.

- İn*, meaning *into, to, towards*
Süb, „ *motion from below*,³
Süper, „ *above, over, upon*.⁴

¹ *Rē* is Adverbial Abl.: see Par. 182.

² ‘*From many reasons*,’ i.e. ‘*for many reasons*’.

³ The form *sübter* (hardly, if at all, found, except in poets and late prose writers), meaning *extension under*, generally takes the Acc. but sometimes the Abl. in poetry.

⁴ *Süper*, meaning *above*, also takes the Abl. in poetry, and in Caesar.

EXERCISE LIX.

- 181** RULE.—The *Manner* of an action may be expressed (1) by the Abl. of a Noun, *with an Adjective attached to it*; (2) by the Abl. following **cum**.

He spoke with, or in, anger; I replied with the greatest firmness. Ille quidem **cum** īra lōcūtus est; ēgō vēro **summā constantiā** respondi.

N.B. The Abl. *without an Adj. or Prep.* is used to denote *Instrument*, but not *Manner*.

- 182** Some exceptional Ablatives of Nouns are used (without Adjectives) adverbially, e.g. **jūre**, *rightly*; **ordīne**, *in order*; **spēciē**, *in appearance*; **rē** or **rē ipsa**, *in fact*, &c. They may be parsed as *Adverbial Ablatives*.

1. In Italia paulisper manserat, mox in Galliam contendit. 2. In eo loco a Sannitium imperatore Romani sub jugum missi sunt. 3. Sub oculis patris ipsius filii ambo interficti sunt. 4. Sub oculos nobis¹ duae columbae venerunt. 5. Equites sub jactu teli nondum erant; pedites jam sub ictum venerant. 6. Super navem turrem exstruxeramus. 7. Super hac re cupieram vobiscum deliberare. 8. Vulnus super vulnus centurio fortissimus acceperat. 9. Judaea, provincia turbulentia, sub Pontio Pilato tum erat. 10. In ore omnium Persarum tunc erat Alexandri humanitas. 11. Nioba dicitur a Sophocle, poeta Atheniensi, in saxum ab Apolline mutata esse. 12. Dux aliquid de stipendio equitum dempsit.
1. *The wisdom of Socrates was the talk (trans. was in the mouth) of all the Athenians.* 2. *There is no doubt that he will deliberate with you about this matter.* 3. *Why, O foolish man, did you send the Romans under the yoke, (since you were) soon about-to-pay the penalty of (your) deed by death?* 4. *If this comes under your notice (trans. eyes), do not neglect (it).* 5. *Above the wall let us erect a very high tower, that our men may not be under fire.* 6. *By-this-time two cohorts of our men had come under the fire of the enemy.* 7. *It is said that Daphne was changed (trans. Daphne is said to have been changed) into a laurel by Apollo.* 8. *How-long did you remain in Italy, and what do you say of (i.e. concerning) that country?* 9. *The Romans, who subtracted a part from his*

¹ Lit. *for us under eyes*, i.e. *under our eyes*. Why is **nōbīs** Dat.?
See Par. 7.

kingdom, presented to him, (in return) for this (part), a new province. 10. There is no doubt that the brave centurion Balbus received wound on wound.

183 PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE ALONE.

Ād,	to.	Juxtā,	{ near, hard by, next to.
Adversūs,	towards, against.	Ōb,	{ in front of (rare), on account of.
Antē,	before.	Pěněs,	in the hands of.
	{ at, near, among, in the house	Pěr,	through. ¹
Āpūd,	{ of, in the presence of, in the pages of.	Post,	after. ¹
Circā, circum,	around.	Praetēr,	besides, beyond.
Circitēr,	about.	Prōpē,	near.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Proptēr,	{ close to, on account of.
Contrā,	{ against, contrary to.	Sécundum,	{ following, in accordance with.
Ergā,	{ towards (only of the feelings).	Suprā,	above.
Extrā,	outside of.	Trans,	across.
Infrā,	below.	Ultrā,	{ on the farther side of.
Intēr,	between, among.	Versūs,	{ towards (in the direction of). ²
Intrā,	inside of, within.		

184 The various meanings of the Prepositions (only a few of which have been given above) must be learned by practice. But some help may be gained by remembering that most Prepositions can be used to denote some THOUGHT, such as that of *cause*, *obstacle*, *superiority*, &c., besides denoting relations of PLACE and TIME. Thus *ōb* meant originally (1) *in front of*, but it means more commonly (2) *on account of*; *pěr* means (1) *through*, of SPACE, but it also means (2) *throughout* or *during*, of TIME, and (3) *through*, of MEANS, or *owing to*, of CAUSE; *antē* means (1) *before*, of TIME, “*before*

¹ Pōně, an old form of *post*, is used as an adverb by Virgil, but is rarely used as a Preposition except by ante-classical and post-classical authors.

² Versus usually follows the name of the place to which motion is directed: *in the direction of Ambracia*, Ambraciām *versus*. Sometimes *ad* is inserted before the name of the place: *ad Oceānum versus*. Versus and adversus have old forms *versum* and *adversum*.

daybreak ;" (2) *before*, of PLACE, "before the gates ;" (3) *before*, of ESTIMATION, "He loved Balbus *before*, or *above*, the rest."

EXERCISE LX.

186 **Ād**, *to* or *towards*, is used to denote *purpose*, with the Acc. of (1) the Gerund, or (2) if the Verb is used *transitively* in English, the Acc. of the *Gerundive Adjective*.

- (1) *This will be useful to drink-(ing).* Hoc ād bībendum ūtīlē ērit.

I am prepared to fight(ing). **Ād** pugnandum pārātus sum.

- (2) *This is useful for cultivating the fields, i.e. towards the fields being hereafter cultivated.* Hōc est ād agros cōlendos ūtīlē (*not* ād agros cōlendum).

1. Postquam ad multam noctem pugnatū est, ad castra uterque exercitus revertit.² 2. Qui apud me manserant, ii apud judices rei facti sunt.³ 3. Apud antiquos (sic apud Ciceronem scriptum est) mos erat ante lucem surgere, negotia ante voluptatem ponere. 4. Post paucos dies videbo te cum manibus tuis post tergum vinctis ad carcere reductum. 5. Citra Alpes erat Gallia Cisalpina; ultra Alpes, Gallia Transalpīna. 6. Phaethon, Phoebi filius, quum per aethera patris sui equos paulisper egisset, de curru dejectus est. 7. Ob oculos mihi mors est; hanc poenam superbiae meae jure do.⁴ 8. Hoc contra jus fasque est, trans Euphratēm exercitū tuū in pace trajicere.⁵ 9. Interfecti sunt hostiū supra viginti milia.⁶ 10. Hoc est infra tuām dignitatem. 11. Tela haec ad eminus (*adv.*) feriendum sunt utilissima. 12. Vallis ad pugnandum nostro equitatui parum apta erat.⁷

187 ¹ In Old English *to* was followed by a Gerund resembling the form *drinking*, not by an Infinitive.

188 ² Trans. "after the battle *had* gone on," and remember that *postquam* with the Latin Perfect (not Pluperfect) represents the English *had*.

Also distinguish carefully between the Conjunction *postquam*, *when* or *after (that)*, and the Preposition *post*.

³ Look out rēus.

⁴ Why is jūrē Abl.? See Par. 182.

⁵ "Trajicere . . . exercitū" is in Apposition to hōc.

⁶ Hostiū is Gen. governed by milia. The Nom. to *interfecti sunt* is *hostes understood*, or some other Masc. Nom. implied from the context.

⁷ Equitātui is Dat. of *Advantage*, see Par. 7.

1. Among the ancients it was the custom to rise before dawn and to dine in the evening (30). 2. Why have you led your army across the Euphrates? 3. In-the-pages-of Cicero we read many (things) (that are) truly, all (things) tastefully expressed (i.e. said). 4. When he had been accused in-the-presence-of the judges he was led to prison. 5. Bread is useful even for quenching thirst. 6. This water is not fit to drink. 7. Why do you do these things against the law of-man and of-God? 8. It is right to place business before pleasure. 9. Have not these things come under your notice (i.e. eyes)? 10. During (per) two nights, in this great (i.e. so-great) storm, death was before our eyes.

EXERCISE LXI.

189 *Intēr se* (expressing all reciprocal relations) means *among themselves; together; with, between, or from, one another.*

Cicero's children are very loving *Cicērōnis pūéri āmant intēr se.*
among one another.

These things do not agree together, or disagree from one another. *Haec intēr sē rēpugnant, or contrāria sunt.*

1. Imperatori, penes quem est imperium, jam adversus Gallos bellum moventi, debes parere. 2. Inter urbem et campum fossa erat, per quam amnis quondam fluxerat. 3. Tullius, quem praeter modum stultissimus quisque laudat (140) neminem praeter sese amat.¹ 4. "Qui per alium facit, facit per se." 5. Per tres annos vitam in insula quadam propter Siciliam egit. 6. Quaedam propter sese expetenda sunt. 7. Hoc inter sese disputant philosophi: sed inter disputationes et facta quantum (*adv.*) interest! 8. Centurio noster, qui hanc ob causam extra teli jactum suos retinebat, cum extra culpani esset (151 *a*), non punitus est. 9. Quando hanc tantam eius benevolentiam erga te agnosces? 10. Nonne quaerendum est nobis quomodo hae sententiae inter sese contrariae sint? 11. Via una praeter fluminis ripam erat; altera inter duos altissimos montes; tertia per silvam ad urbem ducebatur.

1. *He who loves no one besides himself is himself loved by no one* (92). 2. *Virtue is to-be-sought on-account-of itself.*² 3. *How*

¹ Which is the Principal Verb? The Antecedent of *quem*? The subject of *laudat*? See *Hints on Construing*, Appendix III., p. 216.

² *To-be-sought*, i.e. *meet-to-be-sought*.

great *a-difference-is* (*there*) between hopes and deeds! 4. *The general took-care to keep his soldiers out of shot.* 5. *One road (led) beside the walls of the city, the other* (86) *led through a small wood, across a stream.* 6. *The judgment is in your hands:* When (156) *will you judge?* 7. *Why do you beyond measure praise the foolish* (126) *Tullius?* 8. *Labienus will hasten in-the-direction of the Rhine.* 9. *When will you send our cavalry against the enemy, who are now fighting amongst one another?* 10. *I ask you, my friends, how virtue and vice are contrary* (161) *to one another.* 11. *For this cause we prepared an ambush in a wood, which was near* (prōpē) *the town.*

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

190 FORMATION.—(1) The Present Tenses of Verbs compounded of a Preposition and a Verb usually change a or e of the Verb into i: thus, from fācio we have dēfīcio suffīcio, (*i.e.* sub-fīcio), confīcio, (*i.e.* cum-fīcio), &c., and from lēgo we have dēlīgo, collīgo, (*i.e.* con-līgo or cum-līgo), &c.¹ But the perfects remain unchanged: dē-fēci, suf-fēci, de-lēgi, collēgi, &c.²

191 (2) The Verb prōd-est, *it is profitable*, retains d before all forms of sum beginning with a vowel, but drops it before all beginning with a consonant.

Prōd-est; prōd-ērat; prōd-ērit; prōd-esse.
Prō-sum; prō-fuit; prō-fuērat; prō-fuērit.

192 CONSTRUCTION.—Verbs compounded with Prepositions mostly either (1) take a Dative of the Indirect Object, or, (2) they repeat the Preposition with the Case proper to the Preposition.

(1) *He took a ring from me.* Ānūlum mīhi dētraxit.

(2) *He took a ring from my finger.* Ānūlum dē dīgīto mēo dētraxit.

¹ But there are exceptions: *e.g.* intellēgo (not intelligo) is the correct form.

193 ² Three compounds of -lēgo make the Perf. in -lexi, (1) dīlīgo, *love*; (2) neglēgo, *neglect*; (3) intellēgo, *understand*.

194 The Compounds of *sum*, e.g. *ădest*, *ĭnest*, *intĕrest*, &c., all take a Dative:

Help me, Jupiter!

Adĕs mīhi, Juppīter.

195 Note the following use of *ăbest*:

I am, or shall be, within a very little of falling, lit. very little is absent by-which-not (145a) Mīnīmum *ăbest*, or *ăbĕrit*, quīn cădam.
I fall.

I was within a very little of falling. Mīnīmum *ăfuit* (*not abfuit*) quīn cădērem.

EXERCISE LXII.

1. Non prodest tibi flere. 2. Non dubium est quin tributum victis impositum sit (9a). 3. Nostri urbi murum circumde-derunt. 4. Cur non ei gladium eripuisti? 5. Alexander ipse his proeliis interfuit. 6. Minimum afuit quin urbs ab hostibus caperetur. 7. Romani Armeniam stultissimo illi regi detrahent. 8. Interrogabo cur huic tam forti equiti equum detraxerit (9a). 9. Non dubium erat quin frumentum civibus deesset. 10. Hoc (Nom.) cum militibus nostris summum terrorem injecisset, imperator Tullium decimae legioni prae-fecit. 11. Ob hanc causam frumentum exercitui defuturum erat. 12. Tu, qui me isti hodie postponis, cras antepones. 13. Oro te ne tales condicionea victae genti imponas.
1. There was no doubt that the enemy had surrounded their camp with a ditch (i.e. set-round the camp a ditch). 2. The camp was within a very little of being taken by the enemy. 3. I asked the leader how-much (of) tribute (71) he was about-to-impose-on the conquered city. 4. That old soldier has taken-part-in twenty-two battles. 5. You are within a little of committing a very-great wickedness. 6. Why did you snatch-from me the last hope I had (trans. the hope which I had last, 'last to agree with 'which')? 7. These words of the general displeased the king: who withdrew from him a large part of the army. 8. I will ask him why he imposed-on us these hard (trans. these so hard) conditions. 9. By-this-time all hope was gone (i.e. was absent) from us. 10. Conquered (pass. part. agrees with 'Balbus') by this great calamity, Balbus was within a very little of surrendering the city.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

196 There is no regular Perfect Participle *Active* in Latin, so as to express the English *having killed*. Latin has therefore to use the *Passive* Participle in the Ablative, thus :

The barbarians, the citizens having been killed (by them) set the city on fire i.e. the barbarians, having killed the citizens, set the city on fire.

Barbāri, cīvībus interfectis,
urbem incendērunt.

The Noun and Participle thus expressing *some circumstance in connection with the principal Verb*, are put in the Ablative (which is the ordinary Case to express *manner* and *circumstance*, as well as *instrument*, see Par. 181); and this Ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute cannot always be rendered by the English Active, e.g.

The citizens having been slain, the city was set on fire. Cīvībus interfectis, urbs incensa est.

EXERCISE LXIII.

1. Caesar, Rheno trajecto, constituit in Galliam se recipere.¹
2. Hostes, castris relictis, in suos fines subito se receperunt.
3. Brutus, filiis suis a se ipso interfectis, culpam non effugit.
4. Hieme barbari, missis legatis, pacem ab imperatore petiverunt.
5. Imperator, direpto a barbaris templo, statuit urbem eorum incendere.
6. His auditis nostri clamorem tollunt, et trajecto amne impetum in hostem faciunt.
7. Tarquinio ex urbe expulso, consules imperium suscepserunt.
8. Imperator, re feliciter gesta, tributum victae genti imposuerat.
9. Exposito exercitu Caesar equitatum ante se mittit.
10. Non dubium est quin, cognito hostium adventu, terror ingens nostros invasurus sit.

¹ In this exercise the Ablative Absolute should be translated in two ways, 1st, literally, *the Rhine having been crossed (by him)*, and 2nd, according to the English idiom, *having crossed the Rhine or when he had crossed the Rhine*. In subsequent Exercises the second or true English translation may suffice.

1. *The enemy having made a charge (i.e. a charge having been made by the enemy), our men for-a-short-time retreated.*
2. *Having disembarked (his) cavalry, Caesar gave-orders-to (his) foot-soldiers to leap down into the water, i.e. the cavalry having been disembarked, Caesar gave, &c.* 3. *There is no doubt that our leader, having ascertained the number of the enemy, will quickly retire.* 4. *Haring carried on the war most-prosperously, the general was praised by all (his) country-men.* 5. *The city having been plundered, the citizens determined to declare war against the barbarians.* 6. *After slaying the three hundred hostages (i.e. the three hundred hostages having been slain) the barbarians had no hope of peace.* 7. *The general, having imposed this heavy tribute (trans. this so-great tribute having been imposed) on the conquered nation, restored to them the cities he had taken.¹* 8. *Codrus, king (123) of the Athenians, having been slain, those who were besieging Athens retired in-haste (181).*

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (*continued*).

197 The Ablative Absolute is also used (1) with Active Present Participles, and (2) with a few Nouns or Adjectives.

- (1) *When the sun sets, lit. the sun setting, lions leave their cares.* **Sōle occidente,** lēōnes antra linquunt (p. 207).
- (2) *While Tullius was king, lit. Tullius being king.* **Tullio rēge.**
While I am alive, i.e. I being alive. **Mē vīvo** (adj.).
In my judgment, i.e. while I am judge. **Mē jūdīce.**

198 N.B.—When the Noun with which the Participle agrees can be made the *Subject or Object* of a Verb, the Ablative Absolute must not be used. Thus, *While the general was leading on his men, he was transfixes by an arrow*, must not be rendered “*Impérātōre mīlītēs dūcentē (is) sāgittā transfixus est*,” but “*Impérātor, mīlītēs dūcens, sāgittā transfixus est*,” or else “*Impérātōrem, mīlītēs dūcentem, sāgittā transfixit*.”

198a ¹ Note that the Relative, when omitted in English, must be inserted in Latin: *the cities (which) he had taken.*

Dionysius having been banished, (he) taught boys.¹

Dīōnȳsius, ex urbe pulsus, pueros docebat (*not*, **Dīōnȳsio pulso**.)

Having at last found the boy, Tullius sent him back to his (the boy's) friends.

Pūērum tandem rēpertum Tullius ad āmicos eius rēmisit (*not*, **Pūēro rēperto . . . T. eum remisit**.)

EXERCISE LXIV.

1. Hostes, me duce, facillime vincetis. 2. Trecentos obsidum, quos in armis cepimus, vinctos statim interfecimus. 3. Filia, matre neququam misericordiam implorante, jugulata est. 4. Mulier, neququam misericordiam implorans, coram rege jugulata est. 5. Tullius, reclamante optimo quoque civium, in exilium pulsus est. 6. Trajecto fluvio, Suevorum fines intrabimus ; a quibus, me judice, nobis acerrime resistetur (167). 7. Gaio haec dicente, omnes tacebant ; itaque Tullius, nullo reclamante, ab exilio revocatus est. 8. Caesare et Bibulo consulibus, hoc templum prope viam Latinam aedificatum est. 9. Non igitur dubium est quin Alpibus trajectis Hannibal in Italiam descensurus sit. 10. Itaque, his compertis, consentientibus civibus, magistratus omnia ad resistendum (186) paraverunt.

1. *By your own judgment (i.e. you yourself being judge) your brother has conducted this war unsuccessfully.* 2. *The barbarians, having immediately slain the hostages, determined to stir up a war against us.* 3. *The daughter was led before the king, while the mother in vain protested (i.e. the mother in vain protesting).* 4. *The general having been pierced with an arrow, the enemy determined to deliver him to us (198).* 5. *The bridge having been broken-down, we determined to withdraw from Germany into Gaul.* 6. *During-the-reign-of Tarquin, great buildings were erected in the city.* 7. *There is no doubt that our general, having ascertained the arrival of the enemy, will immediately retire.* 8. *The excellent Tullius (126) was recalled to his country, on the fourth day, no one (92) protesting (against it.)*

¹ The *he* is very often (though incorrectly) inserted even in modern English ; but it must be omitted in Latin.

EXERCISE LXIV.*

(Recapitulatory.)

1. In eo eramus ut vinceremur. 2. Curate ne ab hostibus opprimamini. 3. Si urbem ipsi incenderitis, nemo vestrum servabitur. 4. Murus et arx ab equitibus capta sunt. 5. Et ego et tu ab optimo quoque civium laudati sumus. 6. Urbem captam Balbus, dux crudelissimus, incenderat. 7. Ne tu injustos, Tulli optime, laudaveris. 8. Quod scelus commisit? Quid morte dignum fecit? 9. Num tu, puer jam duodecim annos (31), natus octo vel novem horas dormis? 10. Interrogastine num in oppido mulier mansura sit? 11. Balbum, plura fortasse dicturum, hastae equitum transfixerunt. 12. Quid huic arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, tantum (*adv.*) nocuit? 13. Huius tantae calamitatis vel memoria nobis semper erit ingratissima. 14. Interrogate quando ventura sit (32)? num in animo habeat biduum in oppido manere? 15. De Tullio valde dubito num vitio potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus sit. 16. Balbus, homo parum (*adv.*) contentus, aliena laudat, sua semper culpat. 17. Cur tibi, nostri immemori, tot dona damus? 18. Ab optimo quoque civium responsum est. 19. Nobis (192) pro patria pugnantibus homo ignavissimus ob ignaviam suam spem ultimam eripuit. 20. Minimum afuit quin urbi fossam circumdaremus. 21. Non est dubium quin Balbus decimae legioni praefectus fuerit.

DEONENT VERBS.

199 A few Verbs (called Deponent) have a Past Participle with Active meaning. These Verbs, though having an *Active meaning*, yet have a *Passive form* in all the Tenses and in the Past Participle, as *hortor*, *I exhort*, *hortābor*, *I will exhort*, *hortātus*, *having exhorted*.

200 Besides the Passive forms, every Deponent Verb has also the Active forms of the *Participles, Supines, and Gerunds*: *hortans*, *hortaturus*, *exhorting*, *about to exhort*, &c.

201 The Deponent Gerundive, e.g. *hortandus*, *meet to be exhorted*, is used like the Gerundive of an ordinary Verb.¹

¹ The Past Participles of a few Deponent Verbs are sometimes used Passively, as, *ādeptus*, *having been obtained*, from *ādipiscor*.

DEPONENT

I. Hortōr, hortātūs sum, hortārī, *exhort*, like āmōr.II. Vēreōr, vērītūs sum, vērērī, *fear*, like mōneōr.

	I.	II.																																			
INDICATIVE MOOD.	<table> <tr> <td>Present.</td><td>Hort-ōr,</td><td>{ I exhort, or am exhorting.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>Hort-ārīs (ārē), &c.</td><td>{ thou exhortest. &c.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Future Simple.</td><td>Hort-ābōr,</td><td>I shall exhort.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Imperfect.</td><td>Hort-ābār,</td><td>I was exhorting.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Perfect,</td><td>Hort-ātūs sum,</td><td>{ I have exhortated, or I exhorted.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Fut. Perfect.</td><td>Hort-ātūs ēro,</td><td>{ I shall have ex- horted.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Pluperfect.</td><td>Hort-ātūs ēram,</td><td>{ I had exhortated.</td></tr> </table>	Present.	Hort-ōr,	{ I exhort, or am exhorting.		Hort-ārīs (ārē), &c.	{ thou exhortest. &c.	Future Simple.	Hort-ābōr,	I shall exhort.	Imperfect.	Hort-ābār,	I was exhorting.	Perfect,	Hort-ātūs sum,	{ I have exhortated, or I exhorted.	Fut. Perfect.	Hort-ātūs ēro,	{ I shall have ex- horted.	Pluperfect.	Hort-ātūs ēram,	{ I had exhortated.	<table> <tr> <td>Vēr-eōr,</td><td>{ I fear, or am fearing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ērīs (ērē), &c.</td><td>{ thou fearest. &c.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ēbōr,</td><td>I shall fear.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ēbār,</td><td>I was fearing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūs sum,</td><td>{ I have feared, or I feared.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūs ēro,</td><td>{ I shall have feared.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūs ēram,</td><td>{ I had feared.</td></tr> </table>	Vēr-eōr,	{ I fear, or am fearing.	Vēr-ērīs (ērē), &c.	{ thou fearest. &c.	Vēr-ēbōr,	I shall fear.	Vēr-ēbār,	I was fearing.	Vēr-ētūs sum,	{ I have feared, or I feared.	Vēr-ētūs ēro,	{ I shall have feared.	Vēr-ētūs ēram,	{ I had feared.
Present.	Hort-ōr,	{ I exhort, or am exhorting.																																			
	Hort-ārīs (ārē), &c.	{ thou exhortest. &c.																																			
Future Simple.	Hort-ābōr,	I shall exhort.																																			
Imperfect.	Hort-ābār,	I was exhorting.																																			
Perfect,	Hort-ātūs sum,	{ I have exhortated, or I exhorted.																																			
Fut. Perfect.	Hort-ātūs ēro,	{ I shall have ex- horted.																																			
Pluperfect.	Hort-ātūs ēram,	{ I had exhortated.																																			
Vēr-eōr,	{ I fear, or am fearing.																																				
Vēr-ērīs (ērē), &c.	{ thou fearest. &c.																																				
Vēr-ēbōr,	I shall fear.																																				
Vēr-ēbār,	I was fearing.																																				
Vēr-ētūs sum,	{ I have feared, or I feared.																																				
Vēr-ētūs ēro,	{ I shall have feared.																																				
Vēr-ētūs ēram,	{ I had feared.																																				
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	<table> <tr> <td>Present.</td><td>Hort-ēr,</td><td>I may exhort.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Imperfect.</td><td>Hort-ārēr,</td><td>I might exhort.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Perfect.</td><td>Hort-ātūs sin,</td><td>{ I may have ex- horted.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Pluperfect.</td><td>Hort-ātūs essem</td><td>{ I should have ex- horted.</td></tr> </table>	Present.	Hort-ēr,	I may exhort.	Imperfect.	Hort-ārēr,	I might exhort.	Perfect.	Hort-ātūs sin,	{ I may have ex- horted.	Pluperfect.	Hort-ātūs essem	{ I should have ex- horted.	<table> <tr> <td>Vēr-eār,</td><td>I may fear.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ērēr,</td><td>I might fear.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūs sim,</td><td>{ I may have feared.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūs essem,</td><td>{ I should have feared,</td></tr> </table>	Vēr-eār,	I may fear.	Vēr-ērēr,	I might fear.	Vēr-ētūs sim,	{ I may have feared.	Vēr-ētūs essem,	{ I should have feared,															
Present.	Hort-ēr,	I may exhort.																																			
Imperfect.	Hort-ārēr,	I might exhort.																																			
Perfect.	Hort-ātūs sin,	{ I may have ex- horted.																																			
Pluperfect.	Hort-ātūs essem	{ I should have ex- horted.																																			
Vēr-eār,	I may fear.																																				
Vēr-ērēr,	I might fear.																																				
Vēr-ētūs sim,	{ I may have feared.																																				
Vēr-ētūs essem,	{ I should have feared,																																				
IMPERATIVE.	<table> <tr> <td>Present.</td><td>Hort-ārē,</td><td>Exhort thou.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Future.</td><td>Hort-ātōr,</td><td>{ thou shalt, or must exhort.</td></tr> </table>	Present.	Hort-ārē,	Exhort thou.	Future.	Hort-ātōr,	{ thou shalt, or must exhort.	<table> <tr> <td>Vēr-ērē,</td><td>Fear thou.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētōr,</td><td>{ thou shalt, or must fear.</td></tr> </table>	Vēr-ērē,	Fear thou.	Vēr-ētōr,	{ thou shalt, or must fear.																									
Present.	Hort-ārē,	Exhort thou.																																			
Future.	Hort-ātōr,	{ thou shalt, or must exhort.																																			
Vēr-ērē,	Fear thou.																																				
Vēr-ētōr,	{ thou shalt, or must fear.																																				
INFINITIVE.	<table> <tr> <td>Pres. & Imperf.</td><td>Hort-ārī,</td><td>to exhort.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Perf. & Plup.</td><td>Hort-ātūs esse,</td><td>{ to have exhortated.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Future.</td><td>Hort-ātūrūs esse,</td><td>{ to be about to exhort.</td></tr> </table>	Pres. & Imperf.	Hort-ārī,	to exhort.	Perf. & Plup.	Hort-ātūs esse,	{ to have exhortated.	Future.	Hort-ātūrūs esse,	{ to be about to exhort.	<table> <tr> <td>Vēr-ērī,</td><td>to fear.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūs essē,</td><td>{ to have feared.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūrūs esse,</td><td>{ to be about to fear.</td></tr> </table>	Vēr-ērī,	to fear.	Vēr-ētūs essē,	{ to have feared.	Vēr-ētūrūs esse,	{ to be about to fear.																				
Pres. & Imperf.	Hort-ārī,	to exhort.																																			
Perf. & Plup.	Hort-ātūs esse,	{ to have exhortated.																																			
Future.	Hort-ātūrūs esse,	{ to be about to exhort.																																			
Vēr-ērī,	to fear.																																				
Vēr-ētūs essē,	{ to have feared.																																				
Vēr-ētūrūs esse,	{ to be about to fear.																																				
PARTICIPLES.	<table> <tr> <td>Present.</td><td>Hort-ans,</td><td>exhorting.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Future.</td><td>Hort-ātūrus</td><td>, about to exhort.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Perfect.</td><td>Hort-ātūs</td><td>, having exhortated.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Gerundive.</td><td>Hort-andūs</td><td>{ meet to be ex- horted.</td></tr> </table>	Present.	Hort-ans,	exhorting.	Future.	Hort-ātūrus	, about to exhort.	Perfect.	Hort-ātūs	, having exhortated.	Gerundive.	Hort-andūs	{ meet to be ex- horted.	<table> <tr> <td>Vēr-ens,</td><td>fearing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūrūs,</td><td>about to fear.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-ētūs,</td><td>having feared.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vēr-endūs,</td><td>meet to be feared.</td></tr> </table>	Vēr-ens,	fearing.	Vēr-ētūrūs,	about to fear.	Vēr-ētūs,	having feared.	Vēr-endūs,	meet to be feared.															
Present.	Hort-ans,	exhorting.																																			
Future.	Hort-ātūrus	, about to exhort.																																			
Perfect.	Hort-ātūs	, having exhortated.																																			
Gerundive.	Hort-andūs	{ meet to be ex- horted.																																			
Vēr-ens,	fearing.																																				
Vēr-ētūrūs,	about to fear.																																				
Vēr-ētūs,	having feared.																																				
Vēr-endūs,	meet to be feared.																																				
SUPINES.	Hort-ātūm,	to exhort.																																			
GERUND.	Hort-ātū,	to be exhortated.																																			
	Hort-andī,	of exhorting.																																			
	&c.	&c.																																			
		Vēr-ētūm.																																			
		Vēr-ētū,																																			
		Vēr-endī,																																			
		&c.																																			
		Vēr-ens.																																			
		Vēr-ētūrūs.																																			
		Vēr-ētūs.																																			
		Vēr-endūs.																																			

VERBS.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, speak, like rēgōr.

IV. Partiōr, partitūs sum, partirī, divide, like audiō.

	III.	IV.	
Present.	Lōquōr, { I speak, or am speaking. Lōqu-ēris { thou speakest. &c. &c.	Part-iōr, { I divide, or am dividing. Part-īris { thou dividest. &c. &c.	
Fut. Simple.	Lōqu-ār, I shall speak.	Part-iār, I shall divide.	
Imperfect.	Lōqu-ēbār, I was speaking.	Part-ībār, I was dividing.	
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs { I have spoken, sum, or I spoke.	Part-ītūs { I have divided, sum, or I divided.	
Fut. Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs { I shall have ēro, spoken	Part-ītūs { I shall have di- ēro, vided.	
Pluperfect.	Lōcū-tūs { I had spoken. ēram,	Part-ītūs { I had divided. ēram,	
			INDICATIVE MOOD.
Present.	Lōqu-ār, I may speak.	Part-iār, I may divide.	
Imperfect.	Lōqu-ērēr, I might speak.	Part-īrēr, I might divide.	
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs { I may have sim, spoken.	Part-ītūs { I may have di- sim, vided.	
Pluperfect.	Lōcū-tūs { I should have essem, spoken.	Part-ītūs { I should have essem, divided.	
			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
Present.	Lōqu-ērē, speak thou.	Part-īrē, Divide thou.	
Future.	Lōqu-itōr, { thou shalt, or must speak.	Part-ītōr, { thou shalt, or must divide.	
			IMPERATIVE.
Pres. & Imp.	Lōqu-i, to speak.	Part-īrī, to divide.	
Perf. & Plup.	Lōcū-tūs { to have spoken. essē,	Part-ītūs { to have divided. essē,	
Future.	Lōcū-turūs { to be about to essē, speak.	Part-ītūrūs { to be about to essē, divide.	
			INFINITIVE.
Present.	Lōqu-ens, speaking.	Part-iens, dividing.	
Future.	Lōcū-turūs, about to speak.	Part-ītūrūs, about to divide.	
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs, having spoken.	Part-ītūs, having divided.	
Gerundive.	Lōqu-endūs meet to be spoken	Part-iendūs, meet to be divided	
			PARTICIPLES.
SUPINES.	Lōcū-tum, to speak.	Part-ītum, to divide.	
GERUND.	Lōcū-tū, to be spoken.	Part-ītū, to be divided.	
	Lōqu-endī, of speaking. &c. &c.	Part-iendī, of dividing. &c. &c.	

EXERCISE LXV.

202 The Participle can be used (like the Adjective, Par. 34) to agree with *men* understood: *victis parcē, spare the conquered*; *fūgientes sēquēre, follow those-who-are fleeing.*¹

1. Non dubium est quin regina filias suas hortata sit (9a). 2. Ne mentitus sis, mi fili. 3. Interrogabam puerum cur asini vocem imitaretur. 4. Pygmalion, diu imaginem contemplatns, tandem eam spirantem mirabatur. 5. Conatus parva, homo ignavissimus minora perficiebat. 6. Non dubium est quin miranda perfecturus sis, nisi tyranni exemplum imitaberis. 7. Hortandus est tibi frater ne pessimi istius amici exemplum imitetur.² 8. Deos veneramini, imitamini parentes. 9. Diu dolum meditatus tandem servis suis imperavit ut armati gladiis Tullium nocte sequerentur. 10. O divinam illam vitam voluptatem (202) aspernantium, sequentium virtutem!³
1. *Virtue is to be followed for its own sake* (i.e. on account of itself). 2. *Having imitated the bad from (his) boyhood, the boy made himself very like (66) the bad.* 3. *The life of those-who-follow (trans. those-following) virtue is most happy.* 4. *Attempt great things, that you may at-least accomplish small things.* 5. *Having long contemplated the stars, the philosopher did not see the well at (ad) his feet.* 6. *Why, O ye traitors, do ye meditate plots? How-often shall I entreat you not to (143) lie-in-wait-for the consul?* 7. *In vain do you venerate the gods, most deceitful of men, (while) meditating snares for the innocent (7).* 8. *Ah! the happy life of those-who-scorn wealth and do not (18) suffer poverty.*

203 RULE.—*Oblīviscor, rēmīniscor, rēcordor, mīsēreor*, commonly govern the Genitive.⁴

204 ¹ Note that “*iis victis*” would mean “them, since they are conquered,” and “*cos fugientes*,” “them, while, or since, they are fleeing;” and generally a Latin Participle, *in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun*, may be rendered by an English Conjunction (154a).

205 ² When an ordinary and a Pronominal Adjective both agree with the same Noun the Pronominal Adjective generally comes between the ordinary Adjective and the Noun: *That distinguished man, clārissimus illē vir.*

206 ³ The Accusative is commonly used with *O* in *exclamation* (not in *address*), and may be called the *Exclamatory Accusative*.

⁴ These Verbs were once reflexive, *I forget-myself, remember-myself, pity-myself of, &c.* Compare the French “*se plaindre*,” to pity, and in Old English, *I remember myself of.*

Distinguish between (1) *mīsēror, -āri, I shew-pity-to*, which governs an Acc., and (2) *mīsēreor, -ēri, I feel-pity-for*, which governs a Genitive.

207 RULE.—**Fungor**, **fruor**, **ūtor**, **vescor**, **pōtior**, govern the Ablative.¹

EXERCISE LXVI.

1. Non dubium est quin mulier oratione liberrima usa sit (9a).
 2. Interrogabam barbaros num pane vescerentur, nonne ferarum pellibus pro vestitu uterentur.
 3. Miserere Balbi, viri justissimi, quem nemo adhuc miseratus est.
 4. Recordare uxoris tuae; ne liberorum oblitus sis, in *te* uno spem ponentium.
 5. Vastandi sunt agrigentis illius crudelissimae quae nihil veneratur, nullius miseretur.
 6. Regno potitus, promissorum statim oblitus est.
 7. Qui magistratibus functi erant, eos, capta urbe suinno honore affecimus.
 8. Dum vita fruimini, nolite (169) virtutis obliviisci.
 9. Sagacitate canum ad nostram utilitatem utinur.
 10. Cur nullius ipse miseritus, nostra misericordia frui cupis?
1. *To remember past evils is sometimes pleasant.* 2. *There is no doubt that very-many enjoy the memory of past evils.* 3. *You should eat (i.e. it-is-to-be-eaten) that you may live; you should not live that you may eat.* 4. *Let us use the opportunity which the enemy have afforded us.* 5. *If you do not (i.e. unless you shall) show pity to the conquered, beware lest you yourselves suffer the same fate [trans. same (things).]* 6. *Having suffered adversity, the woman will peculiarly [i.e. before (ante) others] enjoy prosperity.* 7. *I will ask whether he discharges his duty well or (171) ill.* 8. *Do not forget, (as) an old-man, those precepts which you learned (as) a boy.*²

EXERCISE LXVII.

1. Nisi res adversas experiemur patientiam non discemus.
2. Loquere pauca, multa disce.
3. Parentes et verendi et amandi sunt.
4. Plurima pollicentibus ne tu credideris.³
5. Forte leo et asinus et vulpes, partituri praedam, de partibus sortiebantur.⁴
6. Dux noster, cives captiae urbis clementer allocutus, pavorem omnium minuit.
7. Nocte profiscamur ne hostis nos videat.
8. Nonne scelus fatemini? Fatendum est, si poenam effugere cupitis.
9. Quid tibi videtur? Qui pro

¹ These Verbs were also once reflexive, e.g. **fruor**, *I enjoy myself with*; **vescor**, *I feed myself with*; **ūtor**, *I employ myself with*.

² Old-man is in Apposition with you the Subject of forget.

³ **Pollicentibus** is not Abl.; see Par. 202.

⁴ **Vulpēs** is feminine; why therefore is **partitūri** masc.; See Par. 161. N.B. Latin inserts *et* between each pair of a list of Nouns or omits *et* between each; English inserts *it* only before the last

The lion, the ass, and the fox. Lēo, (et) āsinus, (et) vulpēs.

patria moritur nonne is laude dignus est?¹ 10. Cohorti jam ex urbe proficiscenti sex aquilae, omen optimum,² visae sunt (*appeared*). 11. Non dubium erat quin mulier fame et siti mortua esset. 12. Adepti libertatem, nonne contenti eritis nisi et (146) imperium adipiscemini?

1. *Did not pain seem the greatest of evils* (73) *to the disciples of Epicurus?* 2. *Take care to obtain liberty.* 3. *Having confessed this, do you dare to remain in the city?* 4. *The general made every preparation* (i.e. *prepared all things*) *that he might set-out on the next day.* 5. *The woman was within a very little* (194) *of dying of* (Lat. Abl.) *hunger and thirst.* 6. *When-they-had-conversed* (154a) *together* (189) *they determined to set-out at night.* 7. *Do not draw-lots about the booty, O soldiers, since-you-are* (i.e. *being*) *about-to-obtain a greater booty by fighting.* 8. *Trust one-who-has-experienced* (202) *(it): he-who promises much* (i.e. *many things*) *performs little* (i.e. *few things*). 9. *I asked the rich Balbus when* (156) *he was going to enjoy* (i.e. *was about-to-enjoy*) *the riches which he had* (subjunctive) *obtained.* 10. *What prevented you from confessing the truth* (i.e. *true things*)?

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (ACTIVE).

208

1. OBJECT-CLAUSES.—When a Principal Sentence, e.g. *he is mistaken*, becomes the Object of a Verb, e.g. *believe, declare, &c.*, there are two ways of expressing the change in English *but only one in Latin, viz., the Accusative and Infinitive:*

I declare (1) that he is mistaken. *Dico ēum errāre.*
I declare (2) him to be mistaken.

Here **errāre** is “the Infinitive depending on **dīco**”; and **ēum** is “the Subject of the Infinitive **errāre**,” (i.e. **ēum** is so related to **errāre** that, if **errāre** were in the Indicative, **ēum**, or rather **īs**, would be its Subject or Nominative).

209

2. SUBJECT-CLAUSES.—The same construction, viz., Accusative and Infinitive, is used in Subject-Clauses: *That-he-is-in-error, is certain, (or, It is certain that he is in error),*

¹ What is the antecedent (Par. 107) of *qui*?

² The punctuation shews that **ōmen** is not Nom. after **sunt**: what Case is it then (123)?

Certum est ēum errāre; *That I should go into exile pleased them, (or, It pleased them that I should go into exile), Placūit eis mē in exsilium īre.*

210 THE TENSE IN SUBJECT AND OBJECT-CLAUSES.—After a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the Tense of the English Indicative e.g. *is* (208, 1) is changed, but the Tense of the English Infinitive e.g. *to be* (208, 2) *remains unchanged*: and the Latin Infinitive also *remains unchanged*: *I declared (1) that he was mistaken; I declared (2) him to be mistaken: dixi ēum errāre.*¹

211	OBJECT-CLAUSE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	
	<i>Tullius said that</i>	<i>Tullius said,</i>	<i>Tullius dixit</i>
	(1)	(1)	(1)
(a)	<i>he conquered</i>	<i>"I conquer"</i>	<i>sē vincēre</i>
(b)	<i>he was conquering</i>	<i>"I am conquering"</i>	
	(2)	(2)	(2)
	{ <i>he conquered,</i> <i>had conquered, or,</i> <i>had been conquering</i>	<i>"I conquered"</i> <i>"I was conquering"</i> <i>"I had conquered"</i> <i>"I had been conquer-</i> <i>ing"</i> <i>"I have conquered"</i>	<i>sē vīcissee</i>
	(3)	(3)	(3)
	<i>he should conquer</i>	<i>"I shall conquer"</i>	<i>sē victūrum esse</i> ²
	<i>he was about to conquer</i>	<i>"I am about to conquer</i>	

EXERCISE LXVII, A.

1. Tullia dicit se tibi haec pollicenti credituram esse.³ 2. Clamaverunt obsides se meliore fato dignos esse. 3. Responderunt virgines nunquam se tantae virtutis oblituras esse. 4. Negavit magister discipulos corpora satis exercuisse. 5. Placetne tibi tot cives uni tyranno parere? 6. Respondit puer se nescire quot sorores haberet. 7. Fatendum est te promisisse multa, panca perficere. 8. Scribunt mihi se duos menses in Italia mansisse, jam in Graeciam profecturos esse.

¹ Dixi ēum errāvisse would have meant, *I declared him to have been, or that he had been, mistaken.*

² In accordance with Par. 24, *esse* takes the same case after it as before it; and therefore, since *sē* is the Accusative, *victūrum* is also Accusative.

³ Hitherto *sē* has been used only for *himself, themselves, &c.*: but in Object-Clauses it must often be rendered by *he, they, &c.*

(Write out the Subject and Object-Clauses in the above Exercise as Principal Sentences : 1. *Ego tibi. . . credam.* 2. *Meliore fato digni sumus, &c. ; see 218a*).

1. *It is certain that no dangers will terrify him.* 2. *He said that he feared (210) these dangers.*¹ 3. *The boy writes that he had always exercised (his) body.* 4. *My sister says that she will not depart from the city.* 5. *Have you heard that the barbarians set the city on fire?* 6. *Do not (169) say that you did this.* 7. *He said that he should bind the captives.* 8. *He did-not-know that they had escaped in the night.*

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (PASSIVE).

212 As the Latin Passive has no Future Infinitive (except the Supine *īrī*, (248)), the Latin employs a periphrasis :

Tullius said that he should be conquered. Tullius dixit **fōre, or fūtūrum esse, ut vincērētūr**, i.e. *that it would come to pass that he would be conquered.*

213	OBJECT-CLAUSE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	Tullius dixit
	(1) <i>he was being conquered</i>	"I am being conquered"	(1) sē vinci
	(2) (a) (b) <i>he was conquered</i>	(a) "I am conquered" ³	(2) (a) (b) sē victum esse²
	(c) (d) <i>he had been conquered</i>	(b) "I was conquered" (c) "I had been conquered" (d) "I have been conquered"	(c) (d) sē victum fuisse²
	(3) <i>he should be conquered</i> <i>he was about to be conquered</i>	(3) "I shall be conquered" "I am about to be conquered"	(3) fōre, or fūtūrum esse ut vincērētūr

¹ Wherever *he, she, &c.*, in a Subordinate Clause, stand for some Noun or Pronoun which is the Nominative to the Principal Verb, they must be rendered by **sē**.

² The **esse** or **fuisse** is sometimes omitted (as also in the Active Inf.); and care is then required to distinguish the Inf. from the Participle.

215 Some Compound Tenses are occasionally supplied in Latin by the phrase "*in eo sum ut*" (Par. 166). *Tullius said that he was or had been (on the point of) being conquered*, Tullius dixit *se in eo esse, or fuisse, ut vincērētūr*.

216 ³ "I am *lored*" would imply that the action continued, and would be rendered "**sē āmāri**"; but "I am *conquered*" implies that the *action* is

N.B.—The Tense of the Latin Infinitive in the *third* column above, is the same as that of the English Verb in the *second* column, where it is used as a *Principal Verb*.

- 217** RULE.—The Latin Inf. in a Subject or Object-Clause is of the same Tense as the English Verb would be, if it were made a Principal Verb in the words of the speaker.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

- 218** RULE.—Use **sē**, **suus**, &c. (not **ēum**, **eius**, &c.) when the Pronoun (in a Subordinate Clause, see page 328) stands for the Subject of the Principal Verb:

Tullius said that he (i.e. *Tullius*) *Tullius dixit sē errāre.*
was mistaken.

I said that he was mistaken. *Dixi ēum errāre.*

1. Quis nescit solem luna majorem esse? 2. Dixit se in animo habere ad patriam reverti. 3. Dicit se in animo habuisse ex Italia proficisci; sed tempestatem obstitisse. 4. Mulieres clamaverunt nunquam se ad oppidum libenter reversuras esse. 5. Balbum certiorem fecimus nos ad Italiam venisse. ibi paulisper manere, inde ad Graeciam venturos (214). 6. Tullius clamavit quondam se sontem fuisse, nunc vero venia dignum esse. 7. Interrogavi num captivos vinxisset: respondit nondum se vinxisse, eras autem vincturum esse. 8. Certum erat urbem ab ipsis civibus incensam esse. 9. Compertum erat hostium (91) trecentos prope a castris nostris abesse. 10. Certum est nunquam fore ut urbs a te capiatur. 11. Negavere hostes futurum esse ut nobis urbem intrantibus resisteretur (167). 12. Respondimus legatos a nobis quoque ad hostem mitti.¹

past, and only the *result* is *present*. The pupil must carefully distinguish between the two meanings of the ambiguous English *Passive*, e.g. (1) “the house is *burned*, incensa est;” (2) “the house is *guarded*,” custōditur.

218a ¹ The pupil (before proceeding to the English-Latin Exercise) should write out the Subject and Object Clauses in the Latin Exercise, as Principal Sentences, and in the words of the speakers. Thus, (1) sol lunā major est. (2) Ego in animo habeo, &c. (3) Ego in animo habui (or habueram) ex Italia, &c. (4) Nunquam nos revertemur, &c.

In the English-Latin Exercise, (before being turned into Latin) the Subject and Object Clauses may be similarly turned into Principal Sentences. (1) *Four hundred of the enemy are hastening*, &c. (2) *Some of the citizens say one thing, others another*. (3) *I had purposed to set out for Greece, but now I purpose*, &c. Then use the Rule in Par. 217.

1. *It had been ascertained that four hundred of the enemy were hastening to the city.* 2. *He answered that some (86) of the citizens said one thing, others another.* 3. *He said that he had formerly purposed to set-out for (i.e. to) Greece, but (139a) that now he purposed to remain in Italy.* 4. *It is certain that the women will never remain in Greece.* 5. *Who does-not-know that Italy is larger than Sicily?* 6. *We did-not-know that the hostages had been immediately bound.* 7. *I informed his brother that we had the horse, and that we should sell it to-morrow.* 8. *It was ascertained by our spies that three thousand of the enemy had set-out from the camp by night.* 9. *They said that we (212) should be conquered by the Scythians.* 10. *Who does-not-know that Tarquin was sent into exile by Brutus?* 11. *I for-my-part (139) still hope; but Tullius says that the river will be crossed before the third day.* 12. *When will you confess that you (168) (164) alone (96) must pay the penalty of this folly?*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- 219** 1. Impersonal Verbs denoting *feeling* require the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Cause¹:

Mis̄eret	} me tuae stultīiae.	I	pity am vexed at repent of am ashamed of am weary of	} your folly.
Piget				
Poenitēt				
Pūdet				
Taedet				

- 220** 2. Others require an Accusative of the Person, and an Infinitive, or Nominative, for the Subject:

Dēcēt	mē	dīlēgentia.	Industry	{ becomes or misbecomes } me.
Dēdēcēt				

- 221** 3. Others require a Dative of the Person and an Infinitive for the Subject.

Libet	mīhī hōc fācērō.	It pleases me (suits my fancy) It is lawful for me	{ to do this. ²
Licet			

¹ So in Old English, *it repents me of*, *it pitied him of*, &c.

² Plācēt is used somewhat similarly with a subject-clause, "plācūt lēgātos mitti," *it pleased them*, i.e. *they resolved, that ambassadors should be sent*; but being personally used, it is not classed among Impersonal Verbs.

222 4. The verbs **ōportet**, *it behoves*, and **līquet**, *it is clear*. take an Accusative and Infinitive as their Subject-Clause.¹

It is clear that the man has been slain. **Līquet** hōmīnem interfectum esse.

223 Note that **ōportet** (or **dēbeo**, *I owe*) is never followed by the Perfect Infinitive.

You ought to come, lit., *it behoves you to come.* **Ōportet** tē (or **dēbēs**) věnīre.

You ought to have come, lit., *it behoved you to come.* **Ōportuit** tē (or **dēbuisti**) věnīre.

224 5. Several Verbs relating to the weather are used impersonally, as in English: **plūit**, *it rains*, &c.

225 All the above Verbs (except those in Class 5) are of the 2nd conjugation: **dēcēre**, **dēcēbit**, **dēcēbat**, **dēcuit**, **dēcuērat**, **dēcuisset**, &c.

226 Besides the Perfects in -ūit, there are also in use **pertae-sum est** (for **taedūit**); **mīsēritum est**; **pīgītum est**; **pūdītum est**; **līcītum est**; **lībītum est** (which is found in Cicero perhaps to the exclusion of **lībūit**).

EXERCISE LXIX.

1. *Senem stultitiae suae poenitebit.*² 2. *Quando mulieres suspicionis suae pudebit?* 3. *Non dubium est quin pedites huius tam longi itineris taedeat.* 4. *Licebit hosti nocte ex urbe proficisci.* 5. *Oportuit te ei mulieri veniam dare.* 6. *Nonne licebat nobis isti praedam eripere?* 7. *Interrogavi latronem nonne se tot scelerum puderet, nonne latrociniorum jam pertaesum esset.* 8. *Nonne judicem dedecebat inepte loqui?* 9. *Aliquando te tuae tam ineptiae jactationis poenitebit.*³ 10. *De hac re libitum est mihi plura scribere.*

227 ¹ **Ōpōrtet** and **licet** are also followed by the Subjunctive with **ūt** omitted; **ōpōrtet** (**ūt**) *virtūtem āmes, it is right that you should love virtue.* The insertion of the **ūt** is post-classical, or rare.

27a ² As the implied Subject of the sentence is **sēnex**, “the old man will repent,” **sūus** is here used and not **eiūs**, see Par. 215.

228 ³ *Tam* is often used between a pronominal and ordinary Adjective in the sense of *very*.

11. Interrogabo mulierem nonne se jam jactationis suae taedat.
 12. Liquebat hostes per dolum atque insidias pacem petere.
 13. Licet omnes (227) fremant; consilium meum non muto.
1. When will it-be-lawful for us to set-out from the city? 2. There is no doubt that the citizens are-ashamed of their (227a) boasting. 3. Ask, dear son, whether the women repented of their suspicion. 4. Does it befit an orator to be-angry without cause? 5. You ought to know at-least these-things which it misbecomes even (141a) a boy to-be-ignorant-of. 6. I asked the magistrate whether it-was-lawful to bury the dead within the city. 7. It-is-clear that his brothers were treacherously slain. 8. Let (227) them murmur to one another (189) that I am guilty; I-for-my-part (139) know that I am innocent. 9. When will you confess that you ought to (223) have led those two hundred soldiers with you? 10. It was uncertain whether the woman was weary of the journey or desired to return to her father. 11. Balbus declared that his slaves ought to have snatched the booty from the robbers.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

229

1. Possum, pōtuī, possē,—to be able; can.¹

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present.		3. Imperfect.	
Pos-sum	Pos-sim	Pōt-ěram	Pos-sem
Pōt-ěs	Pos-sīs	Pōt-ěrās	Pos-sēs
Pōt-est	Pos-sít	Pōt-ěrāt	Pos-sét
Pos-sūmūs	Pos-símūs	Pōt-ěrāmūs	Pos-sémūs
Pōt-estīs	Pos-sítīs	Pōt-ěrātīs	Pos-sétīs
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint	Pōt-ěrant	Pos-sent
2. Future-Simple.	(wanting.)	4. Perfect.	
Pōt-ěro		Pōt-uī	Pōt-uěrim
Pōt-ěrīs		Pōt-uistī	Pōt-uěris
Pōt-ěrīt		Pōt-uít	Pōt-uěrit
Pōt-ěrīmūs		Pōt-uimūs	Pōt-uěrimūs
Pōt-ěrītīs		Pōt-uistīs	Pōt-uěritīs
Pōt-ěrunt		Pōt-uērunt(ērē)	Pōt-uěrint

230

¹ Pos-sum is compounded of potis-sum, *I-am-able*, which passes into pōte-sum and thence to pos-sum. The Tenses may be obtained by putting pot- before the different parts of the Verb sum and (1) striking out f after t, e.g. pot-(f)ui; (2) changing t into s before s, e.g. pos-sum (not pot-sum); (3) contracting pot-esse and pot-essem into posse and possem.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	5. Future-Perfect.		6. Pluperfect.
Pōt-uēro	(wanting)	Pōt-uēram	Pōt-uissēm
Pōt-uērīs		Pōt-uērās	Pōt-uissēs
Pōt-uērīt		Pōt-uērāt	Pōt-uissēt
Pōt-uērimūs		Pōt-uērāmūs	Pōt-uissēmūs
Pōt-uēritīs		Pōt-uērātīs	Pōt-uissētīs
Pōt-uērint		Pōt-uērant	Pōt-uissent

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—Possē. Perf. and Plup.—Pōtuissē. Future—wanting. (Participle pōtēns, used only as Adjective, powerful.)

231 As **possum** has no Participle in **-rus**, it cannot form the Periphrastic Tense of the Subjunctive (Par. 155) used to represent the Future in an Indirect Sentence. Hence, in this and other Verbs which have not the Participle in **-rus**, a Periphrasis (see Par. 212) is used :

I will ask whether he will be able to help me. *Interrōgābo num fūtūrum sit ut possit mīlī subvēnīre, i.e. whether it-will-come-to-pass that he may be able.*

EXERCISE LXX.

232 Pōtui (and sometimes pōtēram) is sometimes followed, like ōportuit above, by a Present Inf. where the English *could* requires the Perfect Infinitive :

You could have come. *Pōtuisti (or pōtēras) vēnīre.*

1. Veniam si potero ; cura tu ut venire possis. 2. Poteras patri tuo parere, sed beneficiorum eius plerumque immemor eras.
3. Interrogavi nonne possent trecenti nostrorum, cum mille equitibus sociorum, duobus milib⁹ hostium resistere.
4. Non possumus justius quam a te gubernari. 5. Nonne potuistis melius scribere ? Frater vester optime scribere poterat (*used to be able*). 6. Nihil honestius Epaminondae dari potuit quam mors clarissima. 7. Quis dubitat quin urbs

a nostris (34) expugnari potuerit? 8. Interrogavi agricolam nonne potuisset quilibet tempore fundum suum vendere.¹ 9. Valde dubito num futurum sit ut possis voluptatis illecebris resistere. 10. Miserum est olim potuisse, nunc non posse, amicis subvenire.

1. *There is no doubt that you can help me, O friends.* 2. *I asked our men whether they could resist three thousand of the enemy.*²
3. *Will you not be able to come, boys, if we ask you?* 4. *You could have written better, but you neglected the matter.* 5. *That you may be able to help others, acquire riches.* 6. *The enemy bridged the river that they might be able at any time (quilibet) to invade our territories.* 7. *Do you believe that you will be able to resist these great enticements?* 8. *Those who cannot be first, can generally be before (prior) the last.*
2. **Vōlo, vōlūī, vellē,—I am willing, wish.**
3. **Nōlo, nōlūī, nollē,—I am unwilling, do not wish.**³
4. **Mālo, mālūī, malle,—I prefer, would rather, had rather.**³

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1 Present.

Vōlo	Nōlo	Mālo
Vīs	Nōn vīs	Māvīs
Vult	Nōn vult	Māvult
Vōlūmūs	Nōlūmūs	Mālūmūs
Vultis	Nōn vultīs	Māvultīs
Vōlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

2. Future-Simple.⁴

Vōl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
Vōl-ēs, &c.	Nōl-ēs, &c.	Māl-ēs, &c.

3. Imperfect.⁴

Vōl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
Vōl-ēbās, &c.	Nōl-ēbās, &c.	Māl-ēbās, &c.

232a

¹ Where **suus** cannot possibly refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, it may be used to refer to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb.

233

² For **can** may be substituted **am, is, are able;** and for **could, was, or were able;** and this will often help the pupil to determine the Tense and Mood of **possum** into which **can** should be translated.

234

³ **Nōlo** is for **nē-vōlo**, and **mālo** for **ma-** (*i.e.* **māgis** or **māge**) **-vōlo**. The dropping of the **v** is illustrated by the forms **sīs** (for **si vīs**, *if you please*) and (**sultīs** for **si vultīs**).

⁴ These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of **rēgo**.

4. *Perfect.*¹

Völ-uī Völ-uistī, &c.	Nöl-uī Nöl-uistī, &c.	Mäl-uī Mäl-uistī, &c.
--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

5. *Future-Perfect.*¹

Völ-uěro Völ-uěřis, &c.	Nöl-uěro Nöl-uěřis, &c.	Mäl-uěro Mäl-uěřis, &c.
----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

6. *Pluperfect.*¹

Völ-ueram Völ-uěřās, &c.	Nöl-uěram Nöl-uěřās, &c.	Mäl-uěrām Mäl-uěřās, &c.
-----------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present.*

Vél-im Vél-is Vél-ít Vél-ímüs Vél-ítis Vél-int	Nöl-im Nöl-is Nöl-ít Nöl-ímüs Nöl-ítis Nöl-int	Mäl-im Mäl-is Mäl-ít Mäl-ímüs Mäl-ítis Mäl-int
---	---	---

2. *Imperfect.*

Vel-lem Vel-lēs Vel-lět Vel-lémüs Vel-lětis Vel-lent	Nol-lem Nol-lēs Nol-lět Nol-lémüs Nol-lětis Nol-lent	Mal-lem Mal-lēs Mal-lět Mal-lémüs Mal-lětis Mal-lent
---	---	---

3. *Perfect.*¹

Völ-uěrim Völ-uěřis, &c.	Nöl-uěrim Nöl-uěřis, &c.	Mäl-uěrim Mäl-uěřis, &c.
-----------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------

4. *Pluperfect.*¹

Völ-uissem Völ-uissēs, &c.	Nöl-uissem Nöl-uissēs, &c.	Mäl-uissem Mäl-uissēs, &c.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

¹ These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of mōnēo.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

(Wanting.)

Nōl-i.

(Wanting.)

Nōl-ite.

Future.

Nōl-ito.

Nōl-ito.

Nōl-itōte.

Nōl-unto.

INFINITIVE MOOD

Present.

Vel-lě.

Nol-lě.

Mal-lě.

Perfect.

Völ-uissě.

Nōl-uissě.

Māl-uissě.

Present Participle.

Völ-ens.

Nōl-ens.

(Wanting.)

Gerunds and Supines.

(Wanting.)

(Wanting.)

(Wanting.)

EXERCISE LXXI.

Mālo, (being a contraction of **māgis**—**vōlo**, *I wish rather*), is naturally followed by **quam than**, coupling Infinitives or Nouns (62) in the same Case.

We had rather fight than yield. Pugnāre quam cēdēre **mālūmus**.

1. Idem velle atque idem nolle—ea demum est vera amicitia.¹
2. Imperator cum nollet mihi obesse, interrogavit fratrem meum num vellem clam ex urbe exceedere.
3. Non dubium est quin malis hic (*adv.*) manere ; sed exceedendum tibi erit.
4. Māne nunc, si vis ; sed si cras voles exceedere, non tibi

¹ The Nom. to **est** is the sentence **idem . . . nolle**. **Idem** (not **idem**, Par. 103) is Acc. Neut. governed by **velle**. Instead of **ea** we ought strictly to have **id**, *i.e. that (thing)*, Nom. in Apposition to the sentence **idem . . . nolle**. But **id** is “attracted” into the gender of **amicītīa**.

licebit. 5. Quid vultis, ignavissimi? Semper fugere quam mori maluistis. 6. Hoc vel voluisse mox tibi in honestum videbitur.¹ 7. Curate, judices, ut justa non solum dicatis sed etiam velitis. 8. Nolebam reum vineiri; sed, si praetor ita voluerit,vinciendus erit. 9. Nunc quidem puer non vult discere; sed non dubium est quin futurum sit ut mox discere malit quam ludere.² 10. Interrogavi (133) fratrem eius num ludere quam discere maluerit. 11. Quam turpe est fallere! Nolite mentiri, ne multa, quae non vultis, pati cogamini. 12. Roganti mihi ut cenaret mecum, respondit se nolle foris cenare.³ 13. Nonne disciplinam quam fugam (62) mavis.

1. *What do you wish, citizens? Do you prefer six hundred kings to (quam) one?* 2. *Why, O friend, would you not (i.e. were you unwilling to) obey the excellent Tullius?* 3. *There is no doubt that he was unwilling to resist the citizens.* 4. *When, if-not (nisi) now, will they be willing to take up (i.e., to prepare) arms that they may preserve the city?* 5. *I have no doubt, (my) friend, that you prefer death to (quam) slavery.* 6. *I asked them whether they wished to be slaves (i.e., to serve); but they (illi autem) replied that they preferred (217) to pay tribute rather than die.* 7. *To wish-for things-useful, is a great part of a happy life.* 8. *I asked his friends to help him; but they were unwilling to sustain an idle man.* 9. *Which (85) of you (93) two prefers to dine out of doors?* 10. *I am ashamed of having even (141a) wished-for this.*

Fēro, tūli, ferrē, lātum, I bear, endure, bring.

235 Fēro, in the Present-derived Tenses, is conjugated like rēgo, except that, after fer-:

(1) e final is dropped, and also e before r.⁴
fer-(e), Imperat.; fer-(e)res, Imperf. Subj.

(2) i is dropped before s or t.

fer-(i)s. fer-(i)t, Indic. Pres.

¹ The Subject of vidēbitur is a Clause. Hōc is Acc. governed by völuisse.

² Not lūdērē mālit. The Latins do not like to have a prose sentence ending in -v- -v-, because it is the regular end of a hexameter verse. They would prefer "rēdirē stātim völēbant" to "stātim rēdirē völēbant."

³ Where is the Dat. naturally governed by respondit? Fōris is an Adverb.

237 ⁴ The -e final is similarly dropped in the Imperative Sing. of dīco, dūco, and fācio: dīc, dūc, fāc.

The Perfect-derived tenses are formed, in the Active, regularly from *tūli* (root toll-o, *I bear*), and, in the Passive, from *lātus* (another form of the same root).

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indic. Present. Fēr-o, fer-s, fer-t, fēr-īmus, fēr-tis, fēr-unt.

Imperative Pres. Fer, fer-tě. *Fut.* Fer-to, fert-o, fer-tōtě, fēr-unto.

Subjunct. Imperf. Fer-rem, fer-res, fer-ret, fer-rēmus, fer-rētis, fer-rent.

Infinitive Pres. Fer-re.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. Fēr-am. *Imperf.* Fēr-ēbam. *Perf.* Tūli.

Fut. Perf. Tūl-ero. *Pluperf.* Tūl-eram.

Subjunctive Pres. Fēr-am. *Perf.* Tūl-ērim. *Pluperf.* Tūl-issem.

Infinitive Perf. Tū-lisse. *Fut.* Lātūrūs esse.

Participle Pres. Fērens. *Fut.* Lātūrus.

Supines. Lātum, lātu.

Gerund. Fērendi, &c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Pres. Fēr-or, fer-ris, fer-tur, fēr-īmur, fēr-īmīni, fēr-untur.

Imperative Pres. [Fer-re],¹ fēr-īmīni. *Fut.* Fer-tor, fer-tor, fēr-untor.

Subjunctive Imperf. Fer-rer, fer-rēris, fer-rētur, fer-rēmur, fer-rēmini, fer-rentur.

Infinitive Pres. Fer-ri.

¹ There is no instance of this form occurring in Latvian literature.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. Fēr-ar. *Imperf.* Fēr-ēbar. *Perf.*
Lātus sum.

Fut. Perf. Lātus ēro. *Pluperf.* Lātus essem.

Subjunctive Pres. Fēr-ar. *Perf.* Lātus sim. *Pluperf.* Lātus
essem.

Infinitive Perf. Lātus esse. *Fut.* Lātum īri.

Participle Perf. Lātus.

Gerundive. Fēr-endus.

238 The following compounds of *fero* are noteworthy for the changes of the prefix:

Af-fēro (ad-fēro) af-ferrē, at-tūli, ad-lātum.
Au-fēro (ab-fēro) au-ferrē, abs-tūli, ab-lātum.
Ef-fēro (ex-fēro) ef-ferrē, ex-tūli, ē-lātum.
In-fēro (in-fēro) in-ferrē, in-tūli, il-lātum.
Of-fēro (ob-fēro) ob-ferrē, ob-tūli, ob-lātum.
Rē-fēro (rē-fēro) rē-ferrē, { rē-tūli } rēlātum.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

239 The construction of the Indirect Question (Par. 136) is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Conjunctions, not only after Verbs of *asking*, but also after any Verbs that take a question as their Subject or Object. Thus the Direct Question “*Quid fēcisti?*” *What did you do?* becomes:

<i>It is uncertain</i> <i>Tell me</i> <i>I shall ascertain</i> <i>I know</i>	<i>what you did.</i>	<i>Incertum est</i> <i>Dic mīhī</i> <i>Cognoscam</i> <i>Cognōvi</i> ¹	<i>quid fēcēris.</i> ²
} what you did.			

240 ¹ *Cognōvi* and *nōvi*, (Perf.) mean *I have ascertained*, and hence *I know*.
40a ² Why *quid*, not *quōd*? Ans. because it is the construction of the Indirect Question. This constr. is used with *intérest* and *rēfert* (329); it matters not what he said, non *rēfert quid dixērit*.

After all these Verbs, there holds the law of the SEQUENCE of TENSES (Par. 136).

EXERCISE LXXII.

1. Respondete, milites fortissimi, quomodo laturi sitis hanc tantam contumeliam hostium vel ad vallum vestrum equitantium (154a). 2. Ferebamus convicia eius, feremus maledicta ; laudem eius perferre omnino non poteramus.¹ 3. Nonne reperire potes quis hanc rogationem ad populum tulerit ?² 4. Non dubium est quin Ario visto, regi potentissimo, bellum illaturi simus. 5. Nonne miles es ? Nonne vallum fers et arma ? 6. Interrogavi nonne milites essent ? cur tandem arma ferrent nisi ut hostibus resisterent.³ 7. Comperistine quot nostrorum in hoc tam (228) funesto proelio ceciderint ? 8. De provinciis ad Patres consules rettulerunt ; de legatis nihil relatum est. 9. Cognoscam per nuntium num legem a Graccho rogatam Patres aegre tulerint. 10. Cognoscere voluimus num hae tot tantaeque calamitates a fratre eius patientius perferrentur. 11. Quid obstat quominus, occasione oblata, res ad senatum referatur ? 12. Spem mihi (192), quam unam habui, tu tua temeritate abstulisti. 13. Tu qui totiens promisisti, (152a) nonne jam perficies ?

1. I have never been able to ascertain why the matter was referred to the senate. 2. Tell (237) me, friend, why you took away from (192) me the last hope (i.e. the hope which last) I had. 3. Do not tell them how-many insults you endured, nor how many you are about to endure; for they will not believē you. 4. The consuls had referred the subject of the prisoners (trans. had referred concerning the prisoners) to the senate. 5. The matter was referred to the senate : nevertheless you who (108) referred (it), now deny that you referred (it). 6. Tell me, Tullius (13), when (156) you will bring help to me. 7. I asked the soldier why he bore arms except to (143a) fight against the enemies of (his) country. 8. We could not (i.e. were-not-able to) ascertain how-many captives our-men had taken. 9. You who patiently endured so many great (i.e. so-many and so-great) calamities, will you not (see sent. 13, above, and Par.

¹ (a) *Omnino nōn* means altogether not, i.e. not at all, certainly not ; (b) *nōn omnino* means not altogether, not quite.

² Why *quis*, not *qui* ?

³ Repeat *interrogāvi* before *cūr*; look out tandem.

152a) endure this very (228) slight loss? 10. There is no doubt that the enemy will soon offer us an opportunity (5a).

6. Ěo, īvī, īrě, ītum—I go.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Present.

Ě-o	E-am
Ī-s	E-ās
Ī-t	E-āt
Ī-mūs	E-āmūs
Ī-tis	E-ātis
E-unt	E-ant

4. Perfect.

Ī-vī	or	I-ī	Ī-věrim or I-ěrim
Ī-vistī	&c.	Ī-věřs	&c.
Ī-věřt	&c.	Ī-věřít	&c.
Ī-věřimūs	&c.	Ī-věřimūs	&c.
Ī-věřitīs	&c.	Ī-věřitīs	&c.
Ī-věřunt	&c.	Ī-věřint	&c.
	or I-věrě		

2. Future-Simple.

Ī-bo	Ī-tūrūs sim
Ī-bīs	Ī-tūrūs sīs
Ī-bit	Ī-tūrūs-sít
Ī-bīmūs	Ī-tūrī sīmūs
Ī-bītīs	Ī-tūrī sītīs
Ī-bunt	Ī-tūrī sint

5. Future-Perfect.

Ī-věro	or	I-ěro	(wanting)
Ī-věřs	&c.		
Ī-věřít	&c.		
Ī-věřimūs	&c.		
Ī-věřitīs	&c.		
Ī-věřint	&c.		

3. Imperfect.

Ī-bam	Ī-rem
Ī-bās	Ī-rēs
Ī-băt	Ī-rět
Ī-bāmūs	Ī-rēmūs
Ī-bătīs	Ī-rētīs
Ī-bant	Ī-rent

6. Pluperfect.

Ī-věram	or	I-vissem, I-issem,	
I-ěram		or I-ssem	
Ī-věrās	&c.	Ī-vissēs	&c.
Ī-věrāt	&c.	Ī-vissēt	&c.
Ī-věrāmūs	&c.	Ī-vissēmūs	&c.
Ī-věrātīs	&c.	Ī-vissētīs	&c.
Ī-věrant	&c.	Ī-vissent	&c.

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.
<i>Present.</i>	I I-tě	<i>Present.</i> I-ens (<i>Gen.</i> ē-untīs)
<i>Future.</i>	I-to I-to I-tōtē E-unto	<i>Future.</i> I-tūrus (ă, um)
		GERUND.
		<i>Gen.</i> E-undi, &c.
		SUPINE.
		I-tum
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres. and. Imp.</i>	I-rē	
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	I-vissē, I-issē, or issē	
<i>Future.</i>	I-tūrus essē	

242 The Passive of *eo* is only used impersonally, *e.g.* ītur, *it is gone*, i.e. *they go*: see Par. 247.

243 1. The compounds of *eo* are conjugated in the same way, except that those which take an Accusative in the Active, have the full Passive Voice. Thus from *in-eo* and *praeter-eo* come the Pass. Participle īn-ītus and *praetēr-ītus*, and the Gerundives, *īn-ēundus* and *praetēr-ēundus*.

244 2. The compounds of *eo* generally omit *v* in the Perf. and Perfect-derived Tenses: rēd-ii, trans-iērim, *praetēr-iēram*, &c.

245 3. The Dative is not governed by these compounds, except by *sūb-eo* (rarely), and *prae-eo*.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

1. Cum jam mulieres liberique flamen auctum imbribus transiissent, curavit imperator ut senes transirent. 2. Peribit iste, nisi celeriter (125) redieris. 3. Cum ad ripam rediisse, alios transituros, alios jam transeuntes inveni. 4. Ibam forte ad forum cum subito Tullius me adiit. 5. I, decus nostrum, i pater patriae, ut mox triumphatus redeas. 6. Praei iurandum mihi, pontifex. 7. Pudet me abiisse; redire statim volo. 8. Unus tantum (*adv.*) exiens ab hostibus captus est: ceteri, cum jam exeuntes fraudem intellexissent, subito redierunt. 9. Flumen quod hieri transiistis, jam glacie plenum omnino (241) non transibitis. 10. Quid obstat quominus

redeas aditus Apollinem? 11. Apollo aditus respondit mortem homini decimo die esse obeundam. 12. Praeterita (34) redire nequeunt.

1. *There is no doubt that he met death with (181) fortitude.*
2. *Having passed over the river (196) they began-to-wish (imperf.) immediately to return (redeo) (236).*
3. *If you begin the battle without cavalry, you will not be able to resist the greater forces of the enemy.*
4. *Alas! when, O citizens, will you return to the city whence you now go-forth exulting?*
5. *There is no doubt that we must return to the city with speed.*
6. *Returning to the city I met Balbus himself returning.*
7. *Tullius besought me to go to the city with him.*
8. *The river which you crossed in-the-morning cannot be crossed now, since-it-is-sicollen (i.e., being-increased) by showers (236) (5a).*
9. *Are you ignorant that death must be met by all?*
10. *The battle having now begun (i.e., having-been begun) the general gave-orders-to the sixth legion to (143) charge the enemy.*

THE SUPINES.

246 1. The Supine in **-u** is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Ablative, and mostly after Adjectives signifying *good* or *evil*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, *fitness* or *unfitness*, &c., as “*āmārum gustātu*,” *bitter in the tasting*, i.e., *bitter to the taste*.

247 2. The Supine in **-um** is a Verbal Noun used only in the Accusative after Verbs of Motion without the Preposition **ād**. It can take an object after it, which the Supine in **-u** cannot do :

<i>He came to play.</i>	Vēnit lūsum.
<i>He went to see the city.</i>	Īvit vīsum urbēni.

248 3. Besides the form with **fōre** mentioned in Par. 212, the Supine in **-um** is used after the Pres. Inf. Passive of **eo**, *I go*, to supply the missing Future Passive Infinitive :

<i>He said that the city would be taken.</i>	Dixit īri captum urbēm. ¹
--	--------------------------------------

¹ The words are arranged in this order to show the construction; but in practice, **īri** follows the Supine.

The literal rendering of this is, *He said that-there-was-a-going* (*iri* being used impersonally) *to take* (*captum* being the Supine after the Verb of Motion) *the city* (*urbem* being Accusative after *captum*). So :

He said that we should be sent to the prison. *Dixit nōs ād carcērem ductum īri.* (*Parse nōs*).

EXERCISE LXXIV.

249 Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Accusative (without a Preposition) after Verbs of Motion ; and so are the Nouns *dōmum* and *rūs*.

1. *Dictu difficile est uter horum peccaverit* (9a). 2. *Venimus Romam spectatum ludos.*¹ 3 *Audierat pater non datum iri uxorem filio suo.* 4. *Inde Delum navigant consulturi Apollinem ; qui respondit frustra se consuli,* (32) *urbem captum iri.* 5. *Nonne hoc nefas visu est ? Nonne etiam dictu turpis simum ?* 6. *Mittendi sunt Athenas legati pacem petituri.* 7. *Non dubium est quin qui urbem speculatum venerunt, re infecta redierint.* 8. *Diversas ob causas juvenes philosophum adierunt ; alii quidem jocatum venerunt, alii autem ad discedendum parati.* 9. *I tu consultum Jovem, equidem Delphos ibo Apollinem consulturus.* 10. *Interrogate nautas utrum Carthaginem an ad Italiam navigent.*

1. *The ambassadors who have been sent to seek-for peace have returned without-accomplishing anything.* 2. *The citizens sent the prophet in vain to Delos ; for Apollo predicted that the captives would be slain by the enemy.* 3. *We have come here (i.e. hither) to fight, not to talk.* 4. *I asked the physician whether the herb was bitter or (171) sweet to taste.* 5. *When will you return home, my son ?* 6. *The youth (monstrous to relate !) set-out-for the country from the city intending-to slay (trans. about-to slay) his own father.* 7. *Having set the city on fire, the general gave orders to his men to set-out-for Carthage (196).* 8. *I asked the young man to come to dine with (see ‘with’) me, but he answered that he must-go to Athens on that day.*

¹ What are the two pronunciations, and consequently the two meanings of “venimus”? Why is *uxorem* (in Sent. 3) Accusative (248)?

THE GERUND.

- 250** 1. When an English Transitive Verbal, *e.g. writing*, is the Nominative to a Verb, or the Accusative governed by a Verb, it is expressed (Par. 128) by the Latin Infinitive:

Writing letters is easy. Făcile est epistolas scribēre.
I prefer writing letters. Mălo epistolas scribēre.

- 251** 2. But when the Transitive Verbal is preceded by *of*, *for*, *to*, *towards*, *during*, *in*, *by*, &c., the former Object of the Verbal *writing* is now made the Object of the Preposition *of*, *for*, &c., and the Latin Gerundive *Adjective scribendus*, *meet-to-be-written*, is used in agreement with its former Object:

<i>The art of writing letters</i> , i.e. of letters meet-to-be-written.	Ars epistolarum scribendārum.
<i>Let us pay attention to making a bridge</i> , i.e. to a bridge meet- to-be-made.	Dēmus ɔpēram ponti făciendo.
<i>During the building of a city</i> i.e. during a city meet-to-be- built. ¹	Inter urbem aedificandam.
<i>In making a bridge</i> , i.e. in a- bridge-meet-to-be-built.	In ponte făciendo.
<i>Choiceness of expression is in- creased by reading orators and poets.</i>	Lōquendi élégantia augētur lēgendis ḥratōribus et poētis. ²

- 252** 3. If the Verbal (1) is Intransitively used, or (2) requires a Dative Case in Latin, the Latin Gerundive Noun is used, governing a Dative if necessary:

(1a) <i>The art of writing.</i>	Ars scribendi.
(1b) <i>We are born for acting.</i>	Nāti sūmus ad āgendūm.
(2) <i>I am desirous of pleasing friends.</i>	Stūdiōsus sum placendi āmīcis.

¹ With the English Verbal, we may generally either insert or omit the . . . of : in (the) building (of) a city, but the Latin construction is the same in either case. The English *meet-to-be-built*, *made*, &c., is an inadequate rendering of the Latin Gerundive, which has no exact English equivalent.

² The use of the Gerundive Adjective to express the *Ablative of the Instrument*, is rare.

253 4. The impersonal Gerundive (163) may govern any case except the Accusative:

We must do our duty,

Fungendum est **offīcio**.

We must obey the laws.

Pārendum est **lēgībus**.

We must not forget benefits.

Non est oblīscendūm **bēnē-fīciōrum**.

EXERCISE LXXV.

254 RULE.—To turn into Latin a Transitive English Verbal preceded by a Preposition, place the Object in the Case demanded by the English Preposition, and make the Gerundive agree with it.¹

1. *Barbari legatos causa petendae pacis miserunt.* 2. *Quid vultis, legati?* Nonne ad pacem petendam parati estis? 3. *Tunc quidem ab inimicis nostris ridebatur;* nunc nobis ridendum est. 4. *Si vis scribere, si scribendi causa* *huc venis,* cur non scribendo operam das? 5. *Rogavit me ut venaudi causa equos plures colligerem.* 6. *Traditum est Fabium Maximum rem Romanam cunctando restituisse.* 7. *Mors est omnibus* (168) *obeunda*: nec nos flendo (170) morti moram afferemus. 8. *Quis nescit mentem nutritri legendō, disputando acui?* 9. *Duc* (237) *nos citius, centurio;* *utendum est occasione ab hoste nobis data.*² 10. *Vita et utenda est et fruenda.*²

1. *They-live for the sake of eating; in-eating they consume their lives.* 2. *Do* (237) *something, my son; we are born to act* (i.e. *for acting*), *not to consume the fruits of the earth.* 3. *For the sake of discharging duty towards his friends, Tullius neglected his children.*² 4. *By punishing and by pardoning, not by forgetting, will you improve the bad.* 5. *(We) must obey (our) elders; we must pity the poor.* 6. *The conspirators had conceived the hope* (trans. *had come into the hope*) *of slaying the consul.* 7. *He pays attention to writing verses.* 8. *Have you come to Athens to hear philosophers, or* (171) *for the sake of breeding dogs?* 9. *Even in (in) leading a cohort there is some art* (i.e. *something of art*); *either* (157a) *lead better, Marcus, or-else do not lead.*

255 ¹ Of course in such sentences as *I will take-care-of the making of the bridge*, the “Case demanded by the English Preposition” is the Acc., because *take-care-of* is really a Transitive Verb, *cūrāre*.

256 ² The Verbs *fugor*, *fruor*, *ūtor*, *vescor*, *pōtior* (207) may be used either in the Impersonal or in the Personal Construction, i.e. either governing the Abl. or agreeing with a Noun.

THE IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE, &c.

- 257** (1) *He is persuaded.* **Persuāsum est** (167) *ei.¹*
 (2) *(It) is certain that he is persuaded.* *Certum est ei persuāsum esse.*
 (3) *He says he is persuaded.* *Dicit sibi persuāsum esse.*
- 258** 2. The Verb *fio*, *I am made*, *I become*, is used as the Passive of *fācio*. In its Present and Present-derived Tenses it is conjugated like the Active of *audio*, except that *fīr-* is always written *fīēr-*; and the Infinitive is *fīēri* (not *fīrē* nor *fīēre*). The Perfect-derived Tenses are formed regularly from the Passive Participle *factus*.
- 259** 3. Incomplete Transitive Verbs, *e.g. make, esteem, call, &c.* (which require, besides the Primary Object, a Complementary Noun or Adjective to complete the meaning) have the Complementary Object in the same case as the Primary Object.

We will make you leader *Te dūcem fācīemus.*

- 260** 4. In the Passive, these Verbs take the Complementary Subject in the same Case as the Subject.

Balbus was made leader *Balbus dux factus est.*
He said that Balbus was made leader *Dixit Balbum dūcem factum esse.*

EXERCISE LXXVI.

1. *Mulieres ob incolumentem filiorum suorum gavisae sunt.*
2. *Histrio omnia fit: heri rex fiebat, cras fiet servus.*
3. *Quis nescit Palladis imaginem a Phidia factam esse?*
4. *Quid obstabat quominus mercator fieres?* *scio enim tibi in omnibus rebus a patre indulatum esse.*
5. *Constat legibus obtemperatum esse, ab eis qui in leges jurati sunt.*
6. *Interrogavit cur nos, crudelitatem nostram jactare soliti, regem cenatum occidere noluissimus.*
7. *Scribit se philosophum fieri et ob hanc causam velle Athenas venire philosophos auditurum.*
8. *Constat paucos hostium resistere ausos esse* (32), *nemini*

261 ¹ *Persuādētur ei* would mean *it is being persuaded to him*, i.e. *he is being persuaded.*

a nobis parsum (214). 9. Breves esse cupientes, o pōetae, obscuri fitis. 10. Admonete socios vestros ne arma contra patriam moveant.

1. *There was no doubt that the cruel Tullia had rejoiced on-account of the death of her own son.* 2. *You, who lately became a praetor, will soon become a consul.* 3. *I know that you have always been too-much indulged (257) by your father.* 4. *It is certain that the laws are not always obeyed.* 5. *What prevented you from becoming consul?* 6. *Having themselves been accustomed to spare no one, the barbarians declared that no one was spared.* 7. *Is it not well-known that Cincinnatus from (ex) a ploughman was made a consul?* 8. *The scout brought-word that a hundred of our men had been slain, (and) two hundred had been spared.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

- 262** The Accusative expresses extent (*a*) of *space*, and (*b*) of *time*; and therefore answers to the questions (1) *How far? high? long? deep? broad?* (2) *For, or during, how long a time?* and (313) sometimes (3) *How long ago?*

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| (1) <i>The ditch is ten feet broad.</i> | Fossa dēcem pēdes est lāta. |
| (2) <i>He sleeps all the night.</i> | Tōtam noctem dormit. |
| (3) <i>He died two years ago.</i> | Ābhinc biennium ūbiit. |

- 263** ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.—Distinguish between the Accusative of *extent of time* (*how long?*), and (3) the Ablative (Par. 30) of the *point of time* or *season* (*when?*)¹

He cannot sleep in the night. **Nocte** dormīre nōn pōtest.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

1. Tiberius Caesar tredecim annos principatum obtinuit. 2. Quis nescit Platonem octoginta unum annos vixisse, Socratem anno septuagesimo veneno interfectum esse? 3. Decimo die post captam urbem,² fossam decem pedes altam arci

263a ¹ The Ablative also answers to the question: *Within what time?* *We shall know everything in (the next) three days.* Omnia hīs trībus diēbus, or **hoc trīduo**, comperta hābēbimus: see Par. 30.

264 ² Note this idiom *after the city taken*, i.e., *after the taking of the city*; so **ante urbem conditam**, *before the foundation of the city*.

circumdedimus. 4. Pericles, cum quadraginta annos Atheniensibus praefuisset, morbo correptus est. 5. Cum jam viginti milia passuum iter fecissemus, nuntiant exploratores bidui iter hostes abesse. 6. His auditis, imperator aggerem ducentos pedes latum, triginta altum, exstruere statuit. 7. Non erat dubium quin hostes castra tria tantum milia passuum ab urbe posuissent. 8. Decima hora per exploratores compertum est hostes habere in animo nocte eastram oppugnare. 9. Tullius, senex impigerimus, jam sex et sexaginta annos natus, dicit se tribus his mensibus Athenas navigaturum, esse. 10. Quis non meminit Trojam, decem annos obsessam, per Ulyssis dolos esse captam? 11. Tullius, poëta paeclarissimus, dictabat nunquam se plus agere quam cum nihil ageret. 12. Dicitur urbs abhinc centum annos floruisse.

1. Do you not remember that Plato lived eighty-one years?
2. When we had advanced forty days' journey it was found that the enemy were distant twenty-four miles.
3. I asked the workmen to build a wall thirty-five feet high.
4. Having crossed the river we shall have to journey for two-days through an uncultivated district.
5. For three-days our men resisted three thousand of the enemy.
6. When Balbus was sixty-three years old, he was struck by lightning and died (trans. having been struck . . . he died) in the third month of (his) sixty-fourth year.
7. Within the next three hours we shall take the city which has resisted our army for three-years.
8. Caesar writes that the territories of the Helvetii extend two hundred and forty miles in (in with Acc.) length.

THE LOCATIVE CASE.

- 265** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and with *hūm-i*, *on the ground*; *dōm-i*, *at home*; *bell-i*,¹ *in the wars*; *militiae*, *in the wars*; *rūr-i*, *in the country*), the question *Where?* is answered by the old Locative Case, thus :

	Singular.	Plural.
First declension	<i>Rōm-ae</i>	<i>Athēn-īs</i>
Second ,	<i>Cōrinth-i</i>	<i>Coriōl-īs</i>
Third ,	<i>Carthāgīn-ē</i> ²	<i>Cūr-ībus</i>

- 265a** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and also with *dōmo* and *rūre*) the question *Whence?* is always answered by the Ablative.

¹ *Militiae* and *belli* are seldom used except with *dōmi*.

² The older form *Carthāgīn-i* is only to be used where the Acc. is in -im, as *Neāpōl-im*, *Neāpōl-i*. *Rōm-ae*, is a contraction for *Rōm-āl*.

268 RULE.—The Dative is sometimes used to denote a purpose, especially with the Verbs **sum** and **do**.

He imputed it to me as a fault, *Id mīhī vītio dēdit, or vertit.*
lit., gave for a fault.

This will be (for) a proof to *Hōc ērit mīhī dōcūmento.*
me.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

1. Num vitam rusticam criminis esse putas? 2. Pater meus litteris Epheso datis,¹ scribit se mihi libros hos dono daturum. 3. Hostemne oras ut te adjuvet? Num vis omnibus esse derisui? 4. Conjurati, Athenis capti, epistolam concremaverunt ne forte sociis suis, qui Corinthi tum erant, periculo foret. 5. Si domi manuseris, ipse tibi dedecori eris; si ruri (id quod pater suadet) vitam ages, nunquam te facti poenitentebit.² 6. Cur vitio mihi res domi militiaeque honestissime gestas dedisti? 7. Nobis, qui tum Romae vitam agebamus, Tullii crudelitas odio erat. 8. Eniti debes ut, non³ solum tibi ipsi, sed amicis omnibus qui Carthagine nunc sunt, adjumento esse possis. 9. Dum forte Neapoli moror, audiebam pullos sacros in aquam conjectos esse, quam rem Romani omnes religioni habuerunt.⁴ 10. Vobis qui Delphis vivitis, quique (*not from* quisque, 37) Apollinem veneramini, nonne turpissimum videtur Apollinis responsa simul quaestui simul derisui habere?⁵ 11. Audistine Cannis infeliciter pugnatum esse? Occidimus; actum est de exercitu. 12. I Roma.
1. *There is no doubt that, if you remain longer at Corinth, you will be a disgrace to your friends.* 2. *Let his life be an example to you, that you may know that life in-the-country is often happier than in the city.* 3. *I asked him not to impute to me as a fault the-fact-that (quod, i.e., because) I had departed from Carthage in-order-to live at Rome.* 4. *You will remain three months at Rome, your brother at Athens, we at Samos; soon we shall all go to Gaul, thence we shall sail to Rhodes.* 5. *When Socrates had been put-to-death at Athens—which (270) was a disgrace to the Athenians—his friend Glaucon betook himself to Cyprus; thence after two months he set out for Asia.* 6. *I like to live at Rome; that-fellow (likes to live) in Campania;*

269 ¹ i.e. “dated from Ephesus,” (not “at Ephesus,” which would be Ἐφέσι): see Par. 265a.

270 ² Note this use of *Id quōd*, *that which*, i.e. as, *your father recommends*: *id* may be parsed as *Nom. in Apposition to the sentence “rūri vitam ages.”*

271 ³ Not *nē*, because the *nōn* goes with *sōlum*.

272 ⁴ *Dum* is mostly used with the *Present*, though the Principal Verb is in the *Past*: “dum haec gēruntur, hostes terga dābant.”

⁵ *Vōbīs* is Dat. governed by *vīdētur*.

you, who are a laughing-stock to all the best-men (140), are setting out from Athens that you may live at Capua. 7. *That great man was not more-renowned in-war than in-the-arts-of peace (trans. at home).* 8. *There is no doubt that you remember (memini, Appendix II., page 216) when (156) the Romans were defeated by Hannibal at Cannae (239).*

THE ABLATIVE.

- 273** 1. Since the Ablative denotes the *means* or *instrument*, it can express the *definite price*, by *means* of which anything is bought.

The fish was bought for a denarius, i.e. with a denarius. Piscis dēnārio emptus est.

- 274** 2. It can also express the *measure*, by *means* of which one thing *exceeds*, or *falls short of*, another.

The sun is (by) many times larger than the moon. Sōl multis partibus mājor est quam luna.¹

- 275** 3. It can express that, by *means* of which anything is *filled*.

The river is full of water, i.e. filled with water. Amnis plēnus āquā est.²

- 276** 4. It can also express any *circumstance*, *in* which, or *with* which, something occurs; and hence it can express, (a) *manner*, or (b) *quality*.³ But in such cases the Noun must have an Adj. agreeing with it.

(a) **MANNER.** *He answered in haste.* Respondit summā cēlēritāte, or cum cēlēritāte.

(b) **QUALITY.** *Tullius was a man of ability.* Tullius ingēnio haud parvo, or magno, ērat.

277 ¹ Hence “much better,” “little better,” should be rendered “multo paulo, mēlior,” not multum.

278 ² But in the best writers **plēnus** more often takes the Genitive.

³ Under this head comes the Rule (Par. 2S) that **dignus**, **indignus**, **frētus**, **contentus**, &c., take the Ablative; but the Ablative after these words requires no Adjective agreeing with it.

279 5. The Ablative is also used after Verbs and Adjectives implying *need, deprivation, emptiness, freedom from, &c.*

I am free from cares.

Vācuus sum cūris.

I have need of money.

Ōpus est mīhi argento.

280 RULE.—After Verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, the English Present Infinitive is expressed by the Latin Future Infinitive.

I promise to come, or that I will come.

Prōmitto, or, pollicor, mē ventūrum esse.

I hope to see her to-morrow.

Spēro mē crās eam vīsūrum esse.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

1. Ne mille quidem talentis virtutem emere poteris. 2. Multo sanguine ea victoria nobis stetit. 3. Duabus unciis procerior eras quam frater tuus. 4. Fossae aqua plenae erant, urbs frumento abundabat; sed omnes armis egebamus. 5. Compertum est nostros ab hostibus commeatu interclusos esse. 6. Magno timore sum, sed spero mox fore ut puer convalescat.¹ 7. Centurioni, viro summa probitate, promittenti se venturum, nonne tu credes? 8. Omitte timorem, mi fili; nam, quo fortius ei resistes, eo facilius tibi cedet.² 9. Divitiis facile carebis; nemo facile virtute caret. 10. Opus est auxilio tuo; miliens promisisti te venturum esse; omissis jam excusationibus, fac venias (*see ‘facio’*). 11. Balbus (multo felicior quam frater) ante urbem captam mortem obierat. 12. Quod ne asse (*see ‘as’*) quidem emere volumus, id asse carum est.

1. There is no need of excuses; promise to help us. 2. There is no doubt that that victory cost us much blood. 3. We (can) easily do-without flesh, but (sed) we need water. 4. Tullius, a man of approved excellence, had promised to come to see us. 5. Are you much taller than your brothers? 6. The more patiently he bore these insults, the more-steadily he was loved by the citizens. 7. I will ask the general whether he has cut off the enemy from supplies. 8. He answered in-anger (276)

281

¹ Verbs ending in -sco commonly have the sense of *beginning* an action or state, and are called *Inceptives*. *Inceptives* rarely have a Fut. Part. in -rus, and consequently require, even in the Active, the use of the periphrasis fōrē ut, like possum (Par. 231).

² Quo . . . eo, lit. *by how much . . . by so much, i.e. the more bravely . . . the more easily.* Why is quo Abl.? See Par. 274.

that there was no need of an axe. 9. *He is a man of little ability, yet by his perseverance he conquered very many rivals.* 10. *What prevents us from carrying on the war much more successfully, Tullius being now (jam) our leader (197) (5a)?*

THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used in the following constructions :

- 282** 1. (a) *Descriptively*, and (b) to express *quality*, as in English.

(a) *A fleet of two hundred vessels.* Classis dūcentārum nāvium.

(b) *He is a man of ability.* Vir est magni ingēnii.

In such instances, the Genitive Noun must always be accompanied by an Adjective.

- 283** 2. To express (a) *estimation*, and (b) *indefinite price*.

(a) RULE.—Magni, plūris, plūrīmi, parvi, mīnōris, mīnīmi, tanti, quanti, and nīhili, are used after Verbs of *estimation*, such as pendo (I hang, weigh, value), fācio, aēstimo.

- 284** (b) RULE.—Tanti, quanti, plūris, mīnōris (but magno, parvo, plūrīmo, &c.) are used after Verbs of *selling* and *buying*.

(a) *I do not count you worth a straw.* Nōn flocci tē fācio.

(b) *At what price was the corn bought? For a large sum.* Quanti frūmentum emptum est? Magno.¹

- 285** 3. To express *plenty* or *want* (but this is more often expressed by the Ablative).

The pupil must learn by practice what words generally take the Genitive and what the Ablative: for example, indīgeo generally takes the Genitive, and ēgeo the Ablative.

- 286** ¹ The distinction between the Genitive and Ablative appears to be this: the Gen. is used when the price is stated *indefinitely* and regarded as a *quality*, the Abl. when it is stated *definitely* and regarded as the *instrument* whereby the purchase is effected.

287 4. After Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance*, such as *conscīus*, *conscious of*, *nescīus*, *ignorant of*, *insuētus*, *unaccustomed to*, &c.

He is ignorant of manners, but very learned in the law.

Mōrum impēritus est, jūris autem peritissimus.

He informed me of his plan, i.e., he made me more certain of his plan.

Consilii sui mē certiore fēcit.

288 5. After Present Particles and Adjectives that have the force of Nouns, such as *āvidus*, *pōtens*, *insōlens*, *cūpīdus*, &c.

Patient (i.e. an endurer) of cold.

Patiens frigoris.

He was an extreme lover of his country.

Patriae ērat amantissimus.

289 6. After a suppressed Noun, such as *nature*, *mark*, *duty*, *lot*, *part*, &c.

It is (the mark) of a wise man not to be easily disturbed.

Sāpientis est nōn fācile perturbāri.

It is (the duty) of a young man to respect his elders.

Ādūlescentis est mājōres nātu vērēri.

It is not (the luck) of every one to do this.

Nōn cuiusvīs est hōc fācere.

290 7. After a suppressed Noun, such as *charge*, *cause*, &c., with Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *convicting*, &c.

Having been accused (on the charge) of theft, Balbus was condemned to death.

Balbus (crīmīne) furti accusatus, cāptīs damnātus est.¹

EXERCISE LXXX.

1. Non cuiusvis est summos honores assequi. 2. Haruspices aut stultitiae aut vanitatis recte condemnamus. 3. Quanti praediū emptum est? Magno: sed equidem id parvi aestimo.

290a

¹ The Genitive is not habitually used to denote the *punishment*, but only the *charge*. But it is used of the *punishment* in the phrases, “*cāptīs, dupli, quadrupli*, &c., (*multā*) *condēnāre*,” *to condemn (in the fine) of death, two-fold, four-fold*, &c.

4. Tardi ingenii est nihil nisi omnibus nota¹ perspicere.
 5. Themistocles, providi animi vir, persuasit Atheniensibus ut classem centum navium compararent. 6. Majestatis accusati, alii in metalla, alii ad bestias, alii capitis dannati sunt.
 7. Quaerebam mecum quare apud hanc gentem parum (*adv.*) virium veritas haberet. 8. Rhodum aut aliquo (*adv.*) terrarum hinc migrandum est. 9. Omnia regionum, id temporis,² Gallia et frugum et metallorum fertilissima esse videbatur.
 10. Stultorum est doctrinae cupidos contemnere. 11. Barbaros, insuetos laboris, disciplinae insolentes, rudes rei militaris, facile vicimus. 12. Tempori cedere a plerisque, sed non a Catone, sapientis est habitum.

1. *The Christians, having been accused of treason before (apud) the proconsul, were condemned to the mines.* 2. *Where (292a) in-the-world shall we find a-second-man so fond of learning, so patient of labour?* 3. *Balbus, a man of incredible perfidy, was found guilty of bribery.* 4. *I value the farm at-a-great-price; but it was sold for-a-small price.* 5. *I asked why the farm had been sold for more than (quam) the house.* 6. *It is not like a philosopher (i.e. the mark of a philosopher) to be disturbed by trifles.* 7. *It is not the lot of everybody to persuade those-who-listen (202).* 8. *His brother was acquitted of theft; but Balbus himself, a man free from all fault, was condemned to death.* 9. *It requires (i.e. it is the part of) a great leader to effect this task; for effecting (186) which, Tullius has too-little ability.* 10. *Whither in-the world are you migrating from Athens?*

SOME USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

- 291** I. The Subjunctive Mood is used in its proper Subjunctive use when it is *subjoined* to a Principal Verb, to express (132) *purpose* or *indirect question*. But it is also *subjoined* to express (1) *result*, and (2) *reason*: (for *cum* causal with Subjunctive, see Par. 151a).

292 ¹ Nōta is Neut. Pl. Acc., used as a Noun, governed by *perspicis* understood: *to perceive nothing unless (you perceive) things-known to all.* The phrase *nīl nīsī* is often used thus with the force of *except*.

² Here *Id* is the Accusative of Duration (262); but instead of *tempus*, there is the Partitive Genitive *temporis*.

292a The Partitive Gen. often follows (a) Neut. Pronouns, e.g. "quicquid, or si quid cibi hābūimus," *whatever food, or all the food, we had;* and also (b) Adverbs, e.g. *āliquo terrārum*, lit. *some-whither of lands*, i.e. *to some place or other in the world*; *ūbī terrārum? where in the world?*

(1) *The fighting was so brisk that many were slain on both sides; among whom it happened that the leader himself fell.*

Tam acriter pugnatū est ut multi utrimque interficiēntur; inter quos accidit ut dux ipse occidēret.

(2) *The Athenians condemned Socrates to death because he had (said they) corrupted the youth.*

Āthēnienses Sōcrātem cāpītis damnāvērunt quod jūventūtem corrūpisset.¹

293 II. Besides its uses in the above *subjoined* clauses, the Subjunctive (or, as it is sometimes called, the Conjunctive Mood) is also used independently, as follows:

(1) *Hortatively*, i.e. *exhorting*: āmēmus, *let us love*.²

(2) *Concessively*, i.e. *granting* for the sake of argument:

Grant that you expel nature, yet she will continually return. Nātūram expellas; usquē tāmen rēcurret.

(3) *Optatively*, i.e. *wishing*: pēreas! *may you perish!*

(4) *Conditionally*, i.e. expressing a statement made subject to the fulfilment of a *condition*.

I should like to come (i.e. if it could be allowed, &c.). Vēlim vēnīre.

III. The Subjunctive is used (1) after *si*, *if*, to express a *condition*, and also (2) to express a *consequence*.³

If he came, (then) he would conquer. Si (1) vēniat, (2) vincat.

The *if-clause* is called the *Protasis* (see p. 238); the *Consequent*, or *then-clause*, is called the *Apodosis* (see p. 233).

293a

¹ The Subjunctive implies that the reason influences the mind of others, not the mind of the writer. Corrūpērat would have implied that the writer believed the charge: *because he had (as a fact) corrupted the youth.*

² This usage is ordinarily placed under the Imperative.

293b

³ Si with the Indic. Pres. or Perf. (less frequently Imperf. or Pluperf.) is used in conditions which are assumed to be true, and is often equivalent to *when* or *since*.

294 RULE.—After *sī*, *nē*, *num*, use *quis* for *any one*, *quando* for *at any time*, (“*sī aliquid*” would mean *if some one*; “*sī aliquando*,” *if at some time*).

295 The Tenses of the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences vary with the nature of the condition.

The *Past Tenses* of the Subjunctive are naturally employed to express conditions (1 *a*) *impossible* or (1 *b*) *regarded as impossible*.

The *Present* expresses (2 *a*) conditions *possible* or (2 *b*) though really *impossible*, *graphically regarded as possible*.

(1 *a*) *If I had received anything (which I have not done) I would have given it.* Si quid *accēpissem*, *dēdissem* (*dārem* would mean ‘*I should now be giving*’).

(1 *b*) *Should I receive, or, if I received anything (which there is no reason for thinking likely) I would give it.* Si quid *accīpērem*, *dārem*.

(2 *a*) *Should I receive, or, if I received, anything (which is possible) I would give it.* Si quid *accīpiām*, *dem*, i.e. *imagine me receiving something*.

(2 *b*) *Imagine Plato come to life again; believe me, you would blush while saying this.* Si *rēvīiscat* Plāto; crēdē mīlī, haec dicens *rūbēas*, i.e. *I see you blushing*.

N.B.—*The Tense is the same in the Protasis and Apodosis.*

EXERCISE LXXXI.

296 RULE.—*Ut . . . non* is *not* to be changed into *nē* when the Subjunctive expresses Consequence.

So vigorous was the charge that they could not resist. Tantus ērat impētus *ut rēsistere nōn possent*.

1. Bonorum exempla imitemur, malorum caveamus.¹ 2. Peream nisi haec vere dico. 3. Plures cecidissent ni nox proelio intervenisset. 4. Si semper optima videre et facere possemus, haud sane praeceptore nobis opus foret. 5. Si quis gladium a te insaniens poscat, nonne dare peccatum sit?

297 ¹ Note that, where in English we say “*those of the bad*,” the Latin either (1) repeats the Noun, “*mālōrum exempla*,” or (2), as above, leaves the Noun to be understood; but in no case inserts *ea*.

6. Si vir bonus hanc vim habeat ut verbo inimicos interficere possit, hac vi profecto (*adv.*) non utatur (295, 2 b). 7. At si Marco Crasso dares hanc vim ut digitorum percussione dicitissimum quemque interficeret (32), dicitas ipse acciperet, in foro (mili crede) prae gaudio saltaret. 8. Cave ne quis tibi, epistola mea usus, ignaro noceat. 9. Num quis tam amens est ut filiis suis invideat? 10. Tanta vi hostes in urbem irruperunt ut nostri, tanta multitudine oppressi, in arcem se recipere non possent.
1. *By-chance it happened that a few of our-men had been slain by the arrows of the enemy.*¹ 2. *If the excellent Tullius had promised to (280) help a friend, he would have kept his word.* 3. *If any one asked (295, 2a) you whence you come, you would reply that you come from Carthage.* 4. *It cannot be (fr̄i) that a just man would wish to use an unjust power.*¹ 5. *If by some (quīdam) magic art, Balbus were able to assume the form of any animal (he-pleased), he would choose a fish, that he might (131) not be compelled to speak.* 6. *The general was so greedy of fame as to envy (i.e. that he envied) even his own centurions.* 7. *How are you-getting-on (i.e. what are you doing, quid āgis) at Athens, my son?* 8. *Write to me how you are getting-on at Corinth.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

298 *Qui* takes the Indicative (I.) when it is used for a Demonstrative Pronoun with a Coordinate Conjunction such as *and*, *but*, &c.²; but (II.) it takes the Subjunctive when used for a Demonstrative with a Subordinate Conjunction denoting (1) *purpose*, (2) *consequence*, (3) *cause*, &c.

- | | |
|--|--|
| I. <i>At length we reached the enemy; who (i.e. but they) immediately fled.</i> | Tandem ventum ērat ad hostes ;
qui stātim terga dābant. |
| II. (1) <i>We sent ambassadors to (Lat. who should i.e. that they should) ask for peace.</i> | Misimus lēgā'os qui (i.e. ut ēi)
pācem pēt̄rent. |
| (2) <i>There were some that (i.e. such that they) blamed you.</i> | Ērant qui (i.e. ālīqui tāles ut)
te culpārent. |

299 ¹ See the use of *accidit* in the first example in page 150, above. The Subjunctive is used after Verbs of *happening, coming to pass, &c.* as if they implied a *result consequent on something preceding*.

299a ² *Qui* is sometimes used for the Demonstrative without a Conjunction, e.g. in the idiom “tū, cuius ēs sāpientiae (282^b), non errābis,” *you (of such wisdom are you, i.e. such is your wisdom) will not err.*

(3) *I congratulate you because you have such a son.* Grātūlor tībī qui (i.e. quod tu) tālem fīlium hābeās.

300 After the antecedent **nēmo**, or **quiſ**, you must not write **quī nōn**, nor **quō** (old form **quī**) **nōn**, but **quīn**. (this applies to all Genders.)

(2 a) *Who is there (or, there is no one) that does not hate you?* Quiſ est (or, Nēmo est) quīn tē ūdērit?

There was no day but Tullius walked with me, lit. on-which-not T. walked with me. Dies črat nullus quīn (i.e. quo nōn) Tullius mēcum ambūlāret.

301 **Vērēor** means *I am anxiously on the watch*. Hence, when it is translated *I fear*, the English requires (1) the insertion of a negative if the Latin omits it, and (2) the omission of a negative if the Latin inserts it.

(1) *I fear he will not come.* Vēreor (or tīmeo) ūt věniat, lit. *I am anxiously watching that he may come.*

(2) *I feared he would come.* Vērītus sum (or tīmūi) nē věni-ret, lit. *I anxiously watched that he might not come.*

N.B.—After *fear*, translate the English Future by the Latin Subjunctive.

302 **Nescio** **ān**. Before **ān**, **utrum** is always implied, if not expressed. Hence in Direct Questions **ān** is used to introduce an *alternative* to which the speaker is driven, “(Utrum hōc fātēris) **ān** hōc nēgās?” (*Whether do you confess this? Or must I suppose that you actually deny this?*) Similarly, in Indirect Questions, **nescio** **ān** introduces an *alternative and more probable supposition*; thus, “Nescio (utrum ventūrus sit) **ān** nōn ventūrus sit,” means, *I do not know (whether he will come), or whether, as is more probable, he will not come*, i.e., *I rather think he will not come*. Consequently, with **nescio** **ān** (as with **vērēor**) a negative must be inserted or omitted in Latin, in a manner exactly contrary to the English idiom.

I do not know whether he will come. Nescio än nōn ventūrus sit, i.e.
I rather think he will not come.

I do not know whether he will not come. Nescio än ventūrus sit,¹ i.e.
I rather think he will come.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

303 RULE.—With a Comparative Adverb, purpose is expressed by **quo**, i.e. **ut eo** (Par. 277):

In order that he might swim more quickly. **Quo** (i.e. **ut eo**) cēlērius nāret.

1. Mittamus legatos qui pacem petant. 2. Quotusquisque est qui tibi faveat! Sunt qui te oderint; nemo fere est quin tibi invideat. 3. Omnes laudabant victorem qui tot milia civium incolumes servasset, totiens hostem sub jugum misisset. 4. Quis est quin sibi consulat, alienis sua anteponat? 5. Dies fere nullus erat quin (i.e. quo non) rus tecum irem. 6. Fossam castris circumdedimus quo (i.e. ut eo) facilius hostibus resisteremus. 7. Vereor ne optimus quisque civium nos deserat. 8. Nescio an res mihi non bene successura sit; sed id agam ut tibi subveniam. 9. Nescio an mulieres venturae sint; sed, si aberunt, equidem tibi subveniam. 10. Pavor ceperat milites ne praeda sibi eriperetur. 11. Lege quādam cavebatur ne quis, ob causam orandam, pecuniam donumve (see -ve) acciperet. 12. Cave ne aeger neve hieme naviges. 13. Non tu is (see Vocab. 'is') es qui mentiaris.²
1. *They sent ambassadors to (qui) ask for peace.* 2. *I am not the man (is qui) to use this opportunity.*² 3. *There was no one but wished to help him.* 4. *I feared that all the best of the citizens would set out for the country.* 5. *All praise you for (298, 3) (qui) having conquered so many thousands of the enemy.* 6. *Even if it were possible,³ I should not wish to do this.* 7. *I fear that the enemy, having now crossed the river, will not make (fērio) peace.* 8. *There were some who answered that not even an assassin must be delivered-over against the laws.* 9. *How-few (quōtus-quisque with sing.) are there*

¹ These differences between the English and Latin idioms are sometimes expressed in the lines:—

With vēreor and nescio

For English yes, put Latin no.

303a ² Note that, after "nōn ēgo is sum, tū is ēs, is est, qui," the Relative agrees, in Person, with the Subject of the Verb to be, not with is.

304 ³ It is possible, i.e. it is able to be done, "fēri pōtest," not pōtest alone, except in the phrases "ut pōtest," "si pōtest," and these mostly in colloquial Latin. The pupil should use pōtest to mean it is able, not it is possible. See Vocab. "even."

who are unwilling to use an opportunity of obtaining wealth!

10. *There is no one in this city who will not prefer his-interests (i.e. his-things, 34) to mine.*

Sē, ipsē, &c.

It has been said above (Par. 218, and see page 328) that *sē, suus, &c.* (and not *eum, eius*) are used when they refer (in a Subordinate Clause) to the Subject of the Principal Verb. But there are exceptions to this Rule.

- 305 I. Sometimes an apparently Subordinate Sentence (*e.g.* one introduced by *because*) is really equivalent to a Co-ordinate Sentence introduced by *for*.

Marcius returned safe because I *Marcius salvus rēdiit quod ei had spared him.* *pēpercēram.*¹

This is really equivalent to the two Co-ordinate Sentences, *Marcius returned safe : for I had spared him*, “*Marcius salvus rēdiit ; nam ei pēpercēram :*” and *ei* is therefore used, because *rēdiit* is regarded, not as a Principal, but as a Co-ordinate Verb.

But if the *because-clause* be more closely connected with what precedes, and if some notion of *thought he, said he*, be introduced, so as to make the latter part appear, *not a historical fact*, but rather dependent upon *what Marcius thought, said, &c.*—then *sībī* must be used.

Marcius returned me thanks because (said he) I had spared him. *Marcius grātias ēgit mīlī quod sībī pēpercissem.*¹

- 306 II. Occasionally *suus* is used of different persons in the same sentence. In such cases the *sense* must determine the translation.

The Veneti sent an ambassador to Caesar (commanding that) if he wished to receive back his own men, he should send their hostages back for them. *Vēnēti lēgātū ad Caesārem misērunt: “Si vellēt suos rēcipere, obsīdes sībī rēmittēret.”²*

¹ Note also that the Indicative *pēpercēram* is changed into the Subjunctive *pēpercissem* (293a).

² The construction of *rēmittēret* is explained more fully in the rules on Exercise XCIII.: here, *rēmitterēt* may be parsed as Subjunctive after *impērāvērunt ut*, which is implied in *misērunt*, *they sent* (*with orders that*).

307 III. Ambiguity in English is sometimes avoided by the distinction between *him* and *himself*: but in Latin both these pronouns are sometimes rendered by *sē*, so that the meaning of *sē* has to be determined by *the sense of the whole passage*:

The captive besought the conqueror to spare him. Captīvus victōrem obsecrāvit ut sībī parcēret.

The father commanded the son to restrain himself. Pāter filio impērāvit ut sē coercēret.

308 IV. Ambiguity is sometimes removed in Latin (1) by adding *ipsē* to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb, to which *se* refers:

(1) *Nature impels a child to love itself.* Nātūra mōvet infantem ut se ipsē diligat.

(2) by placing *ipsē* in antithesis with *sē*, using *ipsē* to refer to the Principal Subject and *sē* to refer to the Subordinate Subject:

Caesar asked (his soldiers) why they distrusted their own valour or his diligence. Caesar quaesīvit (ex mīlītib⁹) cur de suā virtūtē aut de ipsius diligentia despērārent.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

309 RULE.—**Quisquam**, and **ullus**, *any*, are used in negative and comparative sentences, and in interrogative sentences that expect the answer *No*.

Quisquam is used for the English *no one* and *nothing* when *and* precedes: *and no one nēc quisquam*; *and nothing, nēc quidquam*. Similarly, *and never, neque unquam*, &c.

310 Distinguish between **quisquam** and **quisquē**, *each one*; **quisquis**, *whoever*; **quilibet** and **quīvis**, *any one you like*; **quīdam**, *a certain (person)*; **āliquis**, *some one*.¹

310a ¹ *Quīdam* means *a certain person (whom I could mention by name, if I desired)*, *āliquis* *some one (who exists, but it matters not who precisely it is)*. Note that **quisquis** is the only one of these words that has a Relative force.

1. Venator orabat comites ne se ante oculos suos perire sinerent.
2. Pertimuerunt ne ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in gratiam rediret.
3. Quaesivit imperator cur milites sibi totiens antea obtemperassent, jam obtemperare nollent.
4. Tum vero rex circumstantes obsecrat ut suae quisque saluti consulant, ipsum morientem negligant.¹
5. Quodam tempore natus sum; aliquo tempore mihi moriendum erit.
6. Non cuivis contingit optimo cuique suorum civium placere.
7. Si quis in scena saltat, ei non quivis motus sed certus quidam (motus) datur.
8. Inest etiam superbis falsa quaedam modestiae species.
9. Interrogavi nonne major natu esset quam quisquam ex fratribus suis.
10. Dixerit aliquis (*some one may be inclined to say*) inutilem fuisse hanc victoriam; sed eiusmodi dicta (quae cuilibet prompta sunt), flocci non facio.
11. Neapoli prefectura subito obiit (265a).

1. *I hope that the city will soon be captured, and that no one (i.e. nor any one) of the enemy will escape.*
2. *They believed that the boy had departed from them and returned to his (friends.)*
3. *The general besought the soldiers to trust in their own valour and in his wisdom.*
4. *When I asked (i.e. to me asking) who (240a) would (i.e. wished to) carry the letter, one² of my brother's servants replied that he would do it.*
5. *Some-one may say (see Sent. 10 above) that death is an eternal sleep: but, even among (āpud) the ancients, most of the philosophers believed that there is something after death.*
6. *It is lawful to the actor to utter not any words he-likes, but certain fixed words.*
7. *Sometimes it is a kind-of virtue (see 'kind') even to abstain from vice.*
8. *Can any one (294) deny that we must beware lest any one of the spies should hear this?*

EXERCISES ON THE GENDERS OF THE NOUNS AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

311 **D**ea, -ae, f. *goddess*, makes Dat. Pl. **deābus** in classical authors: and **filiābus** is found in inscriptions and legal forms.

Bōs, c. *ox* or *cow*, Gen. **bōvis**, has Dat. and Abl. Pl. **bōbus** and **būbus**.

Vīs, f. sing. *force, violence*, has Gen. and Dat. Sing. wanting, and is declined Nom. **vīs**, Acc. **vim**, Abl. **vī**.

Vīres, f. pl. *strength* (Pl. of **vīs**, but not meaning *violence*), is formed regularly, **vīriūm**, **vīribus**, **vīres**.

¹ What case is **quisquē**? See the word in the Vocabulary.

² Trans. *a certain one*; not **ūnus**, which would mean *one only*.

Jūppitēr makes Jōvem, Jōvis, Jōvi, Jōve.

Dōmūs is formed partly from the Second and partly from the Fourth Declension. The Gen. and Dat., Sing. and Pl., are of the Fourth, dōmūs, dōmui, domūum, dōmībus, and also the Abl. Pl. dōmībus; the rest are of the Second.¹

Jūs-jūrandum, *oath* (which has no Plural), and rēspubliča, *state*, are not irregular, but simply words compounded of Nouns and Adjectives agreeing with them, Gen. jūris-jūrandi, rēipubličæ, &c.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

312 RULE.—Cēlo, dōceo, and some other Verbs take two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Mercury taught Cupid letters. Mercūrius Cūpidīnem littēras dōcuit.

My son must be taught letters. Filius meus littēras est dōcendus.

313 RULE.—Antē, post (placed *Adverbially* between the Noun and Adj. of time), and sometimes (216) ābhīne, *ago*, are used with the Abl. of Measure (274), to denote an interval before or after.

He died a very few days before. Hōmo perpaucis antē diēbus ūbiit.

Many years afterwards, he returned home. Multis post annis, dōmūm rēdiit.

They perished two years ago. Abhīne biennio pēriērunt.

1. Non dubium est quin solvērit quod pro fratre spopondit.
2. Rogavi imperatorem utrum civitatem omnem an paueos procerum jure-jurando obstrinxisset.
3. Quibus domibus milites pepercérant eas cives ipsi incenderunt.
4. Quod frater tuus me non celavit, id cur tu oculuisti?
5. Num, te jubente, consul secures sumpsit posuitque?
6. Nolo exorsa (*see exordior*) vel potius fere detexta, postea, jam senex, retexere.
7. Tullius, primis annis, puer, equis bubusque

313a ¹ The Gen. and Acc. Pl. dōmōrum and dōmūs are sometimes found. The forms are sometimes remembered by the lines:—

Si dēclināre dōmus vīs

Tolle (i.e. *take away*) -mē, -mū, -mī, et -mīs.

The form dōmi, *at home*, is the Locative Case, see Par. 265.

alendis; mox juvenis, rei-publicae operam dedit.¹ 8. Si quid mihi humanitus (*adv.*) accidisset, liberi mei defensore caruissent (295, 1a). 9. Quotusquisque didicit quomodo vivendum sit! 10. Filiorum eius alteri Tullia nupsit; alteri soror eius, perpaucis post mensibus. 11. Fertur Venus² filium suum Mercurio literas docendum tradidisse. 12. Homo stultissimus filio, qui natu maximus est, grandem pecuniam testamento (*abl. instr.*) legat; filiabus nihil legat.

1. *The worthless Balbus was-unwilling to support the parents who had supported him from boyhood.*
2. *I asked the husbandman when (i.e. at what time) he had sown (his) corn (pl.).*
3. *There is no doubt that the soldiers distrusted the general.*
4. *I asked Tullius why he was going-to-leave so-large a sum-of-money to his three daughters.*
5. *Did you, a few days afterwards, promise your daughter (in-marriage) to that-fellow?*
6. *Do you, who elected me consul, now hope, O citizens, to wrest the consulate from-me (mihi) by violence (152a)?*
7. *At-first our men were driven-back; (but) soon a-second-time advancing they drove the enemy down from the hill.*
8. *Why have you pledged-yourself to pay so large a sum-of-money?*
9. *Because you are bankrupt, do not (ne) on that account make false promises.*
10. *Are-you-ignorant of the way in which (i.e. in-what-way) Brutus drove-out Tarquin?*

EXERCISE LXXXV.

- 314** 1. The Distributive Numerals (for which see Par. 77) are used, (1) where the same number applies to *each* of a class; (2) where the Noun with which the Numeral agrees is Singular in meaning, though Plural in form, e.g. *litterae, castra* (so that the Noun implies a *group*, e.g. *litterae, a group of alphabetical letters*); (3) in poetry.³
- (1) *The men will be contented Hōmīnes bīnis, aut certo ternis with two or at all events three dēnāriis contenti ērunt. denarii a-piece.*

¹ Dat governs *ēquis* as well as *rei-publicae*.

² Note the Latin idiom. *It is reported that Venus did, &c., is never to be rendered "fertur Vēnērem fecisse," &c., but always Vēnus is reported to have done, &c., "fertur Vēnus fecisse," &c.* A similar construction is used with *dicitur*, see Par. 177.

- 316** ³ Because, in poetry, number is regarded not as a precise collection of units, but as a *group*, a "brace," "dozen," "score," "hundred," &c., which may belong to any number of persons *a-piece*, so that a kind of distribution is implied. Thus any hero may carry his "couple" of darts, and any giant may have his "hundred hands"; and hence Virgil speaks of "*bīna hastilia*," in the hand of *Æneas*, and "*centēnae mānūs*" belonging to a giant.

- (2) *At that time I used to write one, two, three, four, sometimes five letters a day.* Eo tempore singūlis diēbus ūnas, bīnas, trīnas, quāternas, interdum c̄tiam quīnas littēras scribēbam.¹

317 2. *Cum . . . tum*, used like *ēt . . . ēt*, sometimes mean *not only, but also*: see sentence 7 below.

(*Look out allieio, diffindo, īnūro, oblīno.*)

1. *Quam messem senex severat filius eius messuit.* 2. *Hostes fusos fungatosque tanta vi nostri colle depulerunt ut ne equites quidem in arcem se recipere possent.* 3. *Vita eius tot tantis que flagitiis oblita fuerat ut turpitudinis nōtam non sibi soli sed toti generi et nomini suo inussisset.* 4. *Nonne apud Plinium, in Naturali Historia, legistis piseibns non supra quaternas pīnas esse, quibusdam binas, aliquibus nullas?*² 5. *Hujus urbī portas aurum vestrum, non virtus, diffidit.*³ 6. *Inter oeculta et sepulta non multum interest.* 7. *Allegerunt audientium animos, eum oratoris eloquentia, tum jurisjurandi coimmemoratio, et hostiū jam aceedentium minae.* 8. *Incertum est utrum militibus singulos an binos denarios dederit, an denique alios pecunia alios promissis ad seditionem impulerit.* 9. *Qui eum (i.e. Now when he) decemvir legibus scribendis⁴ delectus esset, statim intellexit Lieinius rem non jam neglegendam esse.* 10. *Tanta erat hostiū multitudo ut ne trīna quidem castra eis sufficerent.*

1. *To (his) two daughters, whom he loved to a remarkable-degree (unice), he left ten thousand denarii a-piece.* 2. *(His) sons he entirely neglected, except one, the youngest, to whom he left all-the-money-that (quantum pecuniae) he had collected.* 3. *The soldiers he allured, by promising to some six, to others seven, denarii a-piece.* 4. *The daughter did not marry that (man) to whom her father had promised-her-in-marriage.* 5. *Having drawn the water, the girl returned to the well to draw (some) again.⁵* 6. *At the command of the emperor the consul laid-aside the fasces, which he had assumed a very-few days before.* 7. *I*

318. ¹ Note that, with Pl. Nouns of Sing. meaning, the forms ūni, trīni are used, instead of the ordinary distributives, singūli, terni.

² For a list of the distributive numerals, see Par. 77.

³ It was a proverb of Philip of Macedon that any city could be taken, to the gates of which a mule laden with gold, i.e. a bribe, could make its way.

⁴ This dative (for “ad leges scribendas”) is rare, except in *official appellations*; and it is not to be imitated.

318a ⁵ Remember that the Eng. Infinitive is never to be rendered by the Latin Inf. unless it is the Subject or Object of a Verb: see Par. 217.

fear that something (301) amiss has befallen the excellent Tullius. 8. My son, what you have sown, that you will reap.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

- 319 *He is too cruel to be loved by any one.* Crūdēlior est quam qui (or ut) a quoquam āmētur.
He is the same as he always was. Idem est ac (or qui) semper fuit.

(*Look out* *accumbo*, *cōgo*, *comprēhendo*, *dēposeo*, *nanciscor*, *rēgēro*, *pārio*, *excūtio*.)

1. Proserpina, ut flores aspexit, "Accedite," inquit, "comites."¹
2. Crudelior erat rex quam ut cuiquam indulgeret vel ignosceret.
3. Sperasne ceteros poenas datus, tibi uni indultum iri?²
4. Centurioni milites increpanti vox haesit; nam meminerat et sibi uxorem liberosque domi manere.³
5. Praetor eadem, quae antea, respondit, lege sanctum fuisse ne quis mortuum intra urbem sepeliret.
6. Homo cum inter cenandum obdormisset, subito tanto strepitu stertuit ut qui una (*adv.*) accubuerant omnes risum tollerent.
7. Mulier cum tres liberos uno partu peperisset, solitum praemium a regina deponoseit.
8. Exuta veste piscator se in undam mersit; mox anulum nactus regerit.
9. Tum Balbus, quem facinorum quae coactus commiserat iam poenituerat, rem omnem consilipandit.
10. Continuo, excusso sopore, pater latronem comprehensurus exsiluit foras.
1. When (*she*) had approached the meadow the flowers attracted the maiden's eyes.
2. (*His*) voice failed (*desum*) him when he attempted (*i.e.* attempting) to ask the tyrant what he wished to do.
3. Having shaken off sleep, our men leaped out of their beds.
4. We went yesterday to Rome to see a picture painted by the celebrated painter Tullius.
5. If he had revealed the (295. 1a) matter *of his own accord* he would have been spared (167) by the conquerors.
6. It had been enacted that no one should possess more than two hundred acres, but the sons of Tullius possessed three hundred acres a-piece.
7. There is no doubt that you compelled the man to bind himself by an oath.
8. Those who remained in Corinth were all taken and slain.
9. When will you go from Rome (265a)?

20 ¹ Inquit always comes after the first emphatic word of a speech, see page 215. For ut with the Indicative, see the Latin Vocabulary.

² Esse is omitted after dātūros, a very common omission (211).

³ Centūriōni is *Dat. of Disadvantage*; sībī, *Dat. of Advantage*; for ēt see Par. 146.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

321 THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE is used for the Indicative (always in the Present, and more commonly Active than Passive), when a writer is describing a number of actions so confused together that the times and persons are not easily defined; so that the *Infinitive*, i.e. the *Infinite* or *Indefinite* form of the Verb is naturally preferred. The consequent indefiniteness is somewhat similar to that which arises from the omission of **sum**; and this Infinitive is often found in a sentence in which **sum** is actually omitted.

Horses and men, friends and foes were mingled together; all was chance, lit. chance ruled all things. Ěqui, vīri, hostes, cīves perfoes were mingled together; mixti; fors omnia rēgēre. all was chance, lit. chance ruled all things.

322 A Dative of *Purpose* (besides the Dat. of Possession or Reception) is used after **sum** and **do** (268):

He gave me the book (to serve) for a gift. Lībrum mīhi dōno dēdit.
This will be (for) a help to me. Hōc ērit mīhi adjūmento.

A similar Dat. is sometimes used after **dūco**, **hābēo**, &c., meaning *consider*:

This was considered (for) a great insult. Hōc magnae contūmēliae hābitum est.
(Look out allīcio, anquīro, excōlo, torreo.)

1. Foeda inde colluvies; pars cedere, alii insequi; hi fugere, illi resistere ac propulsare; nihil consilio agi. 2. Campus, frumentis optime exultus, decem milia passuum in latitudinem, tria in longitudinem patebat. 3. Consenserant Patres; uni Catoni aliter visum est. 4. Virgines alias (88) alii flores allexere; huic rosae, illi violae curiae¹ erant: una Proserpina liliis sinum replebat. 5. Fertur Ceres famem longam pavere imprudens solvisse, quod, intratura senis domum, forte collegerat. 6. Nostri per apertas portas irruere; ibi clamorem tollere, caede atque incendio omnia miscere. 7. Cur non ante confessus es te peccavisse quam res ipsa anquisita est? 8. Credo fore ut mox judices timeas, quamquam nunc

¹ Cūrae is Dative; rōsae and viōlae Nominative.

quidem negas quidquam de te compertum esse. 9. Quid? Errorem tuum, nisi tibi ipsi nocuerit, nonne vis corrigere? 10. Ulmos vitibus amictas quis non rubetis (*not from rūbeo*), sole tostis anteponit?

1. *The false witnesses had not deceived (fallo) the judge, who favoured neither of us.*
2. *The fields, scorched by the sun, have not produced (their) usual fruits.*
3. *The maiden whom your brother has demanded in (in with acc.) marriage, her father has not promised-in-marriage.*
4. *The two armies, which consisted of four legions (each), filled the whole (of the) valley.*
5. *There is no doubt that he collected a great sum-of-money.*
6. *When he had plunged into the sea, he saw nothing but stones.*
7. *When all had agreed, Balbus alone resisted the proposal (i.e. plan).*
8. *She did not confess her fault until (ante . . . quam) the king bound her by an oath.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

- 323** (1) *Quamquam*, *although*, mostly takes the Indicative; (2) *quamvis*, *however much*, always the Subjunctive (in Prose). (3) But *quamvis* is sometimes used as an Adverb: “*élige quamvis multa*,”¹ *choose however many*, i.e. *as many as you please*.

(*Look out pando, prēgigno, reor, sarcio, scindo.*)

1. Scissa veste, crine passo, virgo ad caelum supplices manus protendebat. 2. Hic, quamvis male sevisset, sperabat se bene messurum esse. 3. Romani, quamquam hostem fuderant, tamen insequi fugientes nequivant. 4. Vestem sartam quidem, si necesse erit, patiar; turpem vero et maculis foedatam non patiar. 5. Legimus, apud Vergilium, Famam extremain prolem a Tellure progenitam. 6. Difficile est dictu cur hic tantus imperator tam imbellem gentem non facile perdomuerit. 7. His minis perterritus, saepsit se tyrannus militibus; tremere et exalbescere vel amicis adeuntibus; adeo (*adv.*) ut, ob metum tonsoris, se ipsum radere, coactus formidine, disceret. 8. Hanc occasionem delendae urbis minime spernendam esse ratus, Balbus regem ad necandos fame captivos

23a ¹ *Quamvis* is used once with the Indicative by Cicero, but this use is not to be imitated. *Quamquam* is used with the Subjunctive (1) in general statements, mostly in the Second Person (called the *Gnomic Subjunctive*), “*Although you may forgive a man, it is difficult to improve him*,” “*Quamquam ignoscas, difficile est ēmendāre*,” (2) in statements expressing, not *fact*, but the *thought* of the writer.

impulit, jure-jurando se obstringens ita demum rem-publicam salvam fore.¹ 9. Itane mentieris? Nec nosti (*see nosco*), prout seres, ita te messurum esse? 10. Jure falluntur ei qui divitiis, non virtute, homines metiuntur.

1. *It is one-thing (34) to dine, another-thing to stuff one's stomach with food.*
2. *Did you envy that-vile (iste) tyrant, hedged-round with soldiers, who measured dangers by his own fear?*²
3. *There is no doubt that, as-boys, we learned many-things which as-old men we shall forget.*
4. *Having routed the enemy, why did you not pursue the fugitives (i.e. those fleeing)?*
5. *Thinking that this opportunity was not to be neglected, the general ordered his soldiers to charge.*
6. *After you had bound yourself by an oath to spare us, did you then impel the king to (ad) slay us?*
7. *The disciples of Epicurus, measuring (i.e. having-measured) all things by pleasure, were unable to estimate virtue at a sufficiently high value (283).*
8. *You who spurned her while-she-lived (i.e. living), will you spurn (her) (now-that-she-is-) about-to-die?*

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

- 324** Jampridem and jamdūdum change the Latin Present into the English Complete Present (Perfect with *have*), and the Latin Imperfect into the English Pluperfect: “Jamdūdum opto, or optābam,” *I have been, or had been, long desiring.*

(*Look out dīgēro, expurgiscor, lābor, quēror.*)

1. Ceres, diu secum questa, tandem his verbis Tonantem allocuta est.
2. Aut non erat paciscendum, aut, si pactus es, standum est promissis.
3. Nec fecellit opinionem eventus; tanta enim vi milites in castra irruperunt ut ducem ipsum in lecto nondum experrectum caperent.
4. Jampridem colonum admonebam ut pirum fructu gravatam et jam lapsuram fulciret.
5. Circa amnem, piscium (278) omnis generis plenum, armenta pinguia pascebantur.
6. Quamvis multa dedecora in se admisisset, non dubium erat quin semper promissis stetisset.
7. Flores inter se dissimillimi, arte quadam in serto digesti, quis nescit quantum oblectationis afferant?²
8. Num imperatorem incusas quod unius et alterius (*see alter*) salutem ob incolumitatem totius exercitus neglexerit?

325

¹ Dēmum adds emphasis to the word before it, and is often equivalent to *only*: *tum dēmum, only then, then and not till then.*

² Flōres is Nom. to afferant.

1. Awake at-last, or sleep for ever (in aeternum) slaves. 2. If you had not made-this-bargain, citizens, the city would not have been delivered-over by the enemy. 3. It is reported that (315) Paris fed sheep round Mount Ida (i.e. Ida the mountain).¹
4. Our men, shut (in) on-one-side by the enemy, on-the-other by a river and by mountains, were cut-off-from (their) supplies.
5. It is (the part) of an orator not-only (317) to arrange (his) facts, but-also to explain (them) clearly (when) arranged.²
6. You have caused me as-much sorrow as (you caused) yourself joy.
7. When I asked (i.e. to me asking) why she had complained she replied that her daughter had been torn-away from (de) her embrace.
8. This great man, whom neither threats had terrified nor gifts had tamed, succumbed at-last to Fortune.

EXERCISE XC.

1. Apud antiquos cor (non cerebrum) visum est sapientiae esse sedes. 2. Nostri, cum ad collem confugissent, biduum ibi hostibus resistebant. 3. Nostris famem longam vix sustentibus allatum est magnum gregem nuper ab hostibus in castra compulsum esse. 4. Fasces illos severos et secures sanguineas nemo plebis non formidabat. 5. Post tertium mensem, quum in eam vallem descendissemus quam nuntius indicaverat, nihil repperimus nisi tabescentia cadavera eorum quos pestis absumpserat. 6. Hoc sermone perterriti, suam quisque (165) domum conjurati dilapsi sunt. 7. Nescisne Taurum montem, inter Asiam et Syriam interacentem, a Livio cardinem quendam appellatum esse? 8. Hunc panem ne furi quidem invidere possim. 9. Jure dictitabat Menenius plerosque, ventre (197) pleno, humaniores esse. 10. Hinc orta est inter senatorium et equestrem ordinem summa discordia; quorum alter Caesari, alter Pompeio favebat.
1. Seest thou not, O Brutus, thine axes polluted and thy fasces dyed with the blood of thy sons? 2. Having broken the two hinges, the robbers tore-away the gate. 3. Contented with a little (exiguus) bread, this great philosopher demanded no more (i.e. did not demand more-things). 4. Your sheep were lying under a beech-tree, which (was) struck with lightning (and) fell. 5. By his pleasant discourse this witty poet delighted both old-men and young. 6. Near a very high hill was a narrow valley

326 ¹ In Latin the name of the individual precedes the name of the class.

326a ² Avoid the repetition of Pronouns in Latin: trans. facts not only to arrange, but also, (when) arranged, to explain; making (facts) the Obj. both of *arrange* and of *explain*.

watered by a small stream (amnis). 7. (Fair)-shone the ground (hūmus) painted with many kinds of beautiful flowers. 8. I have been long hoping that the city will be taken in two months.

EXERCISE XCI.

327 *Quam, as far as, is sometimes put briefly for “quam pōtuit, pōtēris,” &c. : he prepared as sumptuous a dinner as he could, “cēnam quam (pōtnit) ūpīnam pārāvit.” This construction, with the Positive degree, is rare, and not to be imitated : but with the Superlative it is common :*

He hastened with as long marches as possible.

**Quam (pōtuit) maxīmis itīn-
ēribus contendit.**

Take care to come as often as you can. (Lat. shall be able.)

**Cūrā ūt quam (pōtēris)
saepissimē vērias.**

1. O sortem (206) infelicissimam ! Quibus pelagus pepercerauit, eos fere in portu perire !¹ 2. Specum quendam, in ipso montis vertice, pumice exeso structum, anus haec incolere ferebatur. 3. Hic inter frutices viridissimos amnis parvus de gelido fonte defluens quam gratissimos latices nobis suppeditabat. 4. Tales sonos si quis e lyra elicere velit, Phoebeo pollice opus sit. 5. Nondum venenatum calicem reus exhauserat, cum accurrit nuntius clamans regem mortuum esse. 6. Tuas messes, ut aiunt, ussistī ; tua vineta cecidisti. 7. Aggerem illum altissimum decem diebus nostri extruxerant. 8. Balbone credis ? Peribis hercle, nisi anguem illum in herba latentem quam celerrime extimueris. 9. Has urbes Philippus ille magni aestimabat tamquam compedes ipsas Graeciae.² 10. Vergilius scribit Tartarearum portarum postes adamantinos ne a caelicolis quidem exscindi posse.

1. *The open-sea (pēlāgus) is not to-be-tried by us in this small ship.*
 2. *Let us hope that the harvest will be as great as possible.*
 3. *The general surrounded the town with a mound thirty feet high.*
 4. *We have four fingers and one thumb (314).*
 5. *Did you see the snake which the eagle had carried off?*

¹ Trans. to think that they should perish ! and parse as Exclamatory Infinitive.

² Compēdes is Acc. governed by aestimaret understood: “tam quam (aestimaret)” as much as (he would value) the fetters, &c. The meaning is that certain fortresses in Greece enabled their owner to keep the whole country in subjection, as fetters enable a jailer to keep a prisouer.

6. Horace says that (*uego*) he cannot free himself from the pleasing fetter of love. 7. There is no doubt that the goat injured that beautiful tree as much as possible with (his) destructive tooth. 8. Are you not ashamed (see Vocab. 'ashamed'), soldiers, of having yielded to enemies so few (in-numbers)? 9. As-long-as you are (125) in debt, you will never be able to be contented with your lot.

EXERCISE XCII.

329 With *intērest* and *rēfert*, to express *it concerns you, me, himself* (not *him*), the forms *meā*, *tuā*, *nostrā*, *suā*, &c., are used.

These Verbs are qualified by the Adverbs *nihil*, *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *quid*, and also by *magni*, *parvi*, *plūris*, *mīnōris*, *tanti*, as well as by ordinary Adverbs such as *maximē*.

What does it matter to me in what manner you compel me? **Quid meā rēfert quā ratiōne inē** (240) *cōgātis?*

Intērest, *it concerns*, is used with the Gen. of the person or thing concerned; (but *rēfert* is rarely thus used). Both are followed by the Acc. and Inf., or by *ut* (or *nē*) with the Subjunctive.

It concerns the State and us that you should be well. **Et rei-publicae et nostrā intērest tē vālēre.**

It is important for you to come. **Tuā intērest ut vēniās.**

330 *Ütīnam*, *would that!* or *O that!* is used to signify a wish, (1) with the Pres. Subjunctive for a *possible*, (2) the Imperf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive for an *impossible* wish.

O that the past might return! **Ütīnam prætērita rēdīrent!**

O that he might arrive to-day! **Ütīnam hōdiē advēniat!**

1. *A recta conscientia ne transversum quidem unguem discesseris.*¹
2. *Interrogavi colonum num domi sedens murmur maris exaudire posset.*
3. *Respondit fulmen ibi decem ante annis de caelo cecidisse.*²
4. *Non nostri moris est ebur et aurum ad Deum colendum adhibere.*³
5. *Quis tumidum guttur*

¹ Why is *unguem* the Acc. (262)? *Nē* affects (129) the translation of *discesseris*.

² Parse *annis*: Par. 313.

³ Parse *mōris*: Par. 259.

in Alpibus miratur? 6. Qui humana carne vescebantur apud Graecos Anthropophagi nominati sunt. 7. Utinam ex hoc fonte nunquam pestis in totam reipublicam defluat! 8. Eligendum erat inter duo itinera, quorum alterum per montes altissimos ducebat, alterum trans angustum pontem, quo nuper amnem junxeramus. 9. Dicebat homo sponte sua se venisse; sed frons ipsa testabatur eum adesse invitum. 10. Multum interest rei familiaris tuae te quam celerrime venire. 11. Utinam fur pecuniā multaretur, neve verbera passus esset! 12. Minoris refert qualibus in aedibus vivas (240), si modo Romae vivis. 13. Aere alieno quondam oppressus, ne nunc quidem se omnino liberavit.

1. *The fellow had not-yet vomited-forth against me the venom of his envy.*
2. *He who had not feared even lashes and tortures, now hearing (abl. abs.) the words of the judge, trembled from-head to-foot (toto corpore).*
3. *It is reported that the raven, whereas (cum, with subjunct.) he ought to have brought (223) a golden cup to Apollo, lied, feigning that a long snake had caused him delay.*
4. *The centurion, his eye having been struck out (effodio), was no longer fit for performing military service (stipendia merere, lit. to earn pay).*
5. *They spoke with-every-appearance-of-truth (trans. with a most true forehead); but, in my judgment, they were lying.*
6. *There is no doubt that from this source many evils flowed into our country.*
7. *There was no doubt that he had been scourged before he was sent (i.e. had been sent) into exile (145b).*
8. *O-that you would not depart even a hair's breadth from the precepts of your father!*
9. *He thought to himself (i.e., with himself) how important it was for Balbus that he himself should return home (Aee. and Pres. Inf.).*
10. *What does it matter whether these birds are fed or not?*

ELEMENTARY RULES FOR ORATIO OBLIQUA.

331 Speech reported in the First Person ("I fear," said Balbus, "I am mistaken") is called *Oratio Recta*, or, *Direct Speech*; speech reported in the Third Person (Balbus said that "He feared he was mistaken") is called *Oratio Obliqua*, or *Indirect Speech*.

In passing from English O. R. to O. O. almost the only change is in the Personal Pronouns and Tenses, as above, *I* into *he*, *am* into *was*:

Speech in First Person.

"I know," said Balbus, "that you will help me. What is lost can be regained. The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered. Take courage therefore. Why do you delay? Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight? Do not desert me. Trust in your own right-hands and in my diligence."

Speech in Third Person.

*Balbus said that "He knew that they would help him. What had been lost could be regained. The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered. They should therefore take courage. Why did they delay? Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight? They should (or let them) not desert him. They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."*¹

But in Latin there are changes in the Moods, besides other changes, as follows :

- 332** 1. (a) *Principal Verbs in the Indicative* are changed into Infinitives, and their Subjects into Accusatives. (b) *Inquit* is changed into *dixit* or some other Verb.

ORATIO RECTA.

"I know," said Balbus,
Tum Balbus "scio" inquit (320)

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Balbus said that "He knew"
Balbus dixit "Sē scīre"

- 333** 2. *Ēgo* and *nōs* are changed into *sē*; *vōs* into *eos*.
that you will help me.
vos mīhi adfuturos.

that they would help him.
eos sībī adfūtūros.

- 334** 3. *Indicatives after Relatives and after Non-co-ordinate Conjunctions*, are changed into Subjunctives.²

The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered.

Quae urbes captae sunt, antequam hūc vēnimus, rēcūpērāri possunt.

The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered.

Quae urbes captae fūissent, antequam illūc vēnissent, posse rēcūpērāri.

¹ Before the pupil writes Latin he should practise turning English speech of the First Person into speech of the Third Person.

² (1) Co-ordinate Conjunctions are *sēd*, *autem*, *tāmen*, *et*, *-que*, *nam*, *enim*, *Itaque*, *Igitur*, &c. (2) Non-co-ordinate or Subordinate Conj. are *ut*, *quōd*, *quia*, *cum*, *dōnēc*, *antēquam*, *postquam*, *sī*, *quamquam*, &c.

When the Relative, e.g. *quos*, can be replaced by a Demonstrative and a Coordinate Conjunction, (*et eos*), it is sometimes followed by an Infinitive. But for the beginner this construction will not be necessary.

335 4. *Imperatives* are changed into Subjunctives.

<i>Take courage therefore.</i>	(<i>He begged that</i>) <i>They should therefore take courage.</i>
Ērīgīte īgitur ānīmos.	Erīgērent īgitur ānīmos.

336 5. Questions asked in the *Second Person* are rendered by the Subjunctive in the *Third Person* (*being really Indirect Questions*).

<i>Why do you delay?</i>	(<i>He asked</i>) <i>Why did they delay?</i>
Cūr mōrāmīni?	Cūr mōrārentur?

337 6. Questions asked in the *First* and *Third Person* are rendered by the Accusative and Infinitive.

<i>Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight?</i>	<i>Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight?</i>
Nonne hostis prōpē jam ābest? Nonne ad pugnandum pārāti sūmus?	Nonne hostem prōpē jam āb- esse? Nonne sē ad pugna- dum pārātos esse? ¹

338 7. (a) **Sē**, **sībī**, &c., are used for the Person speaking; (b) but where **sē**, **suus**, &c., are needed to express the Person addressed, **ipse** is used for the Person speaking.

(a) <i>Do not desert me.</i> Nōlīte me dēsērēre.	(a) <i>They should not desert him.</i> Nollent sē dēsērēre.
(b) <i>Trust in your own right hands and in my diligence.</i> " Spem in vestris dextris et in mea dīlīgentia pōnīte."	(b) <i>They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence.</i> " Spem in suis dextris et in ipsius dīlīgentiā pōnērent."

EXERCISE XCIII.

To be turned into Latin Oratio Obliqua.

- A. His anditis, Tullius, ad amicos conversus, "Cur" inquit (332 b)
"moramini? Neque enim ego volo amicis exitium ferre
neque vos jam potestis morituro prodesse. Hostes jam

338a

¹ These questions are really partly questions, partly passionate statements: *The enemy is but a little way off, is he not? We are prepared to fight, are we not?* Hence, they are expressed by the Accusative and Infinitive.

prope absunt ; mox aderunt. Urbs capietur. Fugite igitur. Quod facere potui, feci ; nihil praeter mortem mihi jam restat. Quae vobiscum auferre potestis, ea auferte. Num respondeatis vos hic mansuros ? Antequam vos inter cohortes conscripsi promisistis vos (338b) mihi obtemperatueros, nec fidem fefellistis. Satis virtuti datum est : jam saluti consulite. At cur nos hic tempus inani colloquio terimus ? Evidem¹, quoniam necesse est, moriar. Vos (335) vivite et valete, et curate ut mortem meam ulciscamini."

(B. is already in O. O. ; C. must be turned into O. O.)

- B. *Balbus having now departed from the senate-house, the consul addressed the senators (i.e. the fathers) to this effect : "Why did they (336) hesitate ? Let them choose, if it was necessary, between a glorious death and an inglorious servitude. But he was persuaded that this was not necessary. Victory, not death, awaited them, if, without fear, they consulted-the-interest-of the country. Not even the lowest of the citizens now favoured the conspirators. Already they were praised by all the best of the citizens, soon they would be praised by all. Why therefore did they sit there hesitating, since both Fortune and Necessity taught them that they ought not now to deliberate but to act ? When they had made a beginning, the citizens would to a man (ad unum) approve their plans. He would say no more, for there was need not of words but of deeds."*
- C. *Tullius now turned to the soldiers of the tenth legion. "Why," said he (332b), "do you fear the multitude of the enemy ?² We indeed have only three thousand, the enemy ten thousand ; but three free citizens can easily resist ten slaves. The victories that the enemy has lately gained have been gained by treachery and guile ; but in this plain, treachery will avail nothing (nullo modo). Be of good cheer therefore, since Mars will give the palm to the more worthy army. If only you can repel the first assault of (their) cavalry, the infantry will speedily turn their backs. Trust in your own valour and in my skill (i.e. plans). What avail ten thousand sheep against one wolf ? But why do I waste time in speaking ? The enemy is-at-hand, the contest-is-to-be-waged (i.e. it-is-to-be-striven) not with tongues but with swords."*

¹ *Evidem* being (139) almost always used with the *first person*, should be changed into *quidem* when attached to *sé*.

² In turning this into O. O., *inquit* must not be used. You may either translate *Tullius having turned to . . . spoke to this effect*, 'Why did they fear,' &c., or omit the Verb of speaking and leave it to be understood: *Tullius now turned . . . legion*, 'Why did they fear ?' &c.

EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

I.—ON THE NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.¹*(The only Verbs required are those given in paragraphs 1—112.)*

EXERCISE I.

1. Probo scribae. 2. Fabri (9a) pigri. 3. Molesto pediti. 4. Pavidorum nautarum. 5. Jucundā insulā. 6. 7. Temporum prosperorum. 8. Stultis principibus. 9. Parvi papilionis. 10. Ossium magnorum. 11. Ab indigno comite. 12. Insigni labore. 13. Meliorum judicium. 14. Scytha perniciosus. 15. Itineris longi. 16. Planitiei vastae. 17. Velocium equitum. 18. Vigilum tribunorum. 19. Regionum pulchrarum. 20. Morum antiquorum. 21. A benigno nauta.

1. From the good leader. 2. To the wretched sailor. 3. Of frequent lightnings. 4. Of the poor girl. 5. To great hope. 6. Of the left horn. 7. To the wise charioteer. 8. Of the active inhabitants. 9. Of the black teeth. 10. By the difficult journey. 11. To the short bows. 12. Of the third tribe. 13. To the lean face. 14. O angry poet. 15. Of the stern leaders. 16. Of beautiful fountains. 17. To the useful bow. 18. Of high citadels. 19. By the enemy's camp. 20. To a few soldiers. 21. Of the second cohort. 22. By (13a) the king. 23. By great hope. 24. Of long days.

EXERCISE II.

1. Maximus ille vir. 2. Pulcherrimarum urbium muri. 3. Optimorum poetarum dulcia carmina. 4. Majorum oppidorum arcus. 5. Difficillimorum et maximorum operum. 6. Principum munificentissimorum jussa. 7. Harum tam miserarum calamitatum. 8. Pessima haec exempla. 9. Pulcherrimorum florum color. 10. Imbri tristi et pernicioso. 11. Quercus nigerrimae glandes paucae. 12. Ultimi illius diei memoria. 13. Morborum taetriorum multitudo. 14. Aurigae maxime strenuo dona (95) dāmus. 15. Quis te pessimo hoc rege liberat? 16. Quis haec ei dat?

¹ These exercises may be heard *vivā voce*, and the sentences are numbered that the pupil may be rapidly called to translate any sentence at the teacher's discretion.

- 1.¹ *To this very wise girl.* 2. *The two brothers of the same woman.*
 3. *The largest part of the outer wall.* 4. *Of very slender legs.*
 5. *The girl loves his two brothers: which-of-the two do you love most (maximē)?* 6. *The very-old soldier loves older wine.* 7. *The very contemptible (superl. of humiliis) memory of that most unhappy day.* 8. *With which of these two cities?* 9. *To the same woman he gives three apples.* 10. *To Tullia alone he gives three hundred cherries.* 11. *To the other sea.* 12. *Of the same camp.* 13. *To one-man's spurs, to another-man's sword.* 14. *Of the younger soldiers.* 15. *By this most troublesome thirst.* 16. *By the older (61) soldier.*

EXERCISE III.

1. *Hic vi, ille sapientia, hostes superat.* 2. *Multos pericula minima terrent.* 3. *Alterius constantiam, alterius diligentiam laudamus.* 4. *Piscator tria milia piscium habet.* 5. *Ne quisimorum puerorum versus non laudo.* 6. *Tussi febrique medicus te liberat.* 7. *Plura tibi quam nobis dat.* 8. *Peior est iste pessimo meorum comitum.* 9. *Agricola optimus meliore fato dignus erat.* 10. *Nulli suorum carior erat quam sibi.* 11. *Haec tibi uni jucunda sunt.*
1. *Which of these two journeys do you praise?* 2. *To this very-tender maiden alone he gives a hundred oxen.* 3. *The boy is smaller than the largest of the men.* 4. *Wisdom frees him from anger.* 5. *To you he gives more gifts than to himself.* 6. *The memory of that very keen contest was more bitter to you than to him.* 7. *This was more agreeable to you than to any of his companions.* 8. *By patience he delivers himself from fever.* 9. *What poet is wiser than Homer? what poem better than his poems?* 10. *The former is wiser than the latter.*

II.—ON THE REGULAR VERBS.

EXERCISE IV.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. *Castigaberis.* 2. *Agros vastavisti.* 3. *Laudatus est.* 4. *Pugnabunt.* 5. *Ne erraveritis.* 6. *Vastate agros.* 7. *Pugnaverant.* 8. *Ut aedificet urbem.* 9. *Vulnerata est.* 10. *Vituperabimini.* 11. *Ambulaveratis.* 12. *Cantavissetis.* 13. *Ut cantarent.* 14. *Cantemus.* 15. *Dubitate.* 16. *Servemus urbem.* 17. *Ambulaveritis.* 18. *Oppidum aedificatum erat.* 19. *Ut servaremur.* 20. *Ut laudare.* 21. *Canta.*

¹ On the position of the Pronoun Adjective between an ordinary Adjective and Noun, see Vocabulary, *this*.

1. *You will sing.* 2. *He will have been wounded.* 3. *Ye must build* (imper.). 4. *The city had been built.* 5. *Let us praise them.* 6. *The fields have been laid waste.* 7. *You will be chastised.* 8. *That he might be wounded.* 9. *That we might sing.* 10. *Do not doubt, O friend.* 11. *We shall have preserved the city.* 12. *I should have carried.* 13. *They would have been blamed.* 14. *Ye will not be loved.* 15. *That ye may take-care.* 16. *We shall have been preserved.* 17. *You had sung, O daughter.* 18. *Sing, O daughter.* 19. *Ye were being preserved.* 20. *Ye will be wounded.*

EXERCISE V.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. *Puer valebat.* 2. *Terrebamini.* 3. *Tinebere.* 4. *Territus fuerat.* 5. *Ut exerceres corpus.* 6. *Monuissem te.* 7. *Ut monereris.* 8. *Doce puerum.* 9. *Ne timmeris.* 10. *Exercueris.* 11. *Filia mouita fuisset.* 12. *Ut terreare.* 13. *Valuistis.* 14. *Exercetor.* 15. *Exerceamus corpora.* 16. *Ne territa sis, O mulier.* 17. *Docebimur.* 18. *Terrebare.* 19. *Terres puerum.* 20. *Terremur.* 21. *Terruistis.*
1. *We had been terrified.* 2. *That he may fear.* 3. *Ye will be taught.* 4. *He was being advised.* 5. *We should have feared.* 6. *That they might exercise (their) bodies.* 7. *Ye have been advised, O citizens.* 8. *You will be terrified, O friend.* 9. *You have terrified us.* 10. *That you might be advised.* 11. *Let us terrify the enemy.* 12. *I used-to-have* (115) *a book.* 13. *You had taught us.* 14. *Do not teach him.* 15. *He will have terrified you.* 16. *You will have been terrified, O friends.* 17. *Exercise (your) bodies.* 18. *Ye would have taught him.* 19. *The soldiers terrified the woman.*

EXERCISE VI.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. *Duxeratis.* 2. *Contraxisti.* 3. *Quid homo dixerat?* 4. *Ut instruantur milites.* 5. *Ut instrueret aciem.* 6. *Scribes epistolam.* 7. *Hoc spem nostram minuerat.* 8. *Gloriam eius minuemus.* 9. *Agger structus fuerat.* 10. *Flumen ponte junxissemus.* 11. *Milites ducentur.* 12. *Ut ducare.* 13. *Libri scripti sunt.* 14. *Ut duceremini.* 15. *Quis legionem duebat.* 16. *Ne nos duxeris.* 17. *Haec tibi dixissemus.* 18. *Dicamus vera* (Par. 34). 19. *Ducēris.* 20. *Ducēris.*
1. *That they might rule.* 2. *You will be led.* 3. *He would have said these-things.* 4. *You have piled up a mound, soldiers.* 5. *She has been led.* 6. *The mound has been piled up.* 7. *Be ye drawn-up, soldiers.* 8. *He had drawn together-foot-*

soldiers. 9. What will you say, friends? 10. His glory has been diminished. 11. That we may bridge the river. 12. The river would have been bridged. 13. You were being drawn-up, soldiers. 14. Do not say this. 15. Let us pile-up a mound. 16. You had written a letter, my brother. 17. Do not write these letters, friends. 18. I shall be led. 19. They are being drawn up. 20. They would have been led. 21. Our hopes were diminished. 22. They will write.

EXERCISE VII.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. Dormiisti. 2. Puniti erant. 3. Urbs munietur. 4. Opus finitum est. 5. Ut erudiremini. 6. Nutriebantur. 7. Ut vestias puerum. 8. Opus finieris. 9. Custodiverat obsides. 10. Obsides custodiunctor. 11. Urbes custoditiae fuissent. 12. Erudientur pueri. 13. Ut opus finiatur. 14. Custodiere milites captivum. 15. A magistro erudiemur. 16. Dormiamus. 17. Erudiebamini. 18. Erudientur. 19. Ne puerum erudiveris. 20. Ut erudiremini. 22. Erudiēris.

1. We had slept. 2. You will sleep. 3. That you may be punished, O citizens. 4. The girl had been clothed. 5. The boy will be guarded. 6. The camp would have been fortified. 7. That the boy might be instructed. 8. Let us guard the leader. 9. We shall clothe the boy. 10. The boy was being instructed. 11. That the tasks may be ended. 12. The boys must be instructed (imper.). 13. Nourish the boys. 14. We shall fortify the city. 15. That you may fortify the city, soldiers. 16. That you might sleep. 17. You were being instructed, boys. 18. You will have instructed the boys, most learned master. 19. The boys will have been instructed. 20. The boys will sleep. 22. They used-to-sleep (115). 23. You slept, boys.

III.—GENERAL EXERCISES.

EXERCISE VIII.

(*Exercises VIII. to XI. refer to Par. 1—129; see also page 186.*)

1. Bidui iter fecēre. 2. Multi hoc negant. 3. Quantum pecuniae habes? 4. Et ego et tu hoc negamus. 5. Errare humanum est. 6. Multa eis dedimus. 7. Fato meliore digna est. 8. Puer matri est simillimus. 9. Plura tibi quam mihi dederunt. 10. Nonne equus est animalium utilissimum? 11. Utri plura dedisti? Neutri: eadem ambobus dedi.

1. *I will give a book to one of you.* 2. *Many of the children gave us flowers.* 3. *You and I have erred.* 4. *The girl is more like her father than her mother.* 5. *Let us hasten by night.* 6. *The soldiers are most worthy of punishment.* 7. *We led the army into the nearest city.* 8. *This work is not very easy.* 9. *The words of the unjust sailor are very base.* 10. *A hundred brave (men) are better than two hundred cowardly (men).* 11. *He was more worthy of punishment than you.*

EXERCISE IX.

1. *Uter fontium major est?* 2. *Decem millia passuum iter fecimus.* 3. *Tullius, rex crudelissimus, veniam Balbo dedit.* 4. *Nocte hostes castra nostra invaserunt.* 5. *Decem his diebus trecentos elephantes ad exercitum mittemus.* 6. *Equites peditesque plurimos habemus.* 7. *Regum fortium vitae nos delectant.* 8. *Hoc opus facilius est quam illud.* 9. *Et mihi et tibi felicium supplicium verba jucunda sunt.* 10. *Nullius dona, quam fratris tui mihi jucundiora sunt.*
1. *What have you done worthy of praise?* 2. *He is worse than his brother.* 3. *The keenest soldiers fought most bravely.* 4. *You journeyed for (i.e. made a journey of) two-days in a very rough country.* 5. *Neither of the fountains had very sweet water.* 6. *Which of the two girls loves her father more?* 7. *He is more like you than me.* 8. *Where is the book you gave me?* 9. *Do not say many-things.* 10. *All love themselves.* 11. *Do you say this?*

EXERCISE X.

1. *Pueri ludere amant.* 2. *Ne plura rogaveris.* 3. *Milites in campum ducamus.* 4. *Si venti flaverint, in portu manebimus.* 5. *Multas noctes in urbe mansimus.* 6. *Dicamus vera.* 7. *Senex septuagesimo altero anno uxorem tertiam duxit.* 8. *Senum memoria infirmior quam juventum est.* 9. *Pejor morte est infamia.* 10. *Verba eius isti molesta sunt.*
1. *Very many say this.* 2. *You say the same.* 3. *He wounded me with a spear.* 4. *Let us walk six days.* 5. *His words are more pleasant to you than to any of your brothers.* 6. *The brave Balbus was leader of the whole (totus) army.* 7. *Both to you and to me he gave the same gifts.* 8. *No poet blames his own poems.* 9. *If he comes by night, we will depart in three hours.* 10. *To one of his two sons he gave a thousand oxen, to the other two thousand sheep.* 11. *Do not sleep, boy.*

EXERCISE XI.

(*Exercises XI. to XIX. refer to Par. 1—295.*)

1. Clam parentibus huc venisti. 2. Ne tu quidem idem dedecus bis in te admittes. 3. Nostri ab hostibus superati sunt. 4. Quid obstat quominus patri tuo pareas? 5. Plura dicturum duae sagittae transfixerunt. 6. Interrogavi matrem num hue ventura esset. 7. Hostes urbem captam incendunt. 8. Non dubium est quin aurum in ea regione reppereris. 9. Captivos vincitos centurio ad imperatorem duxerat. 10. Quot dies hostibus resistebatis? 11. Tune times?
1. *There is no doubt that he pardoned the accused (man).* 2. *Cultivate learning that you may not be unlearned.* 3. *Not even Tullius will spare this city.* 4. *Let us ask her on what day she will come.* 5. *What prevented you from pleasing his father?* 6. *I will do my best to pardon him.* 7. *They took and burned the city (Par. 159).* 8. *The leaders gave orders-to their men not to resist the enemy.* 9. *There was no doubt that the city had been taken by the tenth legion.* 10. *She was killed by poison, without-the-knowledge-of the king.*

EXERCISE XII.

1. Extra urbem decem horas pugnatum est. 2. In eo eram ut Balbum vincerem. 3. Saepe me interrogavisti utrum Romanus sim an Atheniensis. 4. Civibus pro patria fortiter pugnandum est. 5. Aut vincendum est aut serviendum. 6. Oravi ducem ut captis parceret. 7. Interrogate hominem num coram judgee hoc dixerit. 8. Reo, haec neganti, mendacium graviter nocuit. 9. Dux suis imperavit ne acie cederent. 10. Ne tibi quidem rex ignoscet, si a Tullio stabis. 11. Quis nescit urbem incendi?
1. *He was silent for two hours in-the-presence-of the judge.* 2. *He had reigned ten years as-far-as the Alps.* 3. *He was on the point of conquering.* 4. *The king asked us whether we were husbandmen or sailors.* 5. *There is no doubt that the cold hurt the beautiful pine-tree.* 6. *He asked me whether the centurion was worthy of this great (see Vocab. great) reward.* 7. *I advised the soldier to answer the leader with these words.* 8. *We must make-haste that we may not come late.* 9. *When the general had heard this, he ordered the line-of-battle to retire.* 10. *An answer-was-made to the king in these words.*

EXERCISE XIII.

1. *What is pleasant to some is troublesome to others.* 2. *He built a house twenty feet high.* 3. *I asked him, O citizens, to come by night.* 4. *I asked which of you two said these-things.* 5. *Did you say this to deceive us?* 6. *It is very difficult to make very long marches in winter.* 7. *The excellent physician Balbus gave you medicine to cure you.* 8. *The girl is even now more beautiful than her sister.* 9. *There is no doubt that he gave you more gifts than me.* 10. *By the fruitful harvest the hearts of the husbandmen were delighted.* 11. *He asked why the goats were larger than most of the sheep.*

EXERCISE XIV.

1. *Come here in haste, my son.* 2. *Is he very poor?* 3. *When were the Gauls conquered by Caesar?* 4. *Do you call me a citizen?* 5. *There is no doubt that he was created consul by the citizens.* 6. *At last the enemy, overcome by our men, fled to the camp.* 7. *Each of the two brothers pleased (placeo) himself alone.* 8. *Do not set-out from the city by night.* 9. *She is about-to-return to Asia.* 10. *The head of Hasdrubal was thrown into the camp.* 11. *You slept the whole night.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. *He sent a letter to his friend.* 2. *Give that woman the same book you gave me.* 3. *Do not declare war, O king.* 4. *When will you quench your thirst?* 5. *Have you ever used a golden axe?* 6. *I shall have given you, my son, three hundred denarii.* 7. *What you say, is true.* 8. *What is more faithful than a faithful dog?* 9. *There is no doubt that every good man resisted this law.* 10. *You will be no longer foolish but base, if, even now, you please yourself alone.* 11. *Do not stay.*

EXERCISE XVI.

1. *Some stood here, others there.* 2. *The disease did not hurt even one of the sheep.* 3. *On the fifth day you came to Egypt.* 4. *Being-about-to-set-out for Europe we shall send two messengers to Alexander.* 5. *You and I will pay attention to philosophy.* 6. *Who took the city (of) Corinth?* 7. *Mummius, who took Corinth, was very poor.* 8. *He came a-second-time into the forum.* 9. *What prevented him from walking in his brother's garden?* 10. *Ajax slew himself with the sword which he had received from Hector.* 11. *He is free from cares.*

EXERCISE XVII.

1. *This work is finished. 2. My son and I sent messengers to you. 3. My brother and sister are very happy. 4. There is no doubt that it is pleasant to conquer. 5. We ought to command (164); you ought to obey. 6. The city is being built; a great part of it is built already. 7. The small town (of) Corioli was taken (agrees with 'town') by Marcius, who was thence called Coriolanus. 8. Balbus and Tullius besought me to pardon both (of) them. 9. You praised both, you pleased neither. 10. Nothing prevents you from building a new bridge.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. *Spem mihi ultimam eripiusti. 2. Sole orto, in campum descendens est. 3. Hoc ad agros colendos erat utilissimum. 4. Romae biennium habitavimus. 5. Huic genti quis tributum imponere ausus est? 6. Capta urbe, arcem incendimus. 7. Nonne vis fateri quantum te tuae stultitiae pudeat? 8. Quando ibis Corinthum? 9. Hodie Arpinum eo, cras Romae manebo. 10. E malevolo, fis malevolentior; mox fies malevolentissimus. 11. Ego et frater hic (adv.) manemus.*
1. *Are you not weary of idleness? 2. He built walls twenty-five feet high. 3. Dionysius, driven from Syracuse, taught boys. 4. Why do you not confess that you repent of your wickedness? 5. He says that this ditch is twenty feet deep. 6. When will you come to see me? 7. No one pities the conquered. 8. He could have helped me, but he would not. 9. I can no longer bear these great insults. 10. I hear that he is becoming weaker. 11. Will you go to Rome or remain in Corinth?*

EXERCISE XIX.

1. *Utrum duos an tres menses vis Carthagine manere? 2. Non facile istum tuli querentem de seditione. 3. Nostine quo velit ire? 4. Tot scelera fassus, num putas nos posse tui misereri? 5. Negavit se sui tanti flagitii poenitere. 6. Postquam ab hostibus clamatum est, nostri, Balbo horante, e silvis erupere. 7. Aliorum oblitus num speras alios tui non oblituros esse? 8. Oportuit te non isti sed patri tuo placere. 9. Quantum pecuniae tibi pater ad emendos flores dedit? 10. Negari non potest ambos semper eadem voluisse, eadem noluisse. 11. Licuit tibi esse felici; sed nolueristi mihi parere. 12. Operam dabat libris scribendis.*

1. *To live in Rome seemed to me more pleasant than to live at Gaoii.* 2. *Have you already, O foolish girls, forgotten these most easy verses?* 3. *Who ordered the fourth tribe to be present?* 4. *Having suffered so many evils, you ought to pity others.* 5. *The two boys, horrible to relate! attempted to murder their own father.* 6. *In three days you will become richer than his brother if your ship returns to Corinth.* 7. *You might have dined with (183) your kind host; but you would dine at home.* 8. *I have come here to see-to the building of a bridge.* 9. *Who does-not-know that water, by often falling, hollows even the hardest stone?*

EXERCISE XX.

(Exercises XX. to XXIX. refer to the whole of the book.)

1. *Barbari erant proceris corporibus, promisso capillo.* 2. *Non opus est mihi tanta pecunia.* 3. *Virtutem maximi aestimate.* 4. *Die quarto aggerem jam decem pedes altum exstruxerant.* 5. *His condicionibus pax ab utroque duce facta est.* 6. *Respondit se non assis me facere.* 7. *Certum erat fundum grandi pecunia emptum fuisse.* 8. *Patriae amantissimus erat, patientissimus periculorum, suis contentus, alienarum divitiarum nunquam cupidus.* 9. *Respondit se nolle sua pretio emere.* 10. *Tu, cuius (299a) es sapientiae, intelleges quid his respondere oporteat.* 11. *Non est moris nostri quos praesentes laudavimus eos absentes condemnare.*
1. *He was acquitted of bribery.* 2. *Why did you, O judges, condemn the innocent Balbus to death?* 3. *He was endowed with a (see 'a') wonderful art of persuading.* 4. *By this road you will never come to Athens.* 5. *He sent a messenger to ask which of his two brothers lived at Gabii.* 6. *The girl replied that she was descended from royal parents.* 7. *Do you think that it is the mark of a philosopher to envy the wealth of-others?* 8. *He was learned in the law, and very brave, but greedy of wealth.* 9. *Are you certain of this thing?* 10. *My barns are full of corn; I have much money at home.*

EXERCISE XXI.

1. *Nescio an mulier Carthagine ventura sit.* 2. *Misi qui praedium magno pretio emat.* 3. *Vereor ut puer virtutem pluris quam voluptatem aestimet.* 4. *Si auxilium poposcisses, abhinc biduum missem.* 5. *Nescisne inepti esse nunquam ridere?* 6. *Quis Thracum more velit bibere?* 7. *Non cuiusvis est multa bene facere.* 8. *Si illuc ibis, vereor ne*

serpentis morsu pereas. 9. Num quis audeat negare consules bene de republica meritos esse? 10. Duabus unciis procerior est quam quisquam nostrum.

1. If any one had given me the book I would have read (it). 2. I feared he would be weary of the journey. 3. My father advises Balbus to consult his own interests. 4. It makes a great difference whether you live at Rome or at Carthage. 5. Whatever he had, he gave to all the poorest of the citizens. 6. I have long been desirous of hearing Tullius. 7. He came from the city to the country as speedily as possible. 8. Ask your brother who sang this song. 9. The elder of the two brothers died before the capture of the city (i.e. before the city having been captured). 10. He is a man of wisdom.

[EXERCISE XXII.¹

1. Crudelior erat quam parceret. 2. Quidquid armorum habuimus, id omne tradendum erat. 3. Quamvis errorem feceris, licebit tibi meliora facere. 4. Idem es qui semper fuisti. 5. Cuilibet licuisset mentiri nisi hunc testem produxisses. 6. Quid refert utrum haec vera sint annon? 7. Nostine plerisque piscibus pinnas binas esse? 8. Tantae multitudini trinis castris opus erat. 9. Si quis tibi Achillis arma promitteret se daturum esse, quid tandem faceres? 10. Balbus moriens fratrem admonuit ut se ipse servaret. 11. Mira quadam arte erat suadendi. 12. Fallacior est quam cui credas. 13. Haec, sive vera sunt sive falsa, nullo modo me movent.
1. Whatever you wish to say must be said at once. 2. It matters little whether we die to-day or to-morrow. 3. There is a certain pleasure in recollecting calamities. 4. What would you have replied if he had promised to give you money? 5. He is too deceitful for you to converse with. 6. He hastened to Athens by the most rapid marches possible. 7. He was on the point of dying on the fourth day before the taking of the city. 8. He is better than any of his brothers. 9. Two-days ago, we sent messengers to ascertain what prevented Balbus from coming to Corinth. 10. Ask him to come to see me as quickly as possible.

¹ In this and the following Exercises, some idioms are introduced that are not given in the previous part of the book: but they will be found explained in the Vocabularies.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Promisit se Gades venturum. 2. Erant qui dicerent urbem nunquam captumiri. 3. Misit imperator centurionem qui captivos deposceret. 4. Non adhuc compertum habeo quis hunc tantum virum rhetoricae docuerit. 5. Aggerem exstruxit quo facilius hostem prohiberet. 6. Nemini pepercit, nullius miseritus est. 7. Cur tam parvo fane uteris? 8. Turpior erat quam quocum colloquereris. 9. Dies fere nullus est quin eam querentem audiam. 10. Spero fore ut urbs decem his diebus capiatur. 11. Interrogavit utrum haec caedes abhinc biennium an triennium facta sit. 12. Respondit iste se tuas excusationes parvi aestimare.
1. *It is said that you burned this temple, Tullius. 2. Do not pardon that wicked soldier. 3. The brave general Balbus opposed four thousand Scythians. 4. Having gained possession of our gold, O Persians, do you now wish to despoil us of our liberty? 5. In the battle of Cannae there fell many thousand Roman knights. 6. Arioristus was answered in these words by Caesar. 7. Our men, under Labienus, laid waste the greatest part of the province, as far as the Alps. 8. Who was there that did not hate you, a man devoid of all kindness and courtesy? 9. Not even the older men were spared by the conquerors. 10. They threatened the man with death that they might the more easily ascertain the truth.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Cur me morbum fratri mei celasti? 2. Hoc te moneo ne quem, clam patre tuo, domi accipias. 3. Diceris, mi fili, ipse hunc pontem rescidisse. 4. Non dubium est quin in certamen eloquentiae ambo venerint. 5. Obsecravit ducem mater ne sibi filiam eriperet. 6. Nonne licuit tibi, divitiis his carenti, consulem (*see licet in Vocab.*) fieri? 7. Ego me Phidiam esse malleum quam vel optimum fabrum tignarium. 8. Illud permagni referre arbitror ut domestica cura te liberem. 9. Alii alibi steterunt; erant qui ne stare quidem possent sed humi occumberent. 10. Leonidas cum trecentis se multis milibus Persarum opposuit. 11. Alii capi; ali cadere; plurimi vulnera accipere. 12. In eo proelio trecenta milia hostium interfici sunt.
1. *Who founded the city of Carthage? 2. He was asked his opinion by Tullius, but answered nothing. 3. By this time the wall (murus) and the citadel had been taken by our men. 4. Do you suppose that two hundred can resist two*

thousand? 5. I do not know whether she will agree with you. 6. The consul was the first who was asked his opinion. 7. There is no doubt that he bought the horse at a very high price. 8. I was informed of his arrival the-day-before he came to Corioli. 9. Will any one promise to go with him? 10. I fear that we shall arrive at Athens (too) late unless we hasten by forced marches.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. Quis nescit nos omnes famae atque fortunarum expertes esse?
 2. Decimo anno post conditam urbem in exsilium pulsus est.
 3. Fac ut quam celerrime in Italiam ad amicos redeas.
 4. Adulatores, turbam levissimam, dux contemnebat.
 5. Interrogavit num crederem se tantum dedecus in se admittere potuisse.
 6. Non est cur fugias, hominum turpissime.
 7. Non dubium est quin tibi pater nimis indulserit.
 8. Utra harum dearum Vulcano nupsit?
 9. Tandem ei persuasit pater ut mulierem in matrimonium duceret.
 10. Quis non huius tanti philosophi audiendi studiosus erit?
 11. Speraveram fore ut frigus mitesceret.
 12. Aurum, argentum, ferrum, utilia illa quidem omnia; sed non pariter utilia.¹
1. *The boy had concealed (celo) the fact from his father by a falsehood. 2. Having burnt the village, the cohort set out for the nearest river (amnis). 3. You ought to have consulted the interests of each of your two sisters. 4. After he had conquered the Scythians, the general sent ambassadors to offer peace. 5. I am very desirous of hearing this story, if it is not troublesome to you. 6. Having accused others of bribery, he was himself condemned on the same charge. 7. If you ever come to Gabii, I hope you will stay with me for a few days. 8. There were some who said that it mattered little what Tullius decided. 9. There is no doubt that all the best of the citizens resisted this law. 10. This field was valued at a high rate, but bought by me for a small price.*

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Nunc quod agitur agamus; agitur autem liberine vivamus² an obeamus.
2. Quis negat Socratem parentem philosophiae jure dici posse?
3. Vir ille maximus cum a ceteris scriptoribus

¹ The redundant illē (sometimes is) is commonly found before quidem when a concession is made, but immediately qualified, 'Tuus dolor humerus is quidem, sed tamen moderandus,' *Yours is a grief natural to man, I admit, but one which should be modified.*"

² Not here whether we live, but whether we are to live.

tum a Xenophonte laudatus est. 4. Si qui capti sunt, omnes ad unum interfecti. 5. Et mea et tua interest ut huic legi resistamus. 6. Vereor ne ex hoc fonte magna pestis in rempublicam fluxura sit. 7. Nunc quidem valetudini tribuamus aliquid, cras autem rei-publicae. 8. Non tibi tantus dolor est quantus isti. 9. Victis hostibus, Caesar ab urbibus quinque trecentos obsides poposcit. 10. Credisne hanc perfidiam ei profuturam esse?

- In Xenophon we read a good deal (i.e. many things) about the illustrious general Agesilaus.*
- It concerns the whole country that Catiline should perish.*
- Having bound yourselves by an oath, do you now say that you did not promise to help him?*
- It is said that Labienus was at that time in command of thirty thousand soldiers.*
- It is said that Venus, the most beautiful of the goddesses, married Vulcan.*
- In the reign of Tullius the learned poet Balbus wrote very good poems.*
- I asked him why he did not do-his-duty to (trans. satisfy) his country.*
- Do not teach young boys philosophy.¹*
- I do not care a farthing for any of you.*
- Ask the boy whether Cyrus conquered the Scythians.*

EXERCISE XXVII.

- Nunquam in dicendo irascor. An tibi irasci videor si quid acerius dico, permovendorum judicum causa? 2. Constat Labienum dimidio exercitus a Caesare praefectum esse. 3. In summo monte casa quaedam erat; quo inter venandum rex ventitabat. 4. Philoctetes, Lemni relictus, multis post annis Trojam a Neoptolemo reductus esse fertur. 5. Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nemini.² 6. Quaeritur suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructus aliques virtus expetenda sit. 7. Caesar Aeduī quadringentos obsides imperaverat. 8. Non jam stulti eritis, sed turpissimi, si diutius ab illo stabitis. 9. Milites in verba imperatoris jurarunt. 10. Poma haec utilia quidem sunt, sed amariora gustatu. 11. Dixit se plura facturum fuisse, nisi sibi persuasum fuisset judicem neutri favere. 12. Milites pugnam poposcerunt, quibus imperator "Cunetando," inquit, "rem restituemus."
- He was answered by Tullius, but not even Tullius could excuse the deed.*
- Before he bound the captives he compelled them to swear not to escape.*
- Do you doubt, O citizens, what is*

¹ For "young" write "younger," and remember never to use "juvenis" as an Adjective.

² Supply "contigērit." The antecedent of "quod" is "id," nom. to "contigit."

to be done? 4. Tell me, (my) boy, for how much he sold this farm. 5. For the same price as Tullius sold it to me. 6. We should have written much better verses if time had not failed us. 7. Have you not sworn to obey this law? 8. Homer and Virgil are read by all; the latter imitated the former. 9. The work, I say (see say), is quite finished. 10. The boys used no longer to be taught music by their father.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. *Medio in foro, coram rege ipso, a plebe turbatum est. 2. Terra marique diversis casibus jam multos annos pugnatum erat. 3. Te duce, vel ignavissimi nostrum tubam canentem libenter audient. 4. Post Corinthum captam magna praeda Roman a Mummo missa est. 5. Non ante venit nobis auxilio quain quinquiens misissemus. 6. Satis erat tibi semel ignoscere; quoniam bis peccavisti, non iterum es excusandus. 7. Corinthum, tribus his diebus, veniet tui visendi causa. 8. Apud Romanos arma in majore honore quam pacis artes habebantur. 9. Multa terra marique passus tandem se in Italianam contulit. 10. Aurum plurimis et viris et civitatibus plurimarum miseriarum causa est. 11. Haec urbs, gentis devictae caput, quam celerrime delenda est. 12. Tullia, regina miserrima, fertur veneno fuisse interfacta.*

1. *After he had remained two months in the country he set out for the city. 2. Two cohorts came as a reinforcement for the besieged citizens. 3. You ought not to have promised to come before the third day. 4. She replied that she was born of noble but very poor parents. 5. This field cost me more than that meadow. 6. In the middle of the night we rose up terrified by the sound of robbers. 7. Having taken the city the enemy slew the citizens, and no one was spared. 8. You ought to have sent messengers three or four times to the city. 9. I have no need of excuse, for I am worthy of praise. 10. It is said that the Cyclopes had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.*

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. *Auctore Balbo, carissimo amicorum. juvenis ex Italia cessit. 2. Puella multo quam frater peritior erat canendi. 3. Responderunt homines pauperrimi non jam pares se esse solvendo. 4. Admonendus es foederis; cuius tu jam fere oblitus es. 5. Dic mihi Tulliae an sorori eius promiseris te anulum daturum esse. 6. Nisi te itineris taeduisset, jam-pridem domum perventum fuisset. 7. Olim lupus, cuius in fauibus os inhaeserat, mercede conduxit gruem qui id*

extraheret. 8. Senex filios convocatos hortatur, ut fascem frangant. 9. Quod quum nequirit facere, singulis singulas virgas distribuit. 10. Quibus facillime fractis ita pueros docuit quam firma res esset concordia.

1. *Pallas was worshipped by the Athenians with the highest honours.*
2. *It is reported that the girl died of grief (trans. on account of grief).*
3. *By my advice you will set out for Corinth in the spring.*
4. *Who says that Jupiter did not marry Juno?*
5. *Can any one deny that you poured poison into my cup?*
6. *In my judgment, it is less disgraceful to dance in the middle of the forum than to lie.*
7. *The speech was too long for you to learn in three days.*
8. *It is said that the Druids were in great honour among the Britons.*
9. *Did you come here hoping to see her?*
10. *The foolish Balbus replied that he had once been more learned than any of his brothers.*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

(Following Exercise XXXII., p. 53.)

EXERCISE XXXII. A.

1. *Do you blame him who is praised by your brother?*
2. *Many things are troublesome to him who loves pleasure very greatly.*
3. *No one loves Tullia, who was always unmindful of others and ignorant of pity.*
4. *Do you who chastise the unjust, praise unjust-things?*
5. *The Belgians, who were bordering on our land, were very troublesome to us.*
6. *He is always mindful of his sister, who is both very good and very beautiful.*
7. *We do not always love most-of-all those to whom we give the largest gifts.*
8. *The fruits you give me are not good.*
9. *The queen is overcome by pity, of which (trans. of which thing) they are ignorant.*
10. *His son takes-care-of the pigs, of which he has very-many (trans. which he has very-many).*

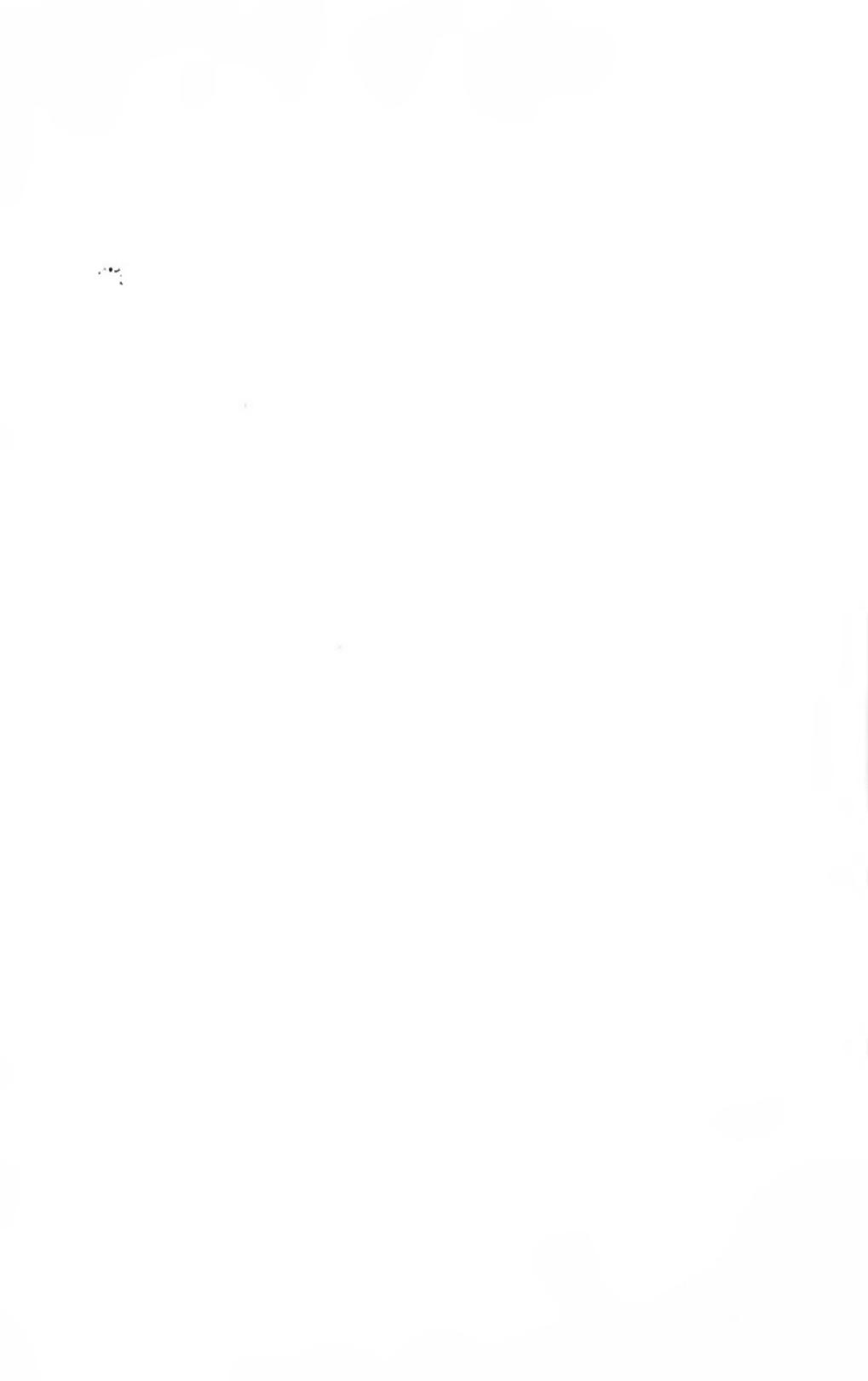
EXERCISE XXXII. B.

1. *Who is that fellow whose threats terrify you?*
2. *For-the-whole-of that winter (31), which was very cold, the husbandmen were ignorant of the cause of the disease.*
3. *To us, who give many gifts to the poor, your words are disagreeable.*
4. *To the butterfly, who lives (only) a few hours, life is very pleasant.*
5. *Our line of battle, which was very long, is-being-overcome by the enemy.*
6. *Those whom virtue delights, vices do not*

delight. 7. Few of those who praise you blame me. 8. Who terrifies him? What does the man fear? 9. What do you avoid? What deed terrifies you? 10. What you love I do not love.

EXERCISE XXXII. C.

1. *Do you, O sisters, who blame Tullius, praise his brother?*
2. *To what woman are you giving this?*
3. *These fountains, which were in his garden, were very agreeable to us during that whole summer.*
4. *The frost, which was destructive to the tall tree, was more pleasing than heat to the strong soldier.*
5. *This delay, which is unworthy of you and your brother, is destructive to the army.*
6. *Whose threats terrify you?*
7. *During-the-whole-of this year, you, who blame the vices of Tullius, are praising the-same-things in Balbus.*
8. *I praise the same-things as (i.e. which) you (praise).*
9. *The same woman who praises herself blames her friends.*
10. *Of those (34) who were in the garden ten (were) boys, four were old-men.*



APPENDIX I.

IRREGULAR VERBS
IN THE ORDER OF THEIR FORMATION.¹

When a Compound Verb is formed from a Simple Verb and a Preposition or other Prefix, the **a** or **e** of the Simple Verb is changed, in the Compound Verb, into :

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Ăgo	i	ē or ī	a, e, or u	
Cădo	rēdigo	rēdēgi	rēdactum	reduce
Răpio	occido	occidi	occāsum	die
Făcio	ēripio	ēripui	ēreptum	snatch
Sălio	conficio	confēci	confectum	finish
Făteor	prōsilio	prōsilui	prōsultum	spring forth
Tăneo	confiteor	sustēni	confessus	confess
Lăgo	sustineo	sustēnui	sustentum	sustain
Ĕgeo	élīgo	élēgi	electum	elect ²
	indīgeo	indīgūi	—	need

In the following lists all the Compounds of the above Simple Verbs, and of **scando**, [**pleo**], **tango**, [**specio**], **cedo**, **caedo**, **jacio**, **emo**, &c., will not be given, as they follow the forms of the Simple Verbs.

Note that when the Simple Verb has a reduplicated Perfect of three syllables, **pěpūli**, **cěcidi**, **tětigi**, **cěcini**, the Perfect of the Compound Verb often rejects a syllable, **ex-pūli**, **con-cidi**, **con-tigi**, **con-cinui**, &c.: but there are exceptions to this rule, viz. the compounds of **disco**, **posco**, **-dĕre**, and sometimes of **curro**.

¹ The order of the *Public School Grammar* is adopted in this list.

² But note that three compounds of **lăgo**, viz., **neglăgo**, **intellăgo**, and **dilăgo**, make the perfects **neglexi**, **intellexi**, **dilexi**.

FIRST CONJUGATION.¹

Dăre	dădi	dătum	<i>give, put</i>
Stăre	stăti	[stătum] ²	<i>stand</i>
Iăv-ăre	iăvi	ătum	<i>help</i>
Lăv-ăre ³	lăvi	lōtum	<i>wash</i>
Frăc-ăre	frăcui	frictum	<i>rub</i>
Săc-ăre	săcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
Crăp-ăre	crăpui	crăpătum	<i>creak, prattle</i>
Căb-ăre	căbui	căbătum	<i>lie down</i>
Dăm-ăre	dămui	dămătum	<i>tame</i>
Săn-ăre	sănui	sănătum	<i>sound</i>
Tăn-ăre	tănui	tănătum	<i>thunder</i>
Văt-ăre	vătui	vătătum	<i>forbid</i>
Plič-ăre	pličăvi (-ui)	pličitum (-ătum)	<i>fold</i>
Mic-ăre	măcui (-ăvi)	[-măcătum]	<i>glitter</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mord-ĕre	mămordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
Pend-ĕre	păpendi	—	<i>hang</i>
Spond-ĕre	spăpondi	sponsum	<i>contract</i>
Tond-ĕre	tătondi	tonsum	<i>shear</i>
Căv-ĕre	căvi	cautum	<i>beware</i>
Făv-ĕre	făvi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
Făv-ĕre	făvi	fătum	<i>cherish</i>
Măv-ĕre	măvi	mătum	<i>move</i>

¹ Verbs that may be omitted by beginners are marked thus *.

² A bracket denotes that the form, although correct according to the rules of the language, seldom or never occurs in Latin literature. This is the case with many Supines commonly given in Latin Grammars. In many cases, a Participle is found where there is no Supine. Thus haesum is not found, but haesurus is; there is no căritum, but there is căriturus; no quītum, but quītus; no fūgitum, but fūgiturus. The Supine is in fact a comparatively rare form in all verbs, and it is to be regretted that usage has selected it as a typical part of a Latin Verb to be committed to memory. The Perf. Passive Participle would be preferable.

Note also that the Fut. Participle often does not follow the Supine, e.g. sectum but săcăturus, sănătum but sănăturus, &c.

³ In classical prose, sup. lăvătum, perf. part. lautus.

Vōv-ēre	vōvi	vōtum	<i>vow</i>
Pāv-ēre	pāvi	—	<i>quake</i>
Sēd-ēre	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
Vīd-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	<i>see</i>
Prand-ēre	prandi	pransum	<i>dine</i>
Cōnīv-ēre	[cōnīvi or -nixi]	—	<i>blink</i>
Strīd-ēre	strīdi	—	<i>creak</i>
Ferv-ēre	ferbui or fervi	—	<i>boil</i>
Dēl-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
Fl-ēre	flevi	flētum	<i>weep</i>
N-ēre	nēvi	nētum	<i>spin</i>
[-Plēre]	[-plēvi]	[-plētum]	<i>fill</i>
*Vi-ēre	[viēvi]	viētum	<i>bind with twigs</i>
Ci-ēre	cīvi	cītum	<i>stir up¹</i>
-Ōlēre	[ōlēvi]	[ōlētum]	<i>grow, &c.</i>
[Su-ēre]	suevi	suetum	<i>be wont</i>
Arc-ēre	arcui	—	<i>ward off</i>
Coerc-ēre	coercui	coercītum	<i>restrain</i>
Exerc-ēre	exercui	exercītum	<i>exercise</i>
Cār-ēre	cārui	[cārītum]	<i>be without, be in want of</i>
Dēb-ēre	dēbui	dēbītum	<i>owe²</i>
Dōl-ēre	dōlui	[dōlītum]	<i>grieve</i>
Hāb-ēre	hābui	hābītum	<i>have</i>
Jāc-ēre	jācui	[jācītum]	<i>lie</i>
Līc-ēre	līcui	līcītum	<i>be bid for</i>
Mēr-ēre	mērui	mērītum	<i>deserve, earn</i>
Mōn-ēre	mōnui	mōnītum	<i>advise</i>
Nōc-ēre	nōcui	nōcītum	<i>hurt</i>
Pār-ēre	pārui	[pārītum]	<i>appear, obey</i>
Plāc-ēre	plācui	plācītum	<i>please</i>
Praeb-ēre	praebui	praebitum	<i>afford</i>
Terr-ēre	terrui	terrītum	<i>affright</i>
Tāc-ēre	tācui	tācītum	<i>be silent</i>
Vāl-ēre	vālui	[vālītum]	<i>be strong, be well</i>
Dōc-ēre	dōcui	dōctum	<i>teach</i>
Misc-ēre	miscui	{ mixtum } mixtum	<i> mingle</i>

¹ The primitive form is *cio, cīre* (found in the compounds *accio, excio*).

² This is properly a compound of *hābeo*; but some of the less obvious compounds of verbs are included in this list.

Těn-ēre	těnui	tentum	<i>hold</i>
Torr-ēre	torrui	tostum	<i>scorch</i>
Cens-ēre	censui	censum	<i>value, vote</i>
Ěg-ēre	ěgui	—	<i>want</i>
*[-Mǐn-ēre]	[-mǐnui]	—	<i>jut</i>
Ol-ēre	ólui	—	<i>smell</i>
Sorb-ēre	sorbuí	—	<i>suck up</i>
Stǔd-ēre	stǔduí	—	<i>study</i> ¹
Aug-ēre	auxi	auctum	<i>increase</i> (trans.)
Indulg-ēre	indulsi	indultum	<i>indulge</i>
Mulg-ēre	mulsi	[mulectum]	<i>milk</i>
Torqu-ēre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
Lüg-ēre	luxi	—	<i>mourn</i>
Muleēre	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe</i>
Tergēre	tersi	-tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Ardēre	arsi	arsum	<i>take fire</i>
Ridēre	rísi	rísum	<i>laugh</i>
Suādēre	suāsi	suāsum	<i>persuade</i>
Iübēre	iussi	iussum	<i>command</i>
Mänēre	mansi	mansum	<i>remain</i>
Haerēre	haesi	[haesum]	<i>stick</i>
Algēre	alsi	—	<i>be cold</i>
Fulgēre	fulsi	—	<i>glitter</i>
*Turg-ēre	tursi	—	<i>swell</i>
Urg-ēre	ursi	—	<i>urge</i>
*Frígēre	[-frixi]	—	<i>be cold</i>
Lūcēre	luxi	—	<i>shine</i>
Aud-ēre	ausus sum	—	<i>dare</i>
Gaud-ēre	gāvīsus sum	—	<i>rejoice</i>
Söl-ēre	söllitus suin	—	<i>be wont</i>
Lic-ēri	līcitus	—	<i>bid for</i>
Měr-ēri	měřitus	—	<i>deserve</i>
Mísér-ēri	míséritus	—	<i>pity</i>
Tu-ēri	tultus	—	<i>view, protect</i>
Věr-ēri	věrlitus	—	<i>fear, respect</i>
R-ēri	rātus	—	<i>think</i>
Fät-ēri	fassus	—	<i>confess</i>
Měd-ēri	—	—	<i>heal</i>

¹ Several Verbs that have an Adjective in īdus reject the Supine, e.g. stūpeo, āveo, flōreo; and some that have no such Adjective, as lāteo.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Sěpěl-ire	sěpělivi	sěpultum	<i>bury</i>
Ire (eo)	ívi	ítum	<i>go</i>
Quíre (queo)	quívi	quiútum	<i>be able</i>
Sál-ire	sálui	(saltum)	<i>leap, dance</i>
Áper-ire	áperui	ápertum	<i>open</i>
Öper-ire	öperui	öpertum	<i>cover</i>
Compér-ire	compéri	compertum	<i>find</i>
Repér-ire	repperi	rēpertum	<i>discover</i>
Věn-ire	věni	ventum	<i>come</i>
Ämīc-ire	ämixi & -icui	ämictum	<i>clothe</i>
Farc-ire	farsi	fartum	<i>stuff</i>
Fulc-ire	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
Sanc-ire	sanxi	sanctum	<i>consecrate</i>
Sarc-ire	sarsi	sartum	<i>mend</i>
Vinc-ire	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
Saep-ire	saepsi	sæptum	<i>hedge in</i>
Haur-ire	hausi	haustum	<i>drain</i>
*Rauc-ire ¹	—	—	<i>be hoarse</i>
Sent-ire	sensi	sensum	<i>feel²</i>
Expér-iri		expertus	<i>experience</i>
Oppér-iri		opportus	<i>wait for</i>
Or-iri		ortus	<i>arise</i>
Assent-iri		assensus	<i>agree</i>
Mēt-iri		mensus	<i>measure</i>
Ord-iri		orsus	<i>begin</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Disc-ěre ³	dídici		<i>learn</i>
Posc-ěre	pőposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Pa-n-g-ěre ⁴	pěpǐgi	pactum	<i>fasten, covenant</i>

¹ There are also found *rausūrus* and *ir-rausěrit*; *denotes rare occurrence.

² Some Verbs, such as *gestio*, *I am eager*, and others which express only passions, e.g. *singultio*, *I sob*, have neither Perfect nor Supine.

³ Compounds of Verbs with Reduplicated Perfect drop Reduplication, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *sisto*, *-děre*, and sometimes of *curro*.

⁴ The *n* in this and following Verbs is not a part of the root. The forms *pěpǐgi*, *pactum*, are reserved for the metaph. meaning, *covenant*; for the lit. meaning, the forms in use are *pěgi* or *panxi*, and *panctum*.

Pu-n-g-ěre	pūpūgi	punctum	<i>prick</i>
Ta-n-g-ěrc	tētīgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
Sist-ěre	[st̄iti ¹]	[st̄itum ¹]	<i>stop</i>
[d-ěre ¹]	[didi]	[dítum]	<i>put, give</i>
Tend-ěre	tētendi	{ tensum and tentum }	<i>stretch</i>
Cān-ěre	cēčni	cantum	<i>sing</i>
Pär-ěre	pēpēri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
Toll-ěre	sustūli	sublātum	<i>take up</i>
Parc-ěre	pēpercī	parsum	<i>spare</i>
Cād-ěre	cēčidi	cāsum	<i>full</i>
Caed-ěre	cēcīdi	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Pend-ěre	pēpendī	pensum	<i>weigh</i>
Tu-n-d-ěre	(tūtādi)	tūsum	<i>thump, pound</i>
Curr-ěre	cūcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
Fall-ěre	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
Pell-ěre	pēpūli	pulsum	<i>drive</i>
[Cell-ěre] ¹	[cēculi]	[-culsum ¹]	<i>push</i>
Fāc-ěre (i-o)	fēci	factum	<i>make, do</i>
Jāc-ěre (i-o)	jēci	jactum	<i>throw</i>
Li-n-qu-ěre	līqui	[lictum] ¹	<i>leave</i>
Vi-n-c-ěre	vīci	victum	<i>conquer</i>
Āg-ěre	ēgi	actum	<i>do</i>
Fra-n-g-ěre	frēgi	fractum	<i>break</i>
Lēg-ěre	lēgi (-lexi) ²	lectum	<i>read, choose</i>
Cāp-ěre (i-o)	cēpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Ru-m-p-ěre	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
Ēm-ěre	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy, take</i>
*Scāb-ěre	scābi	—	<i>scratch</i>
Ēd-ěre	ēdi	ēsum	<i>eat</i>
Fōd-ěre (i-o)	fōdi	fōssum	<i>dig</i>
Fu-n-d-ěre	fūdi	fūsum	<i>pour</i>
Fūg-ěre (i-o)	fūgī	[fūgtum]	<i>fly</i>
Bib-ěre	bībi	bībītum	<i>drink</i>
Īcere	īci ³	ictum	<i>strike</i>

¹ Only found in Compounds.² The form -lexi is found only in dī-līgo, neg-lēgo, intel-lēgo.³ This form is non-classical.

Fi-n-d-ěre	fidi	fissum	clear
Sci-n-d-ěre	scidi	scissum	cut
Vert-ěre	verti	versum	turn
[Cend-ěre]	[cendi]	[censum]	set alight
Cūd-ěre	cūdi	cūsum	hammer
[Fend-ěre]	[fendi]	[fenum]	strike
Mand-ěre	mandi	mansum	chew
Pand-ěre	pandi	passum	spread
Prehend-ěre	prehendi	prehensum	take, grasp
Scand-ěre	-scandi	-scansum	climb
Sid-ěre	sīdi ¹	—	settle
Lamb-ěre	[lambi] ²	[lambitum]	lick
Verr-ěre	verri	versum	sweep
Vell-ěre	{ velli } ³ vulsi }	vulsum	rend, pluck
*Psall-ěre	psalli	—	play (chords)
Vis-ěre	visi	—	visit
Fidere	fīsus sum	—	trust
Compesc-ěre	compescui	—	restrain
Rāp-ěre (i-o)	rapui	raptum	seize
Āl-ěre	ālui	altum	nourish
Cōl-ěre	cōlui	cultum	till
Consūl-ěre	consūlui	consultum	consult
Occūl-ěre	occūlui	occultum	hide
Sér-ěre	sērui	sertum	join together
*Pins-ěre	pinsui	pistum ⁴	pound
Tex-ěre	texui	textum	weave
*Deps-ěre	depsui	—	knead, tan
Stert-ěre	stērtui	—	snore
Strēp-ěre	strēpui	strēpitum	rattle
[Cumb-ěre]	cūbui	cūbitum	lie down
Frēm-ěre	frēmui	[frēmitum] ⁵	roar
Gēm-ěre	gēmui	[gēmitum] ⁵	groan
Tēm-ěre	trēmui	[trēmitum] ⁵	tremble
Vōm-ěre	vōmui	vōmitum	vomit
Gign-ěre	gēnui	gēnitum	beget
Pōn-ěre	pōsui	pōsitum	place
Mōl-ěre	mōlui	mōlitum	grind

¹ More commonly, sēdi, from sēdeo.² The Perf. and Sup. are only found in Priscian.³ Vulsi is the rarer of the two forms.⁴ There are also pinsi, pinsum, and pinsitum.⁵ These forms are found in Priscian only, who does not assign them to any authors.

Velle (vōlo)	vōlui	—	wish
Nolie (nōlo)	nōlui	—	wish not
Malle (mālo)	mālui	—	wish rather
Mět-ěre	messui	messum	mow, reap
*Frend-ěre	[frendui] ¹	fressum	gnash, bruise
Līn-ěre	lēvi	lītum	smear
Sīn-ěre	sīvi	sītum	allow
Cern-ěre	[crēvi]	[erētum]	sift
Spern-ěre	sprēvi	sprētum	spurn
Stern-ěre	strāvi	strātum	strew
Sēr-ěre	sēvi	sātum	sow
Cresc-ěre	erēvi	erētum	grow
Quiesc-ěre	quiēvi	[quiētum]	rest
Suesc-ěre	suēvi	[suētum]	be wont
(G)nosc-ěre ²	(g)nōvi	(g)nōtum	know
Pasc-ěre	pāvi	pastum	feed
Căp-ěre (i-o)	căpīvi	căpītum	desire
Pět-ěre	pětīvi	pětītum	demand
Quaer-ěre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	seek
*Rūd-ěre	[rūdīvi] ³	[rūdītum]	bray
Săp-ěre (i-o)	sapī (-īvi) ⁴	—	savour
Tēr-ěre	trīvi	trītum	rub, bruise
Arcess-ěre	arcessīvi	arcessītum	fetch
Incess-ěre	incessīvi	incessītum	attack
Căpess-ěre	căpessīvi	căpessītum	take in hand
Făcess-ěre	făcessīvi	făcessītum	cause
Lăcess-ěre	lăcessīvi	lăcessītum	provoke
Dic-ěre	dixi	dictum	say
Dūc-ěre	duxī	ductum	lead
[-Lăc-ěre (i-o)] ⁵ [-lexi]		[-lectum]	entice
[-Spēc-ěre (i-o)] ⁶ [-spexi]		[-spectum]	spy
Cōqu-ěre	coxi	coctum	cook
Cing-ěre	cīnxi	cīnetum	surround
Fīng-ěre	fīnxi	fīctum	fashion
*Flīg-ěre	flīxi	fīctum	smite

¹ Frendui is not found; frendēre is found.

² Nosco has dropped g which reappears in agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum; cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum; ignosco, ignōvi: Adj. ignōtus.

³ Rūdīvi is only in Apuleius; rūdītum, nowhere.

⁴ But dēsīpio, dēsīpui. Augustine has săpui.

⁵ Compare al-līcio, il-līcio, pel-līcio, pre-līcio, which make -lexi, -lectum. But ēlīcio makes ēlīcui, ēlīcītum.

⁶ Compare (circum- con- de- di- in- per- pro- re-)spīcio -spexi -spec- tūm. So aspīcio, suspīcio.

Frig-ére	frixi	frictum	<i>roast, fry</i>
Jung-ére	junxi	junctum	<i>join</i>
*Ling-ére	[-linxi]	[-linctum]	<i>lick</i>
*Mung-ére	[-munxi]	[-munctum]	<i>wipe</i>
Ping-ére	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
Plang-ére	planxi	planetum	<i>beat</i>
Rég-ére ¹	rexí	rectum	<i>rule</i>
String-ére	strinxi	strictum	<i>bind</i>
Sūg-ére	suxi	suctum	<i>suck</i>
Těg-ére	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
*Stingu-ére	[-stinxí]	[-stinctum]	—
Tingu-ére	tinxí	tinetum	<i>stain</i>
Ungu-ére	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
Ningu-ére	ninxí	—	<i>snow</i>
Ang-ére	[anxi]	[anctum] ²	<i>squeeze</i>
*[Clang-ére]	—	—	<i>rattle</i>
Träh-ére	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
Věh-ére	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
Vív-ére	vixí	victum	<i>live</i>
Stru-ére	struxi	structum	<i>pile</i>
Fig-ére	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
Flu-ére	fluxi	fluxum	<i>flow</i>
Merg-ére	mersi	mersum	<i>drown</i>
Sparg-ére ³	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Terg-ére	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Flect-ére	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
Nect-ére	{ nexi }	nexum	<i>twine</i>
Pect-ére	{ nexui }	pexum	<i>comb</i>
Plect-ére	—	[-plexum]	{ <i>plait</i> { <i>smite</i>
Mitt-ére	misi	missum	<i>send</i>
Quät-ére (<i>i-o</i>) ⁴	—	quassum	<i>shake</i>
Céd-ére	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Claud-ére	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Divid-ére	dīvisi	dīvisum	<i>divide</i>
Laed-ére	laesi	laesum	<i>hurt</i>
Lünd-ére	lūsi	lūsum	<i>play</i>

¹ Compare arrigo, corrigo, dirigo; (*e*- *per*-)*rigo* - *rexí* - *rectum*. Also *pergo*, *perrexí*, *perrectum*; *surgo*, *rise*, *surrexi*, *surrectum*, with its compounds: (as *con*- *ex*- *in*- *re*-) *surg* - *surrexi* - *surrectum*.

² Priscian mentions these forms, but no authorities for them.

³ Compare conspergo, dispergo; (*ad*- *in*- *re*-) *spergo* - *spersi* - *spersum*.

⁴ Compare (*con*- *dis*- *ex*- *in*- *per*-) *cūtio* - *cussi* - *cussum*. So *rēpercūtio*.

Plaud-ěre	plausi	plausum	<i>clap hands</i>
Rād-ěre	rāsi	rāsum	<i>shave</i>
Rōd-ěre	rōsi	rōsum	<i>gnaw</i>
Trūd-ěre	trūsi	trūsum	<i>thrust</i>
Vād-ěre	[-vāsi]	[-vāsum]	<i>go</i>
Carp-ěre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
*Clēp-ěre	clepsi	eleptum	<i>steal</i>
{ Rēp-ěre	repsi	[reptum]	<i>creep</i>
{ Serp-ěre	serpsi	[serptum]	<i>crawl</i>
{ Scalp-ěre	scalpsi	sculptum	<i>scratch</i>
{ Sulp-ěre	seulpsi	sculptum	<i>grave</i>
*Glāb-ěre	[glupsi]	[gluptum]	<i>peel</i>
Nūb-ěre	nupsi	nuptum	<i>wed</i>
Serib-ěre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
Cōm-ěre	compsi	comptum	<i>dress hair</i>
Dēm-ěre	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away</i>
Prōm-ěre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Sūm-ěre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take up</i>
Temn-ěre	tempsi	temptum	<i>despise</i>
Prēm-ěre ¹	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Gēr-ěre	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>
Ūr-ěre	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
Ācu-ěre	ācui	ācūtum	<i>sharpen</i>
Argu-ěre	argui	argūtum	<i>prove</i>
Exu-ěre	exui	exūtum	<i>put off</i>
Indu-ěre	indui	indūtum	<i>put on</i>
Imbu-ěre	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge</i>
Lu-ěre	lui	— ²	<i>atone</i>
Mīnu-ěre	mīnui	mīnūtum	<i>lessen</i>
Nu-ěre	nui	— ²	<i>nod</i>
Spu-ěre	spui	spūtum	<i>spit</i>
Stātu-ěre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
Sternu-ěre	sternui	[sternūtum]	<i>sneeze</i>
Su-ěre	sui	sūtum	<i>sew</i>
Trību-ěre	trībui	trībūtum	<i>assign, pay</i>
Solv-ěre	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loose, pay</i>
Volv-ěre	volvi	vōlūtum	<i>roll</i>

¹ Compare imprīmo, supprīmo; (com- de- ex- op- re-)prīmo -pressi -pressum.

² No Supine is found; but the fut. part. luītūrus points to luītum as Supine; and abnuītūrus to nuītum for nuo.

Ru-ěre	rui	rūtum (rū̄tum)	<i>rush</i>
*Batu-ěre	batui	—	<i>beat</i>
*-Gru-ěre	-grui	—	<i>cry like a crane</i>
Mětu-ěre	mětui	—	<i>fear</i>
Plu-ěre	plui or plūvi	—	<i>rain</i>
Fung-i	functus		<i>perform</i>
Nīt-i	nīsus (nixus)		<i>strive</i>
Plect-i	[-plexus]		<i>twine</i>
Păt-i (<i>i-or</i>)	passus		<i>suffer</i>
Ūti	ūsus		<i>use</i>
Grăd-i (<i>i-or</i>)	gressus		<i>step</i>
Lăb-i	lapsus		<i>glide, fall</i>
Mōr-i (<i>i-or</i>)	mortuus		<i>die</i>
Quēr-i	questus		<i>complain</i>
Fru-i	frūtus		<i>enjoy</i>
Lōqu-i	locūtus		<i>speak</i>
Sěqu-i	secūtus		<i>follow</i>
Apisc-i	aptus		<i>obtain</i>
[-Měnisc-i] ¹	[-mentus]		<i>have in mind</i>
Expergisc-i	experrectus		<i>wake up</i>
Fătisc-i	fessus		<i>be weary</i>
(g)nasc-i	(g)nātus		<i>be born</i>
Irasc-i	iratus		<i>be angry</i>
Nancisc-i	nactus or nanctus		<i>find</i>
Oblivisc-i	oblitus		<i>forget</i>
Păcisc-i	pactus		<i>bargain</i>
Prōfisc-i	prōfectus		<i>set out</i>
Ulcisc-i	ultus		<i>avenge</i>
Vesc-i	—		<i>feed</i>
Līqu-i	—		<i>melt</i>
*Ring-i	—		<i>grin</i>

¹ Compare com-měniscor, -mentus, 3; rē-měniscor, 3.

APPENDIX II.

IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH MANY OF THEIR MORE IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS.

(Alphabetically arranged.¹)

Abdo	-ěre	abdīdi	abdītum	hide
Ābīgo	-ěre	ābēgi	ābactum	drive away
Ābōleo	-ěre	ābōlēvi	ābōlītum	destroy
Abrīpīo	-ěre	abrīpui	abreptum	snatch away
Accendo	-ěre	accendi	accensum	set on fire
Accumbo	-ěre	accūbui	accūbitum	recline at table
Accurro	-ěre	accūcurri	and accusum accurri	run up
Acquīro	-ěre	acquīsīvi		acquire
Addo	-ěre	addīdi	addītum	add
Ādeo	-īre	ādīi	ādītum	go to
Adīmo	-ěre	ādēmi	ādemptum	take away
Adjūvo	-āre	adjūvi	adjūtum	help
Ādōleo	-ěre	ādōlūi	ādultum	to honour in wor- ship
Ādōlesco	-ěre	ādōlēvi	ādultum	grow up
Agnosco	-ěre	agnōvi	agnītum	recognize
Ago	-ěre	ēgi	actum	do, act, drive
Algeo	-ěre	alsi	—	be cold
Allīcio	-ěre	allexi	allectum	entice
Ālo	-ěre	ālui	altum ²	feed, nourish
Āmīcio	-īre	[āmīcui & -ixi]	āmictum	clothe
Āmitto	-ěre	āmīsi	āmissum	lose
Amplexor	-i	amplexus (sum)	—	embrace
Ango	-ěre	—	—	squeeze
Anquīro	-ěre	anquīsīvi	anquīsītum	examine into
Antecello	-ěre	—	—	surpass
Āpērio	-īre	āpērui	āpertum	open
Appello ³	-ěre	appūli	appulsum	put into shore

¹ The object of this list is to test the memory of the pupil. Looking at the first column, and covering the other columns with his hand, he can repeat the Perfects and Supines without having the guidance which is necessarily furnished by the grouping in List I.

² Ālītum was introduced in the post-Augustan age, possibly to distinguish it from the adj. altus *high*.

³ Distinguish this word from appello, appellāre, -āvi, -ātum, *call*.

Applico	-āre	applīcui <i>and</i>	applīcūtum <i>and</i>	
		applīcāvi	applīcātum	<i>apply</i>
Arcesso	-ēre	arcessīvi	arcessitum	<i>send for</i>
Ardeo	-ēre	arsi	arsum (neut.)	<i>take fire</i>
Arguo	-ēre	argui	argūtum	<i>prove</i>
Ascendo	-ēre	ascendi	ascensum	<i>ascend</i>
Attendo	-ēre	attendi	attentum	<i>attend</i>
Audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	<i>dare</i>
Aufūgio	-ēre	aufūgi	—	<i>flee away</i>
Aufēro	-erre	abstūli	ablātum	<i>carry away</i>
Augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	<i>increase</i>
Bibō	-ēre	bībi	—	<i>drink</i>
Cādo	-ēre	cēcīdi	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
Caedo	-ēre	cēcīdi	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Cāno	-ēre	cēcīni	cantum	<i>sing</i>
Cāpesso	-ēre	cāpessīvi	cāpessītum	<i>seize, take hold of</i>
Cāpio	-ēre	cēpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Carpo	-ēre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
Cāveo	-ēre	cāvī	cautum	<i>beware</i>
Cēdo	-ēre	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Censeo	-ēre	censui	censum	<i>vote</i>
Cerno ¹	-ēre	—	—	<i>discern</i>
Cieo	ciēre	[cīvi	cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cio	cīre	[cīvi	cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cingo	-ēre	cīnxi	cīnctum	<i>surround</i>
Circumcidō	-ēre	circumcīdi	circumcīsum	<i>clip</i>
Clango	-ēre	—	—	<i>resound</i>
Claudo ²	-ēre	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Cō-ēmo	-ēre	cō-ēmi	cō-emptum	<i>buy up</i>
[Coepio]	-isse	coeptus (sum)	used with Pass. Inf. begin	
Cognosco	-ēre	cognōvi	cognītum	<i>find out, know</i>
Cōgo	-ēre	cōēgi	cōactum	<i>compel</i>
Colligo	-ēre	collēgi	collectum	<i>collect</i>
Cōlo	-ēre	cōlui	cultum	<i>till</i>
Cōmo	-ēre	compsi	comptum	<i>adorn</i>
Compello ³	-ēre	compūli	compulsum	<i>drive together</i>
Compērio	-īre	compēri	compertum	<i>ascertain</i>
Compesco	-ēre	compescui	—	<i>restrain</i>
Compleo	-ēre	complēvi	complētum	<i>fill</i>
Comprē- } hendo	-ēre	comprehendi	comprehensum	<i>seize</i>
or				
Comprendo-ēre		comprendi	comprehensum	<i>seize</i>

¹ The Perfect and Supine crēvi and crētum are rarely used in this sense.

² The compounds of claudio are similar, except that they change au into u, e.g. circumclūdo, conclūdo, &c.

³ Distinguish this from compellāre, *accost*.

Concidō	-ěre	concidi	concīsum	<i>cut in pieces</i>
Concidō	-ěre	conciđi	—	<i>fall in a heap</i>
Concidō	-ěre	conciñui	—	<i>play together, harmonize</i>
Concurro	-ěre	concurri	concursum	<i>run together</i>
Concūtio	-ěre	concussi	concussum	<i>shake together</i>
Condo	-ěre	condidī	conditum	<i>found</i>
Confido	-ěre	confisus (sum)	—	<i>confide</i>
Conjicio	-ěre	conjēci	conjectum	<i>throw</i>
Cōnīveo	-ěre	[cōnīvi & -ixi]	—	<i>wink</i>
Conscendo	-ěre	conscendi	consensum	<i>go up</i>
Consentio	-īre	consensi	consensum	<i>agree</i>
Consēro	-ěre	consēvi	consitum	<i>sow, plant</i>
Consēro	-ěre	consērui	consertum	<i>put close together</i>
Consido	-ěre	consēdi	consessum	<i>sit down</i>
Conspergo	-ěre	conspersi	conspersum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Consūlo	-ěre	consūlui	consultum	<i>consult</i>
Contingo	-ěre	contīgi	contactum	<i>touch, happen</i>
Convello	-ěre	convelli	convulsum	<i>tear up</i>
Converto	-ěre	converti	conversum	<i>turn towards</i>
Cōquo	-ěre	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
Crēdo	-ěre	crēdīdi	crēditum	<i>believe</i>
Crēpo	-āre	crēpui	crēptum	<i>creak</i>
Cresco	-ěre	crēvi	[crētum]	<i>grow</i>
Cūbo	-āre	cūbui	cūbitum	<i>lie down</i>
[-cumbo	-ěre	-cūbui	-cūbūtum	<i>lie down</i>
Cūdo	-ěre	cūndī	cūsum	<i>fashion</i>
Cūpio	cupēre	cūpīvi	cūpītum	<i>covet, desire</i>
Curro	-ěre	cūcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
[-cūtio ¹	-ěre	-cussi	-cussum	<i>shake]</i>
Dēcermo	-ěre	dēcerēvi	dēcretum	<i>decree</i>
Dēcēndo	-ěre	dēcēdi	—	<i>fall down</i>
Dēcēdo	-ěre	dēcēdi	dēcīsum	<i>decide</i>
Dēcurro	-ěre	dēcēcurri and decurri	dēcēurusum	<i>run a course</i>
Dēdisco	-ěre	dēdīdīci	—	<i>unlearn</i>
Dēfendo	-ěre	dēfendi	dēfensum	<i>defend</i>
Dēgo	-ěre	—	—	<i>live</i>
Dēleo	-ěre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
Dēmo	-ěre	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away</i>
Dēpello	-ěre	dēpūli	dēpulsum	<i>drive down</i>
Dēpendeo	-ěre	—	—	<i>hang down (intr.)</i>
Dēpendo	-ěre	dēpendi	dēpensum	<i>pay down</i>
Dēposco	-ěre	dēpoposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Descendo	-ěre	descendi	descensum	<i>descend</i>
Dēsīno	-ěre	dēsīi [-ivi]	[dēsītum]	<i>cease</i>

¹ A form of **quātio** only found in the compounds **concūtio**, **percūtio**, &c.

Despondeo -ēre	despondi [-spōndi]	desponsum	<i>pledge</i>
Dētergeo -ēre	dētersi	dētersum	<i>wipe away</i>
Dēvincio -īre	dēvinxi	dēvinctum	<i>bind down</i>
Dico -ēre	dixi	dictum	<i>say</i>
Diffido -ēre	diffisus (sum)	—	<i>distrust</i>
Diffindo -ēre	diffidi	diffissum	<i>cleare asunder</i>
Digēro -ēre	dīgessi	dīgestum	<i>set apart</i>
Dignosco -ēre	—	—	<i>distinguish</i>
Dilīgo -ēre	dilexi	dilectum	<i>love</i>
Dilūcesco -ēre	diluxi	—	<i>dawn</i>
Dīmētor -īri	dīmensus (sum)	—	<i>measure out</i>
Dīmīco -āre	dīmīcāvi & ui	dīmīcātum	<i>fight</i>
Dīrīmo -ēre	dīrēmi	dīremptum	<i>break off, or up</i>
Dīrīpio -ēre	dīrīpui	dīreptum	<i>tear asunder</i>
Dīrumpo -ēre	dīrūpi	dīruptum	<i>burst asunder</i>
Discēdo -ēre	discessi	discessum	<i>depart</i>
Discindo -ēre	discīdi	discissum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Disco -ēre	dīdīci	—	<i>learn</i>
Discumbo -ēre	discūbui	discūbitum	<i>recline (at dinner)</i>
Discurro -ere	discurri	discursum	<i>run in different directions</i>
Discūtīo -ēre	discussi	discussum	<i>shake asunder</i>
Disjīcio -ēre	disjēci	disjectum	<i>cast asunder</i>
Dispergo -ēre	dispersi	dispersum	<i>scatter apart</i>
Dissentio -īre	dissensi	dissensum	<i>disagree with</i>
Dissērō -ēre	dissērui	[dissertum]	<i>set forth distinctly, discourse</i>
Dissīdeo -ēre	dissēdi	dissesum	<i>be at variance with</i>
Dissīlio -īre	dissīlui	dissultum	<i>leap apart</i>
Dissolvo -ēre	dissolvi	dissolūtum	<i>dissolve</i>
Dissuādeo -ēre	dissuāsi	dissuāsum	<i>dissuade</i>
Distinguo -ēre	distinxī	distinctum	<i>discriminate</i>
Disto -āre	—	—	<i>be distant</i>
Distrāho -ēre	distraxi	distractum	<i>draw apart</i>
Dīvello -ēre	dīvelli	dīvulsum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Dīvīdo -ēre	dīvisi	dīvisum	<i>divide</i>
Do dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give</i>
Dōceo -ēre	dōeui	doctum	<i>teach</i>
Dōmo -āre	dōmui	dōmītum	<i>tame</i>
Dūco -čre	duxī	ductum	<i>lead</i>
Ēdisco -ēre	ēdīdīci	—	<i>learn off</i>
Ēdo ēdēre	ēdi & esse	ēsum	<i>eat</i>
Ēdo -ēre	ēdīdi	ēlītum	<i>give out</i>
Effervesco -ēre	efferbui	—	<i>effervesce</i>

Effulgeo	-ěre ¹	effulsi	effulsum	shine forth
Effundo	-ěre	effūdi	effūsum	pour forth
Elīcio	-ěre	élīcui	élīctum	entice forth
Elido	-ěre	élisi	élisum	knock out
Elīgo	-ěre	élēgi	élēctum	choose out
Ēmentior	-īri	ēmentitus (sum)	—	lie outright
Ēmīco	-āre	ēmīcūi	ēmīcatum	flash out
Ēmo	-ěre	ēmi	emptum	buy, take
Ēnēco	-āre	ēnēcui [ēnēcāvi]	ēnectum [ēnēcātum] ²	kill
Ēnīteo	-ěre	ēnītui	—	shine out
Ēnitor	-i	ēnīsus (enixus)	—	strive hard
Eo	īre	īvi	ītum	go
Ēvello	-ěre	ēvelli	ēvulsum	tear out
Ēvōmo	-ěre	ēvōmui	ēvōmītum	vomit forth
Excēdo	-ěre	excessi	excessum	retire from
Excello	-ěre	excellui	[excelsum]	excel
Excerpto	-ěre	excerpti	excerptum	pick out
Excido	-ěre	excidi	excisum	hew out
Excēdo	-ere	excēdi	—	fall out
Excōlo	-ěre	excōlui	excultum	cultivate carefully
Excūbo	-āre	excūbūi	excūbītum	lie out of doors
Excēdo	-ěre	excēdī	excūsum	hammer out
Excurro	-ěre	excēcūrri	excursum	run out
Excētio	-ěre	excussi	excussum	shake out
Exēdo	-ěre	exēdī	exēsum	gnaw out
Exīno	-ěre	exēmi	exemptum	take out
Exōlesco	-ěre	exōlēvi	exōlētum	grow out of date
Expello	-ěre	expūli	expulsum	expel
Expergis-	-i cor	experrectus (sum)	—	awake oneself
Expērior	-īri	expertus sum	—	test
Expēto	-ěre	expētīvi	expētītum	seek out
Explēo	-ěre	explēvi	explētum	fill up
Explēeo	-āre	explīcāvi (-ui)	explīcātum (-itum)	unfold
Explōdo	-ěre	explōsi	explōsum	hiss off the stage
Expōno	-ěre	expōsui	expōsitum	set forth
Exposco	-ěre	expōposci	—	demand earnestly
Exprīmo	-ěre	expressi	expressum	squeeze out
Exquiōro	-ěre	exquiīsivi	exquiīsītum	search out
Exscindo	-ěre	exscidi	exscissum	extirpate
Exsēco	-āre	exsēcui	exsectum	cut out
Exsēro	-ěre	exsērui	exsertum	protrude

¹ So in Virgil. Perhaps the verb should be effulgo, 3.

² The forms in -āvi, -ātum, are less classical; but note that nēco is of the first conj., and regular.

Exsilio	-īre	exsīlui	exsultum	leap forth
Exsisto	-ěre	exstīti	[exstītūm]	come forth, arise
Exsolvo	-ěre	exsōlui	exsōlūtūm	unloose
Exstinguo	-ěre	exstinxi	extinctum	extinguish
Exsto	-āre	exstīti	—	project, be extant
Exstrūo	-ěre	exstruxi	exstructum	heap up
Exsurgo	-ěre	exsurrexi	exsurrectum	rise up, recover
Extendo	-ěre	extendi	extentum (-tensum)	stretch out
Exuo	-ěre	exūi	exūtūm	put off
Fācesso	-ěre	fācessīvi	fācessītūm	accomplish
Fācio	fācēre	fēci	factum	do, make
Fallo	-ěre	fēfelli	falsum	deceive
Farcio	-īre	farsi	fartum	stuff
Fāteor	-ēri	fassus (sum)	—	confess
Fāveo	-ēre	fāvi	fautum	favour
Fērio ¹	-īre	—	—	strike
Fēro	ferre	tūli	lātūm	bear
Ferveo & vo	-ěre	fervi <i>and</i> -bui	—	boil
Fido	-ěre	fīsus sum	—	trust
Figo	-ěre	fixi	fixum	jix
Findo	-ěre	fīdi	fissum	cleare
Fingo	-ěre	finxi	fictum	fashion
Fīo	fīéri	factus sum	—	be made, become
Flecto	-ěre	flexi	flexum	bend
Fleo	-ěre	flēvi	flētūm	weep
Fligo	-ěre	flixi	flietum	dash
Fluo	-ěre	fluxi	[fluxum]	flow
Fōdio	fōdēre	fōdi	fōssum	dig
Fōveo	-ěre	fōvi	fōtūm	cherish
Frango	-ěre	frēgi	fractum	break
Frēmo	-ěre	frēmui	[frēmītūm]	mutter, murmur
Frendo	-ěre	—	fressum & frēsum	gnash
Fřico	-āre	fřeui	frictum	rub
Frigeo	-ěre	frixi	—	be cold
Frigo	-ěre	frixi	frictum	roast
Fūgio	fūgēre	fūgi	[fūgītūm]	flee
Fulcio	-īre	fulsi	fultum	prop
Fulgeo	-ěre	fulsi	—	glitter
Fundo	-ěre	fūdi	fūsum	pour, rout
Fūro ²	-ěre	[fūrni]	—	be nad
Gaudeo	-ěre	gāvīsus sum	—	rejoice
Gēmo	-ěre	gēmui	gēmītūm	groan
Gēro	-ěre	gessi	gestum	carry on

¹ The perfect forms **percussi**, **percussum**, are supplied from **percūtio**.

² The perfect form generally supplied instead of **fūrui**, **insānīvi**.

Gigno	-ěre	gěnnui	gěn̄tum	<i>produce</i>
Grādior	-i	gressus (sum)	—	<i>step</i>
Hāereo	-ěre	haesi	haesum	<i>stick</i>
Haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	<i>drain</i>
Īco	-ěre	īci	ictum	<i>strike</i>
Ignosco	-ěre	ignōvi	ignōtum	<i>pardon</i>
Illīno	-ěre	illēvi	illītum	<i>smear</i>
Illūcesco	-ěre	illuxi	—	<i>dawn</i>
Illūdo	-ěre	illūsi	illūsum	<i>make game of</i>
Imbuo	-ěre	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge</i>
Immisceo	-ěre	immiseui	immixtum(-mistum)	<i>intermix</i>
Impendeo	-ěre	—	—	<i>impend</i>
Impendo	-ěre	impendi	impensum	<i>expend</i>
Impingo	-ěre	impēgi	impactum	<i>thrust against</i>
Impleo	-ěre	implēvi	implētum	<i>fill</i>
Incēdo	-ěre	inceSSI	inceSSum	<i>step</i>
Incendo	-ěre	incendi	incensum	<i>set on fire</i>
Incesso	-ěre	incessīvi	—	<i>assail</i>
Incēdo	-ěre	incēdi	[incāsum]	<i>fall, light on</i>
Incēdo	-ěre	incēdi	incēsum	<i>cut into, engrave</i>
Incingo	-ěre	incinxi	incinctum	<i>gird</i>
Inclūdo	-ěre	inclūsi	inclūsum	<i>shut in</i>
Incōlo	-ěre	incōlui	incultum	<i>inhabit</i>
Ineūbo	-āre	ineūbui	ineūbītum	<i>brood over</i>
Incumbo	-ěre	ineūbui	ineūbītum	<i>lean on, bend one's mind to</i>
Incurro	-ěre	incurri[-cūcurri]	incursum	<i>run towards, meet</i>
Incūtio	-ěre	ineussi	ineussum	<i>strike against</i>
Indīgeo	-ěre	indīgūi	—	<i>need</i>
Indo	-ěre	indīdi	indītum	<i>put in, apply</i>
Indulgeo	-ěre	indulsi	indultum	<i>indulge</i>
Induo	-ěre	indui	indūtum	<i>put on</i>
Īneo	-īre	īnī	īnītum	<i>enter</i>
Inflūo	-ěre	influxi	[influxum]	<i>flow into</i>
Insēro	-ěre	insēvi	insītum	<i>sow in</i>
Insēro	-ěre	insērui	insertum	<i>put in, mingle</i>
Insisto	-ěre	instīti	—	<i>stand on, persevere</i>
Insto	-āre	instīti	[instātum]	<i>press on</i>
Insurgo	-ěre	insurrexi	insurrectum	<i>rise up, or to</i>
Intellēgo	-ěre	intellexi	intellectum	<i>understand</i>
Intendo	-ěre	intendi	intentum, or -sum	<i>stretch, direct</i>
Intercēdo	-ěre	intercessi	intercessum	<i>intervene, interpose</i>
Intēreo	-īre	intērī	intēritum	<i>perish</i>
Interimō	-ěre	intērēmi	interemptum	<i>destroy</i>
Interlīno	-ěre	interlēvi	interlītum	<i>smear, falsify by erasures</i>
Internosco	-ěre	internōvi	—	<i>distinguish</i>

Intōno	-āre	intōnui	intōnitum	thunder
Intorqueo	-ēre	intorsi	intortum	twist, hurl
Intueor	-ēri	intuitus (sum)	—	look on, regard
Invīdeo	-ēre	invīdi	invīsum	envy
Jācio	-ēre	jēci	jactum	throw
Jūbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	command
Jungo	-ēre	junxi	junctum	join
Jūvo	-āre	jūvi	jūtum	help
Lābor	-i	lapsus (sum)	—	glide
Läcesso	-ēre	läcessīvi	läcessitum	provoke
Laedo	-ēre	laesi	laesum	hurt
Lambo	-ēre	lambi	—	lick
Lävo	-āre ¹	lävi	lävātum	wash
Lěgo	-ēre	lēgi	lautum, lōtum	read, choose
Libet	-ēre	libitum est	lectum	it pleases, suits
Lingo	-ēre	linxi	linetum	lick
Líno	-ēre	livi and lēvi	litum	smear
Linquo	-ēre	liqui	[lictum]	leave
Lüceo	-ēre	luxi	—	shine
Lüdo	-ēre	lūsi	lūsum	play
Lügeo	-ēre	luxi	—	mourn
Luo	-ēre	lui	luūtum	wash, atone
Mällo	malle	mälui	—	prefer
Mando	-ēre	mandi	mansum	chew
Mäneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	remain
Médeor	-ēri	—	—	heal
—	mämín-	mämíni	—	remember
Mergo	-ēre	mersi	mersum	drown
Mētiōr ³	-īri	mensus (sum)	—	measure
Mēto	-ēre	messui	messum	mow, reap
Mētuo	-ēre	mētui	—	fear
Mico	-āre	mēcui	—	glitter
Mīnuo	-ēre	mīnui	mīnūtum	lessen
Misceo	-ēre	misceui	mistum or mixtum	mix
Misēreor	-ēri	mīsērītus (sum)	—	pity
Mitto	-ēre	mīsi	missum	send
Mölo	-ēre	mölui	mölötum	grind
Mordeo	-ēre	mömordi	morsum	bite
Mörþor	-i	mortūs (sum)	—	die
Möveo	-ēre	mövi	mötum	move
Mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	soothe

¹ There is an ante-classical and poetical form lävēre.

² The form libuit is perhaps not found in Cicero.

³ Distinguish this from mentior, mentiri, mentitus, lie.

Mulgeo	-ēre	mulsi	mulctum	milk
Nanciscor	-i	nactus, nanctus (sum)	—	obtain
Nascor	-i	nātus (sum)	—	be born
Necto	-ēre	nexui & nEXI	nexus	tie, bind
Neglēgo	-ēre	neglexi	neglectum	neglect
Neo	nēre	nēvi	nētum	spin
Ningo	-ēre	ninxī	—	snow
Nīteo	-ēre	—	—	shine
Nītor	-i	nīsus and nixus	—	strive
Nōlo	nolle	nōlui	—	be unwilling
Nosco ¹	-ēre	nōvi	nōtum	come to know
Nūbo	-ēre	nupsi	nuptum	be married
Öbeo	-īre	öbīi and īvi	—	go towards, down
Oblīno	-ēre	oblēvi	oblītum	besmear
Oblīviscor	-i	oblītus (sum)	—	forget
Obrēpo	-ēre	obrepsti	obreptum	creep up to
Obrūo	-ēre	obrui	obrūtum	overwhelm
Obsīdeo	-ēre	obsēdi	obsessum	besiege
Obsisto	-ēre	obstīti	[obstītum]	oppose
Obsōlesco	-ēre	obsōlēvi	obsōlētum	wear out
Obsto	-āre	obstīti	obstātum	stand in the way of
Obstringo	-ēre	obstrinxi	obstrictum	bind (by oath)
Obtēro	-ēre	obtrīvi	obtrītum	trample underfoot
Occīdo	-ēre	occīdi	occīsum	slay
Occīdo	-ēre	occīdi	occāsum	fall, die
Occūlo	-ēre	occūlui	occultum	hide
Occurro	-ēre	occurri	occursum	meet, resist
—	ōdisse	ōdi	[ōsum]	hate
Offendo	-ēre	offendi	offensum	knock against
Offero	-erre	obtūli	oblātum	offer
Ömitto	-ēre	ömīsi	ömissum	pass over
Öpērio	-īre	öpērui	öpertum	cover
Oppōno	-ēre	oppōsui	oppōsītum	put in the way
Opprīmo	-ēre	oppressi	oppressum	press down, over-
Ordior	-īri	orsus (sum)	—	power
Orior	-īri	ortus (sum)	—	commence
Pāciscor	-i	pactus (sum)	—	arise
Pando	-ēre	pandi	passum & pansum	bargain
Pango	-ēre	{ pēp̄gi pēgi panxi	pactum	expand, spread
Parco	-ēre		panctum	frame, fasten
			parsum	
				spare

¹ Nosco means, *I make acquaintance with*; nōvi means, *I have made the acquaintance of*, i.e. *I know*.

Pārio ¹	-ěre	pēpēri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
Pasco	-ěre	pāvi	pastum	<i>feed</i>
Pāveo	-ěre	pāvi	—	<i>fear</i>
Pecto	-ěre	pexui <i>and</i> pexi	pexum	<i>comb</i>
Pello	-ěre	pēpūli	pulsum	<i>drive away</i>
Pellēcio	-ěre	pellexi	pellectum	<i>allure</i>
Pendeo	-ěre	pēpendi	—	<i>hang (intr.)</i>
Pendo	-ěre	pēpendi	pensum	<i>hang, weigh (tr.)</i>
Pěrāgo	-ěre	perēgi	peractum	<i>complete</i>
Percello	-ěre	percūli	percūlsum	<i>strike (with terror)</i>
Pěrcūtio	-ěre	percussi	percussum	<i>strike</i>
Perdo	-ěre	perdīdi	perdītum	<i>lose, destroy</i>
Pergo	-gěre	perrexī	perrectum	<i>continue</i>
Pěrīmo	-ěre	perēmi	peremptum	<i>make away with</i>
Perlēgo	-ěre	perlēgi	perflectum	<i>read through</i>
Perpētiōr	-i	perpessus (sum)	—	<i>endure</i>
Persto	-āre	perstīti	perstātum	<i>persevere</i>
Pěto	-ěre	pětivi & pětii	pětītum	<i>seek</i>
Pingo	-ěre	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
Pinso	-ěre	pinsi & pinsui	pinsum	<i>pound</i>
Plango	-ěre	planxi	planetum	<i>beat</i>
Plaudo	-ěre	plausi	plausum	<i>clap hands</i>
Plecto	-ěre	—	—	<i>lash</i>
Plecto	-ěre	plexui, plexi	plexum	<i>plait</i>
[Pleo	plēre	plēvi	plētum	<i>fill]</i>
Plico	-āre	plīciū	plīciatum & plīciūtum	<i>fold</i>
Plūo	-ěre	plūit <i>and</i> plūvit	—	<i>rain</i>
Pōno	-ěre	pōsui	pōsītum	<i>place</i>
Posco	-ěre	pōposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Possum ²	posse	pōtui	—	<i>be able</i>
Pōto	-āre	pōtāvi	pōtātum & pōtum	<i>drink</i>
Praecāveo	-ěre	praecāvi	praecaustum	<i>take precautions</i>
Praecello	-ěre	—	—	<i>excel</i>
Praecido	-ěre	praccidi	praecīsun	<i>cut off, abridge</i>
Praecīno	-ěre	praecīnui	praecēntum	<i>play before, fore-tell</i>
Praecurro ³	-ěre	praecūcurri	praecursum	<i>precede</i>
Praedīco ⁴	-ěre	praedixi	praedictum	<i>predict</i>
Praeeo	-ire	praei, or -īvi	praeītum	<i>go before, dictate</i>
Praesto	-āre	praestīti	praestātum [-ītum]	<i>excel, answer for</i>

¹ Distinguish this from pāreo, pārēre, pārui, pārītum, *obey*.

² Distinguish this from the forms of the regular Verb pōtior, *I gain possession of*.

³ Note that here, and in excurro, the longer form of the Perfect is the more common.

⁴ Distinguish this from praedico, praedīcare, praedīcavi, praedīcātum, *claim*.

Praetexo	-ěre	praetexui	praetextum	<i>border, pretend</i>
Prandeo	-ěre	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine</i>
Prěhendo	-ěre	prěhendi	prensum	<i>seize, grasp</i>
Prěmo	-ěre	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Prōcumbo	-ěre	prōcūbui	prōcūbitum	<i>fall (on one's knees, wounded, &c.)</i>
Prōdeo	-īre	prōdī	prōdītum	<i>go forth</i>
Prōdo	-ěre	prōdīdi	prōdītum	<i>betray</i>
Prōfīscor	-i	prōfectus (sum)	—	<i>set out</i>
Prōfīteor	-ēri	prōfessus (sum)	—	<i>avow</i>
Prōfundō	-ěre	prōfūdi	prōfūsum	<i>pour forth</i>
Prōmo	-ěre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Prōmōveo	-ěre	prōmōvi	prōmōtum	<i>move forward</i>
Prōpello	-ěre	prōpūli	prōpulsum	<i>drive before one</i>
Proscribo	-ěre	proscripti	proscriptum	<i>publish, proscribe</i>
Prōvīdeo	-ěre	prōvīdi	prōvisum	<i>foresee, provide</i>
Psallo	-ěre	psalli	—	<i>play on harp</i>
Pungo	-ěre	pūpūgi	punctum	<i>prick</i>
Quaero	-ěre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	<i>seek</i>
Quātio	quātēre		quassum	<i>shake</i>
Queo	quīre	quīvi	quītum	<i>be able</i>
Quēror	-i	questus (sum)	—	<i>complain</i>
Quiesco	-ěre	quiēvi	quiētum	<i>rest</i>
Rādo	-ěre	rāsi	rāsum	<i>scrape</i>
Rāpio	rāpēre	rāpuī	raptum	<i>seize</i>
Rēcīdo	-ěre	recīdi ¹	rēcāsum	<i>fall back, relapse</i>
Rēcīdo	-ěre	rēcīdi	rēcīsum	<i>lop, retrench</i>
Rēcumbo	-ěre	recūbui	—	<i>lie down</i>
Reclūdo	-ěre	reclūsi	reclūsum	<i>disclose</i>
Reddo	-ěre	reddīdi	reddītum	<i>restore, render</i>
Rēdeo	-īre	rēdi	rēdītum	<i>return</i>
Rēdigo	-ěre	rēdēgi	rēdactum	<i>bring back, reduce</i>
Rēdīmo	-ěre	rēdēmi	rēdemptum	<i>buy back, buy up</i>
Rēfello	-ěre	rēfelli	—	<i>refute</i>
Rēfercio	-īre	rēfersi	rēfertum	<i>cram</i>
Rēfigo	-ěre	rēfixi	rēfixum	<i>unfasten</i>
Rēdōleo	-ěre	rēdōlui	—	<i>smell of</i>
Refrīgesco	-ěre	refrixi	—	<i>grow cool, flag</i>
Refringo	-ěre	rēfrēgi	refractum	<i>break open, destroy</i>
Rēgero	-ěre	rēgessi	rēgestum	<i>cast back</i>
Relēgo ²	-ěre	rēlēgi	rēlectum	<i>gather up, go through again</i>
Rēmaneo	-ěre	rēmansi	—	<i>stay behind</i>

¹ Other verbs that lengthen compound *re-* in the perfect, are, *rettūli* and *reppēri*.

² Distinguish this from *rēlēgo*, -āre. -āvi, -ātum, *banish*.

Rěor	-ěri	rătus (<i>sum</i>)	—	<i>think, suppose</i>
Rěpello	-ěre	reppăli	rěpulsum	<i>drive back</i>
Rěpendo	-ěre	rěpendi	rěpensum	<i>pay back</i>
Rěpério	-ire	reppěri	rěpertum	<i>discover</i>
Rěpo	-ěre	repſi	reptum	<i>creep</i>
Rěquiro	-ěre	rěquīſīvi	rěquīſītum	<i>seek again</i>
Rescindo	-ěre	rescědi	rēscissum	<i>break open, down, rescind</i>
Rěſēco	-āre	rěſēcui	rěſectum	<i>prune</i>
Rěſideo	-ěre	rěſēdi	rěſessum	<i>remain behind</i>
Rěſido	-ěre	rěſēdi	—	<i>sit down, settle</i>
Rěſipisco	-ěre	rěſipīvi <i>and ui</i>	—	<i>recover one's senses</i>
Rěſisto	-ěre	restiſi	—	<i>halt, resist</i>
Respergo	-ěre	respersi	respersum	<i>besprinkle</i>
Respicio	-ěre	respexi	respectum	<i>have regard to</i>
Respondeo	-ěre	respondi	responsum	<i>answer</i>
Restinguo ¹	-ěre	restinxī	restinctum	<i>quench</i>
Resto	-āre	restiſi	—	<i>remain, hold out</i>
Rětexo	-ěre	retexui	rětextum	<i>unweave</i>
Rětundo	-ěre	rětūdi & rettūdi	rětūsum	<i>blunt</i>
Rěvello	-ěre	rěvelli	rěvulsum	<i>tear away</i>
Rěverto ²	-ěre	rěverti	rěversum	<i>return</i>
Rideo	-ěre	rīſi	rīſum	<i>laugh</i>
Rōdo	-ěre	rōſi	rōſum	<i>gnaw</i>
Rědo	-ěre	[rūdīvi]	[rūdītum]	<i>bray</i>
Rumpo	-ěre	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
Ruo	ruěre	rui	ruſtum [rūtum] ³	<i>rush, fall</i>
Saepio	-ire	saepſi	saeptum	<i>hedge in</i>
Sălio	-ire	sălui	[saltum]	<i>leap</i>
Sălio	-ire	—	salītum	<i>salt</i>
Sancio	-ire	saxi [-ivi]	sanctum [-itum]	<i>render sacred, enact</i>
Săpio	-ěre	săpīvi <i>and -ii</i>	—	<i>savour of, have taste, or wisdom</i>
Sarcio	-ire	sarsi	sartum	<i>patch</i>
Scăbo	-ěre	scăbi	—	<i>scratch</i>
Scalpo	-ěre	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch</i>
Seando	-ěre	—	—	<i>climb</i>
Scindo	-ěre	scidī	scissum	<i>cut, tear</i>

¹ The obsolete *stinguo* is only found (in Present forms) in Lucretius and quotations of Priscian.

² In the Present and Present-derived Tenses *rěvertitur* is more common; in the Perfect and Perfect-derived Tenses *rěverti*, *rěvertēram*, &c.: but the best authors use the Dep. Participle *rěversus*.

³ The Fut. Part. *ruitūrus* points to sup. *ruitum*; but in an old legal word “rūta,” things dug up (*on an estate*), the vowel was long. In the compounds *obrūtus*, *ērūtus* and *surrūtus* the vowel was short.

Scisco	-ěre	scīvi	scītum	decree
Scribo	-ěre	scripsi	scriptum	write
Sculpo	-ěre	sculpsi	sculptum	engrave
Sēco	-āre	sēcui	sectum	cut
Sēdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	sit
Sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	feel
Sēpēlio	-īre	sēpēlīvi	sēpultum	bury
Sēro	-ěre	sērui	sertum	join together
Sēro	-ěre	sēvi	sātum	sow
Serpō	-ěre	serpsi	serptum	crawl
Sido	-ěre	sīdi	—	sit down
Singultio	-īre	singultīvi	—	sob
Sno	-ěre	sīvi	sītum	allow
Sisto	-ěre	—	—	stop, make stand
Sōleo	-ěre	sōlītus sum	—	be accustomed
Solvo	-ěre	solvi	sōlūtum	loosen
Sōno ¹	-āre	sōnui	sōnītum	sound
Sorbeo	-ěre	sorbui [sorpsi]	—	suck up
Spargo	-ěre	sparsi	sparsum	sprinkle
[Spēcio	-ěre	spexi	spectum]	espy
Sperno	-ěre	sprēvi	sprētum	despise
Spondeo	-ěre	spōpondi	sponsum	pledge, promise
Sṭātuo	-ěre	stātui	stātūtum	set up
Stero	-ěre	strāvī	strātum	strew
Stero	-ěre	stertui	—	snore
Sto	stāre	stēti	stātum	stand
Strēpo	-ěre	strēpui	[strēpītum]	roar
Strīdeo &	-ěre &	{ strīdi	—	creak, hiss, whizz
Strīdo	-ěre	{ strinxi	strictum	tie
Stringo	-ěre	struxi	structum	build, pile
Struo	-ěre	suāsi	suasum	advise, persuade
Suādeo	-ěre	sūbī	subītum	go under, spring up
Sūbēo	-īre	sūbēgi	subactum	bring under, sub-
Sūbīgo	-ěre	sūbēgi	—	due
Subnecto	-ěre	subnexui	subnexum	tie under
Subruo, see surruo.				
Subsīdo	-ěre	subsēdi	subsessum	sink down
Subvēnio	-īre	subvēni	subventum	help
Subvertō	-ěre	subverti	subversum	subvert
Succēdo	-ěre	successi	successum	approach, follow
Succēndo	-ěre	succendi	succeusum	set on fire
Succurro	-ěre	succurri	succursum	help
Suesco	-ěre	suēvi	suētum	be accustomed
Suffēro	-erre	sustūli	sublātum	endure

¹ Note insōnui and consōnui, but rēsōnāvi.

Suffundo	-ěre	suffūdi	suffūsum	<i>suffuse</i>
Suggero	-ěre	suggessi	suggestum	<i>supply, subjoin</i>
Sūgo	-ěre	suxi	suctum	<i>suck</i>
Summōeo	-ěre	summōvi	summōtum	<i>thrust off</i>
Sūmo .	-ěre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take</i>
Suo	-ěre	—	sūtum	<i>sew</i>
Suppēto	-ěre	suppētivi	suppētītum	<i>be in store, suffice</i>
Suppleo	-ěre	supplēvi	supplētum	<i>fill up</i>
Suppōno	-ěre	suppōsui	suppōsītum	<i>substitute, counterfeit</i>
Supprīmo	-ěre	suppressi	suppressum	<i>check, conceal</i>
Surgo	-ěre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>arise</i>
Surrēpo	-ere	surrepsi	surreptum	<i>creep up to</i>
Surrīgo ¹	-ěre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>raise</i>
Surrīpio	-ěre	surrīpui	surreptum	<i>snatch by stealth</i>
Surruo	-ěre	surrui	surrūtum	<i>undermine</i>
Suspendo	-ěre	suspendi	suspensum	<i>suspend</i>
Suspīcio	-ěre	suspexi	spectum	<i>look up to</i>
Tango	-ěre	tētīgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
Tēgo	-ěre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
Temno	-ěre	—	—	<i>despise</i>
Tendo	-ěre	tētendi	[tentum & tensum] ²	<i>stretch</i>
Tēneo	-ěre	tēnui	[tentum]	<i>hold</i>
Tergeo & tergo	-ěre } -ěre }	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Tēro	-ěre	trīvi	trītum	<i>rub</i>
Texo	-ěre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
Tinguo	-ěre	tinxi	tinctum	<i>dye</i>
Tollo	-ěre	sustūli ³	sublātum ³	<i>take up</i>
Tondeo	-ěre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>share</i>
Tēno	-āre	tōnui	tōnitum	<i>thunder</i>
Torqueo	-ěre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
Torreο	-ěre	torrui	tostum	<i>roast</i>
Trādo	-ěre	trādīdi	trādītum	<i>hand over</i>
Trāho	-ěre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
Transeo	-īre	transīi and -īvi	transītum	<i>pass over</i>
Transīgo	-ěre	transēgi	transactum	<i>transact</i>
Transīlio	-īre	transīlui [-īvī] ⁴	—	<i>leap across</i>
Trēmo	-ěre	trēmui	—	<i>tremble</i>
Trībuo	-ěre	trībui	trībūtum	<i>assign</i>
Trūdo	-ěre	trūsi	trūsum	<i>thrust</i>

¹ This is the uncontracted form of *surgo* used transitively.

² These Supine forms have probably no existence, and are merely inferred from the Pass. Part. *tentus* and *tensus*.

³ These forms do not properly belong to *tollo*, but are assigned to it, as it has no perfect and supine: see note on *fūro* above.

⁴ Livy uses -ui; Plautus and Pliny, -īvi.

T <small>ú</small> eor[tuor]-ēri		tuſtus and tūtus (sun)	—	<i>regard, guard</i>
Tundo	-ěre	tūtūdi	tūsum & tunsum	<i>thump</i>
Turgeo	-ěre	tursi	—	<i>swell</i>
Ulciscor	-i	ultus (sum)	—	<i>avenge myself on</i>
Unguo	-ěre	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
Urgeo	-ěre	ursi	—	<i>urge</i>
Ūro	-ěre	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
Ūtor	-i	ūsus (sum)	—	<i>use</i>
Vādo	-ěre	[vāsi]	[vasum]	<i>go</i>
Věho	-ěre	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
Vello	-ěre	velli and vulsi	vulsum	<i>rend</i>
Vēneo	-īre	vēnii	—	<i>be sold</i>
Vēnio	-īre	vēni	ventum	<i>come</i>
Vergo	-ěre	[versi]	—	<i>bend</i>
Verro	-ěre	verri	versum	<i>sweep</i>
Verto	-ěre	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
Vēto	-āre	vētui	vōtītum	<i>forbid</i>
Vídeo	-ěre	vīdi	vīsuim	<i>see</i>
Vincio	-īre	vinxi	vinetum	<i>bind</i>
Vinco	-ěre	vīci	victum	<i>conquer</i>
Viso	-ěre	visi	—	<i>visit</i>
Vivo	-ěre	vixi	victum	<i>live</i>
Vōlo	velle	vōlui	—	<i>wish</i>
Volvo	-ěre	volvi	vōlūtum	<i>roll</i>
Vōmo	-ěre	vōmui	vōmītum	<i>vomit</i>
Vōveo	-ěre	vōvi	vōtum	<i>vow</i>

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Defective Verbs *coepī*, *begin*, *měmīnī*, *remember*, and *ōdī*, *hate*, have no Tenses except those derived from the Perfect. Thus *I remembered* is *měmīnēram*; *that they may remember*, or *let them remember*, *měmīnērint*; *I shall remember*, *měmīnēro*; and the same of *ōdī*.

INDICATIVE.

	(1)	(2)	(3)
<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepī	Měmīnī	Ōdī
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Coepēro	Měmīnēro	Ōdēro
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepēram	Měmīnēram	Ōdēram

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepérím	Měmíněrim	Öděrim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepissem	Měmínissem	Ödissem

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting)	Měmento Mémentôte	(wanting)
----------------	-----------	----------------------	-----------

INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepissě	Měmínissě	Ödissě
-----------------	----------	-----------	--------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	Coeptürüs	(wanting)	Ösürüs
----------------	-----------	-----------	--------

4. *Aio, I say:*—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

Present.

S. Aio	—	S. Aiēbam	—
Aīs	Aiās	Aiēbās	—
Aīt	Aiāt	Aiēbāt	—
P. —	—	P. Aiēbāmūs	—
—	—	Aiēbātīs	—
Aiunt	Aiant	Aiēbant	—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

5. *Inquam, say I:*—

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Inquam	—	—	Inquīi
Inquīs	—	Inquiēs	Inquistī
Inquīt	Inquiēbāt ¹	Inquiēt	—
Inquīmūs	—	—	—
Inquītīs	—	—	—
Inquīunt	—	—	—

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Inquē	2 Pers. Inquīto.

N.B.—**Inquam** is always used after the first emphatic word in a speech, and is almost always separated from its Nominative.

Then Balbus said, "This I Tum Balbus, "Haec," inquit, deny." “něgo.”

¹ But this form is found without the e.

APPENDIX III.

HINTS ON CONSTRUING.

Take as an example :

Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in aequor
Trinacris, a positu nomen adepta loci.

I.—QUESTIONS ON THE SENTENCE.

1. The first question is, *Which is the Principal Verb?*
Ans., **procurrit**—*runs forth*.

2. *What is the Subject of the Principal Verb?* Ans., **Terra**, *a land*.

3. (a) *Is the Principal Verb Intransitive; or has it (b) a Direct Object? (c) an Indirect Object?*

Ans., It is Intransitive.

4. (a) *Is there any Noun in Apposition with the Subject?* (b) *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Subject, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

Ans., (a) **Trinacris** (*i.e. trin-acris, three-promontoried*) is sometimes a Noun (a name of Sicily), sometimes an Adjective, and may be regarded either as in Apposition to **terra**, or as agreeing with it; (b) **Adepta**, from *adipiscor*, is a Participle agreeing with **terra**, meaning *having obtained*.

¹ Bear in mind that *two Adjectives* (unless connected by a Conjunction) rarely agree with the same Noun: *many serious sorrows*, multi et graves dolores (153). But an *Adjective and Participle* may agree with the same Noun, without a Conjunction.

5. Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Object, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?

6. The next question is to ask, Are there any Adverbial Clauses attached to the Principal Verb? i.e. any Clauses answering to the question (a) How? (b) When? (c) Where? (d) Whence? (e) Why, &c.

Ans. How? *tribus scopulis*, with three rocks; (c) Where? or Whither? *vastum in aequor*, into the vast sea.

7. Coming to *adepta*, repeat the above questions. Is it Transitive? Has it an Object? Adverbial Clauses, &c.?

Ans. (3) (b). The Object is *nomen*, the name; (5) *loci*, of the place, is Gen. depending on *nomen* (or *positu*); (6) Whence? Ans., a *positu*, from its position.¹

8. No further questions are required for this sentence: but instead of the Participle *adepta*, a prose author might have written *quod*, or *quia adepta fuerat*, because it had obtained, and the Conjunction *quod* or *quia* would have introduced a Subordinate Sentence.

Therefore it must be borne in mind that the answer to the question (6) How? When? Why? &c., may be conveyed by a Subordinate Sentence introduced by a Conjunction, because, though, when, in order that, &c.: and this Subordinate Sentence must be taken to pieces in the same way as the Principal Sentence.

N.B.—A Subordinate Sentence may sometimes be the Subject or Object of the Principal Verb, e.g. "incertum est (or nescio) num locus a positu nomen adeptus fuerit," it is uncertain whether the place obtained its name from its position: here *est* (or *nescio*) is the Principal Verb, and has for its Subject (or Object) "num . . . fuerit."

¹ Possibly, *loci* may be transposed, as is sometimes done in poetry, and may be dependent on *positu*: from the position of the place.

II.—RULES FOR THE CASES.

In order to answer the question *What Case?* it is not enough, for example, to say that “*loci* is Genitive because it means *of the place*;” the pupil must say “Genitive Case, governed by *nomen* (or *positu*).” In other words, the pupil *must give the Rule*.

The Rules for the Cases are as follows:—

1. NOMINATIVE.

1. *The Subject of a Verb.*
2. *In Apposition* to another Nominative.
3. *The Complementary Nominative* (Par. 260).
4. *By connection*, i.e. because it is connected with another Nom. by some Conjunction, *quam*, *vel*, *et*, &c.

2. ACCUSATIVE.

1. *The Subject of an Infinitive* (Par. 208, 209).

2. *The Object of a Verb.*

This includes the Accusative (often called *Cognate Accusative*) found after some Intransitive Verbs, when the Verb and Noun are of kindred, i.e. *Cognate* meaning, e.g. “*ludo ludum*,” *I play a game*; “*eo viam*,” *I go my way*.

3. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 183).

4. *In Apposition* to another Accusative (Par. 123).

* 5. *The Accusative of Respect* (or *the Accusative of the Part affected*).

This is more common in poetry than in prose, especially with Passive Participles: “*tectus cālīgīnē vultum*,” *covered with darkness as to his features*.

6. *The Accusative of Extension* of (a) time or (b) space (Par. 262).

* This mark denotes a construction more common in poetry than in prose.

7. The *Accusative of Place Whither* (towns and small islands, Par. 249).

8. The *Exclamatory Accusative*: “**me miserum!**” *wretch that I am!* “**O sortem infelicem,**” *O, unhappy fate!* (206).

9. The *Double Accusative* (after Verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*) : Par. 312.

10. The (a) *Primary* and (b) *Complementary Accusative* : see Par. 259.

We thought you a second Cato. Alterum **te Catonem** putabamus.

They will create you king. **Te regem** creabunt.

Here the person (**te**) is (a) the *Primary Object* of the Verb, and requires (b) a *Complementary Accusative*, **Catonem** or **regem**, to make the meaning complete.¹

* 11. An *Adverbial Accusative* is sometimes formed from the Neuter of an Adjective, especially in poetry : “**torva tuens,**” *looking grimly*; “**dulce ridentem Lalagen,**” *Lalage sweetly laughing.*

3. THE DATIVE.

1. *Of the Remote Object* : after Verbs of *giving, pleasing, helping, obeying*, and their opposites (Par. 142); also after Verbs Compounded of Prepositions (Par. 192); after many Adjectives signifying *nearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.,* and their opposites (Pars. 27, 90, 112).

* 2. *Of Advantage or Disadvantage* (sometimes called “*Commodi et Incommodi*”):

Thou sorwest for thyself. **Tibi** seris.

We desire office for thee. **Tibi** honores optamus.

This construction should be rarely employed by beginners in Latin Prose.

¹ In the *Public School Grammar* this is called the Oblique Double Accusative with Factive Verb.

3. *Of Purpose* (Par. 268): often accompanied by the *Dat. of Advantage* or *Disadvantage*, or some other Dative:

He came for a help to us.

Venit **auxilio** (*Dat. of P.*)

nobis (*Dat. of Advantage*).

He gave this for a present to me.

Hoc mihi (*Dat. of Recipient.*)

dono (*Dat. of P.*) dedit.

4. *Of the Recipient used for the Agent*, found only with Perfect Passive, Passive Participles, especially Gerundives (Par. 168), and Verbals in -*bilis*.¹

I have now made up my mind.

Mihi jam consilium captum est.

4. THE ABLATIVE (Par. 273—280).

1. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 178).

This includes the Ablative of the Agent with **a** or **ab**.

2. *Of the Instrument* (Par. 8).

3. *Of the Measure of Excess or Defect* (Par. 274).

4. *Of Definite Price* (Par. 273).

5. *Of Manner* (Par. 276).

This requires an Adjective joined to the Noun (Par. 181), except with a few Adverbial Ablatives: **nomine**, *in name*; **re**, or **re ipsa**, *in fact*; **verbo**, *in word*; **specie**, *in appearance*; **jure**, *rightly*; **neque injuria**, *and not unnaturally*; **recte atque ordine**, *in due course*; **via atque ratione**, *methodically*; **vi**, *forcibly*; **dolo**, *craftily*.

6. *Of Quality*.

This also requires an Adjective (Par. 281).

7. *Of the Point of Time* (Par. 30, 263).

8. *Of Comparison* (Par. 63).

9. *Absolute* (Par. 196).

¹ The poets use this Construction with Tenses not derived from the Perfect.

I am scarce heard by any. Vix audior ulli.—Ovid.

10. Used with **dignus**, **indignus**, **fretus** (Par. 28, 278).¹
11. Object of **fungor**, **fruor**, **utor**, **potior** (Par. 207).
12. (a) *Of Plenty and Want*; (b) with “*opus est*,” “*usus est*”; see Par. 279.
13. *Of the Place Where* (with towns and small islands in the Third Declension, and in the Plural of the First and Second Declension); see Par. 265.
- * 14. *A Poetic Local Ablative*, where Prose writers would insert the Preposition **in**.
15. *Of the Place Whence* (of all towns and small islands); see Par. 265.
- * 16. *Of Separation* (after a few words, mostly legal, “*abdico me magistratu*,” *I resign my office*; “*moveo te senatu*,” *I expel you from the senate*”).
- Most of the Verbs (Par. 8) which allow an *Abl. of Separation* in Poetry require or allow a Preposition in Prose.
17. *Of Origin*, after **natus**, **ortus**, **genitus**, **satus**, **cretus**.

5. THE GENITIVE.

Genitives may be divided into two large classes, those in which the Gen. can be readily replaced (i.) by a Subject; (ii.) by an Object. The former are called *Subjective*; the latter, *Objective*.

Thus “*injuriae *Æduorum**” may mean (i.) “wrongs inflicted by the *Ædui*” (*i.e.* “the *Ædui* wronged some one”), a *Subjective Genitive*; but it may mean (ii.) “wrongs inflicted on the *Ædui*” (*i.e.* “some one wronged the *Ædui*”), an *Objective Genitive*.

¹ The Abl. after the Verbal Adjectives **contentus**, **fretus**, **onustus**, is really an Abl. of the Instrument.

(i.) THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Par. 281—292).

1. *The Possessive Genitive.*

The Noun governing this Genitive is often omitted (Par. 289) in such phrases as *it is the mark of, characteristic of, &c.*

2. *The Descriptive or Adjectival Genitive*; see Par. 282.

This may be illustrated by the English descriptive Adjective formed out of a Noun, *sun-light* (i.e. *sun's light*), *a pine forest*, &c. So in Latin: “*lauri nemus*,” *a laurel grove*;” *nomen regis*,” *the name of king* (or *the royal name*); *virtus constantiae*, *the virtue of constancy*.

3. *Of the charge*, after Verbs of accusing and condemning.

This is really governed by some Noun understood, as *crimine, nomine, causa, &c.*: see Par. 290.

4. *Of Quality* (Par. 282), *Value, or Indefinite Price* (Par. 283).5. *The Partitive Genitive* (Par. 91).

*6. A Genitive, in Poetry, often follows a Neuter (mostly Plural) used instead of a Noun: “*secreta silvarum*,” *the secret place of the woods*.

7. After some Verbs and Adjectives of *plenty* and *want* (285).¹

(ii.) THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

8. *Governed by a Noun.*

This Gen. must be rendered by different English Prepositions: *auri fames*, *hunger for gold*; *militiae vacatio, exemption from military service*; *remedium irae*, *remedy against anger*; *incitamenta periculi*, *incitements to peril*; *quies laborum*, *rest from evils*. (In writing Latin avoid this construction where it is ambiguous: *obsequium coelibus*,

¹ This is said (*Pub. Sch. Gr.* p. 420) to be a Partitive Genitive, and it would therefore fall under the head of Subjective, not Objective Genitives.

respect to a bachelor; praestantia animarum reliquarum, superiority to other souls.)

9. With *Verbal Adjectives and Present Participles used as Nouns* (Par. 288).

10. With *Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, and some Adjectives of desire* (Par. 287).

11. With *Impersonal Verbs* (as the Impersonal Object): see Par. 219.

12. With *Verbs of remembering and forgetting*: Par. 203.

13. An apparent Genitive, more properly called the *Locative Case in -i*, is used in the Second Declension to represent *Place Where*, of towns and small islands, and with a few other Nouns (Par. 265.)

6. ALL CASES.

N.B.—A Noun may be in any Case by (1) *Connection*, i.e. through being connected with some other Noun by a Conjunction, e.g. *quam, vel, et*; or by (2) *Apposition*.

APPENDIX IV.

PARSING TABLE.

The following Table shows how the different parts of speech should be parsed. The pupil is intended to use the Table, principally to show him how to parse *viva-voce*; but he may occasionally make similar Parsing Tables for himself in order to fill up the columns in writing.

“Rogāvérant cives ut urbs, incendio fērē dēlēta, a nostris restituērūt?”

ACCIDENCE.

SYNTAX.

Verb	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Conjugation.	Spine.	Voice.	Mood.	Tense.	Number.	Person.					
Noun or Pronom.	Nom. Sing.	Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Person.]	—	—	Agrees with what Nom.?	Has what Object?	Principle? or how dependent?	Why that Case?	
Adjective ..	Nom. S. of all Gend.	Nom. S. of all Gend.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Comp. Superl.]	—	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?	Governs what Noun or Pronoun?	Modifies what Verb?	Joins what?
Participle ..	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Conjugation.	Prof. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Spine.	Voice.	Tense.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?	Governs what Noun or Pronoun?	Modifies what Verb?	Joins what?
Preposition ..	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Adverb ..	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Conjunction ..	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

¹ (1) The Verb must have a Subject, which should always be stated in the Syntax; (2) it may be (a) Intransitive, or have (b) a Direct Object, or (c) an Indirect Object; (3) it may be (i) Principal, or (ii) Coordinate, or (iii) subordinate to another Verb; or, if Inf., (d) Subject or Object of some Verb, or Partial Object or Subject.

" Rogaverant."	<i>rogo</i>	-fro 1st	-āvī	-fūtum	Aet.	Indic.	Pluperf.	Pl.	3rd	Agrees with Nom. " gives," has for its Obj. the sentence " ut urbs ... restitu- rebar."
" Cives." <i>Nom.</i>	<i>civis</i>	civis	3rd	Masc.	Pl.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb " roga- vare."
" Ut."	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins " roga- varent" with " restitu- rebar."
Conjunction.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	To the Verb " resti- tuere."
" Urbs." <i>Nom.</i>	<i>urbs</i>	urbis	3rd	Prem.	Sing.	Nom.	—	—	—	Abl. of Instrument.
" Incendio." <i>Nom.</i>	<i>incendium</i>	-i	2nd	Neut.	Sing.	Abl.	—	—	—	Modifies " delecta."
" fere." <i>Adverb.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Agrees with " urbs."
" delecta." <i>Participle.</i>	<i>deleo</i>	-ēre 2nd	-ēvī	-ētum	Passive	Perf.	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	Governs the Abl. " nos- tris (hominibus)."
" a "	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Agrees with " homini- bus" under " Abl. of the Agent," governed by " a."
Preposition.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
" nostri." <i>Pronoun Adj.</i>	noster, -ra, -ruia	nostrī, -ac, -i	2nd	Masc.	Pl.	Abl.	no Compar.	Suprl.	—	—
" restituere."	<i>restituo</i>	-ō bri	-dū	-fūtum	Pass.	Suff.	Imperf.	Sing.	Act	(1) Agrees with its Nom. " urbs"; (2) bula- minate to " regnu- varent," Subjunctive nominative " ut."
Verb.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Rule. Verbs signifying ask, command, &c., take " ut" with the Subjunctive.

APPENDIX V.

LATIN GENDERS.

Fem. Nouns are in **black type**; *Neut.*, in CAPITALS; *Masculine* in ordinary type; (f. means sometimes *fem.*; m., sometimes *masc.*).

I.—BY TERMINATIONS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

FEMININE.¹

SECOND DECLENSION.

Masculine endings -er, -ir, -us. *Neuter endings* -UM.

Exceptions { alvus, cōlus (m.), dōmus, hūmus, vannus;
arctus,† ātōmus,† carbāsus,† diālectus,†
phārus,† PĒLAGUS,† VĪRUS, VULGUS.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Masculine Terminations.

-er, -or, -os.

-es increasing in the Genitive.

-o (when not -do, -go, -io).

Principal Exceptions.

-er]	linter	CĀDĀVER
	ĪTER	PĀPĀVER ²
	ŪBER	VĒR
	VERBER	
-or]	arbor	ÆQUOR
	CŪR	MARMOR
-os]	cōs	dōs
	ōs	ōs
	CHAOS†	ĒPOS†
-es]	compēs	mercēs
	mergēs	quiēs
	rēquiēs	sēgēs
	tēgēs	ās
-o]	cāro	ēchō†

¹ Excepting names of men and men's occupations, and national names, such as Scȳtha, a *Scythian*, pōeta, a poet &c.; for which see "Genders by Meaning" below. Add also the Greek-derived words cōmēta m., and plānēta m.

² Also some other names of vegetable products, as ĀCER, CĪCER, PĪPER, SĪLER, SĪSER, TŪBER, &c.

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

Feminine Terminations.

- do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, x.
- es, not increasing in the Genitive.
- s, preceded by a consonant.
- ūs (long) in words of more than one syllable.

Principal Exceptions.

-do]	cardo	cupido (f.)	ordo	
-go]	harpago	ligo	margo	
-io]	<i>concrete nouns, such as pāpilio.</i>			
	pūgio	ūnio		
-as]	as	ēlēphās†	vās	
	vās	FĀS	NĒFĀS	
-is]	amnis	anguis	axis	cassis (-is)
	caulis	cīnis	collis	clūnis
	crīnis	cūcūmis	ensis	fascis
	finis (f.)	follis	fūnis	fustis
	ignis	lāpis	mensis	orbis
	pānis	piscis	postis	pulvis
	sanguis	torris	unguis	vectis
	vermis			
-x]	āpex	cūlex	cōdex	cortex (f.)
	frūtex	grex	lātex	mūrex
	pollex	sīlex (f.)	thōrax	vertex
-es]	ācīnācēs			
ns, -ps, &c.]	bīdens (f.)	dens	fons	hydrops
	mons	pons	rūdens(f.)	

Neuter Terminations.

- C, -A, -T, -E, -L, -N.
- AR, -UR, -ŪS (*short*).
- ŪS (*long*) in monosyllable.

Principal Exceptions.

-L]	sāl	sōl
-N]	liēn	pectēn
	rēn	splēn
-UR]	für	furfür
	turtūr	vultūr
-ŪS]	lēpūs	pěcūs (udis)
-ŪS]	grūs m.)	sūs (m.)
	mūs	

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

MASCULINE.

Except ācus, īdus (pl.), mānus, portīcus, trībus.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

FEMININE.

Except diēs (*f. in Poets*), mērīdiēs.

II.—GENDERS REGULATED BY MEANING.

A.—MASCULINE.

Names of (1) men, (2) men's occupations, (3) months, (4) winds, (5) mountains, (6) rivers, (7) peoples.¹ The exceptions arise from the terminations, such as :—

Exceptions { (5) Aetna, Hybla, Īda ; Calpē, Cyllēnē, Rhō-dōpē; Alpēs (pl.); PĒLION and Plurals implying ranges (JŪGA) such as GARGĀRĀ, ISMĀRĀ, &c.; SŌRACTĒ.
 (6) Allia, and others in -ā, Lēthē, Styx.

B.—FEMININE.

Names of (1) women, (2) plants, (3) countries, (4) islands, (5) cities.²

Exceptions { (2) Nouns of Deel. 2, in -us and -er, e.g. ācanthus, ōleaster; Nouns in -UM, e.g. ĀPIUM; Nouns of 3rd Decl. in -ER, e.g. ĀCER, CĪCER, PĀPĀVER, PĪPER, SĪLER, SĪSER, and SŪBER; also RŌBUR and TŪS.
 The following are common : bālānus, cȳtīsus, lōtus, rūbus, spīnus.
 (3) Mase. Deel. 2, Pontus; Neut. Nouns. in -UM.
 (5) Mase. (a) all Plurals in -ī, e.g. Cōriōli; also (b) Cānōpus and Orchōmēnus; (c) Nouns in -as, -ant, e.g. Acrāgas, -antis; (d) several in -o, -on, e.g. Hippo, -ōnis; (e) a few in -us, -unt-, e.g. Pessīnus, -untis. Neut. (a) Nouns in -UM, -ON, -A (pl.) of Decl. 2; (b) most in -E, -UR, -OS of Decl. 3.

¹ These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) and, (2) hōmo, (3) mensis, (4) ventus, (5) mons, (6) flūviūs, (7) lōpūlus.

² These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) mūlier, (2) planta, (3) terra, (4) insūla, (5) urbs.

APPENDIX VI.

RULE FOR TURNING THE DAYS OF THE MONTH
FROM ENGLISH INTO LATIN.

In Latin the day of the month is reckoned not as in English, from the first day of the month but from (1) the *Nones*, i.e. the 5th or 7th of the current month; (2) the *Ides*, i.e. the 13th or 15th of the current month; (3) the *Kalends*, i.e. the first day of the *next* month.

The Latin terms are—

- (1) *Nōnae, -ārum* (f.), i.e. *nine days before the Ides*.¹
- (2) *Īdūs, -ūm* (f.), i.e. the *dividing days of the month, falling about the middle*.²
- (3) *Kālendae, -ārum* (f.), i.e. the *calling days* (Old Latin *calāre, proclaim*), the day when the order of the days of the month was *proclaimed to the people, the first day*.

There is *in every month* an interval of 8 days between the Nones and the Ides. The Nones are on the 5th, and the Ides on the 13th, in every month, except March, July, October and May; in which four months the Nones are on the 7th and the Ides on the 15th.

This is sometimes remembered from the rhyme:—

“In March, July, October, May,
The Nones are on the seventh day.”

I. When the day falls *between the first and the Nones*, or *between the Nones and the Ides*, the rule is (since the Romans reckoned inclusively) *Add one to the Nones or Ides and subtract the day*.

Thus, if the day be 4 March, add 1 to the Nones of March; $7 + 1 = 8$, subtract 4, the result is 4. This is written “*antē diem quartum Nōnas Martias*.”³

If the day be 11 April, add 1 to the Ides of April; $13 + 1 = 14$; subtract 11, the result is 3. This is written “*antē diem tertium Idus Apriiles*.”³

II. When the day falls *after the Ides*, the rule is (since here we are reckoning not from the last day of the month but from the day after that), *Add two to the total number of days in the month, and subtracting the day from the result, reckon from the Kalends of next month*.

Thus if the day be 20 January, add 2 to 31, and from 33 subtract 20, the result is 13 days before the Kalends of February: and this is written thus “*ante diem tertium dēcimum Kālendas Februārias*.”³

III. If the day is (a) *on*, or (b) *the day before*, the Nones, Ides or Kalends, it is expressed by (a) the Abl., or (b) *Pridie*, followed by the Acc.: (a) 7th of May, “*Nōnis Maiis*”; (b) 12th of June, “*Pridiē Idus Jūniias*”; 30th of June, “*Pridiē Kālendas Quintiles*”; 4th of August, *Pridiē Nōnas Sextiles*.

IV. Note that Adjectives, (and not Nouns in the Genitive) are used in each case. The Adjectives are, (“*antē diem—Kālendas, Nōnas, Īdus, Jānuārias, Februārias, Martias, Apriiles, Maias, Jūniias, Quintiles, Sextiles, Septembres, Octōbres, Nōvembres, Dēcembres*.”)

¹ We should say “*eight days before*”: but the Romans reckoned inclusively.

² This is the derivation commonly given from an Etruscan word *iduāre, divide*: but more probably from Sanscr. *indh-, idh-*, *kindle, enlighten, (indu, moon)* from being the days of *light*, the days of the full moon.

³ A rarer form is “*tertio, quarto, tertio dēcimo die antē*,” &c. The common construction cannot be explained except as a confusion.

APPENDIX VII.

ELEMENTARY RULES ON THE QUANTITY
OF SYLLABLES*As a Guide to Pronunciation.*

I.—GENERAL RULES.

1. Diphthongs (*aēs, brass*) and contracted syllables (*quīs* for *quiibus*) are long.
2. A vowel before another vowel (*moněo*) is short.
3. A vowel naturally short (*e.g. the a in čano, I sing*), when placed before two consonants (*e.g. in cantus, song*), is said to be *long by position*, and is long for the purposes of verse-making; but it is *pronounced* in the same way as the **a** in *cano*, so that *length by position does not affect pronunciation*.

II.—FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Final -ā is *long*: exceptions; Nom., Voc., and Acc. cases; also *ítā, quíā*.¹
2. Final -ě is *short*: exceptions: (1) Adverbs in -ě derived from Adj. in -us, -a, -um, as *maximě*, (save *běně, mǎlě, súperně*); (2) Abl. Sing. of 5th Decl.; (3) 2nd Pers. Sing. Imper. of 2nd Conj.; (4) ně, mě, tě, sě.
3. Final -í is *long*; but -i is mostly *short* in *míhǐ, tǐbǐ, ūbǐ, ūbǐ, sǐbǐ*, always in *nísǐ*.
4. Final -ō is *long*; but mostly *short* in *ěgō, mǒdō* (adv.) only.
5. Final -ū is *long*.
6. A vowel before -c is *long*; exceptions, *něc, dōněc, făc*.
7. A vowel is *short* before final -b, -d, -l, -n, -r, and t.²

¹ None but the more important exceptions are given to every rule.

² The quantities of syllables not final must be learned by experience; but the quantity of one word often helps the pupil to that of many derived words. For example, the short õ in *mōneō* determines the quantity in *admōneō, commōneō, mōnitus, -us, mōnitor, -ōris, monumentum, -i, &c.*: exceptions, *dǔcis, of a leader, dūco, I lead; sēdēs, a seat; sēdeo, I sit.*

8. **-ās** and **-ēs** are *long*: but nouns in **-es**, increasing the Genit., are short, *e.g.* **mīlēs**, **mīlītis**; and **ěs** (*thou art*) is *short*, both in **sum** and in its compounds.

9. **-īs** is *short*: exceptions (a) Plural Cases, *e.g.* **insūlīs**, **dōmīnīs**, **nōbīs**; (b) second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic., of fourth Conj., **audīs**; (c) **sīs** (Pres. Subj. of **sum**) and **vīs** (Pres. Indic. of **vōlo**), and their compounds, as well as **velīs**, **mālis**, **nōlīs**; (d) **vīs**, *violence*.

10. **-ōs** is *long*: exception, **ōs** (Gen. **ossis**).

11. **-ūs** is *short*: exceptions; (a) Gen. Sing., and Nom. and Acc. Pl., of Fourth Decl.; (b) nouns in **-us** which increase in the Gen. with a long penult, **virtūs**, **-ūtis**.

N.B.—It will be seen that (by Rules 7 and 9) many of the commonest monosyllables are short; **ōb**, **sūb**, **ād**, **āt**, **ēt**, **īd**, **īn**, **ān**, **vēl**, **pēr**, **tēr**, **vīr**; also **īs**, and **quīs**.

But although (according to Rule II. 2) **-quē**, **-vē**, and **-nē?** are short, **nē** *lest* is long, and so are the pronouns **mē**, **tē**, **se**. Also **cūr?** *why?* is long.

APPENDIX VIII.

ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

Ablative (Case) [L. *ab*, “from;” *latus*, “carried”]. The Case denoting, among other things, *ablation*, or *carrying away from* (8, 273).

Absolute (Construction) [L. *ab*, “from;” *solut-*, “loosed”]. A construction in which a Noun, Participle, &c., is supposed to be used apart, i.e. *loosed from*, its ordinary Grammatical adjuncts. But the *Abl. Absolute* is really an *Abl. of circumstance* (196).

Abstract (Noun) [L. *abs*, “from;” *tract-*, “drawn”]. The name of an *abstraction*, i.e. of something considered by itself, apart from (*drawn away from*) the circumstances in which it exists.

Accent [L. *ad*, “to;” *cantus*, “song”]. Perhaps originally a *sing-song*, or modulation of the voice, added to a syllable. Now used of stress laid on a syllable.

Accidence [L. *accident-*, “befall”]. That part of grammar which treats of the changes that *befall* words. (1); Quintilian I. 5, 41, “frequentissime in verbo quia plurina huic *accidunt*.”

Accusative (Case). 2. Probably a Latin mistake. The

Greek original meant (1) *cause*, (2) *accusation*. The Latins took it in sense (2) instead of (1). The Latin name for the Direct Objective Inflection. Possibly the Romans regarded the object as confronted with the agent, like an *accused* person with the prosecutor.

Active (Voice). The form of a Verb that usually denotes *acting* or doing.

Adjective [L. *ad*, “to;” *jact-*, “cast or put”]. A word *put to* a Noun.

Adverb [L. *ad*, “to;” *verb-*, “word” or “Verb”]. A word generally joined to a Verb.

Adversative [L. *adversus*, “opposite”]. An epithet applied to Conjunctions that (like “but”) express *opposition*.

Affix [L. *ad*, “to;” *fix-*, “fixed”]. A syllable or letter *fixed* to the end of a word.

Agreement. The change made in the inflections of words so that they may suit or agree with one another.

Alphabet [Gr. *alpha*, *beta*; “a,” “b”]. The list of letters, so called from the names

of the first two letters in Greek.

Anacolouthon [Gr. *a*, “not;” *acolouthon*, “following”]. A break in the Grammatical sequence, or *following*.

Anomaly. A Greek-formed word meaning “unevenness,” “irregularity.”

Antecedent [L. *ante*, “before;” *cedent*, “going”]. (a) That part of a sentence which expresses a condition. So called because the condition must *go before* its consequence. (b) Also used for the Noun that *goes before* a Relative Pronoun (107).

Apodosis [Gr. *apo-dosis*, “a paying back”]. A Greek name for the “Consequent,” or “Then-Clause,” in a Conditional Sentence (293). The Consequence was regarded as a sort of *debt*, to be *paid* in return for the fulfilment of the Condition.

Appellative [L. *appella*, “call to”]. A name for the *Vocative* or *calling* use of a noun.

Apposition [L. *ad*, “near;” *posit*, “placed”]. The *placing* of one noun in the same case with another noun or pronoun, to express some quality, or circumstance, of the latter (123).

Asyndeton [from Greek “not bound together.”] The placing of words together without a Conjunction: see Par. 32.

Attribute [L. *attribut*, “assigned”]. An Adj. assigned to qualify a Noun.

Cardinal (Numbers) [L. *cardin*, “hinge”]. That on which

anything *hinges* or turns: hence, “important.” A name given to those more *important* forms of Numeral Adjectives from which the Ordinal forms are derived.

Case [L. *casus*, “falling”]. The Latin translation of the Greek term for the forms of a Noun. The subjective form was regarded as “erect,” and the other forms as more or less *falling* away from it. Hence “oblique,” “decline,” &c.

Clause [L. *claus*-, “enclosed”]. A general term for a part of a Sentence, whether it be a Phrase or a Subordinate Sentence.

Cognate (Object) [L. *co*, “together;” (*g*)*nat*- “born”]. The name given to an object that denotes something *akin* to (*born together* with) the action denoted by the Verb.

Common (Noun). A name that is *common* to a class and not *peculiar* or *proper* to an individual.

Comparative (Degree). The form of an Adjective denoting that a quality exists in a greater degree in some one thing than in some other with which it is *compared*.

Complementary [L. *comple*- “fill up”]. That which completes, or *fills up*.

Complete (State). A name given to an action (whether Past, Present, or Future) that was, is, or will be *complete*.

Complex (Sentence) [L. *con*- “together;” *plic*-, “fold”]. A sentence that is *folded together*, or involved by con-

taining one or more Subordinate sentences.

Compound (Sentence) [L. *con*, or *com*, “together”; *pon-*, “place”]. A sentence made up of a number of Co-ordinate sentences *placed together*.

Concord. The name given to syntactical *agreement* between words, e.g. between Verb and Subject.

Conjugation [*con*, “together”; *jugatio*, “joining”]. A number of Verbs *joined* together in one class.¹

Conjunction [L. *con*, “together”; *unct-*, “joined”]. A word that *joins together* two sentences expressed or implied.

Consequent. The name given to that part of a Sentence which expresses the *consequence* of the fulfilment of a *condition*. See *Antecedent*.

Consecutive. The name sometimes given to a clause introd. by “ut” so that, expressing *result*, or *consequence*, of an *action*.

Consonant [L. *con*, “together”; *sonant-*, “sounding”]. Letters (such as *p*) that can only be sounded together with a vowel.

Coordinate [L. *co-*, “with”; *ordin-*, “rank”]. The name given to a Sentence that ranks with the Principal Sentence (334a): see Note following the Glossary.

Correlatives. Words that are *related together* or mutually related, e.g., “either,” “or;” “both,” “and;” “when,” “then.”

Dative [L. *dativus*,² “that which has arisen from giving”]. The Latin name for the Indirect Objective case used after Verbs of giving, &c. (192).

Declension. The bending or *declension* of the Oblique (see *Oblique* below) cases from the Subjective form, which was regarded as “erect.”

Defective (Verbs) [L. *deficio*, “I fail”]. Verbs that are *deficient* in some of their forms: see p. 215.

Degree (of comparison) [L. *gradus*, Fr. *degré*, “step”]. The forms expressing the *steps* or *degrees* in which a quality can be expressed by an Adjective.

Dependent (Sentence). Sometimes used for Subordinate. But generally applied to Subordinate sentences that are the Subjects or Objects of Verbs (208, 239).

Deponent (Verbs) [L. *deponens*, “laying aside”]. Verbs that retain an Active meaning, while *laying aside* Active forms: Par. 199.

Diæresis [Gr. *diæresis*, “separation”]. The mark placed over one of two vowels to show that each is to be

¹ Hence to *conjugate* a Verb is to repeat the inflections belonging to the class or *conjugation*. But the Romans used *decline* and not *conjugate* in this sense (Madvig).

² Termination *-ivus* in Latin, when added to Participles, denotes that which has arisen from, e.g. “*captivus*,” that which has arisen from “capture.”

- pronounced *separately*, e.g. in "aërial."
- Diphthong [Gr. *di*, "twice;" *phthongos*, "sound"]. Two vowel sounds pronounced as one.
- Direct (Object). The Noun that denotes what is regarded as the *direct object* of the action of a Verb.
- Ellipsis [Gr. *elleipsis*, "omission"]. The *omission* of words (said to be "understood" i.e. implied) in a Sentence.
- Enclitics [Gr. "lean on"]. Words that cannot stand without *leaning on*, and being attached to, the words before them, e.g. -quē, -vē, -nē.
- Epithet [Gr. *epithetos*, "placed to"]. An Adjective *placed to* a Noun to describe some quality of the person or thing denoted by the Noun.
- Final [L. *finis*, "end"]. A *final* clause expresses an *end or purpose*; and "ut" *final* ("in order that") is distinguished from "ut" *consecutive* ("so that") (296).
- Finite (Verb). A name given to those parts of the Verb which are *defined* by Number and Person, as distinct from the *Infinitive* or *Infinite*.
- Frequentative (Verb). A Verb that expresses a *frequently repeated action*, e.g. "venitio," *I often come*.
- Gender [L. *genus*, Fr. *genre*, "breed," or "class"]. Forms to denote classification according to sex.
- Genitive (Case) [L. *genitiv-*, "generating"]. The Case denoting *generation, origination, possession* (282).¹
- Gerund [L. *gero*, "I carry on"]. Part of the Verb denoting the *carrying on* of the action of the Verb. The *Gerundive* is Adjectival, the *Gerund* is a Noun (163, 170, 251).
- Gutturals [L. *guttur*, "throat"]. *Throat letters*, *k*, and hard *g*.
- Historic Infinitive. The Infinitive used for the Indicative, as is sometimes the case in rapid *historical narrative*: see Par. 320.
- Idiom [Gr. *idioma*, "peculiarity"]. A mode of expression *peculiar* to a language.
- Imperative (Mood). [L. *impera-*, "command"]. The *commanding Mood* (129).
- Impersonal (Verbs). Verbs not used with a *Personal Subject*: see Par. 219.
- Indicative (Mood). [L. *indica-*, "point out"]. The Mood that *points out* or *indicates* an action, &c., as a past, present, or future existence.
- Indirect (Object). The Noun or Pron. denoting the person or thing regarded as not directly but only *indirectly* influenced by the action of the Verb (192).
- Infinitive (Mood) [L. *in*, "not;" *finit-*, "limited"]. A Mood *not limited* by any definition of Person or Number.
- Inflection. [L. *inflecto*, "I

¹ The Latin "genitivus" is a mistranslation of the Greek *genike*, which meant the *generic case* i.e. the case that denoted the *genus* or *class*. For example "life," "What class of life?" "Man's life."

- bend "]. The *bending* of a word from the simple form, by means of varying the termination. See *Oblique*.
- Interjection** [L. *inter-ject-*, "thrown between"]. An utterance *thrown in between* words, to express emotion.
- Intransitive (Verb)**. [L. *in*, "not"; *transitiv-*, "passing across"]. A Verb whose action is not supposed to *pass across* to any Object.
- Labials** [L. *labium*, "lip"]. *Lip-letters*: *f*, *v*, *p*, *b*, *m*, *hw* and *w*.
- Linguals** [Latin *lingua*, "the tongue"]. Letters whose sounds are produced by the tongue: *sh*, *s* in pleasure.
- Locative (Case)** [L. *locus*, "place"]. A case expressing *place* (Par. 265).
- Liquids**. Letters of a flowing, *liquid* sound, as *l*, *r*.
- Monosyllable** [Gr. *mono*, "only"]. A word of *only one* syllable.
- Mood** [L. *mod-*, "manner"]. The form of a Verb expressing the *manner* of action.
- Mutes** [L. *mut-*, "dumb"]. Letters that are *dumb* without the aid of a vowel: *k*, *g*, *t*, *d*, *p*, *b*.
- Nasal** [L. *nas-*, "nose"]. Consonants sounded through the nose; *n*, *m*.
- Neuter (Gender)**. [L. *neuter*, "neither"]. That Gender which is *neither* Masc. nor Feminine.
- Nominative (Case)** [L. *nomina-*, "to name"]. A Latin term for the Subject, because the Subject was regarded as a person or thing *named*.
- Noun** [L. *nomen*, Fr. *nom*, "name"]. The *name* of anything.
- Object**. The word, or group of words, denoting that which is regarded as the *object* or mark aimed at by the action of Verbs or the motion of Prepositions.
- Oblique (Case)**. A name given to all Cases but the Subjective. By the Greeks the Subjective form of a Noun was regarded as *erect*, and all the other forms as *fallings* or *oblique* deviations from the Subjective.
- Oblique (Speech)**. Speech reported, not *directly* in the First Person with the exact words of the speaker, but *indirectly* or *obliquely* in the Third Person.
- Ordinal (Adjective)** [L. *ordin-*, "order"]. An Adjective, that answers to the question "in what *order*?"
- Palatals**. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *palate*: *ch*, *j*.
- Participle** [L. *particip-*, "participating"]. A form of a Verb *participating* in a Verb and an Adjective.
- Particle**. A "little part": a name given to the four un-declined "parts of speech," Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection and Preposition.
- Partitive (Genitive)**. A Genitive implying *partition* (91).
- Passive (Voice)**. A form of the Verb expressing *passiveness* rather than *activeness*.
- Perfect (Tense)** [L. *perfect-*, "complete"]. The Name

for the Latin Tense that has to represent (1) our Indef. Past, (2) our Complete Present.

Period [Gr. *peri*, “round” ; *od-*, “path”]. (1) The full, rounded path of a complex sentence, (2) a mark at the end of a sentence.

Person [L. *per*, “through” ; *son-*, “sound” ; hence, *persona* “a mask through which an actor sounds ;” “an actor’s part in a play”]. The part played in conversation, (1) speaking; (2) spoken to; (3) spoken of.

Phrase [Gr. *phrasis*, a “saying”]. A group of words not expressing a statement, question, or command.

Pluperfect (Tense) [L. *plu-*, “more ;” *perfect-*, “complete”]. A more than complete Tense. The Latin equivalent of our Complete Past (121).

Plural (Number) [L. *plu-*, “more”]. The form denoting more than one.

Polysyllable [Gr. *poly*, “many”]. A word of many syllables.

Positive. The simple form of an Adjective ; so-called because it expresses a quality not comparatively, but positively.

Possessive [L. *possess-*, “possessed”]. The name given to the use or case of a Noun denoting possession.

Predicate [L. “*praedica-*,” “proclaim,” “state”]. A word or group of words

making a statement about a Subject.

Prefix [L. *prae*, “before ;” *fix-*, “fixed”]. A letter, syllable, or word fixed before another word.

Preposition [L. *prae*, “before ;” *posit-*, “placed”]. A Word (not a Verb) generally placed before a Noun or Pronoun as its Object. N.B. A Preposition and its Object make up an Adverbial Phrase.

Pronoun [L. *pro*, “for ;” L. *nomen*, “noun”]. A word used for a Noun.

Proper (Noun). [L. *propri-*, F. *propre*; “peculiar”]. A name that is peculiar or proper to the individual, not common to a class.

Prose [L. *prosa*, for *prorsa*, for *pro-versa*,¹ i.e. “turned forward”]. Writing that does not turn like *verses* but runs straight on. Hence, the straightforward arrangement of prose.

Prosody [Gr. *prosodia*, a “song”]. Hence, that part of Grammar which treats of verse, whether intended to be sung or not.

Protasis [Gr. *pro*, “before ;” *tasis*, “stretching”]. Literally, stretching before. Hence, in a sentence, the Antecedent or Condition. See *Apodosis*.

Punctuation [L. *punctum*, “point”]. Dividing a sentence by means of points representing the pauses.

Quantity. The quantity of time necessary to pronounce a syllable.

¹ Compare our *e'er*, *o'er* for *ever*, *over*.

Reduplication. The *reduplicating* or *redoubling* of a syllable, mostly found (but with some change) in a few Latin Perfects, e.g. "tendo," "te-tendi."

Reflexive (Pronoun) [reflexus, "bent back"]. A Pronoun which is as it were *bent back* on the Subject, so that the Pronoun and the Subject denote the same person or thing.

Relative (Pronoun) [L. *re*, "back;" *lat-*, "carried"]. A name given to *qui*, *quae*, &c., when used not Interrogatively to carry one forward, but to *carry* one *back* to the Antecedent.

Root. A word that gives birth to a group of kindred words, as a *root* to branches.

Sentence [L. *Sententia*, a "meaning"]. A group of words of *meaning* so complete as to express a statement, question, or command.

Sibilant L. [sibila-, hiss]. *Hissing* letters: *s*, *z*, *sh*.

Stem. That part of a word which remains the same when the word is inflected.

N.B.—The True Stem of a word is sometimes concealed by changes, e.g. the "o" which is part of the True Stem of "dominus" is lost in almost all the Cases. Hence the Stem of "dominus" as printed in Par. 12 appears to be "domin-." This false Stem, which is obtained by clipping the True Stem of its final vowel, is sometimes called the Clipt Stem. (Par. 55, note 1.)

Subject [L. *subject-*, "placed

under"]. That which is *placed under* one's thoughts, as the basis for speech. Hence, the Subject of a Verb is that about which the Verb makes a statement (127).

Subjunctive (Mood) [L. *subjunct-*, "subjoined"]. A Mood expressing a purpose, condition, &c., *subjoined* to some statement, question, or answer.

Subordinate (Sentence) [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *ordin-*, "rank"]. See Note p. 239.

Substantive (Noun) [L. *substantia*, "substance"]. A name given to Nouns, perhaps as being the *substance* or *ground standing beneath* the Adjective. It is from a Greek term, applied not to Nouns but to the *Substantive Verb*, "to be."

Suffix [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *fix-*, "fixed"]. Same as *Affix*.

Supine. A name given to two very rarely used Noun forms of the Verb used only in the Accusative and Ablative. Its origin is unknown, but it may at least serve to remind the pupil that these forms are the laziest and most *supine* of all the parts of the Verb: see Par. 246, 247.

Superlative (degree) [L. *super*, "above;" *lat-*, "carried"]. An Adjectival form denoting the expression of a quality in a degree *carried above* other degrees.

Syllable [Gr. *syn*, "together;" *lab-*, "take"]. A group of letters *taken together* so as to form one sound.

Syntax [Gr. *syn*, "together;"

taxis, "arranging"]. The arrangement of words together in a sentence.

Temporal (Clause) [L. *tempus*, "time"]. An Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of time.

Tense [L. *tempus*, Fr. *temps*, "time"]. The forms of a Verb indicating the time of an action.

Transitive [L. *trans*, "across;" *it*, "going"]. A Verb that has an Object, so called

because the action of the Verb is regarded as passing or going across to the Object.

Verb [L. *verb-*, "word"]. The chief word in a sentence.

Vocative [L. *voca-*, "call"]. The use, or Case, of a Noun when the person or thing is called to.

Vowels [L. *vocalis*, "having voice"]. The letters that have a voice or are sounded (not as the "consonants but) by themselves: *a, e, i, o, u*.

NOTE ON SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Subordinate Sentences are those which express some (1) **Noun**, (2) **Adjective**, or (3) **Adverb** in another Sentence called the Principal Sentence.¹

(1) (**Noun**) { (a) (Subject.) "WHEN *he-will-come* is uncertain." (b) (Object.) "I say THAT *he-will-come*."

(2) (**Adjective.**) "The battle *that-was-fought at Cannæ* was gained by Hannibal."

(3) (**Adverb.**) (a) (When?) "WHEN *he-had-heard-this* he departed"; (b) (Why?) "I will strive THAT *you-may-succeed*"; (c) (How?) "He behaved so gently THAT *he-surprised-everybody*"; (d) (Where?) "WHERE *the-Turk's-horse-goes*, nothing grows."

For a list of the Principal Subordinate and Coordinate Conjunctions see Par. 334a.

¹ A Subordinate Sentence (called also a Subordinate Clause) is sometimes defined as one that is "constructively dependent" on another Sentence. If this definition were adopted, a sentence in the Subjunctive preceded by "antequam" would be Subordinate, while the same sentence in the Indicative, preceded by "antequam," would not be Subordinate.

APPENDIX IX.

VOCABULARIES.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>adj.</i>	= adjective	<i>m.</i>	= masculine
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb	<i>n.</i>	= neuter
<i>c.</i>	= common gender	<i>pl.</i>	= plural
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction	<i>prep.</i>	= preposition
<i>f.</i>	= feminine	<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive	<i>sing.</i>	= singular
<i>indec.</i>	= indeclinable	<i>v.</i>	= verb
<i>inter.</i>	= interrogative		

EXERCISE I.

ăqua, *f.* water
 ăquila, *f.* eagle
 filia, *f.* daughter
 insula, *f.* island
 nauta, *m.* sailor
 pěcūnia, *f.* money
 püella, *f.* girl
 rēgīna, *f.* queen

viōlentia, *f.* violence
 āmat, *v.* loves
 dāt, *v.* gives
 lāvat, *v.* washes
 libērat, *v.* frees, delivers
 monstrat, *v.* points out, shews
 sūpērat, *v.* overcomes
 vōrat, *v.* devours
 ēt . . . ēt, *conj.* both . . . and

EXERCISES II.—VI.

constantia, *f.* constancy
 culpa, *f.* blame, fault
 dextra, *f.* right hand
 expēriēntia, *f.* experience
 fēmīna, *f.* woman
 intempērantia, *f.* intemperance
 īra, *f.* anger
 pātientia, *f.* patience
 patria, -ae, *f.* native land
 prōcella, *f.* storm
 prūdentia, *f.* prudence
 sāpiēntia, *f.* wisdom
 stella, *f.* star

EXERCISE VII.

dōmīnus, *m.* lord, owner
 ēquus, *m.* horse
 filiūs, *m.* son
 flūvius, *m.* river
 glādius, *m.* sword
 hortus, *m.* garden
 māgister, *m.* master (mostly teacher)
 mīna, *f.* threat
 mīnister, *m.* seruant, attendant
 servus, *m.* slave
 hābet, *v.* has
 tīmet, *v.* fears
 terret, *v.* terrifies, frightens

EXERCISES VIII.—XI.

- āger, *m. field*
 agnēcōla, *m. husbandman*
 āper, *m. boar*
 arbīter, *m. umpire*
 Auster, *m. south wind*
 cancer, *m. crab*
 cāper, *m. goat*
 cōlūber, *m. snake*
 culter, *m. knife*
 fāber, *m. artificer, workman*
 gēner, *m. son-in-law*
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
 invīdiā, -ae, *f. envy*
 liber, *m. book*
 Liber, *m. Liber, the god of wine*
 libēri, *m. pl. children*
 pūer, *m. boy*
 sōcer, *m. father-in-law*
 vesper, *m. evening*
 vīr, *m. man, hero*
 culpat, *v. blames*
 laudat, *v. praises*
 nēque, or nēc, *conj. and not, neither*
 nōn, *adv. not*
 ā (āb before vowels or h), *prep. by*
 sūpērantur, *terrentur, see p. 11*

EXERCISE XII.

- argentum, *n. silver*
 arvum, *n. cornfield*
 aurum, *n. gold*
 dīlēgentiā, *f. diligence*
 dēnum, *n. gift*
 mūrus, *m. wall*
 Neptūnus, *m. Neptune*
 oppīdum, *n. town*
 porta, -ae, *f. gate*
 praemüm, *n. reward*
 terra, *f. land*
 templum, *n. temple*
 dēlectat, *v. delights, charms*

EXERCISE XIII.

- aurīga, *m. charioteer*
 bōnus, -a, -um, *good*
 dīrus, -a, -um, *terrible*
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 ēpistūla, -ae, *f. letter*
 impāvidus, -a, -um, *fearless*
 imprōbus, -a, -um, *dishonest*
 injūstus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 jussum, *n. command*
 justus, -a, -um, *just*
 magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*
 parvus, -a, -um, *little, small*
 pāvidus, -a, -um, *fearful*
 pēlāgus, *n. sea*
 pērīcūlum, *n. danger*
 prōbus, -a, -um, *honest*
 scribā, *m. scribe, clerk*
 splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid*
 strēnūs, -a, -um, *vigorous*
 tīmidus, -a, -um, *timid*
 vastus, -a, -um, *vast*
 vīa, *f. way*

EXERCISES XIV. AND XV.

- aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, ailing*
 āla, *f. wing*
 albus, -a, -um, *white*
 altus, -a, -um, *high, tall*
 Brītannia, *f. Britain*
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*
 impīger, -gra, -grum, *active*
 incōlā, *m. inhabitant*
 lātus, -a, -um, *broad*
 mācer, -era, -erum, *lean*
 miser, -era, -erum, *wretched*
 morbus, *m. disease*
 nīger, -gra, -grum, *black*
 pīger, -gra, -grum, *lothful*
 pōcta, -ae, *m. poet* [perous
 prosper, -pēra, -pērum, *pros-*
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beauti-*
ful
 rūber, -bra, -brum, *red*
 sacer, -era, -erum, *sacred*

stultitia, -ae, *f. folly*
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*
 taeter, -tra, -trum, *foul*
 väfer, -fra, -frum, *cunning*
 välidus, -a, -um, *strong*
 verbum, -i, *n. word*
 est, *v. (he) is; (there) is*
 sunt, *v. (they) are; (there) are*

EXERCISE XVI.

äcūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*
 aestas, aestatis, *f. summer*
 arx, arcis, *f. citadel*
 bellum, -i, *n. war*
 clārus, -a, -um, *renowned*
 cōmēs, cōmītis, *m. companion*
 dignus, -a, -um, *worthy* (*g. abl.*)
 dux, dūcis, *m. leader*
 ēquiēs, ēquitis, *m. horse-soldier*
 fessus, -a, -um, *weary*
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*
 ignāvia, -ac, *f. sloth, cowardice*
 impērātor, -ōris, *m. general*
 indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*
 ingrātus, -a, -um, *displeasing*
 injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 jucundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*
 jūdex, jūdicis, *m. judge*
 lāpis, -idis, *m. stone*
 lēx, lēgis, *f. law*
 mālus, -a, -um, *bad*
 mēmōria, *f. memory, recollection*
 mīlēs, mīlitis, *m. soldier*
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
 nox, noctis, *f. night*
 obscērus, -a, -um, *dark*
 pēdēs, pēditis, *m. foot-soldier*
 pēs, pēdis, *m. foot*
 rēx, rēgis, *m. king*
 sīnister, -tra, -trum, *left*
 spīna, -ae, *f. thorn*
 verbum, -i, *n. word*
 dēlectat, *v. (he) delights*
 laedit, *v. hurts*

EXERCISE XVII.

annus, -i, *m. year*
 člēphās, elephantis, *m. elephant*
 fērus, -a, -um, *savage*
 grus, grūis, *c. crane*
 hiemps, hīemis, *f. winter*
 hōmo, hōmīnis, *m. human being*
 hōra, -ae, *f. hour*
 lēo, lēonis, *m. lion*
 longitūdo, -tūdīnis, *f. length*
 longus, -a, -um, *long*
 mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
 multitūdo, -tūdīnis, *f. multitude*
 multus, -a, -um, *many, much*
 pāpīlio, pāpīlōnis *m. butterfly*
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*
 princeps, principis, *m. chief*
 terra, -ae, *f. land*
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*
 virgo, virgīnis, *f. maiden*
 vivit, -unt, *v. (he) lives, (they) live*

EXERCISE XVIII.

ämīcus, -i *m. friend*
 ämor, ämoris, *m. love*
 anser, ansēris, *m. goose*
 arbor, arbōris, *f. tree*
 causa, -ae, *f. cause*
 cīnīs, cīnēris, *m. ashes*
 clāmor, clāmōris, *m. clamour*
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright, renowned*
 cōlor, cōlōris, *m. colour*
 consul, consūlis, *m. consul*
 flōs, flōris, *m. flower*, [able
 frāter, -tris, *m. brother*
 frīgidus, -a, -um, *cold*
 injūcundus, -a, -um, *disagreement*
 jussum, -i, *n. command*
 māter, mātris, *f. mother*
 öcūlus, -i, *m. eye*
 pāter, patris, *m. father*
 pāncus, -a, -um, *(mostly pl.) few*
 sēpulcrum, -i, *n. sepulchre*
 tīmor, timōris, *m. fear*
 vōx, vōcis, *f. voice*

EXERCISE XIX.

cāpūt, cāp̄tis, *n. head*
 carinen, carmīnis, *n. poem, song*
 cībus, -i, *m. food*
 corpus, corpōris, *n. body*
 Dēus, -i, *m. God*
 doctrīna, -ae, *f. learning*
 factum, -i, *n. deed*
 frūtex, frūticis, *m. shrub*
 fulmen, fulmīnis, *n. lightning
 (that strikes)*
 jūs, jūris, *n. right or law*
 longus, -a, -um, *long* [chant
 mercātor, mercatōris, *m. mer-
 nōmen, nōmīnis, *n. name**
 mens, mentis, *f. mind, under-
 standing*
 ōpus, ōpēris, *n. work*
 pōēta, -ae, *m. poet*
 scēlus, scēlēris, *n. crime*
 sīdus, sīdēris, *n. star*
 verber, verbēris, *n. lash, stripe*
 -quē, *conj. and*
 ērat, *v. (he) was; there (was)*
 ērant, *v. (they) were; (there) were*

EXERCISE XX.

ānímal, ānímālis, *n. animal*
 āvidus, -a, -um, *greedy*
 aurēus, -a, -um, *golden*
 Britannus, -i, *m. adj. used as
 noun, a Briton*
 calcar, calcāris, *n. spur*
 certāmen, certāmīnis, *n. contest,
 strife*
 cīvis, cīvis, *m. citizen*
 cīvitas, cīvitātis, *f. state,
 country, citizenship*
 crēber, -bra, -brum, *repeated,
 frequent*
 dēcus, dēcōris, *n. honour*
 exitiūm, -i, *n. destruction*
 ferrum, -i, *n. iron, sword* [rage
 fūror, fūrōris, *m. madness,*

gens, gentis, *f. nation*
 gēnus, gēneris, *n. kind, race*
 hostis, hostis, *m. enemy; oft.
 pl. in Lat. where Eng. is
 sing.; hostiūm castra, the
 camp of the enemy*
 ignāvus, -a, -um, *lothful*
 ignis, ignis, *abl., -i, m. fire*
 imber, imbris, *abl., -i, m. shower*
 māre, māris, *n. sea*
 nāvis, nāvis, *f. ship*
 notūs, -a, -um, *known*
 nūbēs, nūbis, *f. cloud*
 ūs, ūris, *n. mouth, countenance*
 ūs, ossis, *n. bone*
 pastor, pastōris, *m. shepherd*
 rāpidus, -a, -um, *rapid*
 rōbur, robōris, *n. strength*
 saevus, -a, -um, *fierce*
 tempestās, -tātis, *f. tempest*
 tōtus, -a, -um, *whole*
 urbs, urbīs, *f. city*
 nēque . . . nēque, *conj. neither
 . . . nor*
 saepē, *adv. often*
 consūmit, *v. (he) consumes*

EXERCISE XXI.

ācer, *m. ācrīs, f. ācre, n. keen*
 ānímus, -i, *m. mind*
 audāx, *gen. audācis, bold*
 cēlēr, *m. cēlēris, f. celērē, n.
 swift*
 consiliūm, -i, *n. plan* [gent
 dilīgens, *gen. dilīgentis, diligent*
 divēs, *gen. divītis, rich*
 dulcis, *m. & f. dulce, n. sweet*
 ēquester, *m. -tris, f. -tre, n.
 equestrian*
 fērāx, *gen. ferācis, fruitful*
 fēlix, *gen. fēlicis, happy*
 fortis, *m. & f., forte, n. brave*
 infēlix, *gen. infēlicis, unhappy*
 insignis, *m. & f. insigne, n.
 distinguished, illustrious*

läbor, läbōris, *m. labour*
laetitia, -ae, *f. joy*
laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*
měl̄or, *m. & f. měl̄ius*, *n. better*
mors, mortis, *f. death*
prūdens, *gen. prūdentis*, *prudent*
säl̄über, *m. -bris*, *f. -bre*, *n.*
healthful
săpiens, *gen. săpiēntis*, *wise*
sēdītio, sēdītōnis, *f. sedition*
tergum, -i, *n. back*
tristis, *m. & f. triste*, *n. sad*
tristior, *m. & f. tristius*, *n.*
sadder
verber, -ěris, *n. lash, stripe*
vestis, -is, *f. garment*
vīta, -ae, *f. life*

EXERCISE XXII.

'almus, -a, -um, *loving*
ätrōx, *gen. ätrōcis*, *stern, gloomy*
äter, -tra, -trum, *dark, black*
bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*
brēvis, *m. & f. brēve*, *n. short*
cōhors, cōhortis, *f. a cohort, the*
tenth part of a Roman legion
fāma, -ae, *f. reputation, fame*
fēritās, fēritātis, *f. savageness*
hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
infirmus, -a, -um, *weak*
iñliōnestus, -a, -um, *dishonour-*
able
irācundus, -a, -um, *angry*
omnis, *m. & f. omne*, *n. all, the*
whole
poenitentia, -ae, *f. penitence*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first*
sēnex, sēnis, *m. old man*
tēner, -éra, -ērum, *tenuer*
turpis, *m. & f. turpe*, *n. dis-*
graceful, base
vētus, *gen. vētēris*, *old*

vīnum, -i, *n. wine*
virtūs, virtūtis, *f. virtue*
vītūm, -i, *n. vice*
quem, *pron. acc. m. whom?*
quis, *pron. nom. n. who?*

EXERCISE XXIII.

ăeūs, -ūs, *f. needle*¹
adversus, -a -um, *adverse*
arcus, -ūs, *bow*
audītus, -ūs, *hearing*
Caesar, āris, *m. Caesar*
cervus, -i, *m. stag*
cōpia, -ae, *f. plenty*
cornū, -ūs, *n. horn*
cursus, -ūs, *m. running, course*
dīgitus, -i, *m. finger* [ferent
dīversus, -a, -um, *diverse, dif-*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*
fructus, -ūs, *m. fruit*
frūmentum, *n. corn*
gēlū, -ūs, *n. frost*
gēnū, -ūs, *n. knee*
glans, glandis, *f. acorn*
mīliēr, mīliēris, *f. woman*
myrtus, -i or -ūs, *f. myrtle*
permītōsus, -a, -um, *destructive*
pīnus, -ūs, or -i, *f. pine-tree*
plebs, plēbis, *f. the common*
people
portus, -ūs, *m. harbour*
querens, -ūs, *f. oak*
rāmus, -i, *m. branch*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*
sāgitta, -ae, *f. arrow* [perous
sēcundus, -a, um, *second, pros-*
sinister, -tra, -trum, left
Scytha, -ae, *m. a Scythian*
sollertia, -ae, *f. skill, subtlety*
taurus, -i, *m. bull*
tribus, -īs, *f. tribe*

¹ For the future, the quantity of the Nom. of the Fourth Decl. will not be marked. The pupil must bear in mind that the Nom. Sing. of the Fourth Decl. is to be pronounced short, diff. from the Gen. Sing. and Nom. and Acc. Pl. which are long.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*
 ūtilis, *m.* & *f.* ūtile, *n. useful*
 ūtilitās, ūtiitatis, *f. utility*
 vēnātor, vēnātōris, *m. hunter*
 ventus, -i, *m. wind*
 visus, -ūs, *sight*
 vulpēs, vulpis, *f. fox*
 dātūr (*not dātūr*) *v. is given*
 āgit, *v. drives*
 compārāt (-ant), *v. obtains (-ain)*
 expectat, (-ant), *v. awaits (-ait)*
 intellēgit, *v. understands*
 vitat, (-ant) *v. avoids (-oid)*
 vulnērat (-ant), *v. wounds (-nd)*
 nāvēs longae, *long ships, i.e.*
ships of war

EXERCISE XXIV.

ăcīēs, -iēi, *f. line (of battle)*
 āprīcus, -a, -um, *sunny*
 cālōr, calōris, *m. heat*
 dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense, close*
 diēs, diēi, *f. day*
 dōlōr, dolōris, *m. grief*
 exercītūs, -ūs, *m. army*
 fācīes, -iēi, *f. face*
 flumen, -inis, *n. river*
 fūga, -ae, *f. flight*
 glācīes, -iēi, *f. ice*
 īnīmīcus, -a, -um, *hostile*
 lūx, lūcis, *f. light*
 mōra, -ae, *f. delay*
 mēridēs, -iēi, *f. mid-day*
 nōvus, -a, -um, *new*
 nūmērus, -i, *m. number*
 pars, partis, *f. part*
 plānītēs, -iēi, *f. level ground*
 rēs, rei, *f. thing; rēs adversae,*
adversae things, i.e. adversity;
rēs sēcundae, prosperity
 sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*
 spēs, -ēi, *f. hope*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*
 tēnūs, *m. & f. tenuē, n. thin*
 āgitur, *v. (he) is (being) driven*
 interdūm, *adv. sometimes*
 tam, *adv. so*

EXERCISE XXV.¹

āmīcītā, -ae, *f. friendship*
 āsīnus, *m. ass*
 asper, -ēra, -ērum, *rough,*
rugged
 āvis, *f. bird*
 brāchium, -i, *n. arm*
 campus, -i, *m. a plain*
 cānis, is, *m. dog*
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*
 diffīcilis, -e, *difficult*
 discīpūlus, -i, *m. pupil*
 dissimīlis, -e, *unlike*
 fertīlis, -e, *fertile*
 grācīlis, -e, *slender*
 hūmīlis, -e, *low, low-minded*
 īter, itinēris, *n. journey*
 nīlīl, indecl. *n. nothing*
 pātrīa, -ae, *f. native land*
 praeceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*
 prōcērus, -a, -um, *tall*
 rēgio, -iōnis, *region, district*
 sāgāx, sāgācis, *sagacious*
 simīlis, -e, *like*
 sēror, ūris, *sister*
 tardus, -a, -um, *slow*
 testūdo, -inis, *f. tortoise*
 turdus, -i, *m. thrush*
 uxor, ūris, *f. wife*
 vallis, -is, *f. valley*
 vēlōx, -ōcis, *swifl*
 virtūs, -ūtis, *virtue, valour*
 autem, conj. *in the second place,*
however, but, (never comes
after a stop)
 māgis, *adv. more*

¹ The pupil must not expect to find the Comparative or Superlative forms of Adjectives in this Vocabulary. In looking out the meaning of hūmīllor, for example, he will only find hūmīlis, the Positive

quam, *conj. than*
 quidem, *conj. in the first place, indeed*
 complet, *v. fills*
 dūcit, *v. leads*

mānīpūlus, -i, *m. maniple*²
 Martiūs, -ia, -ium, *of March*
 mensis, -is, *m. month*
 nux, nūcīs, *f. nut*
 ūvum, -i, *n. egg*
 patrimōnium, *n. patrimony*
 pauper, -ēris, *poor*
 pōnum, -i, *n. fruit*
 Septēmber, *gen. -bris, adj. of September*
 trībūnus, -i, *m. tribune*
 nunc, *adv. now*
 quondam, *adv. formerly, once*
 sōlum, *adv. alone*
 tum, *adv. then, during that period*
 tunc, *adv. then, at that moment*
 eastigātūr v. (*he*) *is chastised*

EXERCISE XXVI.¹

Ālexander, -dri, *m. Alexander*
 Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*
 bēnēvōlus, -a, -um, *well-wishing, benevolent*
 eastrā, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*
 confiō, -ōnis, *f. speech*
 Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*
 maxīmē, *adv. very greatly, most*
 mons, -ntis, *m. mountain*
 nātus, -ūs, *m. (used only in Abl. nātu, by birth)*
 pius, -a, -um, *dutiful*
 praestans, -antis, *excellent*
 rātio, -ōnis, *f. reason*
 rēvērentia, ae, *f. reverence*
 Sōerātēs, -is, *m. Socrates*
 tempus, -ōris, *n. time*
 Tullius, -i, *m. Tullius*
 quid, *pron. (nom. and acc.) n. what?*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

armentum, -i, *n. herd*
 āvārus, -a, -um, *greedy*
 cārus, -a, -um, *dear*
 cōrōna, -ae, *f. crown*
 ensis, -is, *m. sword*
 laus, laudis, *f. praise*
 mālum, -i, *n. evil*
 mōres, mōrum, *m. pl. conduct*
 mōs, mōris, *m. custom*
 nēmo, *gen. nullius, dat. nēmīni, acc. nēmīnem, abl. nullo, no one*
 scūtum, -i, *n. shield*
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many*
 ūterquē, utraquē, utrumquē, *adj. either, both*
 valdē, *adv. strongly, exceedingly*
 vōluptās, -tatis, *f. pleasure*
 clāmant, *v. (they) cry out*
 vitāre, *v. to avoid*

EXERCISE XXVII.

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient*
 centūria, -ae, *f. century*²
 centūrio, -ōnis, *m. a centurion*
 cērāsum, -i, *n. cherry*
 Dēcember, *gen. -bris, adj. of December*
 Germānus, -a, -um, *German*
 Jānūariūs, -a, -um, *adj. of January*
 jūvēnis, -is, *m. young man*
 lēgio, -ōnis, *f. legion*

¹ The irregular Comparatives and Superlatives given in the text are intended to be learned there, and are consequently not repeated here.

² These terms are explained in a sentence of Exercise XXVII.

EXERCISES XXIX. AND XXX.

āliēnus, -a, -um, *another's*
 crūdēlis, *m. & f.* -e, *n. cruel*
 ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant*
 immēmor, *gen. -ōris, adj. un-*
mindful
 mēmor, *gen. -ōris, mindful*
 -nē? *enclitic, asks a question*
(emphasizing the word to
which it is attached)
 nōnūnē, *interrog. adv. (expects*
the answer 'Yes')
 num? *interrog. adv. (expects*
the answer 'No')
 porcus, -i, *m. pig*
 sēd, *conj. but (on the other*
hand); but yet; but still
 tālis, -e, *adj. such*
 cūrat, *v. (he) takes-care-of*

EXERCISES XXXI. AND XXXII.

Belga, -ae, *m. a Belgian*
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 finitīmus, -a, -um, *bordering on*
fons, fontis, m. fountain, source
 Gallus, -i, *a Gaul*
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*
 hūc, *adv. hither*
 indoctus, -a, -um, *unlearned*
 jūre, *rightly, see Par. 58*
 maximē, *adv. very greatly, espe-*
cially, most of all
 mīsēricordia, -ae, *f. pity*
 nūnīs, *adv. too much*
 nōmen, -inis, *n. name*
 pāriter, *adv. equally*
 pārens, -rentis, *c. parent*
 patria, -ae, *f. native land*

poena, -ae, *f. (mostly pl.) penalty*
 prāvus, -a, -um, *depraved*
 proximus, *see Par. 69*
 semper, *adv. always*
 sūi, -ōrum, *m. pl. (adj. used as*
noun) his (own) men
 vestis, -is, *f. garment*
 Virgilīus, -i, *(more correctly*
Vergilius) m. Virgil
 vītōsus, -a, -um, *full-of-vice*
 errat, *v. (he) errs*
 gustat, *v. (he) tastes*
 intrat, *v. (he) enters*
 laedit, *v. (he) hurts*
 sērit, *v. (he) sows, plants*
 do poenas, *I pay the penalty*

EXERCISE XXXIII.¹

[The Conjugation of a Verb is denoted by the figure placed after it.]
 Castīgo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *punish,*
chastise
 culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *blame*
 dō, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *give²*
 dōno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *present*
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *excellent*
 ēmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *in-*
prove
 erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *err*
 īnīmīcūs, -a, -um, *unfriendly*
 laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*
 monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *shew,*
point out
 optīmus, -a, -um, *very good*
 rōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask*
 saepē, *adv. often*
 sī, *conj. if*
 Tullīa, -iae, *f. Tullia*
 vītūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *revile*

¹ Henceforth words must be looked out in the Vocabularies, pp. 248-327.
² This Verb is irregular.

APPENDIX X.

VOCABULARY—I.

LATIN INTO ENGLISH.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	= ablative	<i>indef.</i>	= indefinite
<i>acc.</i>	= accusative	<i>interj.</i>	= interjection
<i>adj.</i>	= adjective	<i>interrog.</i>	= interrogative
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb	<i>m.</i>	= masculine
<i>c.</i>	= common gender	<i>n.</i>	= neuter
<i>comp.</i>	= comparative	<i>num.</i>	= numeral
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction	<i>p.</i>	= page
<i>dat.</i>	= dative	<i>part.</i>	= participle
<i>def.</i>	= defective	<i>pass.</i>	= passive
<i>dep.</i>	= deponent	<i>pl.</i>	= plural
<i>f.</i>	= feminine	<i>prep.</i>	= preposition
<i>g. gen., dat., /</i>	= governs the gen., dat., abl., &c.	<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun
<i>abl., &c.</i>)	<i>rel.</i>	= relative
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive	<i>sing.</i>	= singular
<i>impers.</i>	= impersonal verb	<i>sup.</i>	= superlative
<i>indecl.</i>	= indeclinable	<i>v.</i>	= verb.

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the Conjugation of a Verb.

Ab (ā, abs), *prep.* with *abl.* *from,*
by
ābēō, -īi or -īvi, -ītum, -īre, 4, *to go*
away
ābhīne, *adv.* (216) (313) *ago* (*with*
acc. *or* *abl.*)
abjēčio, -jēči, -jectum, 3, *cast away*
absens, -entis, *absent*
abstūli, *see* aufēro
absum, afui, abesse, *I am absent;*
mīnūmū ābest quīn pēcam, *I*

am almost perishing, Par. 195;
ābest quīnū mīlia passūm, *he*
is five miles off; prōpē ābest ā
nōbīs, *he is close to us* [*the forms*
abfui, abfūtūrus, &c., for āfui,
āfūtūrus, &c., are incorrect]
absūmo, -mpsi, -imptum, 3, *consume,*
destroy
absurdus, -a, -um, *adj.* *absurd*
ābundo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *abound*
ābūtor, -āsus, 3, *v.* *dep.* *misuse, use*

ac, a form of atque
 accēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, approach
 accido, -idi (*no sup.*) 3, n. v. to
 happen (*of ill fortune*) [take
 accipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, receive,
 accumbo, -cūbūi, -cūbitum, 3, re-
 cline (*at dinner*)
 accuro, -cūcurri & -curri, -cursum,
 3, run up, or towards
 accuso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, accuse (*g.
 gen. of the charge*)
 acer, -cris, -cre, keen, sharp, active
 acerbus, -a, -um, bitter, painful
 Achillēs, -is, m. Achilles
 aēcies, -iēi, f. line (*of battle*)
 aēnō, -ni, -ntum, 3, I sharpen
 aēus, -ūs, f. needle
 aētūs, -a, -um, sharp
 ad, prep. (*g. acr.*) to, at, near,
 towards, for (185, 186)
 adāmantinus, -a, -um, adamantine
 adēo, *adv.* so, to such an extent
 adēo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, go to, come
 to, visit, consult (*g. acc.*)
 adeptus, see adīpiscor
 adhībēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, apply
 adhūc, *adv.* as yet
 adīpiscor, -eptus, 3, acquire, obtain
 adjūmentum, -i, n. assistance
 adjūvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, 1, assist
 admiror, -ātus, 1, wonder at, admire
 admitto, -misi, -missum, 3, to ad-
 mit; admisi in se (*acc.*) scēlus,
 he gave crime entrance into him-
 self, i.e. committed a crime
 admīneō, -ui, -itum, 2, warn; re-
 mind, (*eum eius rei*)
 adōlescens, see adūlescens
 adsum, affui, ādesce, I am present,
 stand by, side with
 adūlātio, -iōnis, f. flattery
 adūlātor, -ōris, m. flatterer
 adūlescens, -entis, m. young men
 advēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, arrive
 adventus, -ūs, m. arrival
 adversus, -a, -um, adverse; res
 adversae, adversity

adversūs or -um, prep. (*g. acc.*) to-
 wards, against
 aedēs, -is, f. sing. temple: pl. house
 aedificiūm, -ii, n. building
 aedifico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, build
 Aedūi, -ōrum, m. pl. the Aedui, a
 Gallic tribe
 aeger, -gra, -grum, sick; aegrē
 iēro hoc, I bear this ill, i.e. I
 resent this
 Aegyptus, -i, f. Egypt [just
 aequus, -a, -um, adj. level, even,
 aēr, aēris, m. the air
 aes, aeris, n. brass, money; aes
 alēnum, debt
 aestas, -ātis, f. summer
 aestimo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I value;
 with magni, pluris, &c. (283)
 actas, -ātis, f. age, time of life
 aeternus, -a, -um, adj. eternal
 aether, -ēris, m. the upper air,
 heaven
 affīro, attūli, allātum, afferrō, I
 bring to, cause; (*impers.*) allatum
 est, word was brought
 affīcio, -fēci, fectum, 3, treat; aff.
 te hōnōre, voluptate, supplicio,
 mētu, I treat you with honour,
 pleasure, &c., i.e. I honour you,
 cause you pleasure, visit you with
 punishment, &c.
 affirmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, assert
 afflīgo, -ixi, -ictum, 3, I cast down,
 prostrate
 Afīca, -ae, f. Africa
 āger, -gri, m. field, lands
 agger, -ēris, m. a mound
 agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, recognize
 āgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3, drive, lead;
 act, do: id āgo ut, I am doing
 my best to; grātiās āgēre, to re-
 turn thanks; causam a., plead
 a cause; vitam a., lead a life;
 nihil a., do nothing; actum est
 de nōbīs, it is all over with us:
 hōc āgitur, this is being done, i.e.
 this is the point, or question

agrīcōla, -ae, <i>m.</i> <i>husbandman</i>	ambūlo, -āvi, -ātum, <i>I walk</i>
āio, <i>v. def.</i> <i>say</i> , see p. 215; <i>ut aiunt,</i> <i>as they say</i> , i.e. <i>as the proverb</i> <i>goes</i>	āmens, -ntis, <i>senseless, mad</i>
āla, -ae, <i>f.</i> <i>wing</i>	amīcio, -īcū or -ixi, -ictum, 4, <i>corer, clothe</i>
Albānus, -a, -um, <i>Alban</i>	āmīcītīa, -ae, <i>f.</i> <i>friendship</i>
albus, -a, -um, <i>white</i>	āmīcīus, -i, <i>m.</i> <i>friend</i>
Alcībīādes, -is, <i>m.</i> <i>Alcibiades</i>	āmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>love</i>
Ālexander, -dri, <i>m.</i> <i>Alexander (the</i> <i>Great)</i>	āmor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> <i>love</i>
	āmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, <i>lose</i>
ālia, <i>adv.</i> <i>at one time, at another</i>	ānnis, -is, <i>m.</i> <i>river</i>
ālībi, <i>adv.</i> <i>at one place, at another</i> <i>place</i> ; <i>alii</i> a. <i>stant, some stand</i> <i>in one place, others in another</i>	ān, <i>or</i> (<i>in dep. quest., see Par. 171</i>); (<i>also in direct quest., an alterna-</i> <i>tive being understood</i>), <i>An nōs</i> <i>prōdēs?</i> i.e. (<i>you will be faith-</i> <i>ful, will you not?</i>) <i>Or will you</i> <i>actually betray us?</i> (171, 302)
āliēnus, -a, -um, <i>another's</i> ; <i>āliēna</i> <i>sūis antēpōnit, he places the</i> <i>interests of others above his own.</i> ; <i>acs āliēnum, debt; in aerē ā ūno</i> <i>esse, to be in debt</i>	Angli, -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> <i>Englishmen</i>
	angnīs, -is, <i>m.</i> <i>snake</i>
āngustus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> <i>narrow</i>	angustus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> <i>narrow</i>
ānimadverto, -i, -sum, 3, <i>observe</i>	ānimāl, -ālis, <i>n.</i> <i>animal</i> .
ānimus, -i, <i>m.</i> <i>mind, soul, courage</i>	ānimus, -i, <i>m.</i> <i>mind, soul, courage</i>
annōn, <i>see Par. 172</i>	annus, -i, <i>m.</i> <i>year</i>
	[vestigate]
anquīro, -quīsīvī, -quīsītūn, 3, <i>in-</i>	anquīro, -quīsīvī, -quīsītūn, 3, <i>in-</i>
anser, -sēris, <i>m.</i> <i>goose</i>	anter, -sēris, <i>m.</i> <i>goose</i>
antē, <i>prep.</i> (<i>g. acc.</i>) <i>before</i> , (183);	antēpōno, -pōsni, -pōsītūn, 3, <i>prefer</i> (<i>g. acc. and dat.</i>) (192)
<i>adv.</i> <i>paucis ante annis, a few</i> <i>years before</i> ; N.B.— <i>distinguish</i> <i>the prep. from the conj. ante...</i>	antēquām, <i>conj.</i> <i>before, until</i>
quām, or <i>antequām</i> ; <i>anteā, adv.</i> <i>before those things, beforehand</i>	Anthrōpōphāgi, -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> <i>man-</i>
	<i>eaters, cannibals</i>
altātum, <i>see affero</i>	antīquus, -a, -um, <i>ancient</i>
allīcio, -lexi, -lectum, 3, <i>allure</i>	ānnūlus (<i>not annūlus</i>), -i, <i>m.</i> <i>ring</i>
Allōbrōges, -un, <i>m.</i> <i>the Allobroges</i>	ānūs, -ūs, <i>f.</i> <i>old woman</i>
allōquor, -lōcūtus, 3, <i>dep. speak to,</i> <i>accost (g. acc.)</i>	aper, -pri, <i>m.</i> <i>wild boar</i>
almus, -a, -um, <i>loving</i>	āpērīo, āpērīū, āpertūm, 4, <i>open</i>
ālo, altū, altum, 3, <i>nourish, rear</i>	āpertus, -a, -um, <i>open, clear</i>
Alpēs, -iūn, <i>f. pl.</i> <i>the Alps.</i>	Apollo, -īnis, <i>m.</i> <i>Apollo</i>
alter, -tōra, -tērum, (<i>gen.</i> -erīus, <i>dat.</i> -erī), <i>one of two, second, the</i> <i>other</i> ; unus et a. <i>one or two;</i>	appello, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>call</i>
vīcēsīmus a., <i>twenty-first</i>	aprīcus, -a, -um, <i>sunny</i>
altus, -a, -um, <i>high, deep</i>	āpūd, <i>prep. g. acc.</i> <i>See Par. 183</i>
āmābīlis, -e, <i>adj.</i> <i>lovely</i> [Par. 288]	
āmans, -ntis, <i>adj.</i> <i>loving, (g. gen.</i>	
āmārus, -a, -um, <i>bitter</i>	
āmbo, -ac, -o, <i>both.</i> <i>See Par. 77</i>	

aptus, -a, -um, fit
 aqua, -ae, f. water
 aquila, -ae, f. an eagle
 arbiter, -tri, m. umpire
 arbitror, -atus, 1, (v. dep.) consider,
 judge
 arbor, -oris, f. tree
 Archimēdēs, -is, m. Archimedes
 arcī, see arx
 arcus, -ūs, m. bow
 ardō, arsi, -sum, 2, v. intr., I burn,
 am on fire
 ardūs, -a, -um, adj. lofty, steep,
 difficult
 argenteus, -a, -um, silver
 argentum, -i, n. silver : money
 Arīovistus, -i, m. Ariovistus
 arma, -ōrum, n. pl. arms
 Arīnēnia, -ae, f. Armenia
 armentum, -i, n. herd
 arniō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, arm, equip
 āro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, plough
 Arpīnum, -i, n. Arpinum, the birth-
 place of Cicero
 ars, artis, f. art, handicraft
 arvum, -i, n. corn-field
 arx, arcis, f. citadel
 as, assis, m. the smallest Roman
 coin ; it may be translated a far-
 thing (used in the genit. of indef.
 price ; see Ex. LXXX.)
 Asīa, -ae, f. Asia (mostly Ā)
 āsimus, -i, m. ass
 asper, -ēra, -ērum, rough, rugged
 aspēnor, -atus, 1, v. dep. reject,
 despise
 aspīcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3. look at
 assēquor, -secutus, 3, attain
 āt, conj. but (more abrupt than sed)
 āter, atra, atrum, black, gloomy
 Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl. Athens
 Athēniensis, -e, Athenian
 atqūe (or ac, but not before vowels).
 conj. and further, and ; often
 used to couple words of similar
 meaning, e.g. sōcii atqūe āmici,
 hōnestissimus atqūe ornātissimus

ātrox, -ōcis, stern, gloomy
 auctor, -ōris, m. adviser, author :
 Tullio auctōre, at the advice of
 Tullius (197)
 auctōritās, -ātis, f. authority
 auctumnus, -i, m. autumn
 audactēr, adr. boldly, daringly
 audāx, -ācis, bold
 audēo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, to
 dare, venture
 audio, -īvi, -ītum, 4, hear
 auditus, -us, m. hearing
 aufēro, abstūli, ablātum auferrē,
 I carry away, take away
 augeo, auxi, auctum, 2, augment
 Augustus, -i, m. Augustus, the first
 emperor of Rome
 aurēus, -a, -um, golden
 aurīga, -ae, m. charioteer
 aurīs, -is, f. an ear
 aurum, -i, n. gold
 ausus, see audeo
 Auster, -tri, m. South wind [173]
 aut...aut, either...or else (157a),
 autem, conj. but, in the second place
 (placed after the first word of
 the clause to which it belongs) ;
 see quīdem (67)
 auxīlium, -i, n. help, aid
 āvārus, -a, -um, avaricious, greedy
 āvidus, -a, -um, greedy
 āvis, -is, f. bird
 āvus, -i, m. a grandfather
 Bābylōn, -ōnis, f. Babylon
 bālaena, -ae, f. a whale
 Balbus, -i, m. Balbus
 barbarus, -a, -um, barbarian
 bēātē, adr. happily
 bēātus, -a -um, adj. happy
 Belga, -ae, m. a Belgian
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. warlike
 bello, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I wage war
 bellum, -i, n. war
 bēlūa, -ae, f. a great beast
 bēnē, adv. well
 bēnēfīcium, -ii, n. benefit

bēnēfīcūs, -a, -um, *beneficent*
 bēnēvolēntiā, -ae, f. *benevolence*
 bēnēvōlūs, -a, -um, *well-wishing*,
benevolent. See Par. 68a
 bēnignē, adv. *kindly*
 bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*
 bestiā, -ae, f. *a beast*; damnāri ad
bestiās, to be condemned to be ex-
posed to the beasts (in the amphि-
theatre)
 bībo, bībi, bībitūm, 3, *I drink*
 Bībūlus, -i, m. *Bibulus*
 bīdūm, -i, n. *two days*; bīdui
iter, two days' journey
 bienniūm, -i, n. *two years*
 bīni, -ae, -a, *two apiece* (314)
 bīs, adv. *twice*
 blandiōr, -itūs, with dat. 4, v. dep.
I flatter, win upon
 bōna, -ōrum, n. pl. *goods, blessings*
 bōnus, -a, -um, adj. *good* [311]
 bōs, bōvis, c. *ox, cow*, see Par.
 bracechium, -i, n. *arm*
 brēvis, -e, *short, brief*
 Brītannīa, -ae, f. *Britain*
 Brītannus, -i, m. *a Briton*
 Brūtus, -i, m. *Brutus*
 būbus, see bōs

Cădāver, -ēris, n. *corpse*
 cădo, cēcīdi, cāsum, 3, *I fall*; N.B.
distinguish this from cēcīdi
 caecus, -a, -um, adj. *blind*
 caedēs, -is, f. *slaughter*
 caedo, cēcīdī, caesum, 3, *strike, cut*
down, slay; N.B. *distinguish*
this from cēcīdi
 caelestis, -e, *celestial*
 caelīcōlāe, -ārum, m. pl. *lit. heaven-*
dwellers, i.e. gods
 caelum, -i, n. *heaven*
 Caesūr, -āris, m. *Caesar*
 cālāmītās, -ātis, f. *calamity*
 calecār, -āris, n. *spur*
 cālix, -īcis, m. *cup*
 cālor, ūris, m. *heat*
 Cāmillus, -i, m. *Camillus*

Campānīa, -ae, f. *Campania*
 campus, -i, m. *plain*
 cancer, -cri, m. *crab*
 cānis, -is, c. *dog*
 Cannae, -ārum, f. pl. *Cannae, a*
village where Hannibal defeated
the Romans
 cāno, cēcīni, cantum, 3, *sing*; tābā
cēcīnit, the trumpet sounded
 canto, -āvi, -atum, 1, *I sing*
 cantus, -ūs, m. *song*
 cāper, -pri, m. *goat*
 cāpillus, -i, m. *hair (pl. once in*
Cicero, but in poetry often)
 cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3, *take* [ive
captīvus (or captus) -a, -um, capt-
 Cāpūa, -ae, f. *Capua, the most*
luxurious city in Italy
 cāpūt, -ītis, n. *head*; gentis cāput,
the capital city of the nation;
 cāpīte multo, *I punish with*
death; cāpītis damno, *I con-*
demn to death (Ec. LXXX.)
 career, -ēris, m. *prison*
 cardo, -īnis, m. *hinge*
 cāreo, -ūi, 2, *I am without* (g. abl.);
fācile c. vīno, I easily do with-
out wine
 cārmēn, -īnis, n. *song*
 cārō, carnis, f. *flesh* [ginian
 Carthāgīnēnsis, -e, adj. *Cartha-*
Carthāgo, īnis, f. Carthage
 cārus, -a, -um, *dear*
 cāsa, -ae f. *cottage*
 cāsēus, -i, m. *cheese*
 eastīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *chastise*
punish
 castrā, -ōrum, n. pl. *camp*
 cāsus, -ūs, m. *chance, accident*;
dīversis cāsibus, with varied for-
tunes
 cātēna, -ae, f. *chain*
 Cātilīna, -ae, m. *Catiline*
 Cāto, -ōnis, m. *Cato*
 causa, -ae, f. *cause*; audiēndi
causā, for the sake of hearing;
causam ēgit, he pleaded a cause

cāvēo, cāvi, cautum, 2, *beware, beware of* (*g. acc.*) ; cāvē nē fāciās, *take care not to do* ; cāvē bātūr, *precautions were taken*
 cēcidi, *see cādo and caedo*
 cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *yield*; c. tībī, *I yield to you*; c. āciē or ex āciē, *I retire from the battle*
 cēler, -ēris, -ēre, *swif*t; cēlēriter, *adv. swiftly* (61)
 cēlēritas, -tatis, *f. speed*
 cēlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *conceal*, (*g. two acc.*). *See Par. 312*
 celsus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, tall*
 cēna, -ae, *f. dinner*; ceno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dine* (*perf. also cēnātus sum*); cēnātus, *having dined*
 centum, *see Par. 81*
 centūria, -ae, *f. a (military) century* (*see Ex. XXVII., sent. 8*)
 centūrio, -iōnis, *m. centurion* (*the officer of a century*)
 cērāsum, -i, *n. cherry*
 cērāsus, -i, *f. the cherry-tree*
 cērebrum, -i, *n. brain*
 Cērēs, Cērēris, *f. Ceres*
 certāmen, -inis, *n. contest, strife*; in certāmen hōnōris vēnērunt, *they entered into a competition for distinction*
 cerno, 3, *I see, discern*
 certus, -a, -um, *adj. certain*; certiōrem te fēci, *I informed you (full. by Gen., or Object Infinitive)*; fixed, certūn opus, *a fixed task*
 cervus, -i, *m. stag*
 [cēter], -ēra, -ērum, *adj. the rest, the rest of* (*see Eng. Latin Vocab., of*); pl. cēteri, *the others*
 cēbus, -i, *m. food*
 Cicēro, -ōnis, *m. Cicero*
 cinis, cīnēris, *m. ashes*
 cīngō, -nxī, -nctūn, 3, *I surround*
 circā, circum, *prep. (g. acc.) around*
 circīt̄r, *prep. with acc. about*
 circumdo, -dāre, -dēdi, dātūm, 1,

(1) *to put round* (*acc. and dat.*);
 (2) *to surround* (*acc. and abl.*)
 circumspīcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look round*
 circumsto, -stēti, -stāre, *stand round*; (part. *as noun*) circumstantes, -iūm, *by-standers* [*of* cis, citrā, *prep. (g. acc.) on this side of* Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *on this side of the Alps, Cisalpine*
 cīthāra, -ae, *f. lute* [*quickly*]
 cīto, *adv. quickly*; cītius, *more*
 cīvilis, -e, *adj. belonging to a citizen, civil*
 cīvis, -is, *m. citizen*
 cīvitās, -tatis, *f. state, citizenship*; dōnant ēum cīvītātē, *they present him with the citizenship*
 clādēs, -is, *f. slaughter*
 clam, *adv. secretly*; *prep. (g. abl.) without the knowledge of*
 clāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry out, shout*
 clāmor, -ōris, *m. clamour, shout*
 clāudo, -si, -sum, 3, *shut*
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, renowned*
 classis, -is, *f. a fleet*
 clēmenter, *adv. gently, mercifully*
 coactus, *see cōgo*
 coelestis, *see caelestis*.
 coelum, *see caelum*
 coena, *see cēna*
 coeno, *see cēno*
 cōēo, -īvi or -īi, ītūm, 4, *join together* (*r. intrans.*)
 cōercēo, -ūi, -ītūm, 2, *restrain*
 cōgīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think, meditate*
 cognōsco, -nōvi, -nītūm, 3, *learn, ascertain*
 cōgo, cōgī, cōactum, 3 *compel*
 cōhōrs, -rtis, *f. cohort, a tenth part of the legiōn*
 cōhortor, -ātūs, 1, *v. dep. encourage*
 colligo, -ēgi, -ectum, 3, *collect*

collis, -is, <i>m.</i> , hill	conféro, -tūli, collātum, conferre,
collōquium, -i, <i>n.</i> conversation	3, irr. <i>I bring together, betake;</i>
collōquor, -ētus, 3, <i>v. dep.</i> <i>I con-</i>	<i>se contūlit rūs, he betook him-</i>
<i>verse</i>	<i>self to the country</i>
collūvies, (<i>acc.</i> -em, <i>abl.</i> -ē) <i>f.</i>	confessus, <i>see confitēor</i>
<i>medley, confusion</i>	confic̄io, -fēci, -fectum, 3, <i>I finish,</i>
cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3, cultivate,	<i>accomplish</i>
<i>worship, cherish</i>	confido, -īsus ·sum, 3, <i>g. dat.</i> <i>I</i>
cōlōnia, -ae, <i>f.</i> a colony	<i>trust</i>
cōlōnus, -i, <i>m.</i> farmer	confitēor, -fessus, 2, <i>confess</i>
cōlor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> colour	confūgio, -fūgi, 3, <i>I flee for refuge</i>
cōlumba, -ae, <i>f.</i> dove	conjīcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, <i>hurl</i>
cōluber, -bri, <i>m.</i> snake	conjūrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> a conspiracy
cōmēs, -ītis, <i>m.</i> companion [pany	conjūrātus, -i, <i>m.</i> conspirator
cōmītor, -ātus, 1, <i>v. dep.</i> <i>I accom-</i>	cōnor, -ātus, 1. <i>v. dep.</i> attempt
<i>commētus, -ūs, m. provisions,</i>	conscendo, -di, -sum, 3, <i>mount,</i>
<i>supplies</i>	<i>go on board (ship)</i>
commēmōrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> com-	consciēntia, ae, <i>f.</i> conscience
<i>memoration, mention</i>	conscribō, -scripsi, -scriptūm, 3,
commīlīto, -ōnis, <i>m.</i> fellow-soldier	<i>enrol (soldiers)</i>
commīnus, <i>adv.</i> hand to hand	consentīo, -nsi, -nsum, 4, agree
committo, -mīsi, -missum, 3, <i>com-</i>	conservo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>I preserve,</i>
<i>mit; c. proelium, join (lit. send</i>	<i>maintain</i>
<i>together) battle</i>	consilīum, ii, <i>n.</i> plan, purpose,
compāro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>get to-</i>	<i>wisdom</i>
<i>gether, obtain</i>	constanter, <i>adv.</i> steadily, firmly
compello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, <i>drive</i>	constantia, -ae, <i>f.</i> constancy, firmness
<i>together</i>	constat, -stītit, 1, <i>impers. v.</i> it is
compērio, -pēri, -pertum, 4, <i>find,</i>	<i>agreed, well-known &c.</i>
<i>ascertain; compertum hābeo, I</i>	constitūo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, determine
<i>have (it) ascertained (with acc.</i>	consuētūdo, -īnis, <i>f.</i> habit
<i>and inf.)</i>	consul, -ūlis, <i>m.</i> consul; Gaio et
compēs, -pēdis, <i>f.</i> fetter	Balbo consūlibus, Gaius and
compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, <i>fill</i>	Balbus being consuls
comprēhendo (or comprehendō), -di,	consulātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> office of consul,
-sum, 3, <i>I seize</i> [relire	<i>consulate</i>
concēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, <i>yield,</i>	consūlo, -līi, -ltum, 3, <i>consult; c.</i>
concordia, -ae, <i>f.</i> concord	<i>tibi, I c. your interests; c. te, I</i>
concrēmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>burn up</i>	<i>consult you</i>
condemno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>condemn</i>	consumo, -m̄psi, -mptum, 3, <i>con-</i>
condic̄io, -ōnis, (<i>less correctly con-</i>	<i>sume, waste away</i>
<i>dītio</i>), <i>f.</i> condition; (<i>in pl.</i>) terms	contemno, -m̄psi, -mptum, 3,
<i>(of peace, &c.)</i>	<i>despise</i>
condūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, <i>hire</i>	conteinplor, -ātus, 1, <i>v. dep.</i> <i>con-</i>
condō, -didi, -dītum, 3, <i>found;</i>	<i>template</i>
<i>post condītam urbem, after the</i>	contendo, -di, -sum, or -tum, 3
<i>foundation of the city</i>	<i>gaze at, hasten (278)</i>

- contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*) *contented* (278)
- continēo, -ūi, -entum, 2, *I hold together*
- contingo, -tīgi, 3, *befall*; contīgit
mīhī, *it was my good luck*
- continūo, *adv. forthwith; N.B. not continually*
- contio, -iōnis, *f. speech, harangue*
- contrā, *prep. (g. acc.) against*
- contrāho, -axi, -actum, 3, *draw together*
- contrārius, a, -um. *contrary* (189)
- contūmēlia, -ae, *f. an insult*
- convālesco, -välui, 3, *recover from illness*
- convēnīo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I assemble*
- convertō, -verti, -versum, 3, *turn round*; conversus, *being turned i.e. turning (himself)*
- convīciū, -i, *n. reviling, abuse*
- convōco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *call together*
- cōpīa, -ae, *f. plenty; cōpīae, -ārum, f. pl. forces*
- cōr, cordis, *n. the heart*
- cōram, *prep. (g. abl.) in presence of*
- Cōrinthus, -i, *f. Corinth*
- Cornēlia, -ae, *f. Cornelia*
- cornū, -ūs, *n. a horn*
- cōrōna, -ae, *f. a crown*
- corpus, -ōris, *n. body*
- corrīgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *correct*
- corrīpiō, -rīpūi, -reptum, 3, *snatch away*; morbo correptus est, *he was carried off by disease*
- cottidie, *see quōtidie*
- crās, *adv. to-morrow*
- Crassus, -i, *m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero*
- crēātor, -ōris, *m. creator* [peated
- crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, re-*
- crēdibilis, -e, *adj. credible* [*dat*])
- crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *beliere (g.*
- crēo, -āvi, -atum, 1, *I create, make*
- Crēta, -ae, *f. Crete*
- crīmen, -iñis, *n. charge, accusation*
- crīnis, -is, *m. hair*
- crūciātus, -ūs, *m. torture*
- crūdēlis, -e, *cruel*
- crūdēlitas, -ātis, *f. cruelty*
- crūs, crūris, *n. leg*
- culpa, -ae, *f. blame, fault*: *see extrā*
- culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *blame*
- culte, -tri, *m. knife*
- cum, *prep. (g. abl.) with*
- cum, *(sometimes wrongly spelt quūni) conj. when, (Par. 151) since: cum . . . tum not only . . . but also; N.B. — cum is never interrogative: see quando*
- Cūnae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cumæ, (a city)*
- cunctor, -atus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*
- cunctus, -a, -um, *adj. all (together)*
- cūpiditas, -ātis, *f. desire, passion*
- cūpidus, -a, -um, *fond of (g. gen.)*
- cūpīo, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 3, *desire*
- cūr, *adv. why? (also conj. in dep. sent.)*; nōn est cūr tīmēas, *there is not (any reason) why you should fear*
- cūra, -ae, *f. care*
- cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *take care*; cūrā ut, or nē, ēās take care to, or not to, go
- cūrro, cūcurri, cursum, 3, *run*
- cūrrus, -ūs, *m. chariot*
- cūrsum, -ūs, *m. running, course*
- cūstōdio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *guard*
- cūstos, cūstōdis, *m. a guardian*
- Cyprus, -i, *f. Cyprus*
- Damno**, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *condemn*
- Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*
- dē, *prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning*
- dēa, -ae, *f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. dēabus) see Par. 311*
- dēbēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, *ore: dēbūi dāre. I ought to have given (223)*
- dēbilis, -e, *adj. feeble*
- dēcem, *see Par. 81*

Dēcember, -bris, -bre, of <i>Deeember</i> . See Appendix VI., p. 229	dēplōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>lament over, deplore</i>
dēcemvir, -viri, m. <i>decemvir, one of ten commissioners</i>	dēposco, -poposci, 3, <i>demand</i>
dēcēt, dēcūit, dēcērē, 2, <i>impers. v. it becomes, befits</i> , Par. 220.	dērīsūs, -ūs, m. <i>laughing-stock</i>
dēcīmus, -a, -uin, Par. 81.	descendo, -seundi, -scensum, 3, <i>come, or go, down</i>
dēcīpīo, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, <i>I deceire</i>	descisco, -seīvi, -scitum, 3, <i>revolt</i>
dēcōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>honour, distinguish</i>	dēsērō, -rui, -rtum, 3, <i>I abandon</i>
dēcōus, -ōris, n. <i>ornament, honour, glory</i> ; Horace addresses his patron as "my guardian and glory (dēcus)"	dēsēdēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>long for (what is absent)</i>
dēlēcēt, dēcūit, dēcērē, 2, <i>impers. v. it misbecomes</i>	dēsum, -fui, -esse, (dat.) <i>be wanting to, fall short, fail</i>
dēdēcus, -ōris, n. <i>disgrace, baseness</i>	dētēgō, -xi, -etum, 3, <i>reveal, disclose</i>
dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3, <i>defend</i>	dēterrēo, -ūi, -ūtum, 2, <i>frighten</i>
dēfensor, -ōris, a <i>defender</i>	dētexō, -texūi, -textum, 3, <i>finish wearing, finish</i>
dēflāgro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>to be burnt down</i>	dētīneo, -ui, 2, <i>detain, keep back</i>
dēfluo, -fluxi, 3, <i>flow down</i>	dētrāho, -traxi, -tractum, <i>take away, withdraw</i>
dēformis, -e, <i>ugly</i>	Dēus, -i, m. <i>God</i>
dējēcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, <i>cast down</i>	dēvinco, -vīci, -victum, 3, <i>subdue</i>
dēlecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>delight</i>	dextra, -ae, f. <i>right hand</i>
dēlectus, -ūs, m. a <i>levy</i> [out	Diāna, -ac, f. <i>Diava</i>
dēlēo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, <i>destroy, blot</i>	dico, -xi, -etum, 3, <i>say, speak</i> ; dīcītur Tullius, &c., <i>it is said that Tullius, &c.</i> (Par 177)
dēlibēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>deliberate</i>	dīctīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>say often</i>
dēlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, <i>choose</i>	dīctum, -i, a <i>saying</i>
Dēlōs, -i, f. <i>the isle of Delos, the seat of an oracle of Apollo</i>	dīcē, -ēi, m. (f. in poets) <i>day</i>
Delphi, -ōrum, m. pl. <i>Delphi, the city containing the principal oracle of Apollo</i>	dīffīcilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> (60) [trust
dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3, <i>subtract</i>	dīffido, -fīsīs sum, 3, (g. dat.) <i>dis-</i>
Dēmosthēns, -is, m. <i>Demosthenes</i>	dīffīndo, -fīdi, -fissum, 3, <i>cleave asunder</i>
dēnum, adv. <i>indeed; id dēnum, that, and nothing else; tum dēnum, then, and not till then</i>	dīgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, <i>arrange</i>
dēnārius, -ii, m. a <i>denarius, a Roman coin worth about 9d.</i>	dīgitus, -i, m. <i>finger</i> [authority
dēnēquē (adv.) <i>finally, in short</i>	dīgnītas, -ātis, f. <i>dignity, worth, dignus, -a, -um, worthy</i> (g. abl.)
dēnsus, -a, -um, <i>dense, close</i>	dīlābor, -lapsus, 3, <i>slip away in different directions</i>
dēns, -ntis, m. <i>tooth</i>	dīlīgens, -ntis, adj. <i>diligent, careful</i>
dēpello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, <i>drive down</i>	dīlīgenter, adv. <i>carefully</i>
	dīlīgentīa, -ae, f. <i>diligence</i>
	dīlīgentissimē, adv. <i>most carefully</i>
	dīlīgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, <i>love, esteem</i>
	dīmīco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>fight (a battle)</i>

dūmīdūm, -i, n. half
 dīmitto, -īsi, -issum, 3, I let go,
 dismiss
 Dīōnȳsius, -ii, m. Dionysius, a
 tyrant of Syracuse
 dīripio, -ripūi, -reptum, 3, plunder
 dīscēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, depart
 disciplina, -ae, f. discipline
 discipulus, -i, m. pupil
 disco, dīdici, 3, learn
 discordia, -ae, f. discord
 displicēo, -ūi, -itum, (g. dat.) 2,
 displease
 dispūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, discuss
 dispūtatio, -ōnis, f. discussion
 dissimilis, -e, adj. unlike; g. gen.
 or dat. (see Par. 66, 60)
 distrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, draw
 asunder
 distribuo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3. distribute
 dīū, adv. long. for a long time
 diūtius, adv. longer
 dīversus, -a, -um, diverse, different
 dīvēs, -ītis, rich [parate
 dīvīdo, -visi, -vīsum, 3, divide, se-
 dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine
 dīvītiae, -ārum, f. pl. riches
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, give; do
 litteras, I date a letter
 dōcēo, -ūi, -etum, 2, I teach (g.
 two acc.) See Par. 312
 doctē, adv. learnedly, skilfully
 doctrīna, -ae, f. learning
 doctus, -a, -um, learned
 dōlēo, -ūi, 2, grieve
 dōlor, -ōris, m. pain, grief
 dōlus, -i, m. craft, treachery; per
 dōlum, treacherously
 dōmesticus, -a, -um, domestic
 dōmīcīlūm, -ii, n. an abode
 dōmīna, -ae, f. mistress
 dōmīnātus, -ūs, m. rule, sovereignty
 dōmīnus, -i, m. master, owner
 dōmo, -ūi, -itum, 1, tame, subdue
 dōmus, -i, f. house, home; dōmi,
 at home; dōmum, homeward,
 Pars. 249, 265

dōno, -avi, -ātūm, 1, present, g.
 acc. and dat. like do; or else
 acc. and abl.; dōno ēum ēquo,
 I present him with a horse
 dōnum, -i, n. gift
 dormīo, -īvi or ii, -ītum, 4, sleep
 dorsum, -i, n. back
 dūbito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, doubt
 dūbius, -a, -um, adj. doubtful : nōn
 dūbiūm est quīn, it is not doubt-
 ful that, i.e., there is no doubt
 that (foll. by Subjunct.)
 dūcenti, -ae, -a, see Par. 81 [(237)]
 dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, lead, marry
 dulcis, -e, sweet, delightful
 dum, conj. (Par. 272) while
 dūrus, -a, -um, hard
 dux, dūcis, c. leader, general

E, ex, prep. (g. abl.) out of, from :
 ex imprōbo, fīs imprōbior, from
 bad, you are becoming worse
 ēbur, ēbūris, n. ivory
 eccē, interject. lo! behold!
 ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3, eat
 ēdūco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, educate
 ēdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, I lead out
 effēro, extūli, ēlātum, efferrē, 3,
 irr. v. I carry out
 efflōresco, -flōrūi, 3, blossom
 effōdio, -fōdi, -fōsum, 3, scoop
 out, strike out
 effūgio, -fūgi, 3, escape (g. acc.)
 ēgēo, -ui, 2, to need (g. abl.)
 ēgo, see Par. 90
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, adj. excellent,
 eminent
 eiusmōdi, see mōdus
 ejīcio, -jēci, -iectum, 3, cast out
 élēgans, -antis, adj. elegant, ex-
 quisite
 élēgantia, -ae, f. tastefulness
 élēphas, élēphantis, m. (also élē-
 phantus, -i, m.) elephant
 élīcio, -līci, -līcītum, 3, draw forth
 élīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, choose
 élōquens, -entis, adj. eloquent

ēloquentiā, -ae, f. <i>eloquence</i>	Euphrātēs, -is, m. <i>the Euphrates</i>
ēmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>improve</i>	Eurīpīdēs, -is, m. <i>Euripides</i>
ēmigro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>I depart from</i>	Eurōpa, -ae, f. <i>Europe</i>
ēmīnus, at a distance [military term opp. to commīnus (cum, mānus), hand to hand]	ēvādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, <i>escape</i>
ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3, <i>I buy</i>	ēvēnīo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, <i>to happen</i>
ēnarro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>I relate</i>	ēventūs -ūs, m., <i>event, result</i>
ēnim, conj. for (differs from nam in never standing first in a clause)	ex or ē, prep. with abl. <i>out of, from</i> ; ex itinēre, <i>on a journey</i>
ēnītor, -īsus or ixus, 3, v. dep. <i>strive hard</i>	exalbesco, -albni, 3, <i>turn pale</i>
ensis, -is, m. <i>sword</i>	exaudio, -īvi, -ītum, 4, <i>catch the sound of (g. acc.)</i>
eo, adv. abl. of is, by so much; (with compar.) eo mēlius (by) so much the better; in eo (166)	excēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, <i>I depart from</i>
ēo, īvi, ītum, īre, go, Par. 241	exelāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>I cry out</i>
ēpistōla, -ae, f. <i>letter, epistle</i> (perhaps better, épistūla)	execōlo, -cōlūi, -cultum, 3, <i>I cultivate carefully; agri exulti frāmento, lit. fields richly cultivated with corn, i.e. fields with rich corn-crops</i>
Epāmīnondas, -ae, m. <i>Epaminondas, a Theban patriot and general</i>	exeñsātiō, -īōnis, f., <i>excuse</i>
Ēphēsus, -i, f. <i>Ephesus</i>	excūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>to excuse</i>
ēquēs, -ītis, m. <i>horse soldier</i>	excūtiō, -cussi, -cussum, 3, <i>shake off</i>
ēquester, -tris, -e, <i>equestrian</i>	exemplum, -i, n. <i>example</i>
ēquidem (Par. 139) <i>for my part</i>	exēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum, 3, <i>eat out, gnaw away; exēsus pñmex, weather-hollowed rock</i>
equīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>ride</i>	exēo, -īvi or ii, -ītum, 4, <i>I go out</i>
ēquitātus, -ūs, m. <i>cavalry</i>	exercēo, -īi, -ītum, 2, <i>exercise</i>
ēquus, -i, m. <i>a horse</i>	exerecītus, -ūs, m. <i>army</i>
ergā, prep. (g. acc.) <i>towards (only of the feelings)</i> Par. 183	exhaustio, -hausi, -haustum, 4, <i>drain off, drink off</i>
ēripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, <i>snatch away (g. acc. and dat., 192)</i>	exigūus, -a, -um, <i>scanty, little</i>
erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>err, wander</i>	exilīum, <i>see exsīlīum</i>
error, -ōris, m. <i>error, fault</i>	exitīnī, -ii, n. <i>destruction</i>
ērñdīo, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4, <i>train up, educate</i>	exordīo, -orsus, 4, (v. dep.), <i>begin pl. a beginning</i>
ērūditus, -a, -um, adj. <i>trained, educated</i>	expecto, -āvi, -atum, 1, <i>await</i>
ērumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, <i>burst, rush forth</i>	expello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, <i>I drive out</i> [awakened]
ēt, conj. and; et...et, both...and; even, (see Par. 12, 32, 153)	expērgiscor, experrectus, 3, <i>I am expēriētūa, -ae, f. experience</i>
ētīam, conj. also, even (141); (mostly before the word it modifies); nōn sōlum...sed ētīam, not only ...but also	expērītor, -pertus, 4, dep. try, <i>experience</i>

expers, -rtis, *destitute of* (g. gen.)
 expēto, -īvi, -itum, 3, *seek out*
 explorātor, -ōris, m. *spy, scout*
 explōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *investigate*
 expōno, -pōsui, -pōsitūm, 3, *put forth, disembark*
 expugno, -āvi, ātum, 1, *take by storm* [destroy]
 excindo, -scidi, -scissum, 3, *rend*,
 exsilio, -sīlui, -sultum, 4, *leap forth*
 exsiliūm, -i, n. *exile*
 extrō, -xi, -ctum, 3, *build up*
 extimesco, -tīmūi, 3, *take alarm at (acc.)*
 extrā, prep. (g. acc.) *outside of; ex-*
trā culpam, free from blame
 extrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw out*
 extrēmus, -a, -um, *last*, Par. 69
 exulto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *exult*
 exnō, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *strip off*

Fäber, -bri, m. *workman, artificer*
 Fäbius, -ii, m. Quintus Fäbius Maximus, called Cunctātor, because by "delaying action" he restored success to Rome in the Second Punic War
 fäbula, -ae, f. *story, fable*
 fäc̄ies, -ēi, f. *face*
 fäcilē, adr. *easily*; comp. fäcilius
 fäciliis, -e, adj. *easy* (60) [crime]
 fäcīnus, -ōris, n. *daring deed, fäcio, fēci, factum, fäcērē, 3, make, do; fäc (ut) věrias, cause that you, i.e. take care to, come: (with assis, flocci) I value* (284)
 factum, -i, n. *deed*
 fallāx, -ācis, *deceitful*
 fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3, *deceive: fidem fēfelli, he broke his word: non f. öpiniōnem, it did not deceive our expectation*
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*
 fâma, -ae, f. *fame, reputation*;
 Fâma, the goddess *Fame*
 fâmiliāris, -e, *belonging to the*

household; rēs f. *one's property, estate*
 fâmēs, -is, f. *hunger*
 fâs, n. indecl. *divine law, heaven's will; contrā jūs fâsque, against human and divine law*
 fascis, -is, m. *bundle, faggot; fascēs, the rods carried before consuls*
 fâtēor, fassus, 2, dep. *confess*
 fâtum, -i, n. *fate*
 faux, -cis, f. *jaw*
 fâveo, fâvi, fautum, 2, *farour (g. dat.)*
 febris, -is, f. (-im or -em, -ī or -ē), *fever*
 fâlic̄iter, adv. *luckily, prosperously*
 fâlix, -icis, *happy, fortunate*
 fêmīna, -ae, f. *a woman*
 fêra, -ae, f. *a wild beast*
 fêrâx, -âcis, *fruitful*
 fêrē, adv. *almost, commonly; nêmo fêrē, hardly anyone*
 fêritas, -âtis, f. *sarageness* [peace]
 fêrio, 4, *strike; f. pâcem, I make*
 fêro, tûli, lâtum, ferre, bear, carry, *endure; fertur Gaius dixisse, it is reported that Gaius said*
 fêrōx, -ôcis, adj. *fierce, spirited*
 ferrum, -i, n. *iron, sword*
 fertîlis, -e, *fertile*
 fêrus, -a, -um, *savage, wild*
 fessus, -a, -um, *weary*
 fêtus, -ñs, m. *offspring*
 fîc̄us, -ñs, f. *a fig*
 fidêlis, -e, adj. *faithful*
 fides, -ēi, f. *faith; servo fidem, I keep my word*
 fidō, fîsus sum. fidere, 3, (g. dat. or abl.) *I trust*
 fidus, -a, -um, adj. *faithful*
 fîgo, fixi, fixum, 3, *jix*
 filia, -ae, f. *a daughter*
 filius, -ii, m. *a son*
 fingo, finxi, fictum, 3, *feign*
 finio, -īvi, -ii, -itum, 4, *I end*
 finis, -is, m. *end, boundary (pl. territories)*

fīnītīmus, -a, -um, <i>bordering on</i>	fōrum, -i, n. <i>market-place, forum</i>
fīo, factus sum, fīērī, 3, v. irr. to	fossa, -ae, f. <i>ditch</i>
<i>become, be made</i> (258)	frango, frēgi, fractum, 3, <i>break</i>
fīrmo, -āvi, -ātūm, 1, <i>strengthen</i>	frāter, -tris, m. <i>brother</i>
fīrmus, -a, -um, adj. <i>strong</i>	fraus, fraudis, f. <i>deceit, mischief</i>
Flaccus, -i, m. <i>the surname of</i>	frēmo, -ui, ītūm, 3, <i>murmur</i>
<i>Quintus Horatius Flaccus, commonly called Horace</i>	frīgīdus, -a, -um, <i>cold</i>
flāgītīum, -i, n. <i>disgraceful crime</i>	frīgīs, -ōris, n. <i>cold</i>
fleo, flēvi, flētum, 2, <i>weep</i>	frōns, -ndis, f. <i>foliage</i>
flo, flāvi, flātūm, 1, <i>blow</i>	frōns, -ntis, f. <i>the forehead, brow</i>
flocceus, -i, m. <i>the down of wool; hence nōn flocci fācio, I do not value at a feather</i> (284)	fructus, -ūs, m. <i>fruit, advantage</i>
flobrens, -ntis, adj. <i>flourishing</i>	frāges, -ūn, f. pl. <i>fruits, a crop</i>
flōrō, -ūi, 2, <i>I bloom, flourish</i>	fruor, frūtūs or fructus, 3, dep. <i>enjoy</i> (207, 256)
flōs, flōris, m. <i>flower</i>	frūmentum, -i, n. <i>corn (mostly harvested); frūmenta, -orum, corn (mostly in the fields)</i>
fluctūs, -ūs, m. <i>wave, billow</i>	frustrā, adv. <i>in vain</i>
flūnen, -īnis, n. <i>current, river</i>	frūtex, -īcis, m. <i>shrub</i>
fluo, -xi, 3, <i>flow (fut. part. act. fluxūrus)</i>	fūga, -ae, f. <i>flight</i>
flūvīus, -ii, m. <i>a river</i>	fūgio, fūgi, 3, <i>flee</i>
fōdīo, fōdi, fossum, fōdēre, 3, <i>dig</i>	fūgo, -āvi, -ātūm, 1, <i>put to flight</i>
foedo, -āvi, -ātūm, 1, <i>detile</i>	fulcio, fulsi, fultum, 4, <i>prop up</i>
foedus, -ēris, n. <i>treaty</i>	fulgeo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, <i>I shine</i>
foedus, -a, -um, <i>foul, shameful</i>	fulgur, -ūris, n. <i>lightning (that shines); in poets used for fulmen</i>
fons, -ntis, m. <i>fountain, source</i>	fulmen, -īnis, n. <i>lightning (that strikes)</i>
fōrē, fut. inf. of sum (Par. 212); fōrem, fōret, &c. see sum	[rout
fōras, adv. (<i>motion</i>) <i>out of doors</i> ; fōrīs, adv. (<i>rest</i>) <i>out of doors</i>	fundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3, <i>pour, scatter</i>
fōrēs, -um, f. pl. <i>doors</i>	fundus, -i, m. <i>farm</i>
formido, -āvi, -ātūm, 1, <i>dread</i>	fūnestus, -a, -um, <i>fatal, deadly</i>
formido, -īnis, f. <i>terror</i>	fungor, functus, 3, v. dep. <i>I discharge</i> (207)
fortassē, adv. <i>perhaps (mostly refers to the future, unlike fortē below)</i>	fūnis, -is, m. <i>rope</i>
fortē, adv. <i>by chance, once upon a time, never refers to the Fut., except in the phrases, sī fortē, nīsī forte, nē fortē</i>	fūnus, -ēris, n. <i>a funeral</i>
fortis, -e, <i>brave, strong; -tissimē, adv. very bravely; -tīter, adv. bravely</i>	fūr, fūris, m. <i>thief</i>
fortūna, -ae, f. <i>fortune; fortūnae nostrae pēnēs tē sunt, our fortunes are in your hands</i>	fūror, -ōris, m. <i>madness, rage</i>
	Gādes, -īum, f. pl. <i>Cadiz</i>
	Gaius, gen. Gai, m. (<i>less correctly Caius, Caii</i>) <i>Gaius, a Roman praenomen or fore-name</i>
	Galīa, -ae, f. <i>Gaul</i>
	Gallus, -i, m. <i>a Gaul</i>
	gaudēo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre, 2, <i>I rejoice</i>
	gaudīum, -i, n. <i>joy</i>

gēlīdus, -a, -nm, *ice-cold*
 gēlū, -ūs, *n. frost*
 gēner, -ēri, *m. son-in-law*
 gens, gentis, *f. nation*
 gēnū, -ūs, *n. knee*
 gēnus, -ēris, *n. kind, race*
 Germanus, -a, -um, *German*
 gēro, gessi, gestum, 3, *carry on; rem bēnē gero, I succeed; bellum gēro, I wage war*
 glācies, -ēi, *f. ice*
 glādiātor, -ōris, *m. gladiator*
 glādiūs, -ii, *m. a sword*
 glans, -ndis, *f. acorn*
 Gracchus, -i, *m. Gracchus, the name of two brothers, both of whom brought forward Agrarian laws in Rome*
 grācīlis, -e, *slender, 60*
 Graecia, -ae, *f. Greece* [Greek]
 Graecus, -a, -um, *adj. Grecian*, grāmen, -īnis, *n. grass*
 grandis, -e, *large*
 grānum, -i, *n. a grain*
 grātia, -ae, *f. favour, in grātiām rēdire, to be restored to favour; (abl. sing.) for the sake of; grātias āgēre, to return thanks*
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, grateful*
 grāvis, -e, *heavy, severe*
 grāviter, *adv. heavily, sererely, seriously; hōc g. tūli, I was vexed at this*
 grāvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *weigh down*
 grex, grēgis, *m. flock*
 grus, grūis, *c. crane*
 gūberno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *govern*
 gusto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *taste*
 guttur, -ūris, *n. throat*

Hābēo. -ūi, -ītum, 2, *have; hābēo īn ānīmo, I purpose*
 hābito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dicell*
 haerēo, haesi, haesum, 2, *stick fast; (of the voice) falter*

Hannibāl, -ālis, *m. Hannibal*
 hāruspex, -īcis, *m. soothsayer*
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
 haud, *adv. not (rarely with verbs and adj. except haud sc̄io ān, haud dūbium est, &c.) [land]*
 Helvētia, -ae, *f. Helvetia (Switzer-*
 Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj. Helvetian*
 herba, -ae, *f. herb*
 hercle! (*an oath used as an exclamation*) by Hercules, certainly
 hērī, *adv. yesterday*
 hesternus, -a, -um, *of yesterday*
 hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl. winter quarters*; hībernus, -a, -um, *adj. of winter, wintry*
 hic, *pron. see Par. 103; hic...ille, the latter ... the former, one ... another; trībus hīs mensībus, within the next three months*
 hic, *adv. here*
 hīemps, hīēmis, *f. winter*
 hilāris, -e, *adj. cheerful*
 hīne, *adv. hence, from this place*
 histōria, -ae, *f. history; Nātūrālis h. the Natural History of Pliny*
 histriō, -īōnis, *actor*
 hōdiē, *adv. to-day*
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*
 hōmo, -īnis, *m. man¹*
 hōnestus, -a, -um, *honourable (this word never means "honest")*
 hōnor, -ōris, *m. an honour, office; in hōnōre est, it is held in honour*
 hōrī, -ae, *f. hour*
 hordeum, -i, *n. barley*
 Hōrātiūs, -ii, *Horace*
 hortor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. exhort*
 hortus, -i, *m. a garden*
 hostīa, -ae, *f. a victim*
 hostis, -is, *m. the enemy*
 hūc, *adv. hither; often, though not perhaps with strict correctness, rendered in modern English, "here"*

¹ Hōmo means a *human being*, and is occasionally (but very rarely) used of women: vir means a *good or brave man*.

hūmānītās, -ātis, <i>f. courtesy, kindness</i>	impēdeo, (<i>no Perf. or Sup.</i>) 2, <i>impend</i>
hūmānītūs, <i>adv. after the manner of men; (hence used of misfortunes)</i> aliquid ei h. accēdit, <i>he died</i>	impērātor, -ōris, <i>m. general</i>
hūmānus, -a, -um, <i>adj. human, gentle, courteous</i>	impērītus, -a, -um, (<i>g. gen.</i>) unskilful in
hūmīlis, -e, <i>low, low-minded</i> (60)	impēriūm, -īi, <i>n. command, empire</i>
hūmus, -i, <i>f. ground; hūmi, on the ground</i>	impēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, (<i>g. dat.</i>) give orders to ; i. tībi frūmentum, <i>I exact corn from you; foll. by ut</i> (143)
I, <i>imperative of ēo</i>	impētus, -ūs, <i>m. attack, onset</i>
ībi, <i>adv. there</i>	impīger, -gra, -grum, <i>active</i>
ictus, -ūs, <i>m. a blow; sub ictum venīre, to come within striking distance</i>	implōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>implore</i>
īgitur, <i>conj. therefore, then; differs from ītāquē in not standing first in a clause (in the best authors)</i>	impōno, -pōsui, -positum, 3, impose (<i>a task, tribute, &c.</i>) on, Par. 192
ignārus, -a, -um, <i>ignorant; tībi ignāro prōfui, I helped you without your being aware of it</i>	imprōbus, -a, -um, <i>adj. dishonest, wicked, bad</i>
ignāvē, <i>adv. indolently</i>	imprōdens, -ntis, <i>ignorant; i. fēci, I did it ignorantly</i>
ignāvia, -ae, <i>f. sloth, cowardice</i>	imprōfidentia, -ae, <i>f. ignorance, imprudence</i>
ignāvus, -a, -um, <i>slothful, cowardly</i>	īn, <i>prep. (g. acc.) into, towards; (g. abl.) in</i>
ignēus, -a, -um, <i>adj. fiery</i>	īnānis, -e, <i>idle, empty</i> [tion
ignis, -is, <i>m. fire, abl. ignī (except in poets)</i>	incendīum, -ī, <i>n. a fire, conflagration</i>
ignōrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f. ignorance</i>	incendo, -di, -sum, 3, <i>set fire to, burn</i>
ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, 3, (<i>g. dat.</i>) <i>pardon</i>	incertus, -a, -um, <i>adj. uncertain</i>
illātūri, <i>see īnfēro</i>	incēpīo, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, <i>begin</i>
illē, (103) Ālexander ille, <i>the great, well-known, &c., Alexander</i>	incōla, -ae, <i>m. inhabitant</i>
illēcēbrae, -ārum, <i>f. pl. allurements</i>	incōlo, -ui, -ultun, 3, <i>inhabit</i>
illīc, <i>adv. thither</i>	incōlūnis, -e, <i>safe</i>
īnāgo, -īnis, <i>f. image, likeness</i>	incōlūnitās, -ātis, <i>f. safety</i>
imbellis, -e, <i>unwarlike</i>	inerēpo, -erēpūi, -erēpitum, 1, <i>reproach</i>
imber, -ris, <i>m. (Abl. -i), shower</i>	īncūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>I accuse, find fault with</i>
īmitōr, -atus, 1, <i>v. dep. imitate</i>	indē, <i>adv. thence, thereupon; indē ā pūerītiā, even from boyhood</i>
immēmor, <i>gen. -ōris, unmindful</i>	Indi, -ōrum, <i>m. pl. Indians</i>
immortālis, -e, <i>adj. immortal</i>	indīco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>point out</i>
immortālitās, -ātis, <i>f. immortality</i>	indignus, -a, -um, <i>unworthy</i>
impār, <i>gen. -āris, unequal</i>	indoctus, -a, -um, <i>unlearned</i>
impāvidus, -a, -um, <i>fearless</i>	indulgēo, -si, -tum, 2, (<i>g. dat.</i>) <i>indulge</i>
impello, -pūli, -pu'sum, 3, <i>impel</i>	

industrius, -a, -um, <i>adj. industrious, busy</i>	injustus, -a, -um, <i>unjust</i>
īnēo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, <i>go into, enter, begin</i>	innōcens, -ntis, <i>innocent</i>
īneptē, <i>adv. (īn-aptē, unfitly), foolishly, without tact</i>	innūmērus, -a, -um, <i>adj. innumerable</i>
īneptus, -a, -um, <i>silly</i>	īnop̄s, -ōpis, <i>destitute</i>
īners, -tis, <i>adj. helpless, sluggish</i>	inquām, <i>inquit, see Defective Verbs, Appendix II., p. 215</i>
infāmīa, -ae, <i>f. infamy</i>	insāniō, -īvi, -ītum, 4, <i>I am mad</i>
infāmīs, -e, <i>adj. infamous</i>	insēquor, -sēcūtus, 3, <i>follow after, pursue</i>
infectus, -a, -um, <i>unaccomplished; rē infectā, (abl. abs.) the affair being unaccomplished, i.e. with nothing done (Par. 197)</i>	īnsidiae, -arum, <i>f. snares, an ambush</i> ; per insidias, <i>insidiously</i>
infēlīcīter, <i>adv. unluckily; pugnā-tum est i. we have been defeated</i>	insignis, -e, <i>distinguished, noted</i>
infēlīx, -īcis, <i>unfortunate, unhappy</i>	insōlēns, -ntis, (<i>g. gen.</i>) <i>unaccus-tomed to</i>
infērīor, -īus, <i>comp. of infērus, adj. lower, inferior</i>	instītō, -ui, -ūtum, 3, <i>I appoint, institute</i>
infēro, intūlī, illātum, inferrē, 3, <i>v. irr. ; bellum i. tībi, I declare war against you</i>	instrūmentum, -i, <i>n. an instrument</i>
infīnitūs, -a, -um, <i>adj. unbounded, infinite</i>	instrūō, -xi, -ctum, 3, <i>arrange, draw up</i>
infīrmītās, -ātis, <i>f. weakness</i>	insuētus, -a, -um, <i>untrained to (g. gen.)</i>
infīrmus, -a, -um, <i>infirm, weak</i>	insūla, -ae, <i>f. island</i>
infra, <i>prep. (g. acc.) below</i>	insūm, -fui, -esse, <i>v. irr. (g. dat.) I am in</i>
ingēns, -ntis, <i>huge, great</i>	intellēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, <i>under-stand, hear, perceive (less cor-rectly intelligo)</i>
ingēnīum, -i, <i>n. disposition</i>	intēr, <i>prep. (g. acc.) between, among ; inter vēnāndum, during hunting ; haec inter sē rēpugnant, these things are inconsistent with one another</i>
ingrātūs, -a, -um, <i>displeasing, un-grateful</i>	interclūdo, -ūsi, -ūsum, 3, <i>I cut off ; i. hostes commēatu, I cut off the enemy from supplies</i>
ingrēdīor, -gressus sum, 3, <i>v. dep. enter</i>	interdūm, <i>adv. sometimes</i>
īnhaerēo, -haesi, -haesum, 2, <i>stick fast</i>	intērēo, -ivi or -īi, -ītum, 4, <i>perish</i>
īnhōnestus, -a, -um, <i>dishonour-able</i>	intērest, -fūt, -esse, (<i>v. impers.</i>) <i>it makes a difference, it concerns, Par. 329</i>
īnimīcītā, -ae, <i>f. enmity</i>	interfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, <i>slay</i>
īnimīcīs, -a, -um, <i>unfriendly, hostile ; īnimīcīs, -i, m. a private enemy ; opp. to hostis, an enemy of the state</i>	intēritūs, -ūs, <i>m. destruction</i>
īnītūm, -i, <i>n. a beginning</i>	interjācēo, -jacui, 2, <i>lie between</i>
īnjēcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, <i>cast (fear, &c.) into, inspire</i>	interrōgo, -āvī, -ātum, 1, <i>ask, ques-tion</i>
īnjēcūndus, -a, -um, <i>disagreeable</i>	
īnjustē, <i>adv. unjustly</i>	

- intersum, -fūi, -esse, (*g. dat.*) *I am among, I take part in*
 intervēnō, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *interrupt, (g. dat.)* (192)
 intrā, *prep. (g. acc.) inside, within*
 intro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enter*
 intrōeō, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, *go into, enter*
 intūeō, -ītus -sum, 2, *v. dep. look upon, into*
 īnūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3, *brana*
 īnūtilis, -e, *useless*
 īnūtiliter, *adv. uselessly, in vain*
 invādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3, *attack*
 invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, -ae, 4, *light on, find, find out* [dat.]
 invīdēo, -vīdi, -visum, 2, *envy, g.*
 invīdia, -ae, *f. envy, ill-will*
 invīdus, -a, -um, *envious*
 invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling; (used as adj. but with adv. force)* invītus fēci, *I did it unwillingly*
 ipsē, *see Par. 105, 308*
 īra, -ae, *f. anger*
 īrācundus, -a, -um, *angry*
 irascor, īrātus, 3, *v. dep. I am angry*
 irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst into, rush into*
 irrūo, -rūi, 3, *rush in*
 īs, īa, īd, *see p. 46; nōn īs sum qui mentiar, I am not the man to lie,* 303a
 istē, -a, -ud, *pron. adj. that of yours; iste, that fellow*
 istūc, *adv. thither, where you are*
 ītā, *in that way, thus, so*
 Itālia, -ae, *f. Italy*
 ītāque, *and so, thereupon; ītāqūe, (differing from īgītur), stands first in a clause*
 īter, ītīnēris, *n. journey, road, way; ex ītīnērē, on a journey*
 ītērum, *adv. a second time, again*
Jācēo, -ūi, 2, lie (on the ground)
 jācio, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw*
- jactātīo, -īōnis, *f. boasting*
 jaeto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *boast*
 jactūs, -ūs, *m. cast, shot, fire; intra tēli jactum, within shot;*
 sūb jactu, *under fire*
 jam, *adv. (1) already; (2) by this time; cuim īam often means "just when," or "at last when"; non jam, no longer*
 jamdūdum or jamprīdeim, *adv. this long while; j. cūpō, I have been this long while desiring* (324)
 Jānūrius, -ia, -ium, *of January*
 jēcor, -ātus, 1, *(v. dep.) jest*
 Jōvis, *see Juppiter*
 jübēo, jussi, jussum, 2, *I order, (g. acc. and inf.) bid*
 jucundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*
 Jūdaea, -ae, *f. Judea*
 jūdex, -īcis, *m. judge; mē judice, in my judgment, lit. I being a judge* (Par. 197)
 jūdīcium, -ī, *n. judgment*
 jūdīco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *judge*
 jūgūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cut the throat of, butcher*
 jūgum, -ī, *n. yoke; to be "sent under the yoke" was the sign of defeat*
 jungo, -nxi, -netuin, 3, *join; ponte jungēre, to bridge over*
 jūnīor, -ōris, *younger*
 Jūno, -ōnis, *f. Juno, a goddess*
 Juppiter, Jōvis, *m. Jupiter*
 jūro, -āvi, ātum or jurātus sum, 1, *I swear; j. in lēgem, I swear (obedience) to a law; j. in verba eius, in accordance with his words*
 jūs, jūris, *n. right, law; jūrē, (adv. abl.) by right, rightly* (182)
 jussjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n. an oath*
 jussuin, -ī, *n. command*
 justē, *adv. justly; justius, more justly*
 justītia, -ae, *justice*
 justus, -a, -um, *just*
 jūvēnis, -is, *m. young man*

jūventūs, -ūtis, f. youth	lēx, lēgis, f. law
juxtā, prep. (g. acc.) near, hard by, next to	libenter, adv. willingly
Lābiēnus, -i, m. Labienus	liber, -bri, m. book
lābor, -ōris, m. labour	liber, -ēra, -ērum, free; liberrima
lābor, lapsus, 3, v. dep. I glide, pass away, fall	ōrātio, very frank speech (61)
lāc, lactis, n. milk [or Sparta	Liber, -ēri, m. Liber, the god of wine
Lācēdaemon, -ōnis, f. Lacedaemon	libērē, adv. freely
Lācēdaemōni, -ōrum, m. the Lacedaemonians	libéri, -ōrum, m. pl. children
lācrīma, -ae, f. a tear	libēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I free, deliver (g. abl. of thing)
lācus, -ūs, m. a lake	libertas, -ātis, f. freedom, liberty
laedo, laesi, -sum, 3, hurt (g. acc.)	libet (libuit and) libitum est, 2, v. impers. (g. dat.) it pleases
laetītia, -ae, f. joy	Lībya, -ae, f. Africa
laetus, -a, -um, joyful	licet, licuit and licitum est, licere,
lāpis, -īdis, m. stone	2, v. impers. (g. dat.) it is lawful, allowed; (used with Inf. or with Subjunct. with ut omitted)
lāpidēus, -a, -um, adj. of stone	licet omnes frēmant, let them all murmur; N.B. after licet mihi esse, the Adj. may either be dat. (Par. 24), or attracted into the Acc., to agree with me "understood," licet mihi (mē) esse bēatum
lātē, adv. widely, wide	Līcīnius, -i, m., Licinius
lātēo, -ui, 2, lie hid, lurk	lictor, -ōris, m. a lictor
lātex, -īcis, m. water	lignēus, -a, -um, wooden
Lātinus, -a, -um, Latin	līlīn, -i, n., lily
lātitūdo, -inis, f. breadth	lingua, -ae, f. tongue, language
Lātōna, -ae, f. Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana	līquet, līquēre, 2, v. impers. (Par. 222) it is clear, evident
latro, -ōnis, m. a robber	littēra, -ae, f. a letter of the alphabet
latrōcīnum, -i, n. robbery	littērae, -ārum, f. pl. letters, learning, also an epistle, letter
lātūnus, fut. part. of fēto	lītus, -ōris, n. a shore
lātūs, -a, -um, wide, broad	Līvius, -i, m. Titus Līvius the historian, commonly called Līvy
laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, praise	lōcūs, -i, m. a place
laus, laudis, f. praise	longē, adv. far, far off [tance
lāvo, -lāvi, lavātum, 1, wash ¹	longinquitās, -ātis, f. length, dis-
lectus, -i, m. bed	longinquus, -a, -um, adj. long, distant
lēgātus, -i, m. ambassador, lieutenant	
lēgio, -iōnis, f. legion, from 4,000 to 6,000 men	
lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3, gather, read	
lēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, bequeath	
Lemnos, -i, f. the isle of Lemnos	
lēo, leōnis, m. lion	
Lēonidas, -ae, m. Leonidas	
lēpus, -ōris, m. a hare	
Lesbos, -i, f. Lesbos	
lēvis, -e, light, fickle, empty	

¹ Also lautum and lōtum; this verb is never intransitive.

longitudo, -dīnis, *f. length* [far
longius, *adv. comp. farther, too*
longus, -a, -um, *long*; nāves
longae, *ships of war*
lōquor, lōcūtus, 3, *dep. speak*
lūcescit (illuxit), lūcescēre, 3, *v.*
impers. it becomes light
lūdo, -si, -sum, 3, *I play*
lūdus, -i, *m. play, game*
lūna, -ae, *f. the moon*
lūpus, -i, *m. wolf*
luscīnia, -ae, *f. nightingale*
lux, lūcis, *f. light, dawn*
lyra, -ae, *f. lyre*

Măcědo, -ōnis, *m. a Macedonian*
măcer, -era, -erum, *lean*
măcūla, -ae, *f. spot*
măgis, *adv. (sup. maximē), rather,*
in a higher degree, more
măgister, -tri, *m. master, teacher*
măgistrātus, -ūs, *m. magistrate,*
magistracy
magnificus, -a, -um, *adj. magnificent; (for superl. see Par. 68a)*
magnopēre, *adv. greatly, earnestly*
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*
măjestas, -ātis, *f. lit. "sovereignty";*
condemnari măjestatis, to be
found guilty (on the charge) of
(impairing) sovereignty, i.e. of
treason (290)
măjor, -ōris, Par. 68
măjōres, -um, *m. pl. ancestors*
mălē, *adv. comp. pējus, sup. pessi-*
mē, badly, ill
mălēdictum, -i, *n. slander, curse*
mălēvōlus, -a, -um, *ill-wishing,*
malevolent (superl., Par. 68a)
mălo, mălui, mallē, *irr. v. I am*
more willing, I prefer, I had
rather (p. 130)
mălum, -i, *n. an apple*
mălum, -i, *n. evil*
mălus, -i, *f. an apple tree*
mălus, -a, -um, *bad, evil* [*mission*
mandātum, -i, *n. a charge, com-*

măňeo, -nsi, -nsum, 2, *remain*
mănfestus, -a, -um, *evident, mani-*
fest
mănipălus, -i, *m. a maniple*
mansī, *see măňeo*
mănus, -ūs, *f. a hand*
Mărăthon, -ōnis, *f. Marathon*
Marcus, -i, *m., Marcus; see Crassus*
măre, -is, *n. sea (see terra)*
margărīta, -ae, *f. a pearl*
mărīnus, -a, -um, *adj. of the sea*
marmor, -ōris, *n. marble*
Martius, -a, -um, *of March, p. 229*
măter, -tris, *f. mother*
măteria, -ae, *f. materials, timber*
mătrīmōnium, -ii, *n. matrimony,*
duxit eam in mătrīmōnium, he
married her (always of man
marrying women, see năbo)
mătūrus, -a, -um, *ripe*
maximē, *adv. very greatly, especially*
maximus, -a, -um, *see Par. 68*
Maximus, -i, *m. Maximus, "the*
greatest"; see Făbius
mădīcīna, -ae, *f. medicine*
mădīcus, -i, *m. physician*
mădītor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. meditate*
on, study
mădius, -a, -um, *middle (of);*
inédios ī hostes, *into the midst*
of the enemy
mălior, neut. -ius, *see Par. 68*
mămīni, *v. def.; see p. 215*
mămor, -ōris, *mindful (g. gen.)*
mămōrābilis, -e, *adj. memorable*
mămōrīa, -ae, *f. memory, recollection*
mendāciūm, -i, *n. lie, falsehood*
mendāx, -ācis, *adj. lying, deceitful*
Mĕnēnius, -ii, *m. Menenius Agrippa,*
author of the fable of the Belly
and the Other Members
mens, mentis, *f. mind*
mensis, -is, *m. month*
mentior, -ītus, 4, *(v. dep.) tell a lie*
mercător, -ōris, *m. merchant*
mercēs, -ēdis, *f. pay, wage, re-*
ward

Mercūrius, -i, m. *Mercury*
 mērēo (*also* mērēor, mēritus, 2, v.
 dep.) -ui, -itum, 2, *I deserve; dē
 pātria bēnē mēritus est, he has
 deserved well of his country*
 mergo, mersi, mersum, 3, *plunge*
 mēridies, m. *mid-day*
 messis, -is, f. *harvest*
 mētallum, -i, n. *a metal; mētalla,
 -ōrum, n. pl. mines; damnari in
 m. to be condemned to the mines.*
 mētior, mensus, 4, (*v. dep.*) *measure*
 mēto, messūi, messum, 3, *reap*
 Mettus, -i, m. *Mettus, an Alban,
 torn in pieces by Tullus Hostilius*
 mētūo, -ui, -itum, 3, *I fear*
 mētus, -ūs, m. *fear*
 mēus, -a, -um, *pronom. adj. my,
 mine*
 mi, masc. voc. of mēus [part
 migro, -āvi, -ātum, 1. *migrate, de-*
 mīlēs, mīlitis, m. *soldier*
 mīlia, (80) n. pl. *(sometimes for
 mīlia passuum. see passus)*
 mīlitāris, -e, *military; rēs m.
 military affairs, i.e. warfare*
 mīlitiae, adv. *in war*
 milliens, *a thousand times*
 mille, milia, *see Par. 80*
 mīna, -ae, f. *threat*
 mīnūmē, adv. *by no means, in the
 least degree; mīnūmus, -a, -um* (68)
 mīnister, -tri, m. *a servānt*
 mīnor, *see Par 68*
 mīnuo, -ui, -itum, 3, *diminish*
 mīrandus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
 mīror, -ātus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *wonder at,
 admire*
 mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
 miscēo, miscui, mixtum, 2, *mix,
 throw into confusion*
 mīser, -ēra, -ērum, *wretched*
 mīsērēor, -sertus or -sēritus, 2, *dep.
 pity (g. gen.)* (203)
 mīsēret, mīsēritum est, 2, v. *im-
 pers., see Par. 219*
 mīsērla, -ae, f. *misery*

mīserīcordia, f. *pity* [(g. acc.)
 mīseror, -atus, 1, *show pity to*
 mītesco, 3, *become mild*
 mītis, -e, adj. *mild*
 mitto, mīsi, missum, 3, *send*
 mōdestia, -ae, *modesty*
 mōdo, adr. *only; sī, or dum,*
mōdo, if, or provided, only;
mōdo nunc, only just now
 mōdus, -i, m. *measure, manner:*
praeter mōdum, beyond measur. :
nullo modo, in no way; eiusmodi,
of that kind
 moenia, -ium, n. pl. *fortifications*
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
 mollīo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *soften*
 mollis, -e, adj. *soft, mellow*
 mōnēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *advise, warn*
 mons, -ntis, m. *mountain*
 monstro, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *show,*
point out
 mōnūmentum, -i, n. *monument*
 mōra, -ae, f. *delay*
 inorbus, -i, m. *disease*
 mōrōr, mōrtūus, 3, v. dep. *die (fut.*
part. mōrītūrus, about to die)
 mōror, mōrātus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*
 mors, -tis, f. *death*
 morsūs, -ūs, m. *bite*
 mortālis, -e, adj. *mortal*
 mortūus, -a, -um, *dead*
 mōs, mōris, m. *manner, custom:*
mōres, -um, pl. conduct, morals:
nōn nostri mōris est, it is not
(characteristic of) our custom
 mōtūs, -ūs, m. *motion, movement*
 mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *more,*
affect; bellum, or arma, mōveo,
I stir up or commence war
 mox, adv. *soon*
 mōtier, -ēris, f. *woman, wife*
 multiplex, -plicis, *manifold; m.*
fētus, many young ones at a time
 multītūdo, -īnis, f. *multitude*
 multo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *punish (with*
death, fine, &c.)
 multus, -a, -um, *much, many;*

multa nox, *a late (hour of) night*; multum *adv.*, multum int̄erest, *it makes a great difference*; multo (*adv. with compar.*) (*by*) much; multo fēlīcior, (*by*) much more happy
Mummīus, -ii, *m.* *Mummius, the destroyer of Corinth*
 mundus, -i, *m.* *the universe*
 mūnīficus, -a, -um, (68a) *liberal*
 mūnīmentum, -i, *n.* *a fortification*
 mūnīo, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4, *fortify*
 mūnīus, -ēris, *n.* *a gift, duty, function*
 murmūr, -ūris, *n.* *murmur*
 mūrus, -i, *m.* *wall*
 mūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *change*
 Mȳcēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.* *Mycenae, the chief city of Greece in the Trojan times*
 myrtus, -i and -ūs, *f.* *myrtle*

Nactus, *see* nancisor
 nam, *conj. for*; *differs from ēnim in standing first in a clause*
 nancisor, *nactus and nanctus, inf.*
 nancisci, 3, *obtain (r. dep.)*
 narro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *relate*
 nascor, nātus, 3, *v. dep.* *I am born*
 N.B. nascor means "I am being born"; dēcem annos nātus est,
he is ten years old
Nāso, -ōnis, *m.* *Publius Ovidius Naso, commonly called Ovid*
 nātu, *adv. abl.* *by birth*
 nātūra, -ae, *f.* *nature*
 nātūralis, *see histōria*
 nātus, -a, -um, *part. and adj.* *born, aged; viginti annos n., twenty years old*
 nauta, -ae, *m.* *a sailor*
 nāvālis, -e, *adj.* *naval*
 nāvīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *sail*
 nāvis, -is, *f.* *ship*
 -nē, *enclitic, asks a question (100)*
 nē, *conj. that not, lest (131); nē*

quīs, *that no one (294); (with perf. subj.) (do) not (129)*
Nēāpolis, -is, *f.* (*acc.* -īm), *Naples*
 nēc, *see nēquē*
 nēcessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* *necessary*
 nēcesse, *adv.* *necessarily*; (*used as adj.*) nēcesse est, *it is necessary*, (*foll. by acc. and inf. or ut*)
 nēco, nēcāvi, nēcatum, 1, *kill*
 nēsandus, -a, -um, *unspeakable, monstrous*
 nēfās, *n. indecl.* *wickedness*; *n. dictu, monstrous to relate!*
 neglēgo, -exi, -ectui, 3, *neglect*
 nēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I deny*
 nēgōtiūm, -i, *n.* *business*
 nēmo, nullius, *m.* *nobody, no one*
 Par. 92; *n. nōn gaudēbat, there was no one that did not rejoice*
Nēoptōlemus, -i, *m.* *Neoptolemus*
Neptūnus, -i, *m.* *Neptune*
 nēquāni, *indecl. adj. comp.* nēquōr, *sup.* nēquissīmus, *worthless*
 nēquē, *or nēc, conj. and not; when repeated, neither...nor*
 nēquēo, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, -īre, 4, *I am unable, cannot; imperf.* nēquībam; *fut indic.* nēquībo; *pres. part.* nēquīens, *gen.* nēquēuntis
 nēquīquam, *adv.* *in vain*
 nēquissīmus, *see nēquām*
Nēro, -ōnis, *m.* *Nero*
nesciō, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4, *I am ignorant of, do not know*; nesciō
 an ventūrus sit, *i.e.* nesciō (ntruim afūtūrus sit) an (pōtiūs) ventūrus sit, *I do not know whether he will be absent or whether he will rather come, i.e. I think he will come*, Par. 302
 neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* -īūs, *dat.* -ī), *neither of two, see Par. 85*
 nēve, *adv. or not, nor; or (after neg.) ne affirnāvēris nēvē nēgā vēris, say neither 'yes' nor 'no'*
 nīdus, -i, *m.* *a nest*

nīger, -gra, -grum, <i>black</i>	nox, noctis, <i>f. night</i> [jurious]
nīhil, or nīl, -n. <i>indecl. nothing</i> ; (from nīhūlūm) nīhīlī te fācio, <i>I esteem you of no account</i> ; nīhīlo mīnūs, <i>none the less</i> (277)	noxiūs, -a, -um, <i>adj. hurtful, in- nūbēs, -is, <i>f. cloud</i></i>
Nīlus, -i, <i>m. the Nile, a river in Egypt</i>	nūbo, nupsī, nuptum, 3, <i>she marries (g. dat.) ; not used of men marry- ing</i> ; see mātrīmōnium
nī, <i>conj. a form of nīsī</i>	nūllus, -a, -um, <i>adj. no, none</i> ; gen. sing. -īus, <i>dat. -ī, (85)</i>
nīmīs, <i>adv. too, too much</i>	num? <i>interr. adv. expects the answer "no" ; (sometimes conj.) whether</i> , Par. 135
Niōba, -ae, <i>f. Niobe</i>	nūmērō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>I count</i>
nīsī, <i>conj. if...not, unless (has the same constr. as sī, 125, 293-5) ; after nīhil and quīd, nīsī means "but" or "except," and has the same constr. as quam (62)</i>	nūmērus, -i, <i>m. number</i>
nītor, nīsus <i>and</i> nīxūs, 3, <i>strive</i> (143)	Nūmīda, -ae, <i>m. a Numidian</i>
nīx, nīvis, <i>f. snow</i>	nūnc, <i>adv. now, at the present time</i>
no, nāvī, nātum, 1, <i>swim</i>	nūnquam, <i>adv. never</i>
nōbīlis, -e, <i>adj. distinguished, noble</i>	nūntīo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>bring word</i>
nōcēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, <i>(g. dat.) hurt</i>	nūntius, -i, <i>m. messenger</i>
nōlō, nōlūi, nolle, <i>v. irreg. I am unwilling, I do not wish</i> ; nōlī vēnīre, <i>do not come</i> ; īdem nōle, <i>to dislike the same thing</i> , p. 128	nūptīo, <i>adv. lately</i>
nōmen, -īnis, <i>n. name</i>	nūtrīo, -īvi and -īi, -ītum, 4, <i>nourish</i>
nōmīno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>name</i>	nūx, nūcis, <i>f. nut</i>
nōn, <i>adv. not</i>	
nondum, <i>adv. not yet</i>	
nōnne? <i>interr. adv. expects the answer "yes" ; sometimes a conj. whether</i> , Par. 135	
nonnullus, -a, -um, <i>adj. some</i>	ōb , <i>prep. (g. acc.) on account of, in front of</i>
nosco, nōvi, nōtum, 3, <i>I gain knowledge of; hence perf. nōvi, I have gained knowledge of</i> ; i.e. <i>I know</i>	obdormīo, -ivi, -ītum, 4, <i>fall asleep</i>
noster, -stra, -strum, <i>pronom. adj. our, ours</i> ; <i>nostri often means "our men;" nostri is also gen. of nōs (93), and nostrum part. gen.</i>	ōbēdīo, -īvi and -īi, -ītum, 4, <i>(g. dat.) obey</i>
nosti <i>for</i> nōvisti, <i>see nosco</i>	ōbēō, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, <i>I meet, esp. meet death, I die</i>
nōta, -ae, <i>mark, stigma</i>	oblātus, <i>see offēro</i>
nōtus, -a, -um, <i>known</i>	oblectātō, -īonis, <i>f. delight</i>
nōvus, -a, -um, <i>adj. new</i>	oblīno, -lēvi, -lītum, <i>besmear, defile</i>
	oblīvisor, -lītus, 3, <i>dep. forget (g. gen.) 203</i>
	obscūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>darken</i> ,
	obscūrus, -a, -um, <i>obscure, dark</i>
	obsēcro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>beseach (foll. by ut)</i> [respect]
	observo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, <i>I observe</i> ,
	obses, -īdis, <i>m. hostage</i>
	obsīlēo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2, <i>block- ade, besiege</i>
	obsīdīo, -ōnis, <i>f. a siege, blockade</i>
	obsto, -stīti, -stītum, 1, <i>oppose, prevent (g. dat.) ; nothing prevents your coming</i> , nīhil obstat (tībi)
	quōmīnus vērias

obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3, *bind (by oath)*
 obsum, obfui or offui, ūbesse, v. *irreg. (g. dat.) I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure*
 obtemp̄o, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *comply with, obey (g. dat.)*
 obtineo, -tinui, 2, *keep, hold*
 occasiō, -ōnis, f. *opportunity*
 occidens, -tis, m. *the west, the setting (sun)*
 occido, -cidi, -cāsum, 3, *fall; occidit spēs nostra, our hope has perished; occidimus, we are undone*
 occido, -cidi, -cīsum, 3, *slay, kill*
 occūpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *seize upon*
 occūlo, -cūlūi, -cultum, 3, *hide*
 occumbo, -cūbūi, -cūbitum, 3, *fall down*
 ūcēnus, -i, m. *the ocean*
 ūcūlus, -i, m. *eye*
 ūdi, ūdisse, v. dep. *haste; see p. 215; ūdium, -ii, n. hatred; hic mihi ūdio (268) est, this man is hateful to me (lit. for hatred)*
 ūdor, -ōris, m. *a smell, scent*
 offero, obtūli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. *irreg. I present*
 ūlim, adv. *formerly*
 ūmen, -īnis, n. *an omen* [drop
 ūmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *omit, omnino, adv. altogether; (the position alters the meaning) o. nōn bōnus, not at all good; 2, nōn o. bōnus, not altogether good*
 ūnnis, -e, *all, the whole; (not "every," except in the pl.) ūnus, -ēris, n. a load, burden*
 ūpēra, -ae, f. *pains, labour; hīs ūperam do, I pay attention to these things* [tion
 ūpīnīo, -ōnis, f. *opinion, expectation*
 ūpōret, -ūit, 2, v. *impers. it behoves, is necessary; ūpōrtūit tē tacēre, you ought to have been silent (Par. 223)*

oppīdum, -i, n. *town*
 oppōno, -ōsūi, -ītum, 3, *I set against; oppōno me tibi, I oppose you (192)* [poicer
 opprīmo, -pressi, -pressum, 3, *over-*
 oppugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *assault*
 optimus, (68) *best, excellent; optīmē, adv. excellently* [sire
 opto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I wish, de-*
 ūpūlentus, -a, -um, adj. *wealthy*
 ūpus, -ēris, n. *work; opus est (g. abl.) there is need of*
 ūra, -ae, f. *the coast*
 ūrācūlum, -i, n. *an oracle*
 ūrāre causam, *to plead a cause*
 ūrātio, -ōnis, f. *an oration, speech*
 ūrātor, -ōris, m. *an orator*
 ordīor, -orsus, 4, v. dep. *I begin*
 ordo, -īnis, m. *rank, order; ordīnem equestrem, the order of the knights*
 ūrior, ortus, ūrīri, 3, v. dep. *rise*
 orno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *adorn*
 oro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *entreat, pray;*
 ūrāre causam, *to plead a cause*
 ortus, *see orior*
 ūs, ūris, n. *mouth; in ore omnium est, it is the talk of everybody*
 ūs, ossis, n. *bone*
 ūvum, -i, n. *egg*

Păciscor, pactus, 3, (v. dep.), *make an agreement*
 paenē, adv. *almost*
 pālam, (adv. and prep. g. abl.) *publicly, in the presence of*
 Pallās, -ādis, f. *Pallas Athene, not to be confounded with Minerva*
 palliūm, -ii, n. *a cloak*
 pando, pandi, passum, 3, *lay open; passo crīne, with dishevelled hair*
 pānis, -is, m. *bread*
 pāpāver, -ēris, n. *poppy*
 pāpīlio, -ōnis, m. *butterfly*
 par, pāris, equal; non est solvendo
 par, *he is not equal to paying, i.e. he is insolvent*

pārātus, -a, -um, *adj. prepared,*
p. ad pugnandum, *p. to fight*
parco, pēpercī, parcītūm or par-
sum, 3, (*g. dat.*) *spare; paucis*
parsum est, few were spared
pārens, -ntis, *c. parent*
pārēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *obey*
pārō, pēpēri, partum, 3, (*g. acc.*)
bring forth, give birth to
pāriter, *adv. equally*
pārō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *prepare, get*
pars, -tis, *f. part*
parsum, *see parco*
partiōr, -ītus, 4, *dep. share, divide*
partus, -ūs, *m. birth*
partim, *adv. too little; used for*
“not”; (*used as a noun g. part.*
gen.) p. vīrūm, *too little strength*
parvus, -a, -um, *small, little*
pasco, pāvi, pastum, 3, *feed; öves*
pascebantur, sheep were grazing
passus, -ūs, *m. a pace (about 5 feet);*
mille passus, a mile
pastor, -ōris, *m. shepherd*
pāteo, -ūi, 2, *extend; it extends for*
ten miles, pātet in foll. by acc.
pāter, -tris, *m. father*
pātiens, -ntis, (*g. gen.*) *patient (of)*
pātiēnter, *adv. patiently*
pātiōr, passus, 3, *endure, suffer*
pātres, -um, *m. pl. Fathers, a name*
given to the Roman Senators
pātria, -ae, *f. a native land, country*
pātrimōniūm, -ii, *n. patrimony*
pālisper, *adv. for a short time*
paucus, -a, -um (*mostly pl.*) *few*
pauper, -ēris, *poor*
paupertas, -ātis, *f. poverty*
pāvidus, -a, -um, *fearful*
pāvo, -ōnis, *m. peacock*
pāvor, -ōris, *m. terror, trembling*
pāx, pācis, *f. peace*
peccātūm, -i, *n. fault*
pecco, -avi, -atum, 1, *err, sin*
pēcūnia, -ae, *f. money, sum of money*
pēdēs, -ītis, *m. foot-soldier*
pēdītātus, -ūs, *m. infantry*

pejor, *see Par. 68*
pēlāgus, -i, *n. sea*
pellis, -is, *f. skin (of animals)*
pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3, *drive*
pendo (*page 209*) *hang, weigh,*
value (283)
pēnēs, *prep. (g. acc.) in the hands of*
penna, -a², *f. feather, wing; (of*
fishes) fin
pēr, *prep. (g. acc.) through, by means*
of; per dōlūm, treacherously
percipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *perceive*
percussio, -tōnis, *f. striking; p.*
dīgitōrum, the snapping of one's
fingers
perdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, *destroy*
perdōmo, -ūi, ītum, 1, *thoroughly*
tame, subdue
pērēo, -ii or -īvi, ītum, 4, *perish*
perfectus, -a, -um, *adj. finished,*
perfect
perfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.*
irr. endure
perfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *perform*
perfīdia, -ae, *f. perfidy*
perfīdus, -a, -um, *perfidious,*
treacherous
Pērīclēs, -is, *m. Pericles*
pērīcūlum, -i, *n. danger* [gen.]
pērītus, -a, -um, *adj. skilful in (g.*
pērēgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *I read*
through
permagnus, -a, -um, *very great*
permōvēo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2, *rouse,*
stir
permulti, -ae, -a, *very many*
pernīcīosus, -a, -um, *destructive*
perpētūs, -a, -um, *adj. continual*
perrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst*
through
Persā, -ae, *m. a Persian*
persaepē, *adv. very often*
perspīcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *see*
through, discern
persuādēo, -āsi, -āsum, 2, (*g. dat.*)
persuade (143); persuāsum est
mihi, I am persuaded

pertaesum, <i>see</i> taedet	abl.; vīno plēnus, <i>filled with wine</i> , i.e. <i>intoxicated</i>
pertereo, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum, 2, <i>alarm</i>	plērique, plēraequē, p'ērāque, <i>most</i>
pertimesco, -tīmūi, 3, <i>become fearful</i>	plērumque, <i>adv.</i> <i>for the most part</i>
pervēnō, -vēni, -ventum, 4, <i>arrive</i>	Plīnius, -ii, m. <i>Pliny</i>
perversus, -a, -um, <i>wilful, perverse</i>	plūt̄, plūt̄ or plūvit, pluēre, 3 <i>v. impers. it rains</i>
pēs, pēdis, m. <i>foot</i>	plūrīnus, <i>see</i> Par. 68
pessīmus, <i>see</i> Par. 68	plūs, -ūris, <i>more</i> ; (<i>neut. pl. often used as noun</i>) <i>he spoke no more</i> ,
pestis, -is, f. <i>plague</i>	nec plūra dixit, <i>see</i> Par. 72
pēto, -īvi & -ii, ītum, 3, <i>seek</i> :	poenitentia, -ae, f. <i>penitence</i>
Phāēthon, -ontis, m. <i>Phaēthon, a son of Apollo the Sun-god</i>	poena, -ae, f. <i>penalty</i> ; dāre poenas (pl.) culpae, <i>to pay the penalty of a fault</i>
Phīdīas, -ae, m. <i>Phidias, an Athenian sculptor (1st decl.)</i>	poenītet, -ītūit, -ītēre, 2, <i>v. impers. it repents (me)</i> , <i>see</i> Par. 219
Philippus, -i, m. <i>Philip (of Macedonia)</i>	pōēta, -ac, m. <i>poet</i>
Philoctētēs, -ae, m. <i>Philoctetes</i>	pollex, -īc's, m. <i>thumb (with which the lyre was twanged)</i>
phīlōsōphia, -ae, f. <i>philosophy</i>	pollicēor, -ītus, 2, <i>promise</i> (280)
phīlōsōphus, -i, m. <i>philosopher</i>	Pompēius, -ēii, m. <i>Pompey, the rival of Caesar</i>
Phoebus, -i, m. <i>Phoebus Apollo, the Sun-god</i> ; Phoebēus -a, -um, adj. <i>belonging to Phoebus Apollo</i>	pōmum, -i, n. <i>fruit</i>
pīger, -gra, -grum, <i>slack</i>	pondus, -ēris, n. <i>weight</i>
pīgēt, pīguīt and pīgitūm est,	pōnē, prep. (g. acc.) <i>behind</i>
pīgēre, 2, <i>v. impers. it vexes</i>	pōno, pōsūi, pōsitūm, 3, <i>place, lay aside</i>
pingo, -nxi, -pictum, 3, <i>I paint, embroider</i>	pons, -ntis, m. <i>a bridge</i>
pinguis, -e, <i>fat</i>	pontīfex, -īcis, m. <i>a high priest</i>
pinna, <i>see</i> penna	Pontīus (Pīlātus), -i, m. <i>Pontius Pilate</i>
pīnus, -ūs and -i, f. <i>pine-tree</i>	porcus, -i, m. <i>pig</i>
pīrum, -i, n. <i>a pear</i>	porta, ac, f. <i>a gate</i>
pīrus, -i, f. <i>a pear-tree</i>	porto, -āvi, -ātūm, 1, <i>carry</i>
piscātor, -ōris, m. <i>fisherman</i>	portus, -ūs, m. <i>harbour</i>
piscis, -is, m. <i>a fish</i>	Pōrus, -i, <i>an Indian king conquered by Alexander the Great</i>
plācēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, g. dat. <i>please</i> ;	poseo, poposei, 3, <i>demand</i>
plācuit, or plācītūm est, nobis vēnīre, <i>to come pleased us, i.e., we resolved to come</i>	possūm, pōtūi, posse, v. irreg. I am able, can (see pp. 126, 127)
plācet, -ūt or -ītum est, -ēre, 2, <i>v. impers. it pleases</i>	post, prep. (g. acc.) <i>after</i> ; adv. (313) multis post annis, many years afterwards (N.B. never used like the conj. postquam)
plācidus, -a, -um, adj. <i>quiet</i>	postēa, adv. <i>afterwards</i>
plānē, adv. <i>altogether</i>	
plānītēs, -ēi, f. <i>level space</i>	
planta, -ae, f. <i>a sprout, plant</i>	
Plāto, -ōnis, m. <i>Plato</i>	
plebs, plēbis, f. <i>the common people</i>	
plēnus, -a, -um, full, g. gen. or	

- postis, -is, *m. door-post*
 postpōno, -pōsui, -pōsītum, 3,
place after (g. acc. and dat.)
 postquam, *conj. when, after*
 postrēmus, *see Par. 69*
 postūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I demand*
 pōtentis, *adj. powerful*
 pōtentia, -ae, *f. power*
 pōtestas, -ātis, *f. power, authority*
 pōtor, -ītus, 4, *v. dep. (g. abl.)*
I make myself master of, obtain
 pōtius...quam, *rather...than; vel*
pōtius, or rather (used when a
writer slightly corrects his own
statement)
 prae, *prep. (g. abl.) before, in com-*
parison with, by reason of, see
Par. 178
 praebō, -ūi, -ītum, 2, *I exhibit,*
afford: p. exemplum, set an
example; p. fructum, put forth
fruit
 praecceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*
 praeceptum, -i, *n. precept, instruc-*
tion, lesson [famous
 praeclārus, -a, -um, *renowned*,
 praeda, -ae, *f. booty*
 praedium, -i, *n. farm*
 praēo, -īvi or -īti, -ītum, 4, *I go*
before; p. verba, dictate words
 praefero, -tūli, -lātum, *prefer*
 praeficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *set in*
command over (acc. and dat.)
 praemitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *I*
send on before
 praemium, -i, *n. reward*
 praesens, -entis, *present; prae-*
sentein ēum laudāvi, I praised
him in his presence
 praesidium, -i, *n. guard, garrison*
 praestans, -antis, *excellent*
 praesum, -fūi, -esse, *v. irreg. (g.*
dat.) I am before, at the head
of [yond
 praetēr, *prep. (g. acc.) beside, be-*
praetērēo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, v.
irreg. pass by
- praetēritus, -a, -um, *past*
 praetor, -ōris, *m. the praetor*
 praevēnō, -vēni, -ventum, 4,
anticipate
 prāvus, -a, um, *perverse, depraved*
 prēmo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I press*
 prētium, -i, *n. price, reward*
 primārius, -a, -um, *adj. first rate,*
eminent
 primo, *adv. at first*
 primus, -a, -um, *first (71)*
 princeps, -īpis, *adj. and noun, first*
in rank, chief, emperor
 principātūs, -ūs, *m. sovereignty*
 prior, -ōris, *superior, before (71)*
g. abl.
 pristinus, -a, -um, *adj. former,*
olden
 prius, *adv. sooner, before*
 priusquam, *conj. until, before,*
sooner than [behalf of
 pro, *prep. (g. abl.) before, for, on*
 probē, *adv. rightly, properly*
 probitās, -ātis, *f. honesty, integrity*
 prōbus, -a, -um, *honest, upright*
 prōcella, -ae, *f. storm*
 prōcērēs, -um, *m. pl. nobles*
 prōcērus, -a, -um, *tall*
 prōdītor, -ōris, *n. traitor*
 prōdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, *I hand*
down
 prōduco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *bring for-*
ward
 proelium, -i, *n. battle*
 prōfecto, *adv. assuredly, indeed*
 prōfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.*
irreg. extend
 prōficiſcor, -fectus, 3, *dep. set out*
 prōfundus, -a, -um, *adj. deep*
 prōgigno, -gēnūi, -gēnitum, 3,
bring forth, give birth to
 prōgrēdīor, -gressus, 3, *v. dep.*
advance
 prōlībēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, *hinder, pro-*
hibit, keep off
 prōlēs, -is, *f. offspring*
 prōmissum, -i, *n. a promise*

prōmissus, -a, -um, *hanging down, long (of hair)*
 prōmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *promise*; p. mē ventūrum, *I promise to come (never p. vēnīre)* (280)
 promptus, -a, -um, *ready*
 prōpē, *prep. (g. acc.) near*
 prōpē, *adv. near at hand, nearly; p. ābest a nōbīs, he is close to us*
 prōpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *hasten*
 prōpinquus, -a, -um, *adj. near*
 proptēr, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of; more rarely, near* (183)
 prōpulso, -avi, -atum, 1, *repel*
 Prōserpīna, -ae, f. *Proserpine*
prosper, -pēra, -pērum, prosperous
 prōsum, -fūi, *prodesse, (g. dat.) I am of use; non prōdest hōc dīcēre, it is of no use to say this* (191)
 prōtendo, -tendi, -tensum or -tentum, 3, *extend*
 prout, *conj. according as*
 prōvidēo, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide*
 prōvidus, -a, -um, *provident, fore-seeing*
 prōvincīa, -ae, f. *a section of the Roman Empire called a "province"*
 prōvōco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *challenge, provoke*
 proxīmus, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last* (Par. 69)
 prūdens, -ntis, *prudent*
 prūdentīa, -ae, f. *knowledge, prudence*
 pūblīcus, -a, -um, *public*
 pūdet, -nit, or pūditum, -ēre, 2, v. *impers. it shames* (Par. 219)
 pūella, -ae, f. *girl*
 pūer, -čri, m. *boy*
 pūerītia, -ae, f. *boyhood*
 pugna, -ae, f. *battle*
 pugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight*
 pulcher, -chra, -chrūm, *beautiful*
 pulli, -ōrum, m. pl. *chickens*

pūmex, -čis, m. *pumice-rock*
 Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*
 pūnīo, -īvi and -īi, -ītum, 4, *punish*
 pūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think*
 putresco, 3, *putrefy*
 Pygmālion, -ōnis, m. *Pygmalion*
 Pythāgōras, -ae, m. *Pythagoras*

Quadrīngenti, *see Par. 81*
 quaero, *quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3, seek, ask; quaerēbam mēcum, I was enquiring with myself; I asked him why, &c., quaesīvi, āb, ē, or dē, eo cūr, &c.*
 quaestūs, -ūs, m. *gain, profit*
 quālis, -e, *pron. adj. of what sort? what sort of? of which sort? as quam, conj. or adv. than (62) (aft. comp.); how, quam turpe est! how base it is! as, nōn tam valīdus est quam frāter eius, he is not so strong as his brother; quam cēlerrimē, as quickly as possible (327); quam qui, or ut (319)*
 quamdiū, *conj. as long as*
 quamquam, *conj. although (mostly with indic.)* (323)
 quamvis, *conj. however much, although (with subjunctive)* (323)
 quando? *interr. adv. when? also used in dependent questions* (156)
 quantus, -a, -um, *adj. how great a; tantus...quantus, so great a...as; (used as a Noun) quantum pēcūniae, as much (of) money; adr. how much; quantum intērest, how great a difference is there!* quanti? *at how great a price?* see Par. 283, 284
 quārē? *interr. adv. and conj. why? on what account?*
 quartus, *see Par. 81*
 quāsī, *adv. as if, just as*
 quāterni, -ae, -a, *four a-piece* (314)
 quātīo, *no perf., quassum, 3, shake, toss*
 quattuor, *see Par. 81*

-que, conj. and ; used to combine two words of similar meaning into one phrase, sēnātus pōpūlusquē (37) quercus, -ūs, f. an oak [plain quērōr, questus, 3 (v. dep.) comp. qui, rel. pron. (107); often precedes (never follows) cum, and must then be rendered demonstratively : quod cum intellexisse, when I perceived this; qui after quam (319); qui foll. by subjunct. (298); idem qui (319); see also quo quīā, conj. because quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, pron. adj. (neut. pron. quiddam), a certain (310a); cardo quīdam, a kind of hinge; see Eng. Vocab. "A" quīdem, conj. or adv. (67, 139) on the one hand, it is true, indeed; quīdem...autem (or vēro or sēd), on the one hand...but on the other hand; nē...quīdem, not even (141); q. sometimes merely emphasizes a word, e.g. nunc quīdem rīdes, "Now you laugh (but soon you will weep)" quid (or quic) quam, see quisquam quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet (pron. adj.) any you please; quolibet tempore, at any time he pleases (pron. neut. quidlibet) quīn (i.e. quī nōn, or quō nōn) conj. that not, (with subj.) (145, 300) nēmo est quīn rideat, there is no one that does not laugh; see also obstat and dūbiūm, with which it means "but that" quinquīē, see Par. 81; quinquiēns, adv. five times; quintus, see Par. 81 quīs, quae, quīd, who? see Par. 110, 111; (after sī, nē, num) any one quīnam, quaenam, quidnam? emphatic inter. pron. who? which? what?

quisquam, quaequam, quodquam (pron. neut. quicquam) anyone (used in neg. and compar. sentences, and in questions that expect the answer "no") (309) quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, (pron. neut. quidquē or quicquē) each, every; fortissimus quisquē, each bravest man, i.e. all the bravest men; sūam quisquē dōmum rēdiērunt, they returned, each to his own home (where quisquē is not nom. to r., but in Apposition to the nom. to r.) (140, 310) quisquis, quaequa, quodquod (adj.), whoever; (pron. neut.) quidquid or quicquid, whatever; quidquid āmīcōrum, whatever (of) friends (part. gen.) quīvīs, quaevis, quodvīs (pronom. neut. quidvīs) any you like; nēn cuiusvis est, it is not every one's luck (310) quō, adv. (rel. and interr.) whither quo, conj. and adv. (1) quo cūtiūs, eo mēliūs, by how much the quicker, by so much the better; (2) (with compar.) in order that (303); quōcum (179) quōd, conj. because, that (sometimes foll. by subjunct., 293a) quōmīnus, conj. that not, Par. 144; quīd obstat q. vērias? what prevents you from coming? quōmōdo? in what manner? how? (also used in dependent quest.) quondam, adv. formerly quōniām, conj. since quōquē, see quisquē quōquē, conj. also, too; (always after the word it modifies) quōt, indecl. adj. how many quōtīdīē (more correctly spelt cottī-dīē), adv. every day quōtiens, adv. how many times; quōtiens...tōtiens, as many times as...so many times

quōtus, -a, -um? *what (in number)?*
hōra est? what o'clock is it?
 quōtusquisque, *pron. q.* *est qui vēlit!* *how few there are who wish!* (*sometimes in two words, e.g. quōtus ēnim quisque*)
quum, an incorrect form of cum

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, 3, shave
Rādīx, -īcis, f. root
rāpāx, -ācis, adj. rapacious
rāpidus, -a, -um, rapid
rāpio, -īi, raptum, -ēre, 3, seize
rārō, adv. seldom, rarely
rārus, -a, -um, adj. rare
rātō, -ōnis, f. reason
rātus, -a, -um, thinking; see reōr
rēcipio, -ēpi, -eptum, 3, take back; sē rēcipiunt in castra, they retreat to the camp
rēcīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I read aloud
rēclāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, cry shame, protest
rēcordor, -ātus, 1, call to mind (gen., but more often acc.)
rēcrō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, refresh
rectē, adv. rightly
rectus, -a, -um, adj. straight, right
rēcūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, recover, get back [fuse
rēcūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, object, reddo, reddīdi, redditum, 3, restore, render
rēdēo, -ii, -ītum, 4, return
rēducō, -duxi, -ductum, 3, bring back
rēfēro, rētūlī or rettūlī, rēlātum, 3, v. irreg. I bring back, report, relate, reply; sometimes means "refer;" dē hāc rē ad Patres rēlātum est, a reference was made to the Senate on this point
rēfert (or rē-fert) it matters, is of importance (conjugated like fēro, but impersonal); illud magni rēferre rēor, I think that is of great importance (329)

rēgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, cast up, or back
rēgīna, -ae, f. a queen
rēgio, -ōnis, f. region, district
regno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, reign
regnūn, -i, n. a kingdom
rēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, I rule
Rēgūlus, -i, m. Regulus
rēligiō, -ōnis, f. religious scruple, id rēligiōnī hābō, I consider this sacrilege, lit. for a religious scruple (268) [poets, rēllīgio]
rēnuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, bring back word
rēlinquo, -līqui, -lictum, 3, leave, quit
rēmīniscor, 3, I remember (203)
rēnōvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, make new again, restore
rēor, rātus, rēri, (v. dep.) suppose, think
rēpērio, reppēri, rēpertum, 4, find (after search); sce invēnīo
rēplēo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2, fill up
rēs, rēi, f. thing; rem bēnē gēro, I succeed; rēs Rōmānā, the affairs (or fortunes) of Rome; r. miliūtāris, military matters; r. fāmiliāris, one's household affairs, property; r. frūmentāria, forage; rē ipsa, or rē, in fact (adv. abl.)
rēscindo, -scidi, -scissum, 3, tear open, or down; break down (a bridge)
rēsistō, -stīti, -stītum, 3, (g. dat.) resist; mīhī rēsistītur, I am being resisted [gard
rēspīcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, respondēo, -di, -sum, 2, answer
rēponsūm, -i, n. answer
rēs-publicā, rēi-publīcae, f., the republic, the country, politics
rēstītūo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, restore
resto, -stīti, 1, remain; spēs ūnā restat, one hope remains
rēte, -is, n. a net
rētexo, -texīi, -textum, 3, unweave

rētīneo, -tīnui, -tentum, 2, *keep back*
 rēus, -i, *m. the accused, defendant; rēus factus sum, I was accused*
rēvōeo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, recall
rēverto, -ti, -sum, 3, turn back, return (in the Pres. and Pres. derived tenses the Act form is rare : use rēvertor)
rēvertor, -versus, 3, v. dep. I turn back, return
rex, rēgis, m. king
Rhēnus, -i, m. the Rhine
rhetōrica, -ae, f. rhetoric
Rhōdānus, -i, m. the Rhone
Rhōdus, -i, f. Rhodes
rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, 2, laugh ; laugh at (g. acc.)
rīpa, -ae, f. bank, shore
rīsūs, ūs, laughter, a laugh
rōbur, -oris, n. strength
rōgātīo, -iōnis, f. (see rōgo) a bill proposed to the people ; ferre rōgātīōnem, to bring forward a bill
rōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, ask ; (used of asking the people whether they will pass a bill) hence rōgāre lēgein, to bring forward a bill
Rōma, -ae, f. Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
Rōmūlus, -i, m. Romulus
rōsa, -ae, f. a rose
rūbeo, -ui, 2, blush
rūber, -bra, -brum, red
rūbēta, -ōrum, n. pl. bramble-beds ; rūbus, -i, m. bramble
rūdis, -e, raw, ignorant (g. gen.)
rūpēs, -is, f. a rock
rūs, rūris, n. country ; rūri (Par. 265) in the country
rusticus, -a, -um, rustic

Sācer, -era, -erūm, sacred
sācerdōs, -ōtis, m. priest
saepē, adv. often
saepēnūmēro, adv. oftentimes

saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4, *hedge in, fence round*
saepissimē, adv. very often
saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce
sāgācītās, -ātis, f. keen scent, sagacity ; sāgax, -ācis, sagacious
sāgitta, -ae, f. an arrow
salto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, dance
salūber, -bris, -bre, healthful
sālūs, -ūtis, f. safety
salūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, salute
salvēo, -ēre, 2, I am well ; salvē, be well, i.e. good morning !
salvus, -a, -um, adj. safe
Samnītes, -iūm, m. pl. the Samnites
sancīo, sauxi, sanctum, 4, enact : sancio nē quīs absit, I enact that no one shall be absent
sānē, adv. (lit. soberly, in sober earnest) certainly
sanguis, -īnis, m. blood
sāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, heal
sānus, -a, -um, healthy
sāpiens, -ntis, wise ; sāpienter, adv. wisely
sāpiēntia, -ae, f. wisdom
sāpio, -īvi and -īi, 3, savour of (g. acc.) ; am wise
sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4, patch, mend
sātis, adv. enough, sufficiently : (used as a noun) sātis patriae dātum est, enough has been given to the claims of your country
saxun, -i, n. rock
scēlus, -ēris, n. crime
scēna, -ae, f. the stage of a theatre
scientia, -ae, f. knowledge
scindo, scīdi, scissū, m, 3, rend, tear
scīo, -īi or -īvi, -ītūn, 4, I know
Scīpīo, -ōnis, m. Scipio
scriba, -ae, m. scribe, clerk
scribo, -psi, -ptum, 3, write : s. lēges, I draw up laws
scriptor, -ōris, m. a writer, author
scūtūn, -i, n. shield
Seytha, -ae, m. a Scythian

sē, see Par. 94, 218, 305, 306; sē-
cum, see Par. 179.

sēcundus, -a, -um, *second, prosperous*; sēcundum, prep. (g. acc.) *following, in accordance with*

sēcūris, -is, f. (acc. -im), *axe; the axes and rods (fasces) were the signs of the consul's office*

sēd, conj. *but (on the other hand); non sōlum...sed ētiam, not only... but also*

sēdēo, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I sit*

sēdēs, -is, f. *seat, abode*

sēditiō, -ionis, f. *rebellion, sedition*

sēgēs, sēgētis, f. *cornfield, harvest*

sēgnitīes, -ēi, f. *lothfulness*

sēmēl, adv. *once (for all)*

sēmper, adv. *always, ever*

senatōrius, -a, -um, *senatorial*

sēnātus, -ūs, m. *the senate*

sēnectūs, -ūtis, f. *old age*

sēnēx, sēnis, m. *old man*

sēnior, see Par. 69

sēnsus, -ūs, m. *a sense*

sententia, -ae, f. *opinion*

sentio, -si, -sum, 4, *feel, perceive*

sēpēlio, sēpēlivi *and -ī, sēpultum, 4, bury*

September, -bris, -bre, *of September; see Par. 84; septuagēsimus (81)*

sēquor, sēcūtus, 3, v. dep. *follow*

sērēnus, -a, -um, adj. *clear*

sermo, -ōnis, m. *a discourse*

sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3, *plant, sow*

sēro, *late*; sērius, *too late*

serpens, -ntis, f. *serpent*

sertum, -i, n. *garland*

sērus, -a, -um, *late*

servio, -ii, -itum, 4, *I am a slave to, I serve (g. dat.)*

servitūs, -ūtis, f. *slavery*

servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *watch, pre-serve; s. fidem, I keep my word*

servus, -i, m., *slave*

sēsē, *an emphatic form of sē*

seu, conj. *whether; seu...seu,*

whether...or; (not used like utrum an...in dep. sentences)

sēvērus, -a, -um, adj. *severe*

sī, conj. *if (125); sī quis, sī quī, if any man, any men (294); with pres. and imperf. subj. (295)*

sic, adv. *thus, so*

Siciliā, -ae, f. *Sicily*

sēdūs, -ēris, n. *star*

signum, -i, n. *a sign, signal*

sēlētiūn, -ii, n. *silence*

silva, -ae, f. *a wood* [66, 60]

similis, -e, (g. gen. or dat.) *like, simūl, adv. at the same time; simul ...simul, at once...and*

simūlācē, adv. *as soon as*

simūlācrum, -i, n. *an image, statue*

simūlātō, -ōnis, f. *a pretence*

simūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *pretend*

sīne, prep. (g. abl.) *without*

singūli, -ae, -a, *one a-piece, one by one (77, 314)*

sīnister, -tra, -trum, *left*

sīno, sīvi, sītum, 3, *suffer*

sīnūs, -ūs, m. *a fold (of the garment, especially about the breast); pocket*

sītis, -is, f. (acc. -im) *thirst; sītī mōri, to die of (lit. with) thirst*

sīve, conj. *whether; sīve...sīve, whether...or, (not used like utrum...an in Dependent Questions); sīve lōqnor, sīve tācēo, patri nōn plācēo, whether I speak or hold my tongue, I cannot please my father.*

sōcer, -ēri, m. *father-in-law*

sōcius, -i, m. *a partner, ally, companion*

Sōcratēs, -is, m. *Socrates*

sōl, sōlis, m. *sun*

sōlēo, -ītus sum, -ēre, 2, v. n. *I am accustomed*

sōlitus, -a, -um, *customary*

Sōlōn, -ōnis, m. *Solon*

sollertia, -ac, f. *skill, subtlety*

sōlum, -i, n. *ground, soil*

sōlum, *adv. only, alone*
 sōlus, -a, -um, *adj. gen. sing.* -ūs,
dat. -i, alone
 solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, 3, *I loosen,*
pay; s. fāmēm, I break my fast;
impar solvendo sum, I am not
equal to paying, i.e. insolvent
 somnus, -i, *m. sleep*
 sōnitus, -ūs, *m. a sound, noise*
 sons, sōntis, *guilty*
 sōnus, -i, *m., sound*
 Sōphoclēs, -is, *m. Sophocles*
 sōpor, -ōris, *m. slumber*
 sōror, -ōris, *f. sister*
 sors, -tis, *f. lot, fate*
 sortior, sortitus, 4, *dep. draw lots*
 Sparta, -ae, *f. Sparta*
 spēciēs, -ēi, *f. appearance* (182)
 specto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *look at*
 spēcūlor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. I spy out*
 spēcus, -ūs, *m. care*
 sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3, *despise*
 spēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I hope*
 spēs, -ēi, *f. hope*
 spīro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *breathe*
 spīritus, -ūs, *m. breath*
 splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid, bright*
 splendor, -ōris, *m. brightness*
 spōlia, -ōrum, *n. pl. spoils*
 spōndeo, spōpondi, sponsum, 2,
pledge, promise to pay, betroth
 spontē (*adv. phrase*) mēā, tuā, &c.,
of my, your, &c., own accord
 stātim, *adv. immediately*
 stātio, -ōnis, *f. a post, station*
 stātua, -ae, *f. statue*
 stātuo, -ūi, -ātum, 3, *determine*
 stella, -ae, *f. a star*
 sterto, -tui, 3, *snore*
 stipendium, -ii, *n. (military) pay*
 sto, stēti, stātum, 1, *I stand, abide*
by (with abl. or in and abl.)
stāre prōmissis, to abide by one's
promises; à Tullio stāre, to side
with Tullius; magno prētio stat,
it costs a great price
 strēnūc, *adv. vigorously*

strēnūus, -a, -um, *vigorous* (68b)
 strepītūs, -ūs, *m. noise, din*
 struo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *pile up, con-*
struct
 stūdēo, -ūi, 2, *I am eager, zealous*
 stūdīosus, -a, -um, *adj. zealous,*
eager after (g. gen.)
 stūdīum, -ii, *n. zeal, a pursuit, study*
 stultītīa, -ae, *f. folly*
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*
 suādēo, -āsi, -āsum, 2, *(g. dat.)*
advise, persuade
 suāvis, -e, *adj. sweet, delightful*
 sūb, *prep. (g. abl. or acc.) up to,*
under; (of time) about (180)
 subēo, -ii, -ītum (243), *go up to*
 subīto, *adv. suddenly*
 subītus, -a, -um, *sudden*
 subsēquor, -cūtus, 3, *follow up*
 subsum, *no perf., v. irreg. I am*
under, amongst [dat.] help
 subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *(g.*
 succēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *follow*,
turn out; res mīhī bēnē successit,
the matter turned out well for me
 Sūevi, -ōrum, *the Suevi*
 suffīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *suffice*
(g. dat.)
 sum, *I am, p. 79, Par. 268, 142d*
 sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *take,*
assume
 summus, -a, -um, (69) *highest,*
utmost; summā cēlēritatē, with
all speed; summus mons, the
highest part of the mountain
 sūper, *prep. (g. acc. or abl.) over,*
upon, concerning (180)
 sūperbia, -ae, *f. pride*
 sūperbus, -a, -um, *proud*
 sūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *overcome*
 sūpersum, -fui, -esse, *v. irreg. I*
remain over, survive (g. dat.)
 sūpērus, -a, -um, *adj. upper* (69)
 suppēdito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *supply*
 supplex, -icīs, *adj. suppliant* (47, 48)
 supplīcūm, -ii, *n. punishment*
 suprā, *prep. (g. acc.) above*

suprēmus, -a, -um, superl. of sū-
pērus, highest; (of time) last
surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3, rise
suscipiō, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, under-
take
suspicio, -iōnis, f. suspicion
sustento, 1, sustain
sūus, -a, -um, (98 and p. 328); suis
impērat, he orders his (men) (34)
Sýria, -ae, f. Syria

Tābernācūlum, -i, n. tent
tābesco, -ui, 3, I decay
tācēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, I am silent
taedēt, -dūit or pertaesun est, v.
impers. it disgusts, wearies (219)
taeter, -tra, -trum, foul
tālentum, -i, n. a talent, i.e. a sum
of money, about £240
tālis, -e, of that sort, such
tam, adv. so, to such a degree, such;
tam prāvi mōres, such depraved
conduct; very, hōc tam longum
īter, this very long journey (228)
tāmen, conj. yet, however
tamquam, conj. just as; tē t. thē-
saurum hābēo, I consider you as
a treasure; t. sī consul esset,
just as if he were consul
tandem, at last; cur (or quid) tan-
dem? why indeed? pray why?
tantum, adv. (so much and no more,
hence) only; nōmīnē tantum
mīhi nōtus est, he is known to
me by name and no more; ūnus
tantum, only one
tantus, -a, -tum, so great (a); (as
a noun) tantum pēcūniae, so
much (of) money; (often used,
after a Pron., for "great") haec
tanta cālāmītās, this great calamity;
tanti, see Par. 283, 284; tan-
tum...quāntum, as much...as
tārdus, -a, -um, slow
Tarquīnius, -i, m. Tarquin
Tartārēus, -a, -um, Tartarean, be-
longing to Tartarus, the region

of the punishment of the wicked
dead
Taurus, -i, m. Mount Taurus
taurus, -i, m. a bull
tēgō, -xi, -ctum, 3, I cover
tellūs, -ūris, f. earth, the goddess
Earth
tēlūm, -i, n. dart, missile [ness
tēmērītās, -ātis, f. recklessness, rash-
tempestās, -ātis, f. tempest
templum, -i, n. temple
tempus, -ōris, n. time; tempōri
cēdere, to yield to circumstances
tēnēo, -ūi, tentum, 2, I hold, re-
tain
tēner, -ēra, -ērum, tender, soft
tēnuis, -e, thin
tēnēs, prep. (g. abl.) as far as;
follows its case); verbo tēnus,
so far as words go
tergum, -i, n. back; terga dant
mīhi, they flee before me
terni, -ae, -a, three a-piece (314)
tēro, trīvi, trītum, 3 rub, waste;
tempus tērīmus, we are wasting
time
terra, -ae, f. the earth, land; terrā
māriique, by sea and land (ad-
verbial local abl.)
terrēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, terrify,
frighten
terror, -ōris, m. terror, alarm
tertius, -a, -um, see Par. 81
testāmentum, -i, n. will, testament
testis, -is, m. witness
testor, -ātus, 1, testify
Thēmīstocles, -is, m. Themistocles
Thrāx, Thrācis, m. a Thracian;
Thrācum est, it is the mark of,
i.e. like, Thracians
Tibērius, -ii, m. Tiberius, the name
of the second Roman emperor,
Tiberius Caesar
tignārius, -a -um, having to do with
beams; fāber t. builder, carpenter
tigris, -is, or -īdis, c. a tiger,
tigress

- tīmēo, -ūi, 2, *fear*
 tīmīdus, -a, -um, *adj. timid*
 timor, -ōris, *m. fear*
 tōlēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *endure*
 tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3, *raise*,
 take away; tollunt rīsum,
 elāmōrem, &c. *they raise a laugh,*
 shout, &c.
 Tōnans, -ntis, *m. the Thunderer, a*
 name of Jupiter
 tōnat, -ūit, -āre, 1, *v. impers. it*
 thunders
 tonsor, -ōris, *m. barber*
 torrēo, torrui, tostum, 2, *parch,*
 roast
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many*; hae tot
 cālāmītātes, *these numerous ca-*
 lamities
 tōtiens, *adv. so many times*
 tōtus, -a, -um, *adj. whole, all* (85)
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*
 tracto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I handle,*
 deal with
 trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, *deliver*:
 tradītum est, it has been handed
 down
 tradūeo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead*
 across
 trāho, -axi, -actum, 3, *I draw, drag*
 trajīcio, (*also spelt trāčio*) *same*
 as transjīcio; (1) *throw across,*
 carry across, trājīcio exercitum,
 I lead an army across; (2) *carry*
 myself across, i.e. *cross, trājīcio*
 flūmen, I cross a stream
 tranquillus, -a, -um, *adj. calm*
 trans, *prep. g. acc. across*
 Transalpinus, -a, -um, *beyond the*
 Alps [over]
 transēo, -ii, -ītum, 4, (241) *cross*
 transfigo, -fixi, -fixum, 3, *transfix*
 transjīcio, *see trajīcio*
 transversus, -a, -um, *turned across;*
 t. dīgītus or unguis, a finger's,
 or nail's breadth [piece]
 trēcēni, -ae, -a, *three hundred a-*
 trēcenti, -ae, -a, *three hundred*
- trēmo, trēmui, tremītum, 3, *tremble*
 trēs, tria, *see Par. 68*
 tribūnus, -i, *m. tribune*
 tribūo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *give, assign*
 tribus, -ūs, *f. tribe*
 tribūtum, -i, *n. tribute*
 triennium, -i, *n. three years*
 trīni, -ae, -a, *three (used with nouns*
 like littērae) (318)
 tristis, -e, *sad*
 trīumpho, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enjoy a*
 triumph, i.e. a triumphal pro-
 cession granted by the Romans
 to distinguished generals
 Trōja, -ae, *f. Troy*
 Trōjānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*
 tū, *see p. 45*
 tūba, -ae, *f. trumpet*
 tūēor, tūitus, 2, *v. dep. gaze on,*
 guard, protect
 Tullia, -iae, *f. Tullia*
 Tullius, -i, *m. Tullius*
 tum, *adv. and conj. then during*
 that time; eun...tum, not only
 ...but also (317)
 tūmidus, -a, -um, *swelling, swollen*
 tune, *adv. then, at that time*
 turba, -ae, *f. crowd*
 turbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *disturb, throw*
 into confusion; turbātum est, a
 riot was made
 turbūlentus, -a, -um, *turbulent*
 turdus, -i, *m. thrush*
 turpis, -e, *base, disgraceful*
 turpītūdo, -inis, *f. disgrace*
 turris, -is, *f. tower*
 tussīs, -is, *f. (acc. -im, abl. -i,) cough*
 tuto, *adv. safely; -us, -a, -um, safe*
 tūs, -a, -um, *pron. adj. thy, thine*
 tyrannus, -i, *m. despot, tyrant*
- Übi, *adv. where*
 ulciscor, ultūs, 3 (*v. dep.*) *avenge*
 ullus, -a, -um, *adj. (gen. sing. -iūs,*
 dat. sing. -i), any (85, 87, 309)
 ulmus, -i, *f. elm*

- ultimus, -a, -um, *see Par. 69*
- ultrā, *prep. g. acc. on the farther side of, beyond*
- Ulyssēs, -is, *m. Ulysses*
- ūncia, -ae, *f. inch*
- unda, -ae, *water*
- unguis, -is, *m. nail*
- unquam, *adv. at any time, ever*
- unā, *at the same time or place; together*
- ūnicē, *adv. singularly*
- ūnus, -a, -um, *adj. (74), one; in tē ūno, in you alone (96); spēs quam ūnam hăbñi, the only hope I had; omnes ād ūnum, all to urbs, urbis, *f. city** [a man uro, ussi, ustum, 3, *burn*
- ūt, *conj. that, in order that; often rendered by Eng. "to" (Par. 143); ut non (when to be used for nē) Par. 296; (with indic., "when," "as")*
- ūter, -rā, -rum (*gen. -rīus, dat. -rī*), *which of two? u. hōrnū, which of these two (85)? ūterquē, utrāque, utrūmque, either, both; dux ūterquē (sing.) both leaders*
- ūtilis, -e, *useful*
- ūtilitās, -ātis, *f. utility, service*
- ūtinam! *conj. O that, would that! (g. subj., see Par. 330)*
- ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep. I use (207)*
- ūtrīmque, *adv. on both sides*
- utrum, *conj. whether (171, 174)*
- uxor, -ōris, *f. a wife*
- V**ācūs, -a, -um, *empty of (g. abl.)*
- valdē (*i.e. validē*) *adv. strongly, exceedingly*
- välēo, -ñi, -ñtum, 2, *I am in good health; välēte, farewell!*
- välētūdo, -inis, *f. health*
- välidus, -a, -um, *strong*
- vallis, -is, *f. a valley*
- vallum, -i, *n. the camp palisade composed of valli (see vallus)*
- vallus, -i, *the stake borne by each Roman soldier for the formation of the vallum* [hood
- vānītās, -ātis, *f. emptiness, falsehood*
- vārius, -a, -um, *different, various*
- vastus, -a, -um, *vast*
- vasto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lay waste*
- vē, *conj. or (an enclitic form of vēl)*
- vectīgāl, -ālis, *n. a tax*
- vēhēmens, -ntis, *vehement, warm*
- vēhēmenter, *adv. vehemently, warmly; -issimē, very warmly*
- vēhēmentia, -ae, *f. vehemence, passion* [ride]
- vēho, -xi, -ctum, 3, *carry (pass.*
- vēl, *or (if you like), Par. 157a; hic discessus. vēl pōtiūs fūga, this departure or rather (if you will have strict correctness) flight; eren, hōc vēl pūero fācilē est, this is easy even for a boy (141a); (with superl.) very, Stoicōrum vēl maxīmus est, he is the very greatest of the Stoics*
- vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj. swift*
- vēnātor, -ōris, *m. hunter*
- vendo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3, *sell*
- vēnēnātus, -a, -um, *poisoned*
- vēnēnum, -i, *n. poison*
- vēnēror, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. reverence, worship*
- vēnīa, -ae, *f. pardon, dāre veniam ei, to pardon him*
- vēnio, vēni, ventum, 4, *I come*
- vēnor, -atus, 1, *v. dep. I hunt*
- venter, -tris, *m. the stomach*
- ventito, -āvi, 1, *v. freq. I come frequently*
- ventus, -i, *m. the wind*
- Vēnūs, -ēris, *f. Venus*
- vēr, vēris, *n. the spring*
- verber, -ēris, *n. lash, stripe*
- verbūm, -i, *n. word; verbo tēnus, so far as words go*
- vērē, *adv. truthfully, accurately*
- vērēor, -ātus, 2, *fear, reverence (301)*

Vergilius, -i, m. *Virgil*
 vērisimilis, -e, adj. *likely, probable*
 vēritās, -ātis, f. *truth*
 vēro, conj. *however, truly* (139a)
 versus, -ūs, m. *line, verse*
 versūs, prep. *with acc. towards (only of place or direction)*
 vertēx, -icis, m. *top*
 verto, verti, versum, 3, *turn; in fūgam vertere, to put to flight*
 vērus, -a, -um, *true* [abl.]
 vescor, 3, v. dep. *feed on* (g.)
 vesper, -pēri, m. *evening*
 vespérascit, -āvit, -ascēre, v. *impers. evening approaches*
 Vesta, -ae, f. *Vesta, the goddess of fire and the hearth*
 Vestālis, -e, *Vestal, belonging to Vesta*
 vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*
 vestimentum, -i, n. *clothing*
 vestīo, -īvi or -īi; -ītum, 4, *clothe*
 vestis, -is, f. *clothing, garment*
 vestitus, -ūs, m. *clothing*
 vētus, vētēris, *old* (61)
 vexo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I rex, harass*
 vī, see vīs
 vīa, -ae, f. *way, road*
 victor, -ōris, m. *conqueror*
 victōria, -ae, f. *victory*
 victus, -a, -um, *pass. part. of vincō*
 vīcus, -i, m. *village*
 vīdēo, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *see (in passive) seem, appear; quid tibi vīdētur? What seems (good) to you, i.e. what do you think?*
vīgīl, gen. -īlis, watchful (47)
vīgīlia, -ae, f. night watch; the night from 6 P.M. to 6 A.M. was divided into four "watches"
 vīgīlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I watch, I am awake*
 vīlis, -e, adj. *cheap, common*
 vincō, -nxi, -nctum, 4, *bind*
 vincō, vīci, victum, 3, *conquer*
 vincūlum, -i, n. *a chain, bond*

vīnētūm, -i, n. *vineyard, vines*
 vīnum, -i, n. *wine*
 vīolā, -ae, f. *violet*
 vīolēntīa, -ae, f. *violence*
 vīres, -īum, f. pl. *strength; see vīs*
 Virgiliūs, -ii, *see Vergilius*
 virga, -ae, f. *rod, stick*
 virgo, -īnis, f. *maiden*
 vīr, vīri, m. *hero, man*
 virga, -ae, f. *twig, rod, stick*
 vīridis, -e, *green*
 virtūs, -ūtis, f. *valour, virtue*
 vīs, irreg. *see Par. 311; force, violence, power, efficacy; pl. vīres, strength; see also vōlo, p. 238*
 viso, -vīsi, 3, (v. freq.) *come to see, visit*
 vīsus, -ūs, m. *sight*
 vīta, -ae, f. *life*
 vītiōsus, -a, -um, *full of vice, vicious*
 vītis, -is, f. *vine*
 vītiūm, -i, n. *vice, fault; dāre vītīo, to impute as a fault (Par. 268)*
 vīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *avoid*
 vītūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, *revile*
 vīvo, vixi, *victum, 3, live*
 vix, adv. *scarcely*
 vōlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I fly*
vōlo, vōlūi, vellē, v. irreg. I wish, am willing; idem velle, to wish for the same thing (pp. 128-130)
 vōlūntas, -ātis, f. *a wish, will*
 vōlūptas, -ātis, f. *pleasure*
 vōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *devou*
 vos, *see p. 45.*
 vox, vōcis, f. *a voice*
 Vulcānus, -i, m. *Vulcan*
 vulnēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *wound*
 vulnus, -ēris, n. *a wound*
 vulpēs, -is, f. *fox*
 vultur, -ūris, m. *a vulture*
 vultus, -ūs, m. *countenance, looks*

Xēnōphōn, -ontis, m. *Xenophon*
 Xerxēs, -is, m. *Xerxes*

APPENDIX XI.

VOCABULARY-II.

ENGLISH INTO LATIN.¹

A (i.e. *a certain*), quīdam, quae-dam, quoddam (*pron. neut. quid-dam*) ; *a man said to me*, quīdam mīhi dixit ; *he had a wonderful power of speaking*, erat hōmīni mira quaedam dīcendi fāultas *ability (mental)*, ingēnium, -i, n. *able, to be*, possum, pōtui, posse ; *see Par. 229*

abode, sēdēs, -is, f.

abound, ābundo, 1

about (around), cireum (*g. acc.* ; also *adv.*) ; (*concerning*) dē (*g. abl.*) ; (*nearly*) fērē

above, sūper (*g. acc. and abl.*) ; *from above*, dēsūper, *adv.*

abroad (rest) fōris ; (*motion*) fōrās

absent, to be, absum, āfui, ābesse ; *absent*, adj. absens, -ntis

abstain from, abstīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2 (*g. abl.*)

abundantly, ābundanter

accept, accēpio, -ēpi, -ceptum, 3

acceptable, grātus, -a, -un

accident, cāsus, -ūs, m. ; *by accident*, cāsu ; fortē (*adv.*)

accompany, cōmītor, 1, dep.

accomplish, perfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 ; *without accomplishing anything*, rē infectā

accord, of his, my own accord, sponte suā, meā, &c.

accordingly, itāque, igitur (*adv.*)

N.B. *igitur* *should not stand first in a clause*

account, on account of, propter, or ōb, prep. g. acc. ; *on that account*, ōb id, ideo

accurate (of things, not persons), aecūratus, -a, -um

accusation, crīmen, -inis, n.

accuse, aecūso, 1

accused (man), the, reus, -i, m.

accuser, aecūsātor, -oris, m. [dep. *accustomed*, to be, sōleo, sōlitus, 2,

Achilles, Achillēs, -is, m.

acknowledge, agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3

acquainted with, to be, see *to know*

acquire, to, ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3, dep.

acquit, absolvō, -vi, -ūtum, 3 ; (*with g. of charge*, Par. 290)

acre, jūger, -eris, n.

across, trans (*g. acc.*)

¹ In this Vocabulary it has not been thought necessary to write the terminations of the regular Conjugations 1, 2, and 4, i.e. -āvi, -ātum ; -ui, -itum ; -īvi, ītum.

- act, an*, factum, -i, n.; *act, to*,
āgo, ēgi, actum, 3
Actium, Actium, -i, n.
active, strēnuus, -a, -um
actor, an, mīmus, -i, m.
adapted, aptus, -a, um
add, addo, -didi, -dītum, 3
address, allōquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
admire, admiror, 1, dep.
admiration, admiratio, -onis, f.
admit, admitto, -misi, -missum, 3;
(confess) confiteor, -fessus, 2,
dep.
admonish, admōneō, -ui, -ītum, 2
adorn, orno, 1
advance, to, prōgrēdior, -gressus,
3, dep.; prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum,
3
advantage, commōdum, -i, n.
adverse, adversus, -a, -um; īnīquus,
-a, -um
adversity, rēs adversae
advice, consiliū, -i, n.; by my,
his, advice, mē, eo, auctōre (197)
advise, admōneō, -ui, -ītum, 2 (143)
Aetna, Aetna, -ae, f.
affair, rēs, rei, f.
affection, cārītās, -ātis, f.; *filial*
affection, piētās, -ātis, f.
affectionate, cārus, -a, -um; pius,
-a, -uru
affirm, assēvēro, 1; affirmo, 1
afflict, angō, 3; vexo, 1
afford, praebeo, -ui, -ītum, 2
afraid, to be, tīmeo, 2; vereor,
vēritus, 2, dep. (constr. Par. 301)
Africa, Afrīca, -ae, f.
after, post (g. acc.); after (conj.),
postquam, (1) foll. by perf.,
except where (2) the interval is
defined; (1) after he had come,
postquam vēnit; (2) ten days
after he had come, decimo die
postquam vēnerat
afterwards, posteā; a few days afterwards,
paucis post diēbus (313)
again, rursus, (itērum, a second
time); again and again, itērum
atque itērum
against, contrā, adversus, in (all
g. acc.); he was sent against the
enemy, missus est adversus
hostes; against the laws, contrā
jūs; against one's will, invītus, -a,
um; she came a. &c. invīta vēnit
Agamemnon, Āgāmemnon, -ōnis, m.
age, aetās, ātis, f.; old age, sēnec-
tūs, -ūtis, f.; age, an, saecūlum,
-i, n.
Agesilaus, Āgēsīlāus, -i, m.
ago, ābhinc (with acc. or abl.):
two years ago, ābhinc bīnnio,
or biennium
agree, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4
(foll. by dat., or cum)
agreeable, jūcundus, -a, -um
agreement, consensus, -ūs, m.
Ah! interject. O! foll. by acc. ;
Ah, the lucky fellow! O felicem
hominem!
aid, auxiliū, -ii, n.; aid, to,
subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4
air, aēr, aēris, m.
Ajax, Ajāx, -jācis, m.
alas! heu! or ēheu!
Alban, Albānus, -a, -um
Alexander, Ālexander, -dri, m.
alliance, sociētās, -ātis, f.
alien, āliēnus, -a, -um
alike, pāriter
alive, vīvus, -a, -um
all, omnis, -e; (all) men, omnes;
from all sides, undīque; all the
best citizens, optīmus quisquē
cīvium; all the food we had,
was consumed, quidquid cībi
nōbīs fuērat, consumptum est
allow, sino, sīvi, sītum, 3
allure, allīcio, -lexi, -lectum, 3 ·
ally, sōcius, -i, m.
almost, paenē, fērē
alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um
(85); Cato alone thought otherwise,
Catōni ūni ālīter vīsum est

- along (prep.), per (g. acc.)*
Alps, Alpes, -ium, f. pl.
already, jam
also, (1) etiam, mostly before, (2)
quōquā, always after, the word
modified; not only...but also,
nōn sōlum...sēd etiam, or, eum
...tum
altar, āra, -ae, f.
altogether, omnīno
always, semper
ambassador, lēgātus, -i, m.
ambush, insīdiae, -ārum, f.
amiss, something amiss has hap-
pened to him, alīquid ei hūmānitus
accidit
among, inter (g. acc.); among the
Romans, apud Romanos; they are
fighting amongst one another,
inter sē pugnant
ancestors, mājores, -um, m. pl.
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um; priscus,
-a, -um; vētus, -ēris; among the
ancients, apud antīquos
and, et; atquē; -quē (Par. 37);
and no one, never, nothing, &c.,
nec quisquam, unquam, quid-
quam, &c.
anger, irā, -ae, f.; in or with a.,
irācēndē, suminā irā, or eum irā
(Par. 276)
angry, to be, irascor, irātus, 3,
dep.; angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, ānimal, -ālis, n.; wild
animal, fēra, -ae, f.
announce, nuntio, 1
annually, quōtannīs
another, ālius, -a, -ud; the other,
alter, -ēra, -ērum, (Par. 86)
answer, to, respondeo, -di, -nsum,
2 (g. dat. of pers.); answer, an,
responsum, -i, n.; to make an-
swer, respondēre; I was an-
sweered, responsum est mīhi
Antonius, Antōnius, -i, in.
any, any one (in neg. compar. and
interrog. sentences), quisquam or
- ullus (309); (*with num, sī, nē*)
quis (294); any (you please), qui-
libet, quaelibet, quodlibet, (pron.
neut. quidlibet); the enemy can
attack us at any time (they please),
quōlibet tempōre
anywhere, usquam
apiece, (trans. by distributive
numeral, see Par. 77), he gave us
three denarii apiece, nōbīs ternos
dēnārios dēdit
Apollo, Apollo, -inis, m. [-ui, 2
appear, vīdeor, vīsus, 2; appāreo,
appearance, spēcies, -ei, f.
appease, plāeo, 1
apple, pōnuin, -i, n.; mālum, -i, n.
appoint, constituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
approach, to, ādeo, -ii, -ītum,
(foll. by acc.); accēdo, -cessi,
-cessum, 3, (foll. by ad); an,
ādītus, -ūs, m.
approve, prōbo, 1; a man of ap-
proved excellence, vir spectātāe
(or, more often, -ā) virtūtis (or
-ē)
apt, aptus, -a, -um
Archimedes, Archīmēdēs, -is, m.
ardour, ardor, -ōris, m.
Argos, Argi, -ōrum, m.
Arion, Arīon, -ōnis, m.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, m.
arise, ūrior, ortus, 4, dep.; (from
bed, seat, &c.) surgo, surrexi,
surrectum, 3
Aristippus, Āristippus, -i, m.
arm, an, brāchium, -i, n.; arm, to,
armo, 1
armed, armātus, -a, -um
arms (military), arma, -ōrum, n.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m. [adv.]
around, circum (prep. g. acc., and
Arpīnum, Arpīnum, -i, n.
arrange, digero, -gessi, -gestum, 3
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive, pervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4
(foll. by ad); we arrived at
Rome, Rōmam pervēnīmus (249)

arrow, sāgitta, -ae, f.

art, ars, -tis, f.

as, ut; *as if*, tanquam, quāsi; *as long as*, dōnēc; *as far as*, tēnus (*g. abl.*); *as*, (*often trans. by Apposition*), you do many things, as a boy, which you will not do, as an old man, multa, puer, fācis, quae, sēnex, non fācies; *as quickly as possible*, quam cēlerīmē; (*sometimes rel. pron.*) he is the same as he always was, idem est qui (or ac) semper fuit; *for the same price as*, i.e., *for which*, ēodem prētio quo; ("as" is sometimes rend. *by the dat. of purpose*) he sent a legion as a reinforcement, mīsit lēgiōnem subsīdīo (266); *as much money as*, tantum pēcūniae quantum ascend, ascendo, -ndi, -nsum, 3

ascertain, cognosco, cognōvi, cognitum, 3; compērio, compēri, compertum, 4

ashamed, to be, pūdet, -uit, 2 (*impers.*); I am ashamed of doing, having done, pūdet me fācere, fēcisse (219)

Asia, Āśia, -ae, f.

ask, to, (1) meaning question, rōgo, 1; interrōgo, 1; quaero, -sīvi, situm, 3 (*with ex, dē, or ā*); (2) meaning beg, rōgo, 1; ūro, 1 (143): (*peace*) pācem pētere; he was asked his opinion, sententiam rōgātus est

ass, āśinus, -i, m.

assassin, sīcārius, -i, m.

assault, to, oppugno, 1; assault, an, impētus, -us, m.

assemble, convēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*intrans.*); convōco, 1 (*trans.*)

assembly, concilium, -ii, n.; conventus, -us, m.

assist, subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*g. dat.*)

assistance, auxiliū, -i, n.

assume (*take*), sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3

astonishment, admirātio, -ōnis, f. at, āpud (*g. acc.*); ād (*g. acc.*); at all, omnīno; at least, saltem; at last, at length, tandem, āli quando; at once, sīmul, stātim

Athens, Āthēnae, -ārum, f. pl.

Athenian, Āthēniensis, -e

attack; to, aggrēdior, gressus, 3, dep.; oppugno, 1 (*to attack a town*); attack, an, impētus, -ūs, m. attempt, to, cōnor, 1, dep. (*this v. is an exc. to the rule (143) about v. of "striving"; it is foll. by inf.*); attempt, an, cōnatūs, -ūs, m.

[dat.] *attention*, to pay, āpēram dāre, g.

Attica, Attīca, -ae, f.

attract, trāho, -xi, -ctum, 3

audacity, audācia, -ae, f.

augur, augur, -ūris, m.

augury, augūrium, -i, n.; ūmēn, -īnis, n.

Augustus, Augustus, -i, m.

auspice, auspiciū, -i, n.

author, auctor, -ōris, m.

authority, auctōriās, -ātis, f.

autumn, auctum̄nus, -i, m.

auxiliaries, auxiliū, -ōrum, n.

avail, vāleo, -ui, 2; threats? what avail, quid vālent mīnae?

avarice, āvāritia, -ae, f.

avaricious, āvārus, -a, -um

avenge, ulciscor, -ultus, 3, dep.

avoid, ūtō, 1; fūgio, fūgi, 3

await, I, expectō, 1; death awaits us, mors nōs mānet

awake, expurgiscor, -perrectus, 3, dep.

aware of, gnārus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*)

awful, dirus, -a, -um

axe, secūris, -is, f.; acc. -em or -im, abl. -i

Bacchus, Bacchus, -i, m.

back, tergum, -i, n.; the enemy

*turn their backs, i.e. flee, tergadant ; drive back, see drive
bad, mālus, -a, -um ; badly, mālē ;
bad men, imprōbi
baggage, impēdimenta, -ōrum, n.
Balbus, Balbus, -i, m.
banish, pello, pepūli, pulsum, 3 ;
expello, -pūli, -pulsur, 3
bankrupt, impar solvendo, i.e. unequal to paying
banquet, épūlum, -i, n. ; pl. epulæ, arum, f. (the sing. mostly means a public banquet)
barbarian, barbārus, -a, -um
barbarous, fērus, -a, -um
barber, tonsor, -ōris, m.
bargain, to make a, pāciscor, pac-tus, 3, dep.
barn, horreum, -i, n.
barren, stērīlis, -e
base, turpis, -e
baseness, turpītūdo, -īnis, f.
battle, proeliuin, -i, n. ; pugna, -ae, f. ; see Cannae
beak, rostrum, -i, n.
bear, to, fēro, -tūli, -lātum, ferre
beard, barba, -ae, f.
beast, bestia, -ae, f. ; of burden, jūmentum, -i, n.
beat, caedo, cēcīdi, caesum, 3
beaten, to be, vāpūlo, 1
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrūm
beauty, forma, -ae, f. ; pulchritūdo, -inis, f.
because, quia, quod
become, fio, factus, fieri (258) ; it becomes me, dēcet mē (220)
bed, lectus, -i, m.
beech-tree, fāgus, -i, f.
befall (amiss), accido, -īdi, 3 ; (good) contigo, -tigi, -tactum, 3 (both g. dat.)
befit, dēcet, -uit, 2, impers.
before, (prep.) antē (g. acc.) ; in the presence of, cōram, (g. abl.) ; (conj.) priusquam, antēquam ; before-hand, (adv.) anteā, antē ; a few*

years before, paucis antē annis ; the day before, see "day" ; before the last, extrēmis prior
beg, ōro, 1 ; beggar, mendicu-s, -i, m.
begin, incipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 ; (a battle), īneo, īnii, īnūm, īnīre ; before a pass. inf. use coepi, coeptus sum, coepisse, v. def. ; the city began to be besieged, urbs coepit (or coepta est) obsidēri
beginning, īnītium, -i, n.
behind, post (g. acc.)
behold, aspicio, -exi, -ectum, 3 ; video, vīdi, visum, 2
behoves, it, ὅποτε, -uit, 2
believe, crēdo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3 (g. dat. of person) ; I believe that he will come, crēdo eum ventūrum esse ; I believe him, crēdo ei
Belyac, Belgae, -ārum, m.
belly, venter, -tris, m.
below, infrā (g. acc.)
benefactor, bēnēfactor, -ōris, m.
benefit, to, bēnēfācio, -fēci, -factum, 3 ; prōsum, -fui, esse (dat.) ; benefit, a, bēnēfactum, -i, n.
benevolence, bēnēvōlēntia, -ae, f.
benevolent, benevolus, -a, -um (68a)
beseech, ōro, 1 (143)
beside, iuxtā (g. acc.) ; praeter (g. acc.) ; besides (prep.) praeter (g. acc.) (183) ; (adv.) praetērēā
besiege, obsideo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2
best, optīmus, -a, -um ; I do my best to write, id āgo ūt scribam
betake, confēro, -tūli, -ferre, collātum ; rēcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 ; he betook himself to Corinth, Cō-rinthum se contūlit
betray, prōdo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3
betroth, spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum, 3
better, mēlior, -us
between, inter (g. acc.)
bewail, plōro, 1
beware, cāveo, cāvi, cautum, 2

beyond, ultrā (*g. acc.*) ; *praeter* (*g. acc.*)
big, see *large*
bind, vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4 ;
 (*by oath*) jūre-jūrando obstringo,
 -strinxī, -strictum, 3
bird, āvis, -is, f.
birth, partus, -ūs, m. ; *noble birth*,
 nōbilitās, -ātis, f.
bite, a, morsus, -ūs, m. ; *to bite*,
 mordeo, mōmordi, morsum,
 2 [-a, -um]
bitter, ācerbus, -a, -um ; āmārus,
black, nīger, -gra, -grum ; *gloomy*,
 āter, -tra, -trum [po, 1
blame, culpa, -ae, f. ; *to blame*, cul-
blind, caecus, -a, -um
blindness, caecitās, -ātis, f.
blood, sanguis, -īnis, m.
blot out, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2
blow, ictus, -ūs, m. ; *to blow*, v.
 intr. flo, flāvi, flātum, 1
blush, ērūbesco, -ui, 3
boar, āper, -pri, m.
boast, glōrior, 1, dep. ; jacto, 1
boasting, jactatio
body, corpus, -ōris, n. ; *dead body*,
 cādāver, -ēris, n.
Boeotia, Boētīa, -ae, f.
bold, audax, -ācis ; fortis, -e
bone, ōs, ossis, n.
book, liber, -bri, m.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
border, finis, -is, m.
bordering-on, finitimus.-a.-um (112)
born, *to be*, nascor, nātus, 3, dep. ;
born of low parentage, hūmīlibus
 pārentibus nātus. N.B. nascor
means, *I am being born*, nātus
 sum, *I am born*
bosom, sīnus, -ūs, m.
both, (*adj.*) ambo, -ae, -o, ūterque,
 -traque,-trumque ; *both of us*, nōs
 ambo or ūterque nostrum ; (*conj.*)
both...and, ēt...ēt, (12) or cum...
 tum, (317)
bottom, īmus, -a, -um, adj.

bound, boundary, finis, -is, m. ;
 termīnus, -i, m.
bow, arcus, -ūs, m. (53)
boy, puer, -ēri, m. ; *boyhood*, puēr-
 itia, -ae, f. ; *from his b.*, *from a*
boy, indē ā puēritiā, or puēro
branch, rāmus, -i, m.
brave, fortis, -e ; *bravely*, fortiter
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
bread, pānis, -is, m.
break, frango, frēgi, fractum, 3 ;
 rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, 3 ; *break*
out, ērumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3 ;
break down (*a bridge*), inter-
 rumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3
breast, pectus, -ōris, n. [m.
breath, ānīma, -ae, f. ; hālītus, -ūs,
breed, to, ālo, -ui, altum, 3
brigery, ambītus, -ūs, m.
bridge, pons, -ntis, m. ; *to bridge*,
 (*a river*), flāvium ponte jungēre
bright, clārus, -a, -um ; splendī-
 dus, -a, -um
bring, affēro, attūli, allātum, af-
 ferre ; *I will bring you help*,
 fēram tībi auxīlīum ; *bring*
back, rēdūco, -duxī, -ductum,
 3 ; *bring in*, infēro, -tūli, -illā-
 tum, inferre ; intrōdūco, -xi,
 -ctum, 3 ; *bring up* (*educate*),
 ēdūco, 1 ; *bring back word*, rē-
 nuntio, 1
briskly, ālacriter
Britain, Brītannia, -ae, f.
Briton, a, Brītannus, -i, m.
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
brow, frons, -ntis, f.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedifico, 1 ; *building*, aedi-
 ficium, -i, n. ; *to see to the build-*
ing of a temple, cūrāre templum
 aedificandum
bulk, magnītūdo, -īnis, f.
bull, taurus, -i, m.
burden, ūnus, -ēris, n.
burn, ūro, ussi, ustum, 3 (*trans.*) :
 (*a house*, *city*, &c.) incendo,

incendi, incensum, 3 (*trans.*) ;
 ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2 (*intrans.*) ;
a burning, incendium, -i, n.
burst into, irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,
3, foll. by in and acc.
bury, sēpēlio, -ivi, sēpultum, 4
bush, dūmus, -i, m.
bushel, mōdīus, -ii, m. [n.
business, rēs, rei, f. ; nēgōtium, -i,
but, (i) coord. conj. sēd (comes first
in a clause, means on the other
hand; but still; but yet) ; autem
(never comes first in a clause,
means in the second place), vēro
(139a) ; (ii) subord. conj. quīn ;
I doubt not but he will come, nōn
dūbito quīn ventūrus sit
but (prep.), praetēr ; no one but
Tullius was present, praetēr Tul-
lium nēmo ādērat ; but some-
times, in negatives and questions
that expect a neg. answer, nīši
(coupling nouns in the same case,
like quam, 62) ; what is filial
affection but gratitude towards
parents ? quīd est piētās nīši
grāta ergā pārentes vōluntās ?
but (a neg. rel. pron., that not),
(i) nom., there was no one but
hated you, nēmo ērat quīn tē
ōdisset ; (2) abl., not a day
passed but I wept, dies fērē
nullus fuit quīn (i.e. quo nōn)
fērem
butterfly, pāpīlio, -ōnis, m.
buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3
buyer, empor, -ōris, m.
by, ā, āb (Par. 178) ; by this time, jām

Caesar, Caesar, -āris, m.

calamity, cālāmītās, -ātis, f.
call, vōco, 1 ; call together, con-
vōco, 1 ; (address) appello, 1 ;
do you call me an enemy ? nun
mē īnīmīcum appellas ?
calm, plācīdus, -a, -um
Camillus, Cāmillus, -i, m.

camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.
Campania, Campānia, -ae, f. N.B.
a district, not a city.
can (see able) you can come, vēnīre
pōtēs ; it cannot be that you
would venture on this, fiēri nōn
pōtest ūt hōc audeās
Cannae, Cannae, -ārum, f. ; of
Cunnae, Cannensis, -e, adj. ; the
battle of C., proelium Cannense,
or p. Cannis pugnātum
capital, cāput, -ītis, n.
Capitol, Cāpītōlium, -i, n.
captive, adj. captīvus, -a, -um
captive, a, captīvus, -i, m.
capture, to, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3
Capua, Cāpua, -ae, f.
carcass, cādāver, -ēris, n.
care, cūra, -ae, f. ; take care of cūro,
1, g. acc. ; take care to, cūrā ut
carefully, dīlīgenter
careless, neglēgens, -ntis
carelessness, incūria, -ae, f. ; neglē-
gentia, -ae, f.
carry, porto, 1 (on one's shoulders);
vēho, vexi, vectum, 3 (of horses);
ferre, tūli, lātum (a letter)
carry off, aufēro, abstūli, ablātum,
auferre ; (a victory) rēporto, 1
carry on, to, a war, bellum gērēre,
gessi, gestum, 3
Carthage, Carthāgo, -īnis, f.
Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um
cast, jācio, jēci, jactum, 3
cast away, abjicio, abjēci, abjec-
tum, 3 ; cast down, dēmittō,
-mīsi, -missum, 3
cat, fēlis, -is, f.
catch, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3
Catiline, Catīlīna, -ae, m.
Cato, Cāto, -ōnis, m.
cattle, arnēnta, -ōrum, n. pl.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cause, to, effīcio, fēci, fectum, 3 ;
you caused me sorrow, tristītiam
mīhi attūlisti
cautiously, cautē

- cavalry*, ēquītes, -um, m. pl.; ēquītātus, -ūs, m.
cease, dēsīno, -sīvī or -sīi, 3
celebrated, praeclārus, -a, -um
centurion, centūrio, -ōnis, m.
century, centūria, -ae, f.
Ceres, Cérēs, Cérēris, f.
certain, certus, -a, -um (g. gen.); a certain person, quīdam; a c. fixed day, certus quīdam dies; (meaning "kind of") quīdam; there is a c. pleasure, est quaedam vōluptas (310a)
certainly, certē, prōfecto [-i, n.]
chain, cātēna, -ae, f.; vincūlum,
challenge, to, prōvōco, 1
chance, cāsus, -ūs, m.; by c., fortē
change, to, mūto, 1
charge, (accusation), crīmen, -īmis, n.; (onset) impētus, -ūs, m.; let us charge the enemy, impētum fācīamus in hostem [-i, n.]
chariot, currus, -ūs, m.; essēdum,
charioteer, aurīga, -ae, m.
charm, to, dēlecto, 1
chastise, to, castīgo, 1
cheap, vīlis, -e
cheer, be of good cheer, ērīgīte (ērīgo, -rexi, -rectum, 3) ānīmos; adeste ānīmis
cheese, cāseus, -i, m.
cherish, fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, 2; cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3
cherry, cērāsum, -i, n.
cheat, mando, -di, -sum, 3
chicken, pullus, -i, m.
chide, culpo, 1 [-ipis, m.]
chief, dux, dūcis, m.; princeps, chief men, primōres, -um, m. pl.
chiefly, maximē; imprīmis
child, puer, -eri, m., or puella, -ae, f.
children, libēri, -ōrum, m.
choice (of style), élēgans, -ntis
choiceness of style, élēgantia, -ae, f.
choose, élīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3
Christian, a, Christiānus, -i, m.
Cicero, Cicēro, -ōnis, m.
- Cincinnatus*, Cincinnātus, -i, m.
circuit, ambitus, -ūs, m.
circumstance, rēs, rei, f.
citadel, arx, -cis, f.; gen. pl. arcīum (40)
citizen, cīvis, -is, m.
city, urbs, -bis, f.; the city of Carthage, Carthāgo urbs [1]
claim, posco, pōposci, 3; vindico,
clamour for, postūlo, 1
claw, unguis, -is, m.
Claudius, Claudius, -i, m.
clear, clārus, -a, -um; to explain clearly, lūculenter explicāre
clear, it is, līquet, 2, impers. (222)
clemency, clementia, -ae, f.
clerk, scriba, -ae, m.
climb, scando, -di, -sum, 3
close, clāudo, -si, -sum, 3
close to, prōpe (g. acc.); he is close at hand, prōpe ā nōbīs ābest
close quarters, at, commīnus
clothe, vestio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4
clothing, vestītus, -ūs, m.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.
Clytemnestra, Clȳtemnestra, -ae, f.
coast, lītus, -ōris, n.; ūra, -ae, f.
cobbler, sūtor, -ōris, m.
Codrus, Codrus, -i, m.
cock, gallus, -i, m.
cohort, cōhors, -rtis, f.
coin, nummus, -i, m.
cold, frīgus, -ōris, n.
cold, frīgidus, -a, -um
colleague, collēga, -ae, m.
collect, colligo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3
colony, cōlōnia, ae, f.
colour, cōlor, -ōris, m.
column, (of men) agmen, -īnis, n.
come, vēnio, vēni, ventum, 4
command, (military) impērium, -i, n.; commands, jussa, -orūm, n. pl.: at the command of Tullius, Tullio jübente (197)
command, to, impēro, 1: praesum, -fui, -esse (both g. dat. of person); jūbeo, jussi jussum, 2

- command of, to be in, praesum, -fui, -esse (g. dat.)*
- commander, īmpērātor, -ōris, m.; dux, dūcis, m.* [3]
- commit, committo, -mīsi, -missum,*
- common, commūnis, -e.*
- common-people, plebs, plēbis, f.;* vulgus, -i, n.
- commonwealth, respublica, reipublicae, f.*
- companion, cōmēs, -ītis, m.*
- compare, compāro, 1; confēro, contūli, collātum, conferre*
- compassion, mīšērīcordia, -ae, f.*
- compel, cōgo, cōēgi, coactum, 3 (inf., or ut, or ad with gerund.)*
- complain, quēror, questus, 3, dep.*
- complaint, quērēla, -ae, f.* [3]
- complete, to confīcio, -fēci, -fectum,*
- conceal, cēlo, 1 (g. two acc., 312)*
- concede, concēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3*
- conceire a hope, vēnire in spem*
- concerning, dē (g. abl.)*
- concerns, it, see "important*
- conciliate, concīlio, 1*
- concord, concordia, ae, f.*
- concourse, concursus, -ūs, m.*
- condemn, damno, 1; condemnō, 1; to condemn to death, cāpītis damnare*
- condition, condīcio, -ōnis, f.*
- conduct, to, a war, bellum gērēre*
- conduct, mōres, -um, m. pl.*
- confēr, confēro, contūli, collātum, conferre; to c. a benefit on you, bēnēfīcium in tē c.*
- conference, collōquium, -i, n.*
- confess, fāteor, fassus, 2, dep.; confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.*
- confession, confessio, -ōnis, f.*
- confidence, fidēs, -ei, f.*
- confīrm, confirmo, 1*
- conflagration, incendium, -i, n.*
- congratulate, grātūlor, 1, dep. (g. dat.); I c. you that, g. tībi quod*
- conquer, vineo, vīci, victum, 3; sūpēro, 1*
- conquered, victus, -a, -um; the conquered, victi m. pl.*
- conqueror, victor, -ōris, m.*
- conquest, victōria, -ae, f.* [gen.]
- conscious, consciens, -a, -um (g. consciousness, conscientia, -ae, f.*
- consecrate, consecro, 1*
- consent, to, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (dat., or cum)*
- consent, consensus, -ūs, m.*
- consider, pūto, 1*
- consist, consto, -stīti, -stātum, 1; foll. by ex or ē, the legions consisted of ten cohorts each, lēgiōnes ē dēnis cōhortibus constitērunt*
- consolation, sōlātium, -i, n.*
- console, sōlor, 1, dep.*
- conspiracy, conjūratō, -ōnis, f.*
- conspīre, conjūro, 1*
- conspirator, conjūrātus, -a, -um, used as a noun*
- constancy, constantia, -ae f.*
- consul, consūl, -ūlis, m.*
- consulate, consūlātus, -ūs, m.*
- consult, consūlo, -sului, -sultum, 3; to c. Tullius, consūlēre Tullium, to c. T.'s interests, consūlēre Tullio*
- consume, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3*
- contemplate, contemplor, -ātus sum, 1*
- contend, contendō, -di, -tum, 3*
- content, contentus, -a, -um (g. abl.)*
- contest, certāmen, -īnis, n.*
- contradict, contrādīco, -dixi, -dicētum, 3 (g. dat.)*
- contrary, contrāriūs, -a, -um (189)*
- contrary, on the, contrā (adv.)*
- contrary-to, contrā (g. acc.)*
- conversation, sermo, -ōnis, m.;* collōquium, -i, n. [3, dep.]
- converse, to, collōquor, collōquūtus,*
- convey, vēho, vexi, vectum, 3*
- cook, cōquus, -i, m.*
- cook, to, cōquo, coxi, coctum, 3*
- copper, aes, aeris, n.*

- Corinth, Cōrinthus, -i, f.*
Corinthian, Cōrinthius, -a, -um
Coriolanus, Cōriōlānus, -i, m.
Corioli, Cōriōli, -ōrum, m. pl. the small town of Corioli was burned,
C., oppidum parvum, incensum est
corn, (harvested) frumentum, -i, n. ; to sow corn, frumenta sērēre
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
corpse, cādāver, -ēris, n.
correct, corrīgo, -rexī, -rectum, 3
corrupt, corrumpto, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3
cost, prētium, -i, n. ; expense, sumptus, -ūs, m.
cost, to, sto, stēti, stātum, 1, consto, -stīu, -stātum, 1, (both g. abl. of definite, gen. of indef. price)
this cost me more, hōc mīhi plūris constitit : this will cost you much blood, hōc vōbis multo sanguine stābit
costly, sumptuosus, -a, -um
cottage, cāsa, -ae, f.
cover, tēgo, texi, tectum, 3
covert, cūpio, -ivī, -itum, 3
covertous, cūpīdus, -a, -um (g. gen.)
couch, lectus, -i, m., cūbile, -is, n.
could (see able), you could have come, vēnīre pōtūisti
council, concilium, -i, n.
counsel, consilium, -i, n.
count, nūmēro, 1
countenance, vultus, -ūs, m.
country, terra, -ae, f. : the country (as distinct from the city), rūs, rūris, n. see Par. 265 and 249 ; one's own, his, my, your, country, patria, -ae, f. ; let us die for our country, pīo pātriā mōriāmur ; this is for the good of the country, hōc est ē rē-publica ; a rough country, i.e. district, rēgio aspēra
countrymen, cīves, -iūn, m. pl.
courage, virtus, -ūtis, f.
course, cursus, -ūs, m.
- courtesy, hūmānitas, -ātis, f.*
cover, tēgo, -xi, -ctūn, 3
coward, cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
crafty, callīdus, -a, -um
crane, grus, gruis, c. ; mostly f.
Crassus, Crassus, -i, m.
create, creo, 1
creature, ānīmal, -ālis, n.
credible, crēdībilis, -e.
credit, fidēs, -ei, f.
Crete, Crēta, -ae, f.
crime, scēlus, -ēris, n. ; monstrous, c. flāgitium, -i, n.
crocodile, crōcōdīlus, -i, m.
Croesus, Croesus, -i, m.
cross, crux, crūcis, f.
cross, to, trājicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3 ; transeo, -ivī or -ii, itūm, 4
crowd, turba, -ae, f.
croien, cōrōna, -ae, f.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e. ; saevus, -a, -um
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -ātis, f. [3]
crush, opprīmo, -pressi, -pressum,
cry, (shout) clāmo, 1
cry, a, clāmor, -ōris, m.
cultivate, cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3
cunning, callidus, -a, -um
cup, cālix, -īcis, m.
cure, rēmēdium, -i, n.
cure, to, sāno, 1 (acc.) ; mēdeor, 2 r. dep. (dat.)
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
cut, caedo, cēcīdo, caesum, 3 : cut off, to, the enemy from supplies, interclūdere, (-clūsi, -clūsum, 3)
hostes commētū (or -ībus)
cut to pieces, concido, -di, -sum, 3
Cyclops, the, Cyclōpes, -um, m. pl.
Cyprus, Cyprus, -i, f.
Cyrus, Cýrus, -i, m.
- Dagger, pūgio, -ōnis, m.**
daily, adv. quōtīdiē (better spelt cōtīdiē)
dance, salto, 1
danger, pēriēlūm, -i, n.

<i>dangerous</i> , p̄r̄icūlōsus, -a, -um	<i>deep</i> , altus, -a, -um
<i>Danube</i> , Ister, -tri, m.	<i>deer</i> , dāma, -ae, f.
<i>Daphne</i> , Daphnē, -ēs, f.	<i>defeat</i> , a, clādēs, -is, f.
<i>dare</i> , audeo, ausus sum, 2, dep.	<i>defeat</i> , to, vinco, vici, victum, 3
<i>Darius</i> , Dārius, -i, m.	<i>defence</i> , praeſidium, -i, n.
<i>dark</i> , obscurus, -a, -um; pullus, -a,	<i>defend</i> , dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3
-um	<i>defendant</i> , reus, -i, m.
<i>darken</i> , obſcūro, 1	<i>defile</i> , polluo, -ui, ūtum, 3
<i>darkness</i> , cāligo, -inis, f.; tēnebrae,	<i>deity</i> , nūmen, -iñis, n.
-ārum, f.	<i>delay</i> , mōra, -ae, f.
<i>dart</i> , tēlum, -i, n.; jācūlum, -i, n.	<i>delay</i> , to, mōror, 1, dep.; cunctor,
<i>daughter</i> , filia, -ae, f.	1. dep.
<i>dawn</i> , prīma lux; māne, indecl.;	<i>deliberate</i> , dēlibēro, 1
<i>before dawn</i> , antē lūcem	<i>delight</i> , gaudium, -i, n.; <i>to delight</i> ,
<i>dawn</i> , to, illūcesco, illuxi, 3	dēlecto, 1, v. tr. (g. acc.)
<i>day</i> , dies, -iēi m.; <i>by day</i> , 'diē;	<i>deliver</i> (<i>hand over</i>), trādo, -dīdi,
<i>daybreak</i> , prīma lux; <i>the-day-</i>	-dītum, 3; (<i>free</i>) libēro, 1 (g.
<i>before (adv. used as a prep.)</i>	acc. of pers. and abl. of thing)
prīdiē Kālendas; (<i>used as a</i>	<i>Delos</i> , Dēlos, -i, f.
<i>conj. with quam) the day before</i>	<i>demand</i> , posco, pōposci, 3
<i>I came</i> , prīdiē quam vēni; <i>two</i>	<i>Demosthenes</i> , Dēmosthēnēs, -is, m.
<i>days</i> , bīdūm, -i, n.; <i>three days</i> ,	<i>denarius</i> , dēnārius, -ii, m.
trīdūm, -i, n.	<i>deny</i> , nēgo, 1
<i>dead</i> , mortuus, -a, -um	<i>depart</i> , disēdō, -cessi, -cessum, 3
<i>dead body</i> , cādāver, -ēris, n.	<i>departure</i> , discessus, -ūs, m.
<i>deaf</i> , surdus, -a, -um	<i>deplore</i> , plōro, 1
<i>dear</i> , cārus, -a, -um	<i>depraved</i> , prāvus, -a, um
<i>death</i> , mors, mortis, f.; <i>he was</i>	<i>deprive</i> , spōlio, f; prīvo, 1 (279)
<i>put to death</i> , morte affectus est;	<i>descend</i> , descendo, -di, -sum, 3; <i>he</i>
<i>he was condemned to death</i> ,	<i>was descended from kings</i> , ā
cāptis damnātus est	rēgībus ortus ērat
<i>debt</i> , aes āliēnum	<i>desert</i> , dēsēro, -rui, -rtum, 3; rēlin-
<i>deceit</i> , dōlus, -i, m.; fallācia, -ae, f.	quo, -līqui, -līctum, 3
<i>deceitful</i> , fallāx, -ācis	<i>deserter</i> , transfūga, -ae, m.
<i>deceive</i> , dēcipio, -ēpi, -eceptum,	<i>deserve</i> , niēreor, mēritus, 2, dep.
3; fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3	<i>design</i> , consilium, -i, n.
<i>decide</i> , to, (<i>judge</i>) jūdīco, 1; <i>they</i>	<i>desire</i> , cūpīdo, -iñis, f.; <i>to desire</i> ,
<i>decided to return</i> , constitūerunt	cūpīo, -īvi, -ītum, 3; opto, 1;
rēdīre	vōlo (<i>all generally foll. by Infinitive</i>)
<i>declare</i> , dīco, dīxi, dictum, 3; <i>to</i>	<i>desirous</i> , cūpīdus, -a, -um; stūdīō-
<i>declare war against</i> , bellum	sus, -a, -um (<i>both g. gen.</i>) some-
indīcēre, g. dat.	times with gerundire
<i>decree</i> , to, dēcerno, -crēvi, -crētum, 3	<i>desist from</i> , dēsistō, -stīti, -stītum, 3
<i>decree</i> , a, dēcerētum, -i, n.; ēdict-	<i>despair</i> , to, despōro, 1; <i>despair</i> ,
um, -i, n.	despērātio, -ōnis, f. [tum, 3
<i>deed</i> , factum, -i, n.; fācīnūs, ūris, n.	<i>despise</i> , contemno, -tempsi, temp-
<i>deem worthy</i> , dignor, 1, dep.	

despoil, spolio, 1; *I despoil you of liberty*, s. tē libertāte
destroy, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum; *perdo*,
 -dīdi, -ditum, 3
destructive, perniciōsus, -a, -um
detain, dētineo, -ui, -tentum, 2
determine, stātuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
devastate, vasto, 1
devoid of, expers, -rtis, adj. (g.
 gen.)
devote, dēvōeo, -vōvi, -vōtum, 2
devour, dēvōro, 1
Diana, Diāna, -ae, f.
dictator, dictātor, -ōris, m.
dictatorship, dictatūra, -ae, f.
die, mōrior, mortnus, 3, dep.; *he
 died*, ūbiit (mortem)
difference, discrīmen, -īnis, n.;
it makes a great difference, mul-
 tum intērest; *how great a differ-
 ence there is!* quantum intērest!
difficult, diffīcīlis, -e (60)
difficulty, diffīcultas, -atis, f.; *with
 difficulty*, vix; *with very great
 difficulty*, diffīcillimē
dig, fōdio, fōdi, fossum, 3; *dig
 up*, effōdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3
dignity, dignitās, -ātis, f.
diligent, strēnuus, -a, -um; dīlī-
 gens, -ntis
diminish, mīnuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
dine, cēno, 1, dep. particip.
 cēnatus (*less correctly coeno*)
Dionysius, Diōnýsius, -i, m.
direction; *in - the - direction - of the
 Rhine*, Rhēnum versūs
disagreeable, injūcundus, -a, -um
disappear, evānescō, -ui, 3 [-is, f.
disaster, damnum, -i, n.; clādes,
discern, cerno, 3
discharge (duty), fungor, funetus,
 3 dep. (abl.); (*darts*), conjīcio,
 -jēci, -jectum, 3
disciple, discipūlus, -i, m.
discipline, disciplina, -ae, f.
disclose, dētēgo, -texi, -tectum, 3
discord, discordia, -ae, f.

discourse, sermo, -ōnis, m.
discover, invēnio, -vēni, -ventum,
 4; rēperio, repperi, repertum, 4
disease, morbus, -i, m.
disembark, (*trans. v.*) expōno,
 -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3
disgrace, dēdēcus, -ōris, n.; *to dis-
 grace*, foedo, 1
disgraceful, turpis, -e
dishevelled, passus, -a, -um
dismiss, dīmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3
displease, displiceo, -ui, ītum, 2 (q.
 dat.)
displeasing, ingrātus, -a, -um
disposition, indōlēs, -is, f.; ingēn-
 iūm, -i, n. [*ōnis*, f.]
dispute, a, rixa, -ae, f.; contentio,
dissemble, dissimūlo, 1
dissembler, dissimūlātor, -ōris, m.
dissension, dissensio, -ōnis, f.
distant, to be, absum, āfui, ābesse
distasteful, to become, displiceo, 2
distinguished, insignis, -e; clārus,
 -a, -um
distribute, distrībuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
district, rēgio, -ōnis, f.
 distrust, diffido, -fīsus, 3, or parum
 crēdere, confidere (dat.)
disturb, turbo, 1
disturbance, mōtus, -ūs, m.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
divide, dīvīdo, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3
divine, divīnus, -a, -um
do, fācio, fēci, factum, 3: *I (can)
 easily do without wine*, vīno fācile
 cāreo
dog, cānis, -is, c.
dolphin, delphīn, -īnis, m.
domestic, dōmesticus, -a, -um
door, jānua, ae, f.; fōres, -um,
 f. pl.; *out of doors* (i) (rest)
 fōris, (*motion towards*) fōras
doubt, to, dūbito, 1; *there is no
 doubt that*, nōn dūbiūm est quīn,
 Par. 145; *I have no doubt that*,
 nōn dūbito quīn; *without doubt*,
 sīnē dūbio

doubtful, incertus, -a, -um ; dūbius, -a, -um.
dove, cōlumba, -ae, f.
downcast, dēmissus, -a, -um
down from, dē (*g. abl.*)
drachma, drachma, -ae, f.
drag, trāho, traxi, tractum, 3
draw (*a sword*), stringo, -nxi, ietum, 3 ; *draw along*, dñeo, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw back*, reduco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw up* (*an army*), instruo, -struxi, -struetum, 3 ; *draw lots*, sortior, -tītus, 4, dep. ; *draw water*, I, aquain haurio, hansi, haustum, 4 ; *draw together*, contrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3
dread, *to*, formīdo, 1
dreadful, dīrus, -a, -um
dream, *a*, somnium, -i, n. ; *dream*, *to*, somnio, 1
dress, vestītus, -ūs, m. ; vestis, -is, f.
drink, bibo, bībi, bibītum, 3 ; pōto, 1
drive, āgo, īgi, actum, 3 ; pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3 ; *to drive into exile*, pellērē ī exilīum ; *drive back*, rēpello, reppūli, rēpulsum, 3 ; *drive out*, expello, expūli, expulsum, 3 ; *drive down*, dēpello, dēpūli, dēpulsum, 3
drop, *a*, gutta, -ae, f.
drown, mergo, mersi, mersum, 3
Druuids, Druīdes, -uin, m. pl.
drunk, ēbrius, -a, -um
dry, siccus, -a, -um ; āridus, -a, -um
duck, ānas, -ātis, c.
duly, rītē
dutiful conduct, piētās, -ātis, f.
duty, offīcium, -ii, n.
dwell, *to*, hābito, 1
dwelling, dōmus, -ūs, f.
dye, *to*, tingo, tinxi, tintum, 3

Each, quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, or, when used as *n.*, quicquē, ; *foll. superl.*, suus., &c., (140.)

165) ; (*of two*) ūterqūe (both are used in sing.)
eager, cūpīdus, -a, -um
eagle, āquīla, -ae, f.
ear, auris, -is, f.
early, matūrē
earth, terra, -ae, f. ; tellūs, -ūris, f.
ease, ūtium, -i, n.
easily, fācīlē ; more e., fācīliūs
east, the, ūriens, -entis, m.
easy, fācīlis, -e (60)
eat, vescor, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*) ; īdi, īdi, īsum, 3
educate, īdūco, 1
effect, mōdus, -i, m ; *he spoke to this effect*, ī hunc mōdum ūrātiōnem hābuit ; *effect*, *to*, effīcio -fēci, -fectum, 3
egg, ūvum, -i, n.
Egypt, Aegyptus, -i, f.
Egyptian, Aegyptius, -a, -um
eight, octō, indel.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um
eighty, octogintā, indel.
either, (*conj.*) aut, vēl (157a)
elder, sēniōr, -ōris, adj. used as *n.* ; also mājor nātū (71)
elect, īlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3
elephant, īlēphantus, -i, m ; īlēphās, -antis, m.
eloquence, fācundia, -ae, f.
eloquent, fācundus, -a, um
else, (*when adj.*) ālius, -a, ūd ; or else aut ; elsewhere, ālibī
embrace, *to*, amplector, -plexus, 3, dep. ; *embrace*, amplexus, -ūs, m.
emperor, princeps, -ipis, m.
empire, impērium, -i, n.
empty, vācuus, -a, -um
enact, sancio, -xi, -ctum, 4 ; ("shall and "should," after this *v.*, must be rend. by pres. and imperf. subj.) it has been enacted that no one shall ride in a carriage, sanctum est nē quis currū vēhātūr

encourage, hortor, 1, dep.; stīmūlo, 1
end, to, finio, 4
end, finis, -is, m.
endeavour, cōnor, 1, dep. (*foll. by inf.*)
endowed with, praeditus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*)
endurance, pātientia, -ae, f.
endure, perfēro, -tuli, -lātum, -ferre
enemy, hostis, -is, m. ; (*in war, mostly pl.*) *the enemy's camp*, hostium (*not hostis*) castra ; *a private enemy*, īnīmīcus, -a, -um
energetic, strēnuus, -a, -um
engagement, certāmen, -īnis, n. ; pugna, -ae, f.
England, Anglia, -ae, f.
enjoy, fruor, fruitus, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*)
enormous, ingens, -ntis
enough, sātis
enraged, irātus, -a, -um
enter, intro, 1 ; ineo, -īvi or -ii, ītum, 4
enterprise, cōnātus, -ūs, m.
enticements, illēcebrae, -arum, f. pl.
entirely, omnīno
entrails, viscēra, -um, n.
entreat, īro, 1 (143)
entrust, crēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
envious, invīdus, -a, -um
envy, invīdia, -ae, f. ; *envy, to*, in-vīdeo, -vīdi, visum, 3 (*g. dat.*)
Epaminondas, Epāmīnondās, -ae, m.
Ephesus, Ephēsus, -i, f.
Epicurus, Epīcūrus, -i, m.
equal, pār, pāris
equally, pāriter
equipped, instructus, -a, -um, part. of instruo
erect (*build*), exstruo, -struxi, -structum, 3 ; erīgo, -rexī, -rectum, 3
err, erro, 1
error, error, -ōris, m.

escape, fūga, -ae, f. ; *escape, to*, īvādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3 ; effūgio, -fūgi, 3 ; *escape the notice of*, fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3 (*g. acc.*)
escort, dēdūco, -duxī, -ductum, 3
especially, maximē ; praeſertim
estimate, aestimo, 1
eternal, aeternus, -a, -um
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.
even, ētiam ; vēl (141 a) ; *not even*, nē—quidem (141) ; *even a boy*, vēl puer ; *even now*, ētiam nunc ; *even if*, ētiam sī
evening, vesper, -ēris and -ēri, m. ; *in the evening*, vespērē, or adv. vespēri (*not vespēro*)
event, ēventus, -ūs, m.
ever, unquam ; (*always*) semper ; *if you ever come*, sī quando vēneris ; *did you e. come?* num quando (*or ecundo*) vēnistī ?
every, every good man, omnes bōni, or optimus quisquē (140) ; *every day*, quōtidiē (*or cōtūdiē*)
everywhere, passim [mālum, -i, n.]
evil, mālus, -a, -um ; *an evil*, examine, investigo, 1
example, exemplum, -i, n.
exceedingly, valdē
excellence, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
excellent, īgrēgius, -a, -um (68b) ; praestans, -ntis ; optimus, -a, -um
except, prep. praeſter (*g. acc.*) ; conj. nīsi ; *why do you fight except to conquer?* cur pugnas nīsi ūt vincās ?
excessive, nīmīus, -a, -um
exchange, mīto, 1 [-ōnis, f.]
excuse, excūso, 1 ; *an e.*, excūsātio,
exercise, to, exerceo, -ui, -ītum, 2
exhort, cōhortor, -ātus, 1, dep.
exile, exīlium, -i, n. ; *exile*, an, exsul, -ūlis, m.
expectation, expectātio, -ōnis, f. ; spēs, spei, f.
expediency, ūtilitās, -ātis, f.

expedient, ūt̄lis, -e
expense, sumptus, -ūs, m.
experience, exp̄erientia, -ae, f.;
 ūsus, -ūs, m.; *experience*, to,
 exp̄erior, -pertus, 4, dep.
explain, expl̄ico, 1
explore, explōro, 1
extend, pāteo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*);
 pando, pandi, passum, 3 (*trans.*)
extent, spātium, -i, n. [3]
extinguish, exstinguo, -nxi, -netum,
extraordinary, mīrus, -a, -um
extreme, extrēmus, -a, -um
extremely, valdē
exult, exulto, 1
eye, ūcūlus, -i, m.

Fabius, Fābius, -i, m.
fable, fābūla, -ae, f.
face, fācies, -ei, f.; ūs, ūris, n.;
 vultus, -ūs, m.
actions, partes, -ium, f.
fact, rēs, rei, f.; *facts must be*
clearly arranged, rēs lūculenter
sunt dīgērendae
fail (*fall short*), dēsum, -fui,
 esse, (*g. dat.*); (*forsake*), dēfi-
 cīo, -fēci, -fectum, 3; *time*
fails me, tempus mē dēfīcit
faith, fidēs, -ei, f. [-um]
faithful, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a,
full, to, cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, 3;
 (*in battle*) occīdo, -cīdi, -cāsum,
 3
full asleep, to, obdormio, -ii or
 -īvi, -ītum, 4
false (things), falsus, -a, -um;
 (*persons*), mendax, -ācis
falsehood, mendācium, -ii, n.
fame, fāma, -ae, f.
family, fāmīlia, -ae, f.; dōmus,
 -ūs, f.
famine, fāmēs, -is, f.
far, prōcūl; longē; *as far as*,
 tēnūs (*g. abl. or gen.*, 178)
farm, prae diūm, -i, n.
farthing, as, assis, m.; *I do not*

care a farthing for you, nōn
 assis tē fācio
"fasces," the, fascēs, -ium, m. pl.
the rods which were the signs
of the consul's power
fat, pinguis, -e
fate, fātum, -i, n.
father, pāter, -tris, m.
fault, culpa, -ae, f.
farour, grātia, -ae, f.; *favour*, tē,
 fāveo, fāvi, fautum, 2 (*g. dat.*)
fear, tīmor, -oris, m.; mētus, -ūs,
 m.
fearful, pāvīdus, -a, -um
fear, to, tīmeo, -ui, 2; mētuo, -ui,
 3; v̄reor, vērītus, dep. 2
fearless, impāvīdus, -a, -um
feast, ēpūlāe, -ārum, f. [f.]
feather, penna, -āe, f.; plūma, -ae,
features, vultus, -ūs, m.
feeble, infirmus, -a, -um
feed, (*trans.*) pasco, pāvī, pastum,
 3; (*intrans.*) pascor, pass.
feed on, vescor, 3 dep. (*g. abl.*)
feel, sentio, sensi, sensuim, 4
feign, fingo, finxi, fictum, 3
fellow, hōmo, -īnis, m.: *that*
fellow, istē
fertile, fertīlis, -e
fetch, see bring
setter, compēs, -ēdis, f. [-ē]
ferer, febris, -is f. (-im or -em, -ī or
few, paucus, -a, -um, (*mostly pl.*);
very few, perpauci
field, āger, -gri, m.
fierce, fērox, -ōcīs
fifth, fīfty, see Par. 81
fig, fig-tree, fīcus, -i, and -ūs, f.
fight, pugna, -ae, f.
fight, to, pugno, 1
fill, compleo, -plōvi, -pletum, 2
finally, dēnīquē (*not to stand first*
in a clause)
find, invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *he*
was found guilty of, damnātus
est (*g. gen.*)
fine, multa, -ac, f.

- fine, to, multo, 1*
finger, dīgitus, -i, m.
finish, confīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 ;
pērāgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3
fire, ignis, -is, -m., abl. ignī ;
under fire, sub jactu, or jactum,
tēli, (180)
firm, firmus, -a, -um
first, prīmus, -a, -um ; at f. ;
primo (adv.) : T. was the first to
come (or who came), Tallius
prīmus vēnit
fish, pīscis, -is, m.
fisherman, pīscātor, -ōris, m.
fit, aptus, -a, -um ; idōneus, -a,
-um ; for running, aptus ad
currendum (186)
fire, quinquē, indel. ; five hundred,
quingenti, -ae, -a
fix, figo, -xi, -xum, 3
fixed, certus, -a, -um ; a certain
fixed day, certus quīdam diēs
flame, flamma, -ae, f.
flatter, ādūlor, 1, dep.
flee, fūgio, fūgi, 3
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flesh, cāro, carnis, f.
flight, fūga, -ae, f. ; of a bird,
vōlātus, -us, m.
flight, put to, fūgo, 1
flourish, flōreo, -ui, 2
flow, fluo, -xi, 3. fut. part. fluxūrus
flower, flōs, -ōris, m.
fly, a, musca, -ae, f.
fly, to, see flee ; (of a bird) vōlo, 1
foe, hostis, -is, m.
follow, sēquor, sēcūtus, 3, dep.
follower, cōmēs, -ītis, m.
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
food, cībus, -i, m.
fond of, studiōsus, -a, -um, (g. gen.)
fool, foolish, stultus, -a, -um
foolishly, stultē
foot, pēs, pēdis, m.
foot-soldier, pēdēs, -ītis, m.
for (conj.) nam (at the beginning of
a clause) ; ēnīm (after the first
- word in a clause) ; (prep.) pro,*
prae, (g. abl.) ; ob, (g. acc.)
Par. 178 ; (born, fit, useful, &c.)
for acting, ād āgendūm : for a
few days, paucos dīēs (262)
forbid, vēto, -ui, -ītum, 1 ; prō-
hībeo, -ui, -ītum, 2
force, vīs, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.
forced marches, magna ītīnēra
forces, cōpīae, -ārum, f.
forehead, frons, -ntis, f.
foreign, externus, -a, -um ; pēre-
grīnus, -a, -um
foresee, prōvīdeo, -vīdi, -visum, 2
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forget, oblīvisor, oblītus, 3, dep.
(g. gen.)
forgetful, immēmor, -ōris (g. gen.)
form, forma, -ae, f.
former, prior, prius ; the former...
the latter, ille...hic
formerly, quondam, īlim
fort, castrum, -i, -n. ; castellum,
-i, n.
fortījy, mūnio, -ivi or -ii , -ītum 4,
fortitude, fortītūdo, -inis, f. ; with
fortitude, fortīter
fortunate, fēlix, -īcis
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
fortunes, they distrusted their f.,
rēbus suis diffīsi sunt
forty, quadrāgīntā, indel.
forum, fōrum, -i, n.
found, condo, -īdi, -dītum, 3
founder, condītor, -ōris, m.
fountain, fons, fontis, m.
four, fourteen, &c. see Par. 81
four times, quāter
fourth, quartus, -a, -um
free, liber, -ēra, -ēruim : f. from
fault, culpā vācūns (279)
free, to, libēro, 1, (acc. & abl.)
freed from debt, aere āliēno lib-
ērātus
freedom, libertās, -ātis, f.
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
frequently, saepē

fresh, rēcens, -ntis; nōvus, -a, -um
friend, āmīcus, -i, m.
friendly, āmīcus, -a, -um
friendship, āmīcītia, -ae, f.
frighten, terreo, -ui, 2
frog, rāna, -ae, f.
from, ā, ē, or ex, dē (g. abl.); *from boyhood*, indē a puero
from a distance, ēnīnūs
front, in, aduersus, -a, -um
frost, gēlū, indcl. n.
frugality, parsimōnia, -ae, f.
fruit, fructus, -ūs, m.; *the fruits (of the earth)*, frūges, -um, f. pl.
fruitful, fertīlis, -e; fērāx, -ācis
fulfil, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3;
 expleo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2
full, plēnus, -a, -um (g. gen. or abl.)
funeral, fūnus, -ēris, n.; *funeral rites*, infēriae, -arum, f.
furrow, suleus, -i, m.
fury, fūrōr, -ōris, m.
future, fūtūrus, -a, -um

Găbii, Găbii, -ōrum, m. pl.
gain, quaestus, -ūs, m.; lucrum, -i, n.
gain, to, (a victory) rēportāre, 1;
 acquiōro, quīsīvi, quīsītum, 3;
 păro, 1
gain possession of, pōtior, -ītus, 4,
 dep. (g. abl.) See Par. 207.
Gallic, Gallīcus, -a, -um
gallows, crux, crūcis, f.
game, lūdus, -i, m.
garden, hortus, -i, m.
garland, sertum, -i, n.
garment, vestis, -is, f.
garrison, praesidium, -i, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3; col-
 līgo, lēgi, lectum, 3
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, m.
gem, gemma, -ae, f.
general, dux, dūcis, m.; imp̄rātor,
 -ōris, m.

generally, plērumque
gentleness, cōmītas, -ātis, f.
gently, lēniter
German, Germānus, -a, -um
Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.
get, păro, 1; ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3
giant, gīgās, -antis, m.
gift, dōnum, -i, n.
gird, cingo, -nxi, -netum, 3
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, do, dēdi, dātum, 1
give back, reddo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
give birth to, părio, pepēri, partum,
 3 (g. acc.)
give orders to, impēro, 1 (g. dat.)
give up, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
glad, laetus, -a, -um
Glaucus, Glaucus, -i, m.
glitter, mīeo, -ui, 1
gloomy, tristis, e
glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um
glory, glōria, -ae, f.
go, eo, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4; I am going-to-die, mōritūrs sum
go away, ābeo, -ii, -ītum, 4
go by, prætēret, īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4
go forth, or out, exeo, -ii, -ītum, 4
go on, prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
go under, sūbeo, -ii, -ītum, 4
goat, cāper, -pri, m.
god, deus, dei, m.; nom. pl. often
 dii, or di
goddess, dea, -ae, f. Par. 311
gold, aurum, -i, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um
good, bōnus, -a, -um
goodwill, bēnēvōlentia, -ae, f.
goose, anser, -ēris, m.
govern, rēgo, rexī, rectum, 3
government, imp̄rīum, -i, n.
grace, grātia, -ae, f.
grandfather, āvus, -i, m.
grandson, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.
grant (see give); I grant him pardon, do ei vēniām
grape, ūva, -ae, f.
grass, herba, -ae, f.

- grateful*, grátus, -a, -um
gray, cānus, -a, -um
great, magnus, -a, -um; *very great*, permagnus; *with "this,"* tantus; *this great slaughter*, haec tanta cædēs
greatly, magnōpēre, valdē
greatness, magnítudo, -inis, f.
Grecian, Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
greedy, ávidus, -a, -um, ávārus, -a, -um (*both g. gen.*)
green, vīridis, -e
green, to grow, vīresco, 3 [m.
grief, dōlor, -ōris, m. : luctus, -ūs,
grieve, dōleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*); angō, 3 (*trans.*)
groan, gémitus, -ūs, m.
groan, to, gēmo, -ui, 3
ground, hūmus, -i, f.; *on the ground*, hūni
grove, lūcus, -i, m.
grow, cresco, crēvi, cretum, 3
guard, (*a single person*) custōs, -ōdis, m.; (*a garrison*) praesidiūm, -i, n.
guard, to, custōdiō, -īvi or -īi.
 -ītum, 4; *guard strongly*, fir-māre praeſidiō
guest, hospēs, -ītis, m.
guide, dux, dūcis, m.
guide, to, dūco, duxi, ductum, 3
guile, dōlus, -i, m.
guilt, culpa, -ae, f.; scēlus, -ēris, n.
guilty, sons, sōntis; *to be found guilty of*, damnāri (*g. gen.*)
- Habit**, mōs, mōris, m.
hail, grando, -inis, f.
hair, crēnis, -is, m.; *not even a hair's breadth*, ne transversum quidem unguem, lit. *a nail's breadth*
half, dīmīdium, -i, n.
halt, consisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3
hand, mānus, -ūs, f.; *right hand, dextra; left hand, sinistra*; *I*
- am at hand*, adsum, -fui, -esse;
it is in your hands, pēnes tē est (183)
hand down, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrūm
hang, pendeo, pēpendi, 2 (*in-trans.*); pendo, pēpendi, pensum, 3 (*trans.*)
Hannibal, Hannibal, -ālis, m.
happen, (*of ill fortune*) accīdo, -cīdi, 3 (*mostly foll. by* ūt; (*of good*) contingo, -tīgi, 3
happy, (*fortunate*) felix, -īcīs; (*joyful*) laetus, -a, -um; (*blessed*) bēatus, -a, -um
harbour, portus, -ūs, m.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um
hare, lēpus, -ōris, m.
harm, detrīmentum, -i, n.
harmful, noxiūs, -a, -um
harp, cīthāra, -ae, f.
harvest, messis, -is, f.
Hasdrubal, Hasdrūbal, -ālis, m.
haste, cēlēritās, -ātis, f.; *in haste*, cum cēlēritāte, or cēlēriter, or summā cēlēritāte (181); *make haste*, see hasten
hasten, festīno, 1; prōpēro, 1
hastily, i.e. rashly, tēmērē
hate, ȏdium, -i, n.
hate, to, ȏdi, def. 3; *see App. II.*, page 215
hatred, see hate
hate, hābeo, -ui, -ītum, 2
hawk, accīpiter, -tris, m.
he, ille, -a, -ūd; īs, ea, īd; *he who*, qui (*is being often omitted, or placed after qui*, Par. 107)
head, cāput, -ītis, n.
headlong, praeceps, -cīpītis
health, sālūs, -ūtis, f.
healthy, sānus, -a, -um; *healthful*, sālūber, -bris, -bre
heap, ăcervus, -i, m.
hear, audio, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4
hearer, auditor, -ōris, m.
heart, cōr, -dis, n.

<i>hearth</i> , fōcus, -i, m.	<i>Homer</i> , Hōmērus, -i, m.
<i>heat</i> , cālor, -ōris, m.	<i>honest</i> , prōbus, -a, -um
<i>heaven</i> , caelum, -i, m.	<i>honesty</i> , prōbitas, -ātis, f.
<i>heavy</i> , grāvis, -e	<i>honey</i> , mēl, mellis, n.
<i>Hector</i> , Hectōr, Hectōris, m.	<i>honour</i> , hōnor, -ōris, m.; <i>to be in great honour with the Romans</i> ,
<i>hedge round</i> , to, saepio, saepsi,	in magno hōnōre esse āpūd Rōmānos
saepsum, 4	
<i>heir</i> , hērēs, -ēdis, m.	<i>honourable</i> , hōnestus, -a, -um
<i>Helena</i> , Hēlēna, -ae, f.	<i>hoof</i> , ungūla, -ae, f.
<i>helmet</i> , gālea, -ae, f.	<i>hook</i> , hāmus, -i, m.
<i>help</i> , auxiliū, -i, n.	<i>hope</i> , spēs, spei, f.
<i>help</i> , to, subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (g. dat.)	<i>hope</i> , to, spēro, l; <i>do you hope to take the city?</i> spērasne tē urbem captūrum esse?
<i>Helvetii</i> , the, Helvētii, -ōrum, -i, m.	<i>Horace</i> , Hōrātius, -ii, m.
<i>hemlock</i> , cīcūta, -ae, f.	<i>Horatii</i> , the, Hōrātii, -ōrum, m.
<i>hence</i> , hinc	<i>horn</i> , cornū, -ūs, n.
<i>herb</i> , herba, -ae, f.	<i>horrible</i> , dīrus, -a, -um; nēfandus, -a, -um; <i>h. to relate!</i> nēfās dictū! (246)
<i>Hercules</i> , Hercūlēs, -is, m.	
<i>herd</i> , pēcūs, -ōris, n.	<i>horse</i> , ēquus, -i, m.
<i>here</i> , hīc; often used for "hither" and then to be trans. by hūc	<i>horseman</i> , ēquēs, -ītis, m.
<i>hero</i> , hērōs, -ōis, m. (acc. pl. -ōas)	<i>hospitality</i> , hospitium, -i, n.
<i>hesitate</i> , dūbito, 1	<i>host</i> , hospēs, -ītis, m.
<i>hide</i> , to, condo, -dīdi, dītum, 3; abdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3	<i>hostage</i> , obses, -īdis, m.
<i>hiding place</i> , lātebra, -ae, f.	<i>hostile</i> , infestus, -a, -um
<i>high</i> , altus, -a, -um; to buy at a very high price, permagnō ēmēre	<i>Hostilius</i> , Hostilius, -i, m.
<i>highest</i> , summus, -a, -um	<i>hound</i> , cānis, -is, e.
<i>hill</i> , collis, -is, m.	<i>hour</i> , hōra, -ae, f.
<i>himself</i> , sē, suī, &c. See Par. 94	<i>house</i> , dōmus, -ūs, f. (311); aedes, -ium, f. pl.; <i>household</i> , fāmīlia, -ae, f.
<i>hinder</i> , prōhibeo, 2, <i>I hindered you from coming</i> , prōhibui quoniānūs vēnīrēs	<i>how?</i> in what way? quōmōdo? to how great an extent, quam, quantum; how great or much, quantus, -a, -um; how many? quot? how often? quōtiens? how long? quamdiu? how good, bad, &c., quam bōnus, mālus, &c.; how few there are who use riches well! quōtus quisque est qui dīvītiis bēnē ūtātur! for how much did you buy it? quanti id ēmisti? how important it is! quantum intērest or rēfert (329)
<i>hinge</i> , cardo, -dīnis, m.	
<i>hire</i> , condūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3	
<i>his</i> , Par. 98, 218, 306, and p. 328	
<i>historian</i> , auctor, -ōris, m.	
<i>hither</i> , hūc; <i>hitherto</i> , ādhūc	
<i>hold</i> , tēneo, -ui, 2; hābeo, -ui, -ītum, 2	
<i>holiday</i> , fēriæ, -ārum, f.	
<i>hollow</i> , cāvus, -a, -um; to hollow, cāvāre	
<i>holy</i> , sācer, -era, -erum	
<i>home</i> , dōmus, -ūs, f. (Ex. LXXXIV.); <i>at home</i> , dōmi (265)	
	<i>however</i> , tāmen

huge, ingens, -tis
human, hūmānus, -a, -um
hundred, centum, indeel. (81)
hunger, fāmes, -is, f.
hungry, to be, ēsūrio, 4
hunt, vēnor, -atus, 1, dep.
hunter, huntsnan, vēnātor, -ōris, m.
hunting, vēnātio, -ōnis, f.
hurl, conjīcio, -jēci, -jectum, 3
hurt, to, nōceo, 2 (g. dat.); laedo, -si, -sum, (g. acc.)
hurtful, noxius, -a, um
husband, mārtitus, -i, m.
husbandman, agricōla, -ae, m.

I, ēgo; *see page 45*
Ida, Īda, -ae, f.
idle, ignāvus, -a, -um
idleness, ignāvia, -ae, f.
if, sī; if...not, nīsī (125, 295)
ignorant, ignārūs, -a, -um (g. gen.); ignorant of, to be, ignōro, 1; nescio, -ii, 4 (both g. acc.); are you ignorant that the man is here? nescīsnē hōminem adesse? are you ignorant how, &c., nescīsnē quōmōdo, foll. by subjunct.
ill (sick), aeger, -gra, -grum; (subst.) mālum, -i, n.; ill (adv.), i.e. badly, mālē
illness, morbus, -i, m. [nis, -e
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um; insig-
image, īmāgo, -īnis, f.
imagine, pūto, 1
imitate, īmītor, 1, dep.
immediately, stātiū
immense, ingens, -ntis
immortal, -immortālis, e
immortality, immortālitas, -ātis, f.
impatient, impātiens, -tis
impede, impēdio, -īvi or ii, ītum, 4
impel, impello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3
impious, impīus, -a, -um
implore, īro, 1
important. It is important for Balbus, Balbi intērest; ("should," after this v., is often rendered by

pres. inf.) it is imp. that Catiline should perish, intērest Cātilinam pērire; it is i. for me, meā intērest; see Par. 329
importune, fātīgo, 1
impose, impōno, -pōsui, -pōsūtum, 3; I impose tribute on a nation, trībūtum genti impōno
improve, to, ēmendo, 1 [er
impudent, impūdens, -tis; -ly, -ent-
impunity, with, impūnē
impute, he i. this to me as a fault, hōc mīhi vītō dat, or vertit
in, in (g. abl.); in the direction of, versūs (foll. acc.); in the pages of, āpūd (g. acc.); in the power of, pēnes (g. acc.); in the presence of, cōram (g. abl.), see Par. 178-180; in order to, ūt; in three days, Par. 263; in Gabii, Par. 265; in haste, Par. 181.
increase, augeo, auxi, auctum, 2 (trans.); cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3 (intrans.)
incredible, incrēdībilis, -e
incursion, incursio, -ōnis, f.
indeed, quīdem; you i....but I, tū quīdem...ēgo autem, (or vērō)
India, India, -ae, f.
indignation, see anger
indolence, ignāvia, -ae, f. [(dat.)
indulge, indulgeo, -lsi, -ltum, 2
industrious, diligens, -ntis
infantry, pēdītes, m. pl.; pēdītātus, -ūs, m.
infirm, infirmus, -a, -um, -um
influence, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2
inform, I informed him, certiorem eum fēci (gen. or dē.)
in front, adversus, -a, -um, adj.
inglorious, īhōnestus, -a, -um
inhabit, incōlo, -colui, -cultum, 3; hābito, 1
inhabitant, incōla, -ae, m.
injure, nōceo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)
injury, injūria, -ae, f.
injustice, see (34) unjust (things.)

innocence, innōcentia, -ae, f.
innocent, innōcens, -tis; *insons*,
 -ntis; *innocent of all fault*, omni
 culpā vācuus (279)
innumerable, innūmērābilis, -e
inquire, quaero, quaesīvi, quae-
 situm, 3; rōgo, 1
inquiry, quaestio, ūnis, f.
insolence, insōlentia, -ae, f. [3]
inspect, inspicio, -spexi, -spectum,
insolent, insōlens, -tis
instance, exemplum, -i, n.
instead of, prō (g. abl.)
instruct, ērūdio, 4
instrument, instrūmentum, -i, n.
insufficient, impar, gen. impāris
insult, contūmēlia, -ae, f.
insurrection, sēdītio, -ōnis, f.
integrity, prōbitas, ātis, f.
intellect, ingēniū, -i, n.
intention, consilium, -i, n.
inter, sēp̄lio, -īvi or -ii, -pultum, 4
intercept, interclūdo, -si, -sum, 3
intercourse, consuētūdo, -inis, f.
interest, it is my i., meā intērest; it
 is the i. of Tullius, Tullii intērest
 (see Ex. XCII.); (*interests*) to
 consult my, Tullius's, i., mihi,
 Tullio, consūlere
into, in (g. acc.) Par. 55. [3]
introduce, indūco, -duxi, -ductum,
invade, invādo, -si, -sum, 3
in turn, invicem
in vain, fristrā
inventor, inventor, -ōris, m.
investigate, explōro, 1
invite, invitō, 1
invoke, invōco, 1
Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, f.
iron, (*subst.*) ferrum, -i, n.; (*adj.*)
 ferreus, -a, -um
island, insūla, -ae, f.
it, see page 46, Par. 219-226
Italy, Itālia, -ae, f.
ivory (*subst.*), ēbur, -ōris, n.; (*adj.*)
 ēburnus, -a, -um
ivy, hēdēra, -ae, f.

Javelin, jācūlum, -i, n.
jaw, māla, -ae, f.
jest, jōcus, -i, m.; pl. -i and -a
join, jungo, -nxi, -nctum, 3
journey, itēr, itinēris, n.; to *jour-
 ne*y, īter fācēre; we shall have to
journey, īter nōbis fāciēndum
 ērit
joy, gaudium, -i, n.
joyful, laetus, -a, -um
joyfully, laetē
judge, jūdex, -īcis, m.; *judge*, to,
 jūdīco, 1
judgment, jūdīcium, -i, n.; in my
judgment, mē jūdīcē
juice, jūs, jūris, n.
jump, to, salto, 1
jumper, saltātor, -ōris, m.
Juno, Jūno, -ōnis, f.
Jupiter, Juppīter, Jōvis, m.; dat.,
 acc., abl., Jōvi, -em, -ē
just, justus, -a, -um
justice, justītia, -ae, f.; jūs, jūris,
 n.

Keen, ācer, -crīs, -crē (44, 61)
keep, tēneo, -ui, 2; servō, 1; I *keep*
 my word, fidēm praesto, -stītī,
 -stātum & -stītum, 1; *keep off*,
 arceo, -ui, 2
keeper, custōs, -ōdis, m.
key, clāvis, -is, f.
kill, interfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
kind, bēnignus, -a, -um
kind, gēnus, -ēris, n.; a barren
 kind of style, jējūna quaedam
 òrātio; see Ex. LXXXIII. note
 310a
kindness, bēnignitas, -ātis, f.
kindle, incendo, -di, -sum, 3
kindly, bēnignē
kindness, a, bēnēfīcium, -i, n.
king, rex, rēgis, m.
kingdom, regnum, -i, n.
kiss, oscūlor, 1, dep.
knee, gēnū, -ūs, n.
knife, culter, -tri, m.

knight, ēquēs, -ītis, m.
know, scio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4;
 nōvi, see nosco; *I do-not-know*,
 nescio, -scīvi -scītum, 4
knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.; *with-*
out his knowledge, clam eo
known, nōtus, -a, -um; *it is well*
known, constat

Labienus, Lābiēnus, -i, m.

labour, läbor, -ōris, m.

lady, mūlier, -ēris, f.

lake, lācus, -ūs, m.

lamb, agnus, -i, m.

lame, claudus, -a, -um

lament, lügeo, -xi, -ctum, 2 (*trans.*):
 dōleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*) [grief]

lamentation, maeror, -ōris, m., see
lance, hasta, ae, f.

land, terra, -ae, f.; *lands* (as
 possessions), āger, -gri, m.;
 fines, -iūm, m. pl.; *land* (adj.)
 terrestris, -e

large, magnus, -a, -um (*for comp.*
 and *superl.* see Par. 68); *a l.*

sum of money, grandis pēcūnia

lashes, verbēra, -um, n. pl.

last (*as opp. to first in a race*),
 extrēmus, see Par. 69; *at last*,
 tandem

lasting, pērennis, -e

late, sērus, -a, -um; *late*, adv.
 sērō; *rather late*, too late, sērius

lately, nūper

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um

latter, hic; *the former...the latter*,
 ille...hic

Latōna, Lātōna, -ae, f.

laugh, rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, 2; *laugh*
at, mock (*a person*), irrīdeo, -sī,
 -sum, 2 (*g. dat.*); (*a thing*)
 rīdeo (*g. acc.*), gentler than
 irrīdeo

laughing-stock, lūdibrium, -i, n.

laurel, laurus, -i, f.

law, (*a statute*), lēx, lēgis, f.; (*the*
laws) jūs, jūris, n.; *the laws of*

men and God, jūs et fās; *against*
the laws, contrā jūs [pers.]

lavīful, it is, līcet, -uit, 2, im-
lay aside, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum,

3; *lay down*, dēpōno, -pōsui,
 -pōsitum, 3; *lay waste*, vasto, 1

laziness, īertia, -ae, f.

lazy, segnis, -e; īners, -tis

lead, dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3; *lead*
out, ēdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3

leader, dux, dūcis, m.

leaf, frons, -dis, f.

lean, adj., mācer, -era, crum

leap, to, sālio, -ii or -ūi, -saltum,
 4; *leap across*, transīlio, -ūi,

-sultum, 4; *leap down*, dēsīlio,
 -sīlii, -sultum, 4; *leap out*,
 exsīlio, -sīlii, -sultum, 4, foll.
 by dē or ē

learn, disco, dīdīci, 3

learned, doctus, -a, -um; *learned*
in the law, jūris perītus (287)

learning, doctrīna, -ae, f. [..at]
least, mīnīnus, -a, -um; *at l.*, see
leave, to, liuquo, -līqui, -lictum, 3;

rēlinquo, -līqui, -lictum, 3; *I*
leave (*by will*), lēgo, 1; *leare*,
 pōtestās, -ātis, f.

left, rēliquo, -a, -um; *left* (*hand*),
 sīnister, -tra, -trum

leg, crūs, crūris, n.

legion, lēgio, -ōnis, f.

leisure, ūtiūm, -i, n.; *leisure*, to,
have, vāco, 1

Lemnos, Lemnos, -i, f.

lend, crēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3

length, longitūdo, -īnis, f.; *at*
length, tandem

Lentulus, Lentūlus, -i, m.

Leonidas, Leōnidas, -ae, m.

less, mīnor, -is; *it was sold for*
less (Ex. LXX.), mīnōris ven-
 dītum est; *it is less honourable*,
mīnus hōnestum est

lest, nē

let; (*oft. rend. by subjunct.*) *let*
them love, hate, &c., āment,

ōdērint ; let this be an example to you, sit tibī hōc exemplū ; (or by fāc ut, cūrā ut) let your conduct be improved, fāc ut mōres tui ēmendentur ; let them murmur, līcet frēmant (227)
letter, littērae, -arum, f. pl. ; letter of the alphabet, littēra, -ae, f. ; épistōla (or épistūla) -ae, f.
level, aequus, -a, -um ; level, to, aequo, 1
levy, a, dēlectus, -ūs, m. ; levy, to, conscribo, -psi, -ptum, 3
liar, mendāx, -ācis
liberate, lībēro, 1 (g. abl. of thing)
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, f.
lictor, lictor, -ōris, m.
lie (to tell lies), mentior, -ītus, 4, dep. ; lie down, jāceo, -ui, 2 ; lie hid, lāteo, -ui, 2 ; lie in ambush, in wait for, insidior, 1, (g. dat.)
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, lūx, lūcis, f. ; lūmen, -īnis, n. ; light, lēvis, -e [-īnis, n.]
lightning, fulgūr, -ūris, n. ; fulmen,
like, sīmīlis, -e ; I like to walk, me jīvāt, or mīhī plācet, ambūlāre
likeness, sīmīlītūdo, -inis, f.
limb, membrum, -i, n.
limit, fīnis, -is, m. ; līmēs, -ītis, m.
line (of battle), ācies, -ēi, f.
lion, leo, -ōnis, m.
lip, labrum, -i, n.
listen to, audio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4
little, parvus, -a, -um ; I have too l. strength, pārum vīrium hābeo ; it matters l. paulum rēfert
live, to, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3 ; (dwell) habitāre or vītam āgēre ; I live on bread, vescor, (3, dep.) pāne (207)
load, ūnus, -ēris, n.
lofty, altus, -a, -um
log, lignum, -i, n.
long, longus, -a, -um ; long, adv. diūtius ; how diūtius ; longer, adv. diūtius ; how

long? quamdiu ? I have long been desiring, jamprīdem (or jamdūdum) cūpio ; no longer, non jam
look, look at, aspīcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 ; look for, quaero, quaeſīvi, quaesītum, 3 ; look, a (of the human countenance), vultus, -ūs, m. ; look round, circumspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3
lord, dōmīnus, -i, m.
lose, āmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 ; perdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
loss, dānnūm, -i, n.
lot, sors, -tis, f. ; to draw lots about, sortīrī dē
lorable, āmābīlis, -e
lore, āmor, -ōris, m. ; love, to, āmo, 1 ; dīlīgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
loring, āmans, -tis
low, lowly, hūmīlis, -e
lower, infērior, -ūs ; the lowest of the citizens, cīvium infīni
luck, fortūna, -ae, f.
lucky, fēlīx, -īcis ; faustus, -a, -um
luxury, luxūria, -ae, f.
Lydia, Līdīa, -ae, f.
lying, mendāx, -ācis
lyre, līra, -ae, f.
Macedonians, the, Mācēdōnes, -ōnum, m.
machine, māchīna, -ae, f.
mad, insānus, -a, -um ; āmens, -tis ; mad, to be, fūro, 3 ; insānio, -īvi or -ii, 4 [-ae, f.]
madness, insānia, -ae, f. ; āmentia,
magic, māgīcūs, -a, -um
magistrate, māgristrātūs, -ūs, m.
maiden, virgo, -īnis, f.
make, fācio, fēci, factum, 3 ; make peace, pācem ferīre ; make haste, see hasten
man, (hero, &c.), vir, -i, m. ; (human being) hōmo, -īnis, m. ; all to a man, omnes ad ūnum
manage, admīnistro, 1

- manifest*, mānifestus, -a, -um
manner, mōs, mōris, m. ; mōdus, -i, m.
many, multus, -a, -um, *very m.*
permulti, or plūrimi ; *so m. tot*
marble, marmor, -ōris, n. ; (*adj.*)
marmōreus, -a, -um
march, *to*, (*set out*) prōfīcisor,
-fectus, 3, dep. ; contendo, -di,
-tum, 3; *march*, a, īter, ītērīs,
n.
- Marcius*, Marcius, -i, m.
Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.
mark, signum, -i, n. ; nōta, -ae, f. ;
it is the m. of, est (*foll. by gen.*) ;
see Par. 289.
- Maro*, Māro, -ōnis, m., Publius
Vergilius Māro, *commonly cal-*
led Virgil
- marriage*, mātrīmōnium, -ii, n.
marry (of men), dūco, duxi, due-
tum, 3 ; (*of women*), nūbo, nupsi,
nuptum, 3 (*g. dat.*) ; *he married*
Tullia, Tulliam duxit ; *she mar-*
ried Tullius, Tullio nupsit
- Mars*, Mars, Martis, m.
marsh, pālūs, -ūdis, f.
master, dōmīnus, -i, m. ; *of a school*,
māgister, -tri, m.
matter, rēs, rei, f.
matters, it, rēfert, *impers.* (Ex.
 XCII.) ; *what does it matter?*
quid rēfert? *it matters little*
what you think, paulum rēfert
quid (240a) sentias
- may*, *he may come*, *to be rendered*
by līcet, possum, fīeri potest ut,
&c., *according to the sense* ; *some-*
one may (be inclined to) say,
dixerit ālīquiſ
- meadow*, prātum, -i, n.
means, ūpes, -um, f. pl. ; cōpia,
-ae, f.
meanwhile, intērēā, intērim
measure, mōdus, -i, m. ; *beyond*
measure, praeter mōdum ; *to*
measure, mētior, mensus, 4, dep.
- meat*, cārō, carnis, f.
medicine, mēdīcīna, -ae, f.
meditate, mēdītor, -ātus, v. dep.
meet, *to*, occurro, -curri, -cursum,
 3 (*dat.*) ; *to meet death*, ūbīe
mortem ; (*adv.*) obviam (*dat.*) ;
he met me, obviam mīhi factus
est
- memorable*, insignis, -e
memory, mēmōria, -ae, f.
Menenius, Mēnēnius, -i, m.
mention, mentio, -ōnis, f.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, m
mercy, cīementia, -ae, f.
merited, mērītus, -a, -um
message, nuntius, -i, m.
messenger, nuntius, -i, m.
metal, mētallum, -i, n.
Metellus, Mētellus, -i, m.
middle, midst, mēdius, -a, -um ;
the middle of the night, mēdia
nox ; *he rushed into the midst*
of the foe, in mēdios hostes ruit
might (i.e. *had the right to*) līcuit :
you m. have come, l. tibi vēnīre ;
(had the ability to) pōtuisti
vēnīre
- mighty*, pōtens, -tis ; ingens, -tis
migrate, mīgro. 1
mildness, lēnitās, -ātis, f.
mile, a, mille pāssus ; *three miles*,
 tria mīlia passuum
- Miletus*, Mīlētus, -i, f.
military, mīlitāris, -e
milk, lāc, -tis, n.
Milo, Milo, -ōnis, m.
mind, mens, -tis, f., ānimus, -i, m.
mindful, mēmor, -ōris (*g. gen.*)
mine, meus, -a, -um
mine, a, mētallum, -i, n. : *he was*
condemned to the mines, in
mētalla damnātus est
- mingle*, misceo, -ui, -xtum, 2
mirth, laetītia, -ae, f.
misbecome, it misbecomes, dēdēcet,
 -uit, 2, *impers.* (220)
miserable, mīser, -ēra, -ērum

misfortune, mǎlum, -i, n. ; cǎlāmǐ-tās, -ātis, f.
mistake, error, -ōris, m.
mix, see *mingle*
mob, turba, -ae, f.
mock, lǔdo, -si, -sum, 3
mockery, lǔdibrium, -i, n.
modest, mōdestus, -a, -um
modesty, mōdestia, -ae, f.
moist, hǔmǐdus, -a, -um
moisture, hǔmor, -ōris, m.
money, sum of money, pěcūnia, -ae, f.
monster, monstrum, -i, n.
monstrous, něfās (*indecl.*) ; (*used in apposition to statements*) the woman (*monstrous to relate!*)
slew her son, mǔlier (*nefās dictu*) fīliū suum interfécit
month, mensis, -is, m.
monument, mōnūmentum, -i, n.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
morals, mōres, -um, m. pl.
more, (*adj.*) plūs, plūris (72) ; he said no more, nec plūra dixit ; (*adv.*) mǎgis with *adj.* (*to a greater degree*), plūs with *verbs* (*to a greater extent*) ; *more than*, plūsquam (*adv.*) ; it was not divided into *more than three parts*, non plusquam in tres partes dīvīsum est ; let no ship have *more than thirty oars*, nulla nāvis plusquam trīginta rēmis āgātur ; suprā (*prep.*) ; *more than twenty thousand fell that day*, caesa eo die suprā mīlia vīginti
moreover, prætērēā
morning, in the, mānē, (*adv. indeel.*)
mortal, mortális, -e.
most, most men, plérique ; most of the sheep, plēraeque övium
mother, māter, -tris, f.
motion, mōtus, -ñs, m.
mound, agger, -ēris, m.
mount, ascendo, -di, -sum, 3 ; con scendo, -di, -sum, 3
mountain, mons, -tis, m.

mourn, lūgeo, -xi, -etum, 2
mournful, maestus, -a, -m.
mourning, luctus, -ūs, m.
mouse, mus, mūris, e.
mouth, òs, òris, n.
move, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2
much, multus, -a, -um ; (*adv.*) multum, sometimes used as a noun, Par. 71 ; *much*, very *much*, as (or so) *much*, *money*, multum, plūrīnum, tantum, pěcūniae ; for how *much did you buy it?* quanti id ēmisti ? with comp. e.g. (*by*) *much better*, multo mēlior (274)
Mucius, Mūcius, -i, m.
multitude, multitñdo, -iñs, f.
Mummius, Mummius, -i, m.
munificence, mūnīficentia, -ae, f.
murder, caedēs, -is, f. ; to *murder*, interfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 ; trucīdo, 1
murmur, murmur, -ūris, n. ; to *murmur*, frēmo, -ui, -iūtum, 3 ; let them *murmur*, līcet frēmant
music, mūsica, -ae, f.
must (163), and see *necessary*, öportet
my, meus, -a, -um ; *voc.* mi
myrrh, myrrha, -ae, f.
myrtle, myrtus, -i, f.

Naked, nūdus, -a, -um
name, nōmen, -iñs, n. ; to *name*, nōmīno, 1 ; vōco, 1
narrate, narro, 1
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
nation, gens, -tis, f. ; pōpūlus, -i, m.
native, a, incōla, -ae, m. ; native- land, patria, -ae, f.
nature, nātūra, -ae, f.
naval, nāvālis, -e
near, prōpinquus, -a, -um ; (*prep.*) prōpē (*g. acc.*) ; äd (*g. acc.*) ; nearer, nearest, see Par. 69
nearly, fērē, paenē
necessary, nēcessārius, -a, -um ; it is n. see *necessary* and öpus

necessity, nēcessītas, -ātis, f.
neck, collum, -i, n.
need, to, ēgeo, -ui, 2 (*abl.*) ; *there is no need of words*, non ḥpus est verbis
needle, ācus, -ūs, f.
neglect, neglēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
negligence, incūria, -ae, f.
neighbour, neighbouring, vīcīnus, -a, -um ; finītimus, -a, -um
neither, (*pron.*) neuter, -tra, -trum, Par. 85 ; (*conj.*) nēc, nēque
nephew, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
Nero, Nēro, -ōnis, m.
nest, nīdus, -i, m.
net, rēte, -is, n.
never, nunquam ; *nevertheless*, tāmen (*at the beginning of a clause, or after an emphatic word*).
new, nōvus, -a, -um ; *news*, nuntius, -i, m.
next, proxīmus, -a, -um ; *on the next day*, postēro (*more rarely proxīmo*) dīe ; *we shall know all within the next five hours*, his quinquē hōris omnia comperta hābēbimus
night, nox, nōctis, f. ; *by n. noctu*
nightingale, phīlōmēla, -ae, f.
Nile, Nilus, -i, m.
nine, nōvem, *indcl.*
no (*adj.*), (*with things*) nullus, -a, -um ; (*with persons*) nēmo ; *no poet*, nēmo pōēta ; *no one*, nēmo (Par. 92) ; *and no... nēque ullus* ; *and no one*, nēc quisquam ; *there is no need of words*, nōn ḥpus est verbis ; *by no means all came*, nēquāquam omnes vēnērunt
no (*adv.*), *no longer*, nōn jam ; *no better i.e. better by nothing*, nīhilo, or nēquāquam melior ; *he said no more*, nēc plūra dixit
nobility, nōbilitas, -ātis, f.

noble, nōbīlis, -e
noise, sōnus, -i, m. ; clāmor, -ōrīs, m.
nor, nēquē, nēc
nose, nāsus, -i, m.
not, nōn ; *not even*, (141) ; *see also 129, 143* ; *if... not*, nīsī ; *not yet*, nōndum
nothing, nīhil or nīl, n. *indcl.*
notice, ānimadverto, -ti, -sum, 3
notwithstanding, tāmen
nourish, nūtrīo, -īvi and -ii, -ītūn, 4
novelty, nōvitās, -ātis, f.
now, nunc ; *meaning already or by this time*, jam.
nowhere, nūsquām
Numa, Nūma, -ae, m.
number, nūmērus, -i, m.
nurse, nūtrīx, -īcis, f.
nut, nux, nūcis, f.
nymph, nymphā, -ae, f.

O ! O ! (*foll. by Acc., 205*) ; *O that !* ūtīnam (330)
oak, quercus, -ūs, f.
oar, rēmus, -i, m.
oath, jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, n. ; (*military*) sacrāmentum, -i, n.
obedient, ūbēdiens, -tis (*g. dat.*)
obey, pāreo, -ui, 2, (*g. dat.*)
obtain, pāro, 1 ; compāro, 1 ; ādīpis̄cor, ādeptus, 3, (*by entreaty*), impetro, 1 ; (*by lot*), sortior, -ītus, 4.
occasion, tempus, -ōris, n.
ocean, ūcēānus, -i, m.
odour, ūdor, ūris, m.
of (282-90) ; *the town (of) Corioli*, Cōriōli oppīdum ; *both of us wept*, ambo flēvīmus ; *the top of the mountain*, summus mons
offer, offēro, obtūli, oblātum, offēre (238) ; *offering*, dōnum, -i, n.
office, mūnus, -ēris, n.
offspring, prōlēs, -is, f.
often, saepē ; *how often*, qūotīēns
old, antiquus, -a, -um ; vētus, -ēris ; *an old soldier*, vētus mīlēs (61) ;

- old age*, sēnectūs, -ūtis, f. ; *old man*, sēnex, sēnis, m. ; *old woman*, ānus, -ūs, f. ; *older men*, sēniōres, or mājōres nātu ; *older, oldest, major*, maximus nātu
omen, ūmen, -īnis, n.
omit, ūmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3
on, in (g. abl.) ; (*upon*) sūper ; *on account of*, ūb, propter (g. ace.)
once, (*meaning “onee for all”*) sēmel ; (*formerly*) ūlīm, quondam ; (*once upon a time*) fortē ; *at once*, stātim
one (only one), ūnus, -a, -um ; *one by one*, singūli, -ae, -a ; *a certain one*, quidam (310a) ; *one...another*, ālius...ālius ; *the one...the other*, alter...alter (86)
only, (adj.) sōlus, -a, -um ; *only Tullius dissented*, ūni Tullio āliter vīsum est ; *not only...but also*, non sōlum...sed ētiam, or cum...tum ; *he lived only ten years*, sōlos dēcem annos vixit ; *if only*, sī mōdo
onset, impētus, -ūs, m.
open, to, āpērio, -ui, -rtum, 4
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.
opponent, adversārius, -i, m.
opportunity, occāsio, -ōnis, f.
oppose, obsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3 (g. dat.) ; *if oppōno is used, note that it means “I place against”* ; *he opposed the enemy*, oppōsuit sēsē hosti [sum, 3
oppress, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-
or, (i) in statements and commands, vēl, aut (157a) ; *(ii) in alternative questions* (171), ān, preeeded by utrum or -nē ; *(a) (Whether) do you prefer this or that?* Utrum hoc (or hocnē) ān illud mavultis ? *(b) I asked whether...or, interrōgāvi utrum...ān ; whether ... or not ... annōn, or necnē*
orator, ūrātor, -ōris, m.
order (a command), mandatum, -i, n. ; jussum, -i, n. ; *to give orders (in war)*, impēro, 1, with dat., ut, and subjunctive ; *to order*, jūbeo, jussi, jussum, 2 (ace. and inf.) ; impēro, 1 (g. dat. and ut.) ; *order (a rank)*, ordo, -īnis, m. ; *the order of the knights*, ēquestris ordo ; *in order to*, ūt
ornament, ornātus, -ūs, m.
other, ālius, -a, -nd ; *the other*, alter (86) ; *the wealth of-others*, āliēnae dīvītiae
ought, dēbeo, -ui, -ītum, 2 ; *you ought to fight*, pugnāre dēbes ; *you ought to have fought*, pugnāre dēbuisti (223)
our (87) noster ; *our men* (34) nostri
out of, ē, ex (g. abl.) ; (*meaning “outside”*) extrā ; *out of shot*, extrā jactum ; *outer*, adj. extērior, neut. -ius (69) ; *outside*, prep. extrā (g. acc.)
over, sūper ; *across*, trans (g. acc.)
overcome, sūpero, 1
overthrow, see *overcome*
overturn, subverto, -verti, -ver-
 sum, 3 [sum, 3
overwhelm, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-
owe, dēbeo, -ui, -ītum, 2
own (see Par. 98) ; *your or my own name*, tuum or meum, ipsius, nōmen (*where ipsius agrees with the gen. tui or mei implied in tuum or meum*)
owner, dōmīnus, -i, m.
ox, bōs, bōvis, c. *See Par. 311*
- Pace**, passus, -ūs, m.
pain, dōlor, -ōris, m.
paint, pingō, -nxi, -ctum, 3
painter, pictor, -ōris, m.
painting, pictūra, -ae, f.
palace, pālātium, -i, n.
Pallas, Pallās, -ādis, f.
palm, palma, -ae, f. ; *to carry off the palm*, palmam ferre

- panic*, pavor, -ōris, m.
parched, āridus, -a, -um; *tostus*,
 -a, -um
pardon, vēnia, -ae, f.; *I grant him*
pardon, do ei veniam; *to pardon*,
ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, 3,
g. dat.
parent, pārens, -tis, c.
Paris (of Troy), Pāris, -īdis, m.
paricide, paricida, -ae, m.
part, pars, -tis, f.; *it is the p. of*
an orator, ḫrātōris est (289); *to*
take part in a battle, interesse
praelio; *for my part*, ēquidem
 (139)
partner, sōcius, -i, m.
pass, pass by, pass on, praetereo,
 -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
path, callis, -is, m.
past, praetēritus, -a, -um
patience, pātentia, -ae, f.
patient, pātiens, -ntis (*g. gen.*)
patiently, pātienter
patrician, patrīcius, -a, -um
pay, stīpendium, -i, n.; *to pay*,
solvō, -vi, -ūtum, 3; *pendō*,
pēpendi, pensum, 3; *pay attention*,
ōperam dare; *pay penalty*,
poenas dare; *pay tribute*, tribū-
tum pendēre; *able to pay*, par
 (*gen. pāris*) solvendo, i.e. *equal*
to paying
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
penalty, poena, -ae, f.; *to pay*
penalty, poenas dare
penetrate, pēnetro, 1
penitence, poenitentia, -ae, f. [m.
penny, dēnārius, -i, m.; as, assis,
people, pōpulus, -i, m.
perfidy, perfidia, -ae, f.
perform, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
perfume, ḫodor, -ōris, m.
perhaps, fortasse, forsitan (*forsitan*
gen. takes the subjunctive)
peril, pēricūlum, -i, n.
perish, pēreo, -ivi or -ii, 4
permission, pōtestas, -ātis, f.
- permit*, pātior, passus, 3, dep.
perseverance, persēvērantia, -ae, f.
perseverere, persēvēro, 1
Persian, Persa, -ae, m.
person, hōmo, -īnis, m.
persuade, persuādeo, -si, -sum (*g.*
dat. of person) (i) *I p. him to*
come, p. ei ut vēniat; (ii) *I p.*
him (or am persuaded) that this
is true, p. ei (*or persuāsum est*
mīhi) hōc vērum esse
Philip, Phīlippus, -i, m.
Philoctetes, Philoctētes, -ae, m.
philosopher, phīlōsōphus, -i, m.
philosophy, phīlōsōphia, ae, f.
physician, mēdīcus, -i, m.
picture, tābūla, -ae, f.
pierce, transfigo, -xi, -xum, 3
pig, porcus, -i, m.
pigeon, cōlumba, -ae, f.
pile up, exstruo, -struxi, -struc-
 tum, 3
plot, gūbernātor, -ōris, m.
pine tree, pīnus, -īs, f.
pious, pius, -a, -um, no superl.
pirate, praedo, -ōnis, m.
pitch (a camp), pōno, pōsui, pōsi-
 tum, 3
pitiful, mīserīcors, -cordis
pity, mīserīcordia, -ae, f.; *feel*
pity for, mīsēreor, -sēritus or
-sērtus, 2, dep. (*g. gen.*); *shew*
pity to, mīsēror, 1 (*g. acc.*)
place, lōcus, -i, m.; *plural*, loca,
 n. pl.; *place*, to, pōno, pōsui,
pōsitum, 3; *place before*, antē-
pono, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3; *vir-*
tūtem vōluptāti antēpōno, *I p.*
virtue before pleasure
plain, campus, -i, m.
plan, consīlium, -i, n.
plant, planta, -ae, f.; *plant*, to,
see sow
Plataea, Plātaeae, ārum, f. pl.
Plato, Plāto, -ōnis, m.
play, lūdus, -i, m.; *play*, to, lūdo,
 -si, -sum, 3

*plead, a cause, āgēre causam
pleasant or pleasing, grātus, -a, -um;
jūcundus, -a, -um; dulcis, -e
please, plāceo, -ui, -itum 2 (g. dat.)
pleasure, vōluptas, -ātis, f.
pledge oneself, to, I p. myself to
pay, spondeo (spōpondi, spon-
sum, 2) me solūturum esse
plot, dōlus, -i, m.
plough, ārātrum, -i, n.; plough, to,
āro, 1
ploughman, ārātor, -ōris, m.
ploughshare, vōmer, -ēris, m.
pluck, carpo, -psi, -ptum, 3
plunder, praeda, -ae, f.; plunder,
to, dīrōpio, -ripui, -reptum, 3
plunge, v. trans. mergo, -si, -sum,
3; he plunged into the water, in
āquam (or aquā) sē mersit
Pluto, Plūto, -ōnis, m.
poem, carmen, -īnis, n.
poet, pōēta, -ae, m.
point, on the point of, in eo ūt,
see Par. 166
point out, monstro, 1
poison, vēnēnum, -i, n.
pollute, polluo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
pomp, pompa, -ae, f.
Pompeius, Pompeius, -i, m.
Pontius, Pontius, -i, m.
poor, (i.e. not rich) pauper, -ēris (61)
poppy, pāpāver, -ēris, n.
populace, vulgus, -i, n. or m.
populous, frēquens, -tis
porch, porticuſ, -ūs, f.
Porsena, Porsēna, -ae, m.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
portent, prōdīgium, -i, n.
portion, pars, -tis, f.
portrait, effigies, -ēi, f.
Porus, Pōrus, -i, m.
position, lōcus, -i, m.
possess, hābeo, -ui, -itum, 2; (*land*)
possideo, possēdi, possessum, 2
possession of, to take, occūpo, 1; to
gain possession of, pōtior, pōtitus,
4, dep. (g. abl.) see Par. 207*

possible, it is p. that, fieri pōtest ut
(299); as great as possible, quam
maximus; as well as possible;
quam optimē
posteri, postēri, -ōrum, m. pl.
pour, fundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3
poverty, paupertas, -ātis, f.
power, pōtestas, -ātis, f.; in the
power of, pēnēs (g. acc.)
powerful, pōtens, -tis
practice, usus, -ūs, m.
practise, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2
praetor, praetor, -ōris, m.
praise, laus, -dis, f.; praise, to,
laudo, 1
pray, ūro, 1; pēcor, 1, dep. (foll.
by ut)
prayers, p̄rēces, -um, f.
precept, p̄raeceptum, -i, n.
precious, p̄tēōsus, -a, -um
predict, p̄aedīco, -dixi, -dictum, 3
prefer, mālo, -ui, -malle, foll. by
quam, page 230; antēpono,
-pōsui, -pōsitum, 3 (g. acc. and
dat.)
preparation; I have made every p.,
omnia pārāvi
prepare, pāro, 1
presence of, in the, cōram (g. abl.)
present, to be, adsum, -fui, -esse (g.
dat.)
present, a, dōnum, -i, n.; mūnus,
-ēris, n.; present, to, dōno, 1
(g. acc. and dat. or abl. and
acc.); I p. you with a horse,
ēquo tē dōno
preserve, servo, 1
press, prēmo, pressi, pressum, 3
pretence, spēcies, -ei, f.; sīmūlātio,
-ōnis, f.
pretend, sīmūlo, 1
prevent, prōhībeo, -ui, -itum, 2;
impēdio, -īvi or -ii, ītum, 4;
obsto, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum, g.
dat.; what prevents you from
coming? quid obstat (or prōhī-
bet) quōmīnus vēniās?

previously, antē, anteā
prey, praeda, -ae, f.
Priam, Priāmus, -i, m.
price, prētium, -i, n.; *at a great, small price, &c.*, see Par. 284
pride, sūperbia, -ae, f.
priest, priestess, sacerdōs, -ōtis, c.
prison, carcer, -ēris, m.
prisoner, captīvus, -i, m.
private, privātus, -a, -um
prize, praemium, -i, n.
proceed, prōgredior, -gressus, 3, dep.
proclaim, prōnuntio, 1; ēdico, -dixi, -dictum, 3
proconsul, prōconsul, -ūlis, m.
procure, pāro, 1
prodigal, prōdigus, -a, -um
produce, pārio, pēpēri, partum, 3
profit, quaestus, -ūs, m.
profuse, see *prodigal*
promise, prōmissum, -i, n.; *to make many, large, false, &c., promises*, multa, magna, falsa, &c., prōmittere; *promise, to*, poliçeor, -cītus, 2, dep.; prōmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3; *I p. to come, p. me ventūrum esse* (280); *I promise (in marriage)*, spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum, 2
prone, prōnus, -a, -um
property, rēs, rei, f.; bōna, -ōrum, n. pl.
prophet, vātēs, -is, m.
propitious, prōpitius, -a, -um
propose, (a lac) rōgo, 1 [3
proscribe, proseribo, -psi, -ptum,
prosperity, rēs sēcundae
prosperous, (of winds, &c.) sēcundus, -a, -um; *a prosperous city*, urbs florentissīma
prosperously, fēliciter; *very prosperously*, fēlicissimē
protection, praeſidium, -i, n.
protest, to, rēclāmo, 1
proud, sūperbus, -a, -um
prove, dēmonstro, 1

provided that, dum mōdo, or dum-mōdo (*all g. subj.*)
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
provisions, commeātus, -ūs, m.
provoke, lācesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3
prudence, prudentia, -ae, f.
prudent, prūdens, -tis
public, publicus, -a, -um
Publius, Publius, -i, m.
pull, trāho, -xi, -ctum, 3
punish, castīgo, 1; pūnio, -īvi or -īj, -ītum, 4; *punishment*, supplicium, -i. n.; poena, -ae, f.
pure, pūrus, -a, -um
purple, purpūreus, -a, -um
purpose, to, habēre in animo
pursue, sēquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
push down, dētrūdo, -si, -sum, 3
put, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3; *put over*, praeſicio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 (*g. dat.*); *put to death*, interficere, morte afficēre; *put to flight*, fūgo, 1; *in fūgam vertō*, see *vertō*
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -i, m.
Quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, m.
quantity, cōpia, -ae, f.; vīs, vim, vīl, f. [n.]
quarters, winter, hiberna, -ōrum,
queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
quench (thirst), restinguo, -stinxī, -stinctum, 3
question, to, interrōgo, 1; rōgo, 1
quick, cēler, -ēris, -e; *quickly*, cēlēriter; *very quickly*, cēlēritimē;
quickness, cēlēritās, -ātis, f.
quiet, tranquillus, -a, -um; quiētus, -a, -um
quitc, omnīno
Quirinus, Quīrīnus, -i, m.
Race, gēnus, ēris, n.
rage, īra, -ae, f.; fūror, -ōris, m.; *rage*, to, saevio, -ii, -ītum, 4
rain, imber, -bris, m.; plūvia, -ae, f.

raise, tollo, sustūli, sublātum, 3
rampart, vāllum, -i, n.
rank, ordo, -īnis, m.
rapacious, rāpāx, -ācis [-is, -e
rapid, rāpidus, -a, -um; cēler,
rapidity, cēlēritās, -ātis, f.
rare, rārus, -a, -um
rashly, tēmcrē
rashness, tēmērītas, -ātis, f.
rate, to value at a very high rate,
 permagni aestīnāre
rather, pōtius; rather slow, quick,
 &c., tardior, cēlērior; (Par. 65)
ravage, vasto, 1
raven, corvus, -i, m.
raw, crādus, -a, -um
ray, rādius, -i, m.
reach, attingo, -tīgi, -tactum, 3 (g.
 acc.); pervēnio, -vēni, -ventum,
 4 (foll. by ad)
read, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3
readily, libenter
ready, pārātus, -a, -um; ready to
 fight, ad pugnandum; I am
 ready to die, nōn rēcēso mōri
real, vērus, -a, -um
reality, vēritās, -ātis, f.
really, vērē
reap, mēto, messui, messum, 3
rear, ālo, ālui, altum, 3
reason (cause), causa, -ae, f.; by
 reason of, ūb, propter (both g.
 acc.)
rebuke, incrēpo, -ui, -itum, 1
recall, rēvōco, 1
receive, accīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum,
 3 [not rēcipio]
recent, rēcens, -tis; nōvus, -a,
 -um
recently, nūper
reckon, nūnēro, 1
recline, (at meals) discumbo, -cū-
 bui, -cūbitum, 3 [3
recognise, agnosco, -nōvi, -nītūm,
recollect, rēcordor, rēcordātus, 1,
 dep.; mēmīni, see Appendix II.,
 p. 215

recollection, mēmōria, -ae, f.
recover, rēcūpēro, 1; recipio, -cēpi,
 -ceptum, 3
recount, narro, 1
refrain (oneself), from, abstīneo,
 -ui, -tentum, 2; I abstained
 from food, cībo mē abstīnēbam
refer, rēfēro, rettuli, rēlātum (238);
 I referred the subject of the host-
 ages to the senate, de obsidib⁹
 ad Patres rettuli
refuge, perfūgium, -i, n.
refuse, rēcūso, 1; g. acc.; or inf.;
 or foll. by quīn with subjunctive
regard, have regard to, respīcio,
 -spexi, -spectum, 3 (g. acc.)
region, rēgio, -ōnis, f.
regret, dēsīdērium, -i, n.; regret,
 to, dēsīdēro, 1
Regulus, Rēgūlus, -i, m.
reign, regnum, -i, n.; during his
 reign, eo regnante or rēge (197);
reign, to, regno, 1 (intr.); impēro
 (g. dat.)
rein, hābēna, -ae, f.
reinforcement, subsīdium, -i, n.
reject, rējīcio, rējēci, rējectum, 3
rejoice, gaudeo, gāvīsus, 2, dep.
relate, narrō, 1; horrible to relate!
 nēfās dictu!
relation, prōpinquus, -i, m.
relieve, the city was relieved from
 the siege, obsidōne urbs lēvā-
 ta est (279)
religion, relīgio, -ōnis, f.
relying, frētus, -a, -um (g. abl.)
remain, māneo, -mansī, -nsum, 2;
 remain over, sūpersum, -fui, -esse
remaining, rēlīquus, -a, -um
remarkable, insignis, -e; to a r.
 degree, ūnicē
remedy, rēmēdium, -i, n.
remember, (1) rēcordor, -ātus, 1,
 dep.; reminiscor, -i (g. acc.,
 but sometimes gen.); (2) mēmīni
 (def.), see p. 215
remembrance, mēmōria, -ae, f.

remind, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2
remove, āmōveo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2
remorse, dōlor, -ōris, m.; poenītentia, -ae, f.
render, reddo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
renew, rēnōvo, 1
renown, fāma, -ae, f.
renowned, clārus, -a, -um
repair, rēfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
repeat, ītero, 1
repel, repello, -pulsum, reppūli, 3
repent, poenītent, -uit, 2, impers.
 (see Par. 219 and foll.)
repentance, poenītentia, -ae, f.
reply, responsum, -i, n.; *reply*, to, respondeo, -di, -sum, 2
report, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.; *report*, to, nuntio, 1; *it is reported that Tullius said*, fertur Tullius dixisse
repose, quiēs, -ētis, f.
republic, rēspublīca, reipublīcae, f.
repulse, prōpulso, 1
reputation, fāma, -ae, f. [dat.]
resist, rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3 (g.)
resolve, constituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
resources, öpes, -um, f.
response, responsum, -i, n.
rest, quiēs, -ētis, f.; *rest*, the, [cēter] -ēra, -ērum, mostly pl.; (*residue*) rēlīquus, -a, -um; *rest*, to, quiesco, -evi, -ētum, 3
restore, reddo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3; restituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
restrain, coerco, 2
result, ēventus, -ūs, m.
retain, rētīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2
retake, rēcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3
retire, rēcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3; *the soldiers retire*, militēs sērēcipiunt
retreat, rēceptus, -ūs, m.; *retreat*, to, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3
return, rēdītus, -ūs, m.; *return*, to, rēdeo, -ii, -itum, 4; rēvertor, -versus, 3, dep.; *to return thanks*, grātiās agēre

rereal, pātēfācio, -fēci, -factum, 3
revenge, ultio, -ōnis, f.; *revenge*, to, ulciscor, ultus, 3, dep.
revenue, vectīgal, -ālis, n.
reverence, rēvērentia, -ae, f.
revere, reverence, vēnēror, -atus, 1, dep.; vēreor, -itus, 2, dep.
rerolt, sēditio, -ōnis, f.; *revolt*, to, dēfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
reicard, praemium, -i, n.; mercēs, -ēdis, f.
Rhodes (island), Rhōdus, -i, f. (265)
rich, dīvēs, -ītis, reg. comp. (not dītior, dītissimus, except in poetry)
riches, dīvītiae, -arum, f.; öpes, -um, f.
ride, ēquīto, 1; vēhor, vectus, 3
rider, ēquēs, -ītis, m.
ridiculous, rīdicūlus, -a, -um
right, rectus, -a, -um; *right*, jūs, jūris, n.; fās, indel.
right-hand, dexter, -tra, -trum, (noun), dextra or dextēra, -ae, f.
rightly, jūre (Par. 182)
ring, ānūlus, -i, m.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um
rise (*from bed*), surgo, surrexi, -rectum, 3; örior, ortus, 4 dep.
risk, pērīculum, -i, n.
rite, ritūs, -ūs, m.
rival, aemūlus, -a, -um (*used as a n.*); *he had many rivals*, multos sibi aemūlos hābuit
rivalry, aemūlātio, -ōnis, f.
riter, flūmen, -īnis, n.; amnis, -is, m.; flūvius, -i, m.
road, via, -ae, f.; īter, itīnēris, n.
rob, spōlio, 1 (*acc. of pers., abl. of thing*)
robber, latro, -ōnis, m.
rock, scōpūlus, -i, m.; rūpēs, -is, f.
roll, volvo, -vi, volūtum, 3 (trans.); *the stone is rolling*, lāpis volvītur
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Romulus, Rōmūlus, -i, m.

roof, tectum, -i, n.
root, rādīx, -īcis, f.
rope, fūnis, -is, m.
rose, rōsa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -ēra, -ērum
round, rōtundus, -a, -um; tērēs,
 -ētis
round (prep.), circum (g. acc.)
rouse, excito, 1
rout, fūgo, 1; fundo, fūdi, fusum,
 3
royal, rēgālis, -e; rēgius, -a, -um
rude, rūdis, -e; incultus, -a, um
rugged, asper, -ēra, -ērum
ruin (destruction), exītium, -i, n.
rude, to, rēgo, -xi, -ctum (g. acc.);
 impēro, 1 (g. dat.)
rule, impērium, -i, n.
rumour, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor,
 -ōris, m.
run, curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3
run up, accurro, -curri, -cursum, 3
run away, aufūgio, -fūgi, 3
running, cursus, -ūs, m.
rush, impētus, -ūs, m.
rush, to, rūo, -ui, 3 [3]
rush forth, ērumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,
rustic, rustīcus, -a, -um

Sabine, Sābinus, -a, -um
sacred, sacer, -era, -erum
sacrifice, sacrīfīcium, -i, n.
sacrifice, to, sacrīfīco, 1
sad, tristis, -e
safe, tūtūs, -a, -um; salvus, -a,
 -um; incōlūmis, -e
safely, tūto
safety, sālūs, -ūtis, f.
sagacious, sāgax, -ācis
sail, a, vēlum, -i, n.
sail, to, nāvīgo, 1
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake, for the, causā (adverbial
 abl. foll. by gen. of gerundive)
salt, sal, sālis, m.
salutation, sālūtātio, -ōnis, f.
salute, sālūto, 1

same, idem, īādem, īādem (103)
Samos, Sāmos, -i, f.
Samnites, Samnītes, -ium, m.
sand, ārēna, -ae, f.
sate, satiate, sātio, 1; expleo,
 -plēvi, -pletum, 2
satisfy, sātisfācio, -fēci, -factum,
 3 (g. dat.)
savage, saevus, -a, -um; fērus, -a,
 -um
savageness, fēritās, -ātis, f.
save (i.e. preserve), servo, 1
say, dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3; say...not,
 nēgo, 1; do you say it is not so?
 nēgasnē ita esse? I say I can-
 not come, nēgo mē venīre posse;
 said he, I say (used parentheti-
 cally) inquit, inquam; see page
 315; it is said that Balbus lies,
 dīcitur Balbus mentīri (Par.
 177).
saying, dictum, -i, -n
scanty, exīguus, -a, -um
scarcely, vix
scarcity, inōpia, -ae, f.
scatter, spargo, -rsi, -rsum, 3;
 fūdi, fusum, 3
scent, ūdor, -ōris, m.
science, scientia, -ae, f.
Scipio, Scīpio, -ōnis, m.
scorch, adūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3;
 torreo, -ui, tostum, 2
scorn, aspernor, 1, dep.; sperno,
 sprēvi, sprētum, 3
scourge, to, virgis caedēre, lit. to
 strike with rods; (virga, -ae, f.)
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
sculptor, sculptor, -ōris, m.
sculpture, sculptūra, -ae, f.
Scythian, Scȳtha, -ae, m.
sea, māre, -is, n.; pēlāgus, -i, -n.
 (adj.) mārīnus, -a, -um; nāvālis,
 -e
search, explōrō, 1; quaero, -sīvi,
 -sītum, 3
season, tempus, -ōris, n.; tempes-
 tās, -ātis, f.

- seasonable*, opportūnus, -a, -um
seat, sēdēs, -is, f.
second (in ordinary numeration),
 sēcundus, -a, -um; (*a, or the second, where only two are contemplated*), alter, -ēra, -ērum; *a second time*, itērum; *a friend is a second self*, āmīcus est alter ēgo
secret, secrētus, -a, -um
secretary, scrība, -ae, m.
secretly, clam
secure, sēcūrus, -a, -um; see *safe*
security, see *safety*
sedition, sēditio, -ōnis, f.
see, vīdeo, vīdi, visum, 2; *to see-to this being done*, cūrāre hōc fāciendum
seed, sēmen, -īnis, n.
seek, quaero, quaestī, quaesītum, 3; (*peace*) pēto, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 3
seem, vīdeor, vīsus, 2 dep.
seize, occūpo, 1; corripiō, -ripui, -reptum, 3
seldom, rāro
self, ipse, -a, -um, (105, 308); sē (94, 218, 305-8)
sell, vendo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
seller, vendītor, -ōris, m.
senate, sēnātus, -ūs, m.; also Patres, -rum; *it was referred to the s.*, ad Patres rēlātum est
senate-house, cūria, -ae, f.
senator, sēnātor, -ōris, m.
send, mitto, mīsi, missum, 3 (*to, ad*)
send away, dīmitto, mīsi, missum, 3
send for, arcessō, -īvi, -ītum, 3 [3
send on, praemitto, -mīsi, -missum,
sentinel, vīgil, -īlis, m.
separate, sēpāro, 1
serious, grāvis, -e
serpent, serpens, -tis, c.
servant (*slave*), servus, -i, m.; (*attendant*) mīnister, -ri, m.
serve, servio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4
- (g. dat.) ; *to s. (as a soldier)*, stīpendium mērere
service, (benefit), bēnēfīcium, -i, n.; *to perform military service*, stīpendium mērere
servile, servīlis, -e
servitude, servītūm, -i, n.; (*but in Cicero*) servītūs, -ūtis, f.
set, (of the sun) occido, -cīdi, -cāsum, 3; *set out*, prōfīcīscor, -fectus, 3, dep. ("for" after this v. must be rendered ad; but see Par. 249); *set an example*, exemplum præbēre; *set on fire*, incendo, -cēdi, -cēsum, 3
setting, occāsus, -ūs, m.
seven, septem, indecl.; see Par. 81
several, plūres, -a (72)
severe, grāvis, -e; *severely*, grāvīter
severity, sēvērītās, -ātis, f.
shade, shadow, umbra, -ae, f.
shady, umbrōsus, -a, -um
shake, quātio, quassūn, 3; *I shake off sleep*, somūnum excūtio, -cūssi, -cussum, 3
shame, pūdor, -oris, m.
shameful, turpis, -e
shameless, impūdens, -tis
shamelessness, impūdentia, -ae, f.
shape, forma, -ae, f.
share, pars, -tis, f.
share, to, dīvīdo, -si, -sum, 3
sharp, acūtus, -a, -um; acer, acris, acre
sharpen, ācuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
shave, rādo, -si, -sum, 3
she, see *he*
shear, tōndeo, tōtondi, tonsum, 2
sheep, ūvis, -is, f.
shepherd, pastor, -ōris, m.
shield, scūtum, -i, n.; clipēus, -i, m.
shine, lūceo, -xi, 2; (*of a meadow*) nīteo, -ui, 2 [ga
ship, nāvis, -is, f.; (*of war*) n. lon-shipwreck, naufrāgium, -i, n.
shirt, tūnīca, -ae, f.
shock, impētus, -ūs, m.

shore, lītus, -ōris, n. ; ūra, -ae, f.
short, brēvis, -e ; *for a short time*
 paulisper
shoulder, (h)ūmērus, -i, m.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
shout, to, clāmo, 1
show, to, moustro, 1
shower, imber, -bris, m.
shrub, frūtex, -icis, m.
shun, fūgio, fūgi, 3 ; vīto, 1
shut, shut in, elando, -si, -sum, 3
Sicily, Sīcīlia, -ae, f.
sick, sickly, aeger, -gra, -grum ;
 infirmus, -a, -um
side, lātus, -ēris, n. ; *on this side*,
 citrā, cis (g. acc.) ; *on one side...*
on the other side, hinc...illinc ;
sides, on all, passim ; *sides, from*
all, undique
sight, vīsus, -ūs, m. ; conspectus,
 -ūs, m. ; *in the sight of the*
people, pālam pōpīlo
sign, signal, signum, -i, n.
silence, sīlēntiūm, -i, n.
silent, sīlens, -tis ; tācītus, -a, -um ;
silently, tācītē
silent, to be, tāceo, -ui, -itum, 2 ;
 sīleo, -ui, 2
silver, argentum, -i, n. ; (*adj.*)
 argenteus, -a, -um
simple, simplex, -icis
sin, peccātūm, -i, n. ; scēlus, -ēris, n.
sin, to, pecco, 1
since, quōniaūn (*with indic.*) ; cum
(with subj.) ; *since this is so*, quae
 cum itā sint (151)
sing, canto, 1 ; cāno, cēcīni, can-
 tun, 3
single, ūnus, -a, -um
sink, mergo, -rsi, -rsum, 3 (*trans.*) ;
 mergor (*intrans.*)
sister, sōror, -ōris, f.
sit, sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, 3
sit down, consēdo, -sēdi, -sessum, 3
sir, sixty, &c. See Par. 81
size, magnitūdo, -inis, f.
skilful, skilled, pērītus, -a, -um

skill, pērītia, -ae, f.
skin, cūtis, -is, f. ; pellis, -is, f.
sky, caelum, -i, n.
slander, mālēdīco, -xi, -ctum, 3 (g.
 dat.)
slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.
slave, servus, -i, m. ; *to be a slave*,
 servīre
slavery, servītūs, -ūtis, f.
slay, interfīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
 occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, 3
sleep, somnus, -i, m. [4]
sleep, to, dormio, -ivi or -ii, -itum,
slender, grācīlis, -e (60) ; tēnus, -e
slight, lēvis, -e
slip, lābor, lapsus, 3 dep.
slip down, dēlābor, -lapsus, 3, dep.
sloth, ignāvīa, -ae, f.
slow, tardus, -a, -um
slowly, tardē
slumber, somnus, -i, m.
small, parvus, -a, -um
smear, oblīno, -lēvi, -lītum, 3
smell, ȳdor, -ōris, m.
smile, rīdeo, -si, -sun, 2
snake, cōlūber, -bri, m. (*rare*) ;
 anguis, -is, m.
snare, insīdiae, -ārum, f.
snatch, rāpio, -ui, -ptum, 3 ; *snatch*
from, erīpio, -ripui, -eptum, g.
 dat. cf pers. (192) [3]
snatch away, abrīpio, -ui, -reptum,
snow, nix, nivis, f.
so, (*with adj.*) tam ; *so good*, tam
 bōnus ; itā ; *and so*, i.e. ther-
 upon, itāquē ; (*in this way*) sīc
(to such an extent) tam
so great, large, tantus, -a, -um
so many, tōt, indel.
so much (*money, &c.*), tantum
 (pēcūniae, &c.).
Socrates, Sōcrātēs, -is, m.
soft, mollis, -e
soften, mollīo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4
soil, sōlūm, -i, n. ; hūmus, -i, f.
soldier, mīlēs, -itis, m.
sole, ūnus, -a, -um ; ūnicus, -a, -um

some, nonnullus, -a, -um; *some...*
others, ālii...alii; *there is something after death*, est āliquid
post mortem; *I fear something has happened*, vēreor nē quid
accidērit; *some poet says*, pōēta
quidam dicit; *there is some (i.e. something of) art in writing*, est
āliquid artis in scribendo; *there are (some) who say*, sunt qui
dīcant

sometimes, interdum, aliquando
somewhat (with adj.) see Par. 65

son, fīlius, -i, m.; *listen, my son*,
audi, mi fili (13)

son-in-law, gēner, -ēri, m.

song, carmen, -īnis, n.; cantus, -ūs,
 in.

soon, mox

soothsayer, hāruspex, -icis, m.

sorrow, dōlor, -ōris, m.

sort, gēnus, -ēris, n.

soul, anima, -ae, f.

sound, a, sōnus, -i, m.; sōnitus, -ūs,
 in.

sound, to, sōno, -ui, -ītum, 1; *the trumpet sounds*, tūba cānit

sour, ācerbus, -a, -um

source, fons, -ntis, m.

sow, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.

space, spātiūm, -i, n.

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.

spare, parco, pēpercī, parsūm, 3
 (g. dat.)

Sparta, Sparta, -ae, f.

speak, dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3; lōquor,
 -cūtus, 3 dep.

spear, hasta, -ae, f.

spectacle, spectāculum, -i, n.

spectre, spectrum, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.]

speech, īrātio, -ōnis, f.; contio,

speed, cēlēritās, -ātis, f.; *with speed*, speedīly, cēlēriter

spend, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3 [in.]

spirit, spirītus, -ūs, m.; ānimus, -i,
splendid, splēndidus, -a, -um

splendour, splendor, -ōris, m.

spoil, spōlio, 1 (*acc. of pers.*, *abl. of thing*)

spoils, spōlia, -ōrum, n.

sport, lūdus, -i, m.

spot, lōcus, -i, m.; plur. lōca

spring, vēr, vēris, n.

spring forward, prōsīlio, -sīlūi,
 -sultum, 4

spur, calcar, -āris, n. (39)

spurn, sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3

spy, explōrātor, -ōris, m.

squander, dissipo, 1.

stab, confōdio, -fōdi, -fōsum, 3

stag, cervus, -i, m.

stand, sto, stēti, statum, 1

stand up, consurgo, -surrexi, 3

standard, signum, -i, n.

star, stella, -ae, f.; sīdus, -ēris, n.

state, cīvītās, -ātis, f.; respūblica,
 reipublicae, f.

station, to, lōco, 1

statue, stātua, -ae, f.

stay, māneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2; mōror,
 -ātus, 1 dep.

steadily, constanter [ēōcis]

stern, sēvērus, -a, -um; atrox,
sternness, sēvēritās, -ātis, f.

stick, bācūlus, -i, m.

still (i. e. yet), adhuc

stir, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

stomach, venter, -tris, m.

stone, lāpis, -īdis, m.; saxum, -i,
 n.

stop, consisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3

stop, (*trans.*) mōror, 1, dep.

storm, prōcella, -ae, f.; tempestās,
 -ātis, f.

storm, to, expugno, 1

story, fābūla, -ae, f.

straight, rectus, -a, -um

strange, mīrus, -a, -um

stranger, hospēs, -ītis, m.; advēna,
 -ae, m.

stratagem, dōlus, -i, m.

stream, flūmen, -īnis, n.; rīvus, -i,
 m.

<i>street</i> , vīcus, -i, m.	<i>suddenly</i> , rěpentē, sūbīto, stātim
<i>strength</i> , vīres, -ium, f. pl.	<i>Suevi</i> , Suēvi, -ōrum, m.
<i>strengthen</i> , firmo, 1	<i>suffer</i> , pātior, passus, 3 dep.
<i>stretch out</i> , extendo, -di, -sum, 3	<i>sufficient</i> , sātis, <i>indcl.</i> ; īdōneus, -a, -um; <i>sufficiently good</i> , sātis bōnus
<i>strew</i> , sterño, strāvī, strātum, 3	<i>suited for</i> , <i>suitable</i> , aptus, -a, -um, īdōneus, -a, -um (<i>with dat. or ad</i> ; <i>aptus, with persons, dat.</i>)
<i>strike</i> , <i>strike down</i> , caedo, cēcīdi, caesum, 3; <i>having been struck by lightning</i> , fulmīne ictus (-a, -um)	<i>sum of money</i> , pēcūnia, -ae, f.
<i>strive</i> , (i.e. <i>endeavour</i>) nītor, nīsus or nīxus, 3, dep. (<i>with ut and subjunctive</i>); (i.e. <i>fight</i>) certo, 1; <i>we strive for mastery with the Roman people</i> , de impērio cum pōpūlo Rōmāno armis certāmus (<i>constr. with inf., and with dat. for cum, is mostly poetical</i>)	<i>summer</i> , aēstas, -ātis, f.
<i>strong</i> , vālidus, -a, -um	<i>summit</i> , culmen, -īnis, n.
<i>struggle</i> , certāmen, -īnis, n.	<i>summon</i> , vōco, 1; convōeo, 1
<i>struggle, to</i> , luctor, 1 dep.	<i>sun</i> , sōl, sōlis, m.
<i>study</i> , stūdium, -i, n.	<i>sunrise</i> , lūx, lūcis, f.; sōlis ortus
<i>study, to</i> , stūdeo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)	<i>sunset</i> , sōlis occāsus
<i>stuff</i> , to, farcio, farsi, fartum, 4	<i>sup</i> , cēno, 1
<i>stupid</i> , stultus, -a, -um	<i>superstition</i> , sūperstītio, -ōnis, f.
<i>subdue</i> , subjugate, sūbīgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3	<i>supper</i> , cēna, -ae, f.
<i>subtle</i> , callīdus, -a, -um	<i>suppliant</i> , supplex, -īcis
<i>subtract</i> , dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3 (<i>foll. by de; or dat. of pers., acc. of thing</i>)	<i>supplies</i> , commētus, -ūs, m.; <i>we are hindered from getting s.</i> prōhīlēmur commētū
<i>succeed</i> , I succeed, i.e. I prosper, rēs mīlhī bēnē succēdit, or rein bēnē gēro. N.B. <i>not, in this sense, succēdo</i> , -ssi, -ssuin, 3, which is only used for "take the place of," and g. dat.; <i>fresh men succeeded the wearied</i> , integri dēfātīgātis successērunt	<i>support</i> (<i>nourish</i>), nūtrio, -īvi, -ītum, 4; sustīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2; sustento, 1
<i>success</i> , victōria, -ae, f.; they returned without s., rē infectā rēdīērunt	<i>suppose</i> , pūto, 1
<i>successfully</i> , fēlīcīter; more successfully, fēlīcius	<i>supreme</i> , suprēmus, -a, -um; sum- inus, -a, -um
<i>succumb</i> , succuimbo, succūbui, suc- cūbitum, 3 (g. dat.)	<i>sure</i> , certus, -a, -um
<i>such</i> , tālis, -e	<i>surname</i> , cognōmen, -īnis, n.
<i>sudden</i> , sūbītus, -a, -um	<i>surrender</i> , trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3; also (<i>but most frequ. of s. persons</i>) dēdo, dēdīdi, dēdītum, 3
	<i>surround</i> , circumdo, -dēdi, -dātun, dāre (acc. and abl. or acc. and dat.; see Ex. LXII.) [dat.]
	<i>survive</i> , sūpersum, -fui, -esse (g. suspicōn, suspīcio, -ōnis, f.
	<i>sustain</i> , sustīneo, 2; (<i>nourish</i>), nutrīo, -īvi, -ītum, 4
	<i>swallow</i> , hīrundo, -īnis, f.
	<i>swan</i> , cyenus, -i, m.
	<i>swear</i> , jūro, 1; I swear to come, j. me ventūrum esse; I s. to obey a law, j. in lēgem.
	<i>sweat</i> , sūdor, -ōris, m.

sweet, dulcis, -e ; *suavis*, -e
swift, celer, -is, -e
swifly, celériter
swiftness, celérítas, -atis, f.
swim, to, no, navi, nátum, 1
sword, gládius, -i, m. ; *with fire and sword*, ferro atque igni
Syracuse, Sýrácūsae, -arum, f. pl.
Syria, Sýria, -ae, f.

Table, mensa, -ae, f.

tail, cauda, -ae, f.

take, cäpio, cépi, captum, 3 ; *take away*, adímo, -émi, -emptum, 3 ; auféro, abstuli, ablátum, auferre ; *take by storm*, expugno, 1 ; *take care of*, curo, 1 (*g. acc.*) ; *take care to*, cürā ut ; *take place*, see *happen*

talk, lóquor, lócūtus, 3 dep.

talkative, lóquax, -acis [-um]

tall, prōcerus, -a, -um ; altus, -a,

tame, mansuetus, -a, -um ; *to tame*, döño, -ui, -itum, 1

Tarquin, Tarquinius, -i, m.

task, öpus, -eris, n.

taste, gusto, 1

tasteful, élégans, -ntis ; *tastefully*, éléganter

Tatius, Tatius, -i, m.

Taurus, mount, Taurus, -i, m.

tax, tributum, -i, n. ; vectigal, -alis, n.

teach, döceo, -ui, -etum, 2 (*g. two acc.*) See Par. 312

teacher, mägister, -tri, m.

tear, läcrima, -ae, f.

tear, to, scindo, scidi, scissum, 3 ; *tear away*, ávello, -velli, -vulsum, 3 ; *tear out*, évello, -velli, -vulsum, 3 ; *to tear away from one's embrace*, ávellere de amplexu

tell, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3, dat. & acc. *tererity*, témritas, -atis, f.

temper, änimus, -i, m.

tempest, tempestas, -atis, f. ; pröcella, -ae, f.

temple, tempłum, -i, n. ; aedes, -is f.

ten, dëcem, indecl. : (*distr.*) dënuś -a, -um ; see Par. 314

tender, tēner, -éra, ērum (61)

tent, tentōrium, -i, n.

tenth, dëcimus, -a, -um

terminate, finio, 4

terrible, dírus, -a, -um

terrify, terreo, -ui, -itum, 2

territories, fínes, -ium, m.

terror, terror, -ōris, m.

Thames, Tämësis, -is, m.

than, (62, 63) quam

thanks, grátiae, -arum, f. ; *I return t.*, grátias ágo

that (*dem. pron.*), illē, -a, -ud ; is, ēa, id ; *that of yours*, istē, -a, -ud (*if used with adj. and nouns the position of illē, is, istē is like that of hic ; see "this"*)

that (*rel. pron.*) qui ; *that* (*nom. or abl.*) . . . not, quin (145, 300) ; *there was no one that did not hate you*, nēmo ērat quin tē òdisset *that* (*conj.*) ut ; *that not*, nē (131) ; (*with comp.*) quo (303) ; *that they might the more easily go*, quo fäcilius irent. N.B. Unless "that" denotes purpose or consequence, it must not be rendered by ut

theatre, theātrum, -i, n.

Theban, Thēbānus, -i, m.

Thebes, Thēbae, -arum, f.

theft, furtum, -i, n.

their, eörum, cárūm, cörūm ; (*own*) suus, -a, -um

Themistocles, Thémistocles, -is, m.

then, tum ; tunc ; deinde ; see *tum*, *tunc* in L. Vocab.

thence, indē

there, ibi, illīc ; often not trans. in Lat., e.g. *there are some who say* sunt qui dicant [Vocab.

therefore, igitur, itaqué ; see Lat.

Thermopylae, Thermópylæ, -arum, f.

- Thetis*, Thētis, -idis, f.
thick, (*of garments*) crassus, -a,
 um; densus, -a, -um
thicket, dūmētūm, -i, n.
thief, fūr, -is, m.
thin, mācer, -cra, -crum; tenuis,
 -e
thing, rēs, rei, f.
think, pūto, 1; existīmo, 1; cōgito,
 1; reor, rātus, rēri; *thinking that*
the enemy were at hand, rātus
hostes ādesse; *I thought to myself*, mēcum cōgitābam
third, tertius, -a, -um
thirst, sītis, -is, f. *acc.* -im, *abl.* -i;
to die of thirst, sītī mōri
thirteen, trēdēcim, *indecl.*
thirty, trīgintā, *indecl.*
this, hic, haec, hōc (*if used with*
Adj. and Noun, mostly comes between the two; this sad calamity,
tristis haec cālānītās; or else
tam, "so" is inserted, haec tam
tristis c.; this great army, hic
tantus exercitūs). N.B. *the same rule applies to the pron. adj. generally, illē, istē, meus, tuus, &c.*
thither, eo, illūc
thou, tū, *see p. 45*
though, quamvis (*g. subj.*); quam-
 quam (*g. ind.*), *see Par. 323*
thousand, *see Par. 80*
threat, mīna, -ae, f.
threaten, mīnor, 1, dep. (*g. acc. of thing and dat. of person*); *I threaten you with death, mīnor tībī mortem*
three, trēs, triā (78); *three hundred, trēcenti, -ae, -a; three hundred apiece, trēcēni, -ae, -a* (314); *three times, thrice, ter; three days, trīdūm, -i, n.; three years, triennium, -i, n.*
thrifty, parcus, -a, -un
throat, guttur, -ūris, n.
throne, sōlium, -i, n.
- through*, pēr (*g. acc.*)
throw, conjicō, -jēci, -jectum, 3
thrush, turdus, -i, m.
thumb, pollex, -icis, m.
thunder, to, tōno, -ui, -ītum, 1
thunderbolt, fulmen, -īnis, n.
thus, sīc, itā
thy, tūns, -a, -um
Tiber, Tīberis, -is, m.
tide, aestus, -ūs, m.
tiger, tigris, -is or -īdis, e.
till, dōnec, dum, quoad; *to till, cōlo, -ui, cultum*, 3
time, tempus, -ōris, n.; *a second time*, itērum; *by this time*, jam; *four times*, *see "four"*
timely, opportūnus, -a, -um
timid, tīmīdus, -a, -um
Titus, Titus, -i, m.
to, in, ād (*g. acc.*). N.B. (1) *"to"*
before a verb is never to be rend.
by the Lat. inf. unless the inf. is the subj. or obj. of another verb;
(2) nor by the supine except after a verb of motion; (3) *it is rendered by the subjunctive when meaning "in order to," and also after verbs of asking, &c.* (143); (4) *see also ād and gerundive* (186)
to-day, hōdiē
together, sīmul, ūna; *having conversed, inter sēsē collōcūti*
toil, läbor, -ōris, m.
token, indīcūm; -i, n.; *pledge, pignus, -ōris, n.*
tolerate, pātior, passus, 3 dep.
tomb, sēpulerum, -i, n.; tūmūlus, -i, m.
to-morrow, crās
tongue, lingua, -ae, f.
too, too much, (*adv.*) nīmis, nīmīum; *too little*, pārum (*adv. used also as a noun*); *he has too little strength, pārum vīriūm hābet; this task is too difficult for you to accomplish, hōc ūpus difficilius est quam quod (or ut*

- hōc) perficiās; *see also* Par. 64,
149
- tooth*, dens, -tis, m.
- top*, vertex, -īcis, m.; *the top of the mountain*, mons summus
- torch*, taeda, -ae, f.; fax, fācis, f.
- torn*, lacer, -ēra, -ērum
- torture*, crūciātus, -ūs, m.
- touch*, tango, tetīgi, tactum, 3
- towards*, versus (*of places*); ergā (*of conduct towards persons*); ad (*all g. acc.*), *see Par. 183*
- tower*, turris, -is, f.
- town*, oppidum, -i, n.
- trace*, vestīgium -i, n.
- train*, exerceo, -ui, -ītum, 2; (*educate*) ērūdio, -ivi, -ītum, 4
- traitor*, proditor, -ōris, m.
- tranquil*, tranquillus, -a, -um
- tranquillity*, tranquillitas, -ātis, f.
- transact*, ago, ēgi, actum, 3
- transfer*, transport, transfero, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre
- travel*, iter facere
- traveller*, viator, -ōris; m.
- treacherous*, perfidus, -a, -um; *treacherously*, per dōlum
- treachery*, perfidia, -ae, f.; dōlus, -i, m.
- treason*, (*military*) prōditio, -ōnis, f.; (*civil*) mājestas, -atis, f.
- treasure*, thēsaurus, -i, m.
- treasury*, aerārium, -i, n.
- treaty*, foedus, -ēris, n.
- tree*, arbor, -ōris, f.
- tremble*, trēmo, -ui, 3; (*from top to toe*) contrēmo, -ui, 3
- tribe*, trībus, -ūs, f.
- tribunal*, trībūnal, -ālis, n.
- tribune*, trībūnus, -i, m.
- tribuneship*, trībūnatūs, -ūs, m.
- tribute*, trībūtum, -i, n.
- trick*, dōlus, -i, m.
- trifles*, nūgae, -ārum, f. pl.
- triumph*, triumphus, -i, m.; *to triumph*, triumpho, 1
- Trojan*, Trojānus, -i, m.
- troop (of horse)*, turma, -ae, f.
- troops*, cōpiae, -ārum, f.
- trophy*, trōpaeum, -i, n.
- trouble*, ūpēra, -ae, f.; *to trouble*, turbo, 1
- troublesome*, mōlestus, -a, -um
- Troy*, Trojā, -ae, f.
- true*, vērus, -a, -um; *truly*, i.e. *truthfully*, vērē
- trumpet*, tūba, -ae, f.
- trunk*, truncus, -i, m.;
- trust*, to, crēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3 (*dat.*); confido, -fīsus sum, 3 (*dat of pers.*, *abl. of thing*); *trusting in the nature of their position*, naturā lōci confisi; *trust*, fīdes, -ei, f.
- rusty*, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a, -um
- truth*, (*abstract*) vēritās, -ātis, f.; (*what is true, fact*) vērum, -i, n.; *if you will have the truth*, si vērum audire vīs; *you have spoken the truth*, vēra dixisti
- try*, cōnor, 1, dep. (*with inf.*); *make proof of*, tento, 1; *we have tried this danger*, tēntāvīmus hoc pērīcūlum
- Tullius*, Tullius, -i, m. (-3)
- Tullia*, Tullia, -ae, f.
- Tulliola*, Tulliola, -ae, f., i.e. *the little Tullia (a child's name)*
- Tullus*, Tullus, -i, m.
- tumult*, tūmultus, -ūs, m.
- turn*, verto, -ti, -sum, 3; *he turned to (in speaking)*, se convertit ad; *the enemy turned their backs*, i.e. fled, terga dēdērunt; *turn out*, ēvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *in turn*, invicem
- twelve*, *see Par. 81*; distrib. 314
- twenty*, twentieth, *see Pars. 81, 314*
- twice*, bīs
- twist*, torqueo, -si, -tum, 2
- two*, duo, -ae, -o (78, 314); *two hundred*, dūcenti, -ae, -a; *two days*, bīduum, -i, n.
- tyrant*, tȳrannus, -i, n.

Ugliness, dēformītas, -ātis, f.
ugly, turpis, -e
Ulysses, Ulysses, -is, m.
unable, I am, nēqueo, -quīvi, 4;
imperf. nequībam; *see L. Vocab.*
unaccustomed, insōlitus, -a, -um
unarmed, īnernis, -e
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*)
uncultivated, incultus, -a, -um
under, sūb, Par. 180 (*g. abl. or acc.*) ; *under Caesar (as general)*, Caesāre dūce (197)
undergo, sūbeo, -īvi or -ii, 4
understand, intellēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
undertake, suscīpio, -cēpi, -cep-tum, 3; *to undertake politics*, cāpēssere rem-publicām
undeserving, indignus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*)
unequal, impār, -pāris
unfair, īnīquus, -a, -um
unfortunate, infēlix, -īcis
unfriendly, īnīmīcus, -a, -um
ungrateful, ingrātus, -a, -um
unhappy, infēlix, -īcis
unity, concordia, -ae, f.
universal, ūnīversus, -a, -um
unjust, injustus, -a, -um
unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um
unlearned, indoctus, -a, -um
unless, nīši (*same construction as sī, see Par. 125, 295*)
unlike, dissimīlis, -e
unlucky, infēlix, -īcis; infaustus, -a, um [*gen.*)
unmindful, immēmor, -ōris, (*g.*)
unpleasant, ingrātus, -a, -um
unseasonable, īnopportūnus, -a, -um
unsuccessfully, infēlīciter
until, dum; dōnēc; quoad; *not until*, nōn antēquam; *he did not answer until I twice questioned him*, nōn antē responđit quam bīs cum interrōgāvi

unwarlike, imbellis, -e
unwilling, I am u. to come, nōlo (nōlui, nolle, 234) vēnīre; she came unwillingly, invita (-a, -um) vēnit. N.B. *This adj. agrees with its noun, but is only used adverbially; invītus est is not Latin* [abl.]
unworthy, indignus, -a, -um (*g. uphold*, sustīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2
upon, sūper (180)
uprightness, prōbitās, -ātis, f.
up to, tēnus (178)
urge, urgeo, ursi, 2
us, *see Par. 90, 93*
use, to, ūtor, usus, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*)
used, he, they, used to, &c. (*turn by imperf. indic. or by sōleo, sōli-tus, 2, dep.*)
useful, ūtilis, -e
useless, īnūtilis, e
usual, sōli-tus, -a, -um
usually, fērē, plērumquē
utter, ēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
utterly, omnīno; *utterly destroy*, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 (*for other verbs used with "utterly," see the verbs themselves*)
Vain, vānus, -a, -um; īnānis, -e
rainily, in rain, fristrā; nēqui-quam
valley, vallis, -is, f.
valour, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
value, prētiūm, -i, n.; *to estimate at a high value*, magni aestīmāre; *to value*, aestīmo, 1 (283, 284)
valuable, prētiōsus, -a, -um
vanish, ēvānescō, ēvānui, 3
vanquish, vinco, vici, victum, 3
variety, vāriētās, -ātis, f.
rurious, varyīng, vārius, -a, -um
rast, ingens, -tis
renerate (*worship*), vēnērōr, 1, dep.
renom, vīrus, -i, n.
venture, audeo, ausus, 2, dep.
Venus, Vēnus, -ēris, f.

verse, versus, -ūs, m.
very, ipsē, -a, -um; *your very life*, vīta tua ipsa; *very small*, parvūlus, -a, -um; *very great, very many*, &c., permagnus, permulti, &c.
vessel, nāvis, -is, f.; nāvigium, -i, n.
Vesta, Vesta, -ae, f.
vice, vītium, -i, n.
vicious, prāvus, -a, -um
victim, victimā, -ae, f.
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victorious, victor, -ōris, m.; victrix, -īcis, f.
victory, victoria, -ae, f.
vigour, vīgor, -ōris, m.; vīres, -ium, f.
village, vīcus, -i, m.
villain, scēlestus, -a, -um
vine, vītis, -is, f.
vineyard, vīnea, -ae, f.
violate, viōlo, 1
violence, vīs, acc. vim, abl. vī, f.; by r., per vim, or vī
violent, viōlentus, -a, -um
violently, viōlenter, or vī
Virgil, Vergilius, -i, m.
virgin, virgo, -īnis, f.
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
virtuous, prōbus, -a, -um
vision, vīsus, -ūs, m.; *dream*, somnīum, -i, n.
visit, vīso, -sī, 3; *visit (with punishment)*, affīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.
void, expers, -tis
vomit forth, ēvōmo, -ui, -itum, 3; (*against any one, in with acc.*)
vow, vōtum, -i, n.; *vow, to*, vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, 2
Vulcan, Vulcānus, -i, m.
vulture, vultur, -ūris, m.

Wage, gēro, gessi, gestum, 3; *I wage war*, bellum gēro

wait, māneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2; *wait for*, expecto, 1
walk, aīnbūlo, 1
wall, mūrus, -i, m.; *town walls*, moenia, -ium, n. pl.
wander, erro, 1; vāgor, pālor, 1, dep.
wandering, error, -ōris, m.
want, īnōpia, -ae, f.
wanting, to be, dēsum, -fui, -esse
war, bellum, -i, n.; *in war and in peace*, dōmi bellīque, or (more commonly) mīlitiaeque (265); *a ship of war*, nāvis longa
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um
warm, cālidus, -a, -um; *warm, to grow*, cālesco, 3
warmth, cālor, -ōris, m.
warn, mōneo, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)
wash, lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, 1
waste, lay waste, vasto, 1; *to waste time*, tempus tērere, -trīvi, -trītum, 3; *waste (adj.)*, a w. district, rēgio inculta
watch, vīgilia, -ae, f.; *watch, to vīgilo*, 1
water, āqua, -ae, f.; *water, to rīgo*, 1; *a river waters this valley*, amnis hanc vallem rīgat
ware, fluctus, -ūs, m.
way, via, -ae, f.: īter, itinēris, n.: *manner*, mōodus, -i, m.; *in what way?* quōmōdo ?
we, see page 45
weak, infirmus, -a, -um
weaken, mīnuo, -ui, ūtum, 3
weakness, dēbīltās, -ātis, f.
wealth, dīvītiae, -ārum, f.; ūpes, -um, f.
wealthy, dīvēs, -ītis
weapon, tēlum, -i, n.
weary, fessus, -a, -um; *I am weary of*, taedet mē (g. gen.) Par. 222 and foll.
weave, texo, -ui, -xtum, 3
web, tēla, -ae, f.
weep, fleo, flēvi, flētum, 2

- weight*, pondus, -ěris, n.
weighty, grāvis, -e
well, *a*, pūteus, -i, m.; (*adv.*) běně;
well, to be, vāleo, -ni, 2; *well known, it is*, constat, 1, im-
 pers.
west, occīdens, -tis, m.
wet, mādīdus, -a, -um
whale, bālaena, -ae, f.
what? quīd? (*that which*) quod;
what was good for one was bad for another, quod ālii prōfuit,
 ālii obfuit; *what deed?* see
 Par. 111
what (in order of number)? quōtus,
 -a, -um? *what o'clock?* quōta
 hōra?
whatever, quisquīs, quīcumquē;
w. he said, was false, quodcum-
 quē dixit, falsum ērat; (*oft. used
 partitively*) *whatsoever arms we
 had, were giren up to the enemy*,
 quidquīd (*or quodcumquē*) armō-
 rum hābuimus, hostib⁹ trādī-
 tum est
when, (1) cum,¹ ūbi; (2) (*inter-
 rogative*), quando? (*also used
 dependently*); *tell me when you
 will come*, dīc mīlī quando
 ventūrus sis
whence, undē [ūbi?]
where, quā, ūbi; (*interrogative*)
whether, conj. (1) (*in dep. quest.*)
 num, nōnnē (135); *whether...or,*
 (a) utrum...ān, (b) -nē...ān (171);
I do not know w., nescio ān (302)
whether, conj. (2) (*in alternative sup-
 positions*), *whether...or (a)sive...
 sive, (b) seu...seu; whether this
 is true or false, I shall go to
 Rome*, ēquidem, sive haec vēra
 sunt, sive falsa, Rōmam ibo
- whether (archaic pron.) whether of
 the two?* ūter? utra? utrum?
which, quī, quae, quod; (*of the
 two*) ūter, utra, utrum, *see Par.*
 85
while, dum (272), foll. by *indie.*
white, candīdus, -a, -um
whither, quō; *whither in the world?*
 quonam terrārum?
who, qui, quae, quod; *T. was the
 first who did this*, T. prīmus hōc
 fēcit; (*interrogative*) quīs, quīd
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (85); *the whole
 of the valley*, vallis tōta
why, cūr?
wicked, imprōbus, -a, -um
wickedness, scēlus, -ēris, n.
wide, lātus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, -ōris, f.
wild, fērus, -a, -um; *w. beast*, fēra,
 -ae, f.; *wild boar*, āper, -pri, m.
will, vōluntas, -ātis, f.
willing, to be, vōlo, vōlui, velle
willingly, lībenter
wind, ventus, -i, m.
wine, vīnum, -i, n.
wing, āla, -ae, f.; *of an army*,
 cornū, -īs, n.
winter, hīemps, -ēmis, f.; *winter
 quarters*, hīberna, -ōrum, n.
wisdom, sāpiēntia, -ae, f.; (*military*)
*as distinct from "valour," consi-
 lium*, -i, n.
wise, sāpiens, -tis
wish, vōluntās, -ātis, f.; stūdium,
 -i, n.; *wish, to, or wish for*, vōlo,
 velle, vōlui; pp. 128, 129
with, cum (*g. abl.*); (*in-the-house-
 of*) āpūd (178)
withdraw (trans.), dētrāho, -traxi,
 -tractum, 3; (*intrans.*) recēdo,
 -cessi, -cessum, 3

¹ The form *quum*, which is still erroneously retained in some modern editions of classical authors, has no authority. It is “of the rarest possible occurrence even in late MSS.” and was long ago described by an eminent grammarian as “dead and buried.”

within, intrā (g. acc.); (adv.) in-
tus; w. three days, trībus hīs
dīēbus (263a)

without, sīnē (g. abl.); (outside),
extrā (g. acc.), (adv.) extrā;
without accomplishing anything,
rē infectā; without the knowl-
edge of, clam (g. abl.)

withstand, rēsistō, -stīti, -stītum,
3 (g. dat.)

witness, testis, -is, m.; witness, call
to, testor, 1, dep.

witty, lēpīdus, -a, -um

woe! vae! (interjection)

wolf, lūpus, -i, m.

woman, mūlier, -ēris, f.; fēmina,
-ae, f.

womanish, mūliebris, -e

wonder, wonder at, mīror, 1, dep.

wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um

wont, to be, sōleo, sōlitus, 2; (also
rend. by imperf. indic.) the land
was wont to be laid waste, āger
vastābātur

wood, a, silva, -ae, f.; wood,
mātēries, ēi, f.

wooden, ligneus, -a, -um

wool, lāna, -ae, f.

word, verbum, -i, n.; to keep one's
word, fidem praeſtāre; to bring
word, rēnuntiāre

work, ūpus, -ēris, n.

workman, fāber, -ri, m.

world, where, whither, &c., in the
world? ūbī, quonam, &c., terrā-
rum? the world, (terrārum) orbis,
-is, m.; N.B. mundus, -i, m.

means "universe" incl. the stars;
the Campanian country is the
most beautiful in the world, āger
Campānus orbis (gen.) terrārum
pulcherrimus est

worm, vermis, -is, m.

worn out, confectus, -a, -um

worse, pējor, -ōris (68)

worship, cōlo, -ui, -cultum, 3

worst, pessīmus, -a, -um (69)

worth, to be, vāleo, -ui, 2

worthless (of men), nēquam, indecl.;
more w., most w., see Par. 68

worthy, dignus, -a, -um (g. abl.);
the worthy Tullius, T., vīr
optīmus; worthy, to deem, dig-
nor, 1, dep. (g. abl.)

would, he would not (i.e. wished
not to) come, nōluit venīre; he
would (i.e. he was determined to)
come, vōluit vēnīre

would that, ūtīnam (g. pres. subj.
of possible, imperf. subj. of im-
possible wishes; see Par.
295)

wound, vulnus, -ēris, n.; wound,
to, vulnēro, 1

wrath, īra, -ae, f.

wreck, naufrāgium, -i, n.

wreath, sertum, -i, n.

wrest, to, extorqueo, -torsi, -tortum,
2 (dat. of pers. or abl. with a)

wretched, mīser, -ēra, -ērum

write, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3

writer, scriptor, -ōris, m.

wrong, a, iniūria, -ae, f.

Xenophon, Xēnōphon, - phontis,
m.

Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, m.

Year, annus, -i, m.

yearly, every year, quōtāmīs

yesterday, hēri; yesterday night,
nox hesterna

yet, as yet, ādhūc; nevertheless,
tāmen (at the beginning of a
clause, or after an emphatic word);
not yet, nōndum

yield, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 (g. dat.)

yoke, iūgum, -i, n.; to send under
the yoke, sub jūgū mittēre

you, vōs; see page 45

young (man), jūvēnis, -is, -m.; ādū-
lescens, -tīs, m.; (boys), puēri

parvūli; <i>young (ones)</i> , pulli, -ōrum, m.; 'the young', may be transl. jūniōres or pūéri <i>younger</i> , jūnior, -iōris (69); <i>young-</i> <i>est</i> , mīnīmus nātu <i>your</i> , vester, -tra, -trum	<i>yourself</i> , see Par. 105 (<i>not sē</i>) <i>youth</i> , iūvēntūs, -ūtis, f.; <i>youth</i> , a juvēnis, -is, m.
	Zeal , stūdium, -i, n.; <i>with zeal</i> , cuni (or sunmo) stādio, 181

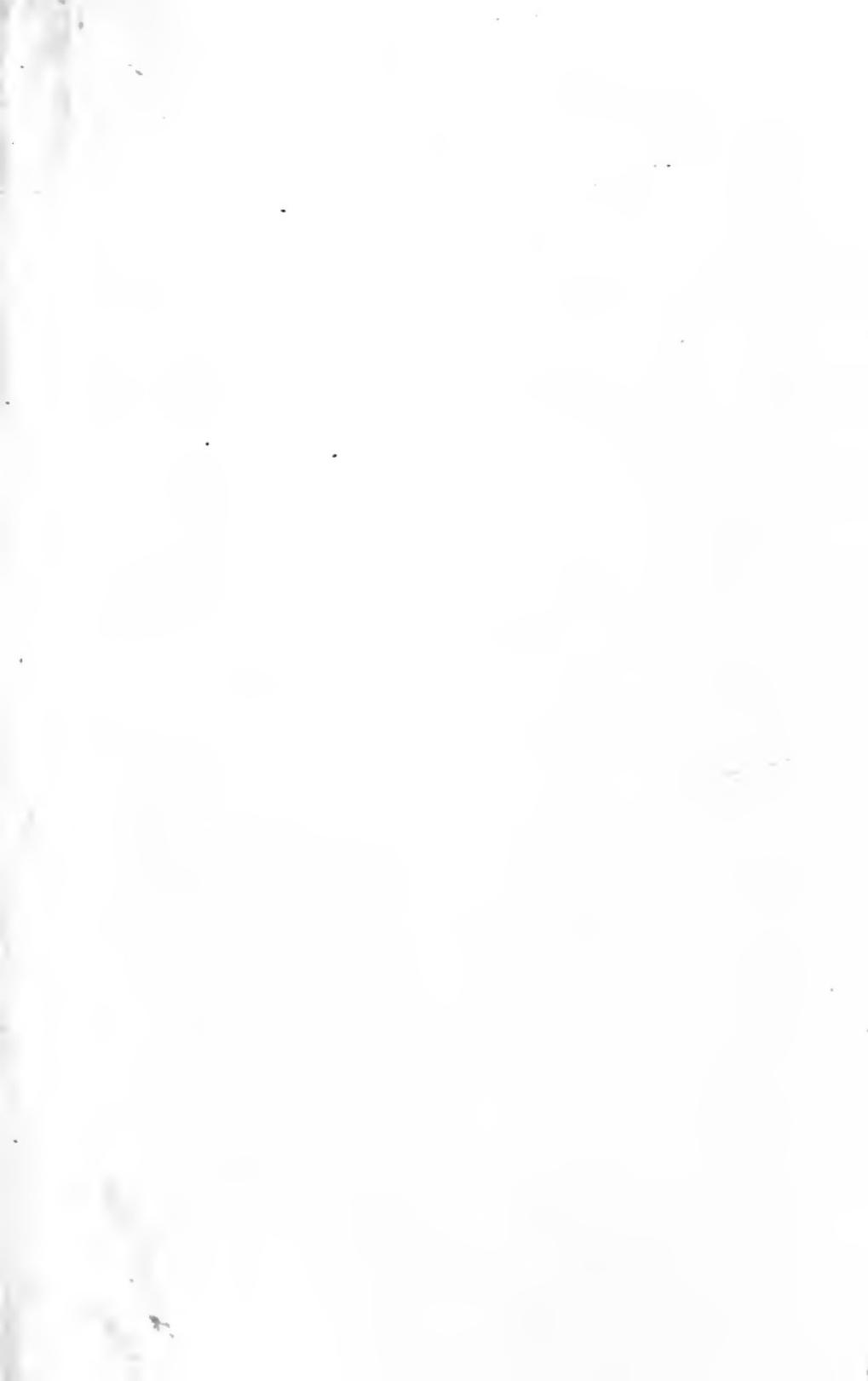
NOTE ON **se**, **suus**, &c.

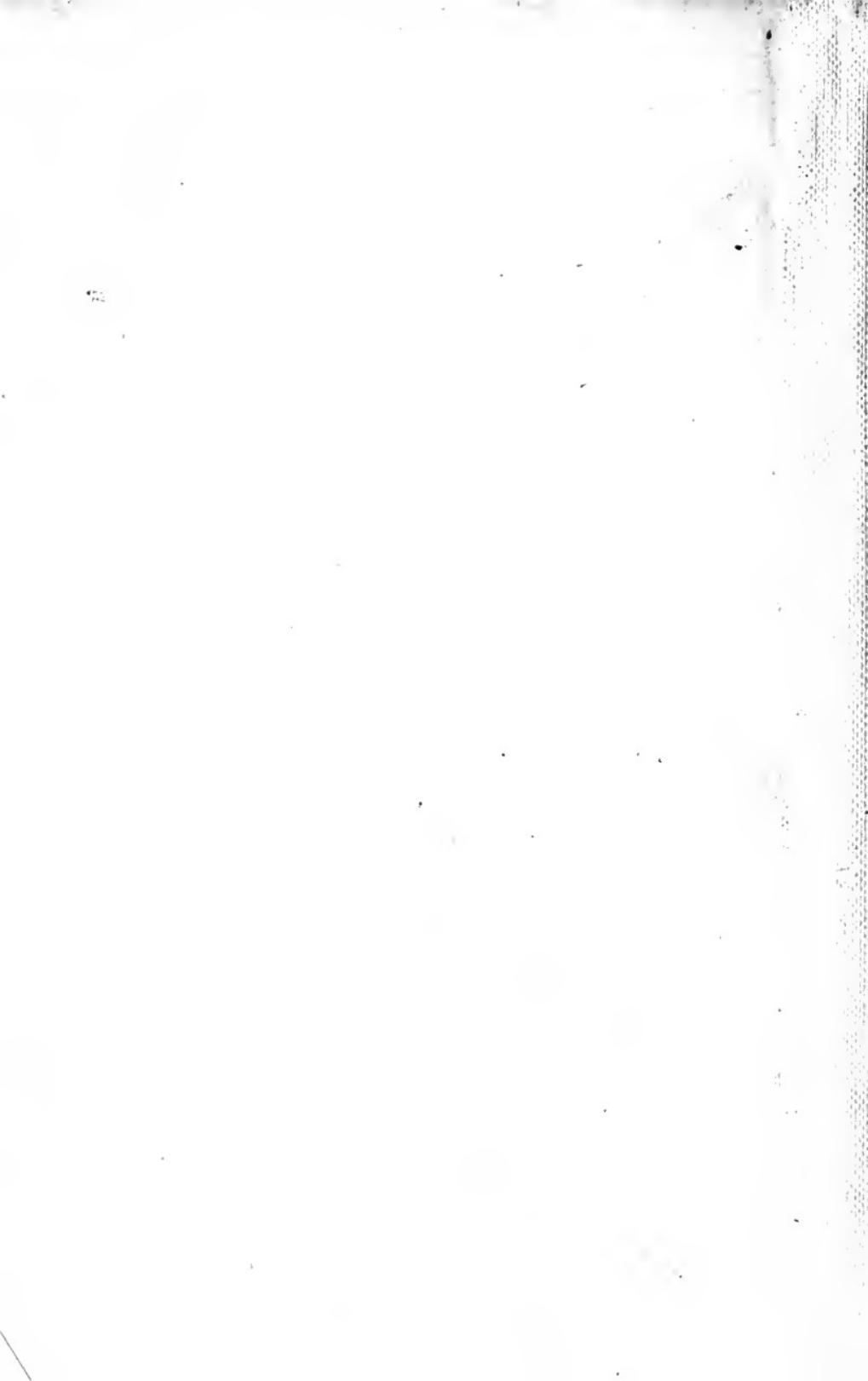
Sē, **suus** are used (not **eum**, **eius**) only when the Pronoun (1) refers to the Principal Subject; (2) is in a Subordinate Clause. Unless *both* these conditions are satisfied, **sē**, **suus** must not be used.

I. In the following examples condition (1) is satisfied, but (2) is not :
(a) *T. thanks me, for I helped him*, T. grātias mīhi āgit, nam **ei** subvēni;
(b) *T. loves me, and I forgive him*, T. mē āmat, ēt **ei** ignosco ; (c) *T. and his brother came*, T. et frāter **eius** vēnērunt.

II. In the following, (2) is satisfied, but (1) is not : (a) *I know that he rejoices*; Scio **eum** gaudēre ; (b) *I said that his brother had come*, Dixi frātrem **eius** vēnisse.

III. In the following, *both* conditions are satisfied : (a) *He begs me to pardon him* (i.e. *himself*), Ōrat ūt **sībi** ignoscam ; (b) *He asks whether you saw his brother*, Quaerit num frātrem **suum** vīdēris.





B.B.W. Dec. 1st 28

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

**Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU**

